





3 1148 00082 3427

# ITALY

DEC 26 1978 NOV 1975

MAY 2 1979

## DATE DUE

MAI	JUL 15 1989		
MAI	FEB 10 1990	MAI	JAN 07 1994
	JUN 10 1991		NOV 22 1997
	JUL 01 1991		
MAI	AUG 14 1991		
	OCT 23 1991		
MAI	MAR 18 1992		
MAI	JUN 12 1992		
MAI	AUG 05 1992		

Demco, Inc. 38-293

MAI MAR 01 1993



*College Department*

SCOTT, FORESMAN  
AND COMPANY



100 North Dearborn Street

447+9=456

NOV 1977  
MAI JAN 2 1976

MAI NOV 19 1981

MAI JAN 27 1976  
MAI MAY 11 1976  
MAI JUN 23 1976

MAI JUL 28 1982  
MAI NOV 1 1976

OCT 6 - 1977

MAI NOV 10 1988

MAI JAN 16 1979

MAI JUL 15 1989

# COLLEGE LATIN

MAI MAR 16 1979

MAI FEB 8 1980

BY

MAI JUN 4 1982

NORMAN JOHNSTON DE WITT

UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA

MAI DEC 29 1982

JOHN FLAGG GUMMERE

WILLIAM PENN CHARTER SCHOOL

ANNABEL HORN

WESLEYAN COLLEGE

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

CHICAGO ATLANTA DALLAS PALO ALTO FAIR LAWN, N.J.

Copyright, 1954,  
by  
Scott, Foresman and Company

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

# CONTENTS

## UNIT I AMERICA AND OTHER LANDS

WHAT IS LATIN? . . . . .	10
YOUR LAND AND MY LAND . . . . .	11
BEAUTIFUL COUNTRIES: Pronunciation . Sentences . The Predicate . Transitive and Intransitive Verbs . Number . Adjective Endings . Two Adjectives Modifying One Noun . Phrases	12
A SAILOR'S LIFE: Nouns Denoting Possession . Case . Omission of the Subject	15
AN EMBARRASSING MOMENT. Use of <i>do</i> in Negative Sentences and in Questions . Person and Number of Verbs . Forms of <i>sum</i> . Position of the Verb . The Infinitive . Conjugation of <i>portō</i> . The First Conjugation . <i>You</i> , Singular and Plural	18
WE SAVE THE JEWELS: Indirect Object . Dative Case . Adjectives Modifying Nouns in the Dative . Adjectives with a Dependent Dative . Position of Genitive and Dative	22
SICILY: Apposition . Prepositions . The Prepositions <i>ā</i> , <i>ab</i> , and <i>ē</i> , <i>ex</i> . Ablative Case . The Expletive <i>there</i>	24
REVIEW OF UNIT I . . . . .	26

## UNIT II STORIES OF GODS AND MEN

LATONA AND THE FROGS: First Declension . Clauses . Conjunctions . . . .	28
MAIL FROM HOME: Indicative Mood . Imperative Mood . Vocative Case . Tense of Verbs . Present Tense . Future Tense . Future of <i>portō</i> . Stem of the Future . Future of <i>sum</i> . Future of <i>dō</i> . The Conjunction <i>cum</i>	30
A LADY OR A BEAR?: Perfect Tense . Stem of the Perfect . Person Endings . Perfect of the First Conjugation . Perfect of <i>sum</i>	34
BURIED TREASURE Imperfect Tense . Tense Sign of the Imperfect . Person Endings . Imperfect of <i>portō</i> . Present System . Imperfect of <i>sum</i>	37
A WOODLAND TEMPLE: Second Declension . Gender . Agreement of Adjectives in Gender	40
A FRIEND IN NEED: Declension of <i>amicus</i> . Second-Declension Nouns in <i>-er</i> . Vocative Case of the Second Declension	42
REVIEW OF UNIT II . . . . .	47

## UNIT III OLD TALES

THE GOLDEN TOUCH: Adjectives with Masculine in <i>-er</i> . Adjectives with Masculine Nouns of the First Declension . Adjectives Used As Nouns . Declension of <i>vir</i>	48
THREE BOOKS FOR THE PRICE OF NINE: The Adverb . Distinction Between <i>nunc</i> and <i>jam</i> . Imperfect of <i>dō</i>	50
THE GOLDEN BOUGH. Case Use with Prepositions . Phrases with <i>to</i> . <i>In</i> with the Accusative	52
THE FLOOD Second Conjugation . Present System of the Second Conjugation . Present Imperative of <i>monēō</i>	56
A TALL TALE: Use of Passive Voice . Present Passive of <i>portō</i> and <i>monēō</i> . Passive Endings . <i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> Meaning <i>by</i> . Ablative of Means	58
THE FIRST PYRRHIC VICTORY: Perfect Tense of the Second Conjugation	62
REVIEW OF UNIT III . . . . .	65

985

260345  
KANSAS CITY (MO.) PUBLIC LIBRARY

## UNIT IV HISTORY AND LEGEND

APIUS CLAUDIUS—PUBLIC SERVANT: Declension of <i>hic</i> and <i>ille</i> · The Verbs <i>adsum</i> and <i>absum</i>	66
THE TIMID SOUL: The Pronoun · Case of the Interrogative · Forms of Questions · Answers to Questions	70
VESUVIUS AND POMPEII Interrogative Adjective . . . . .	74
THESEUS AND THE MINOTAUR: Imperfect Passive . . . . .	76
THE FIRST MAN TO FLY: The Demonstrative <i>is</i> · Pronoun Use of <i>is</i> . . . . .	78
THE CAPTURE OF VEII. Future Passive of <i>portō</i> and <i>moneō</i> · <i>hic</i> and <i>ille</i> As Pronouns	80
MANLIUS SAVES THE CAPITOL: Reflexive Pronoun . . . . .	82
REVIEW OF UNIT IV . . . . .	85

## UNIT V TALES OF ADVENTURE

ASCANIUS AND THE WHITE STAG: Use of <i>suus</i> · Declension of <i>suus</i> · <i>ejus</i> and <i>eōrum</i>	86
SERTORIUS AND DIANA'S DEER: Third Declension · Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the First Class · Endings	90
A SOLDIER'S LETTER: Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Third Declen- sion · Neuter Nouns of the First Class	92
THE BLIND POET: Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Second Class · Neuter Nouns of the Second Class · Gender in the Third Declension	94
ANDROCLES AND THE LION: Use of Participles · Forms of the Perfect Parti- ciple · Declension of the Participle	96
PICUS—KING AND WOODPECKER: Principal Parts of the Verb · Principal Parts of First-Conjugation Verbs · Stems of the Verb	98
REVIEW OF UNIT V . . . . .	101

## UNIT VI THE BIRTH OF A NATION

BAD OMENS: Perfect Passive of <i>portō</i> and <i>moneō</i> · Predicate Noun with Passive Forms · Principal Parts of Second-Conjugation Verbs · Different Endings of the Perfect Stem	102
AN AMBIGUOUS PROPHECY: Ablative with <i>cum</i> · Kinds of Ablatives . . . .	106
THIS IS NOT THE PLACE: The Independent Participial Construction · The Ablative Absolute · Free Translation of the Ablative Absolute	108
AENEAS AND DIDO: Third Conjugation · Present Tense of - <i>ō</i> Verbs of the Third Conjugation · Imperative of - <i>ō</i> Verbs of the Third Conjugation	110
THE PROMISED BRIDE: Present Tense of Third-Conjugation - <i>iō</i> Verbs · Impera- tives of - <i>iō</i> Verbs	112
A BROKEN TREATY: Fourth Conjugation · Imperative of Fourth-Conjugation Verbs · Perfect Active of the Third and Fourth Conjugations · Perfect Passive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations · Principal Parts of Third-Conjugation Verbs · Principal Parts of Fourth-Conjugation Verbs	114
THE WRATH OF AENEAS: Imperfect of the Third and Fourth Conjugations . .	118
THE GODS DESERT TURNUS: Future of the Third and Fourth Conjugations .	120
THE END OF THE CONFLICT: Present Infinitives of the Four Conjugations . .	122
REVIEW OF UNIT VI . . . . .	125

## UNIT VII FAMOUS MYTHS

AN UNHAPPY BRIDE: Third-Declension Adjectives · Third-Declension Adjectives of One Ending	126
THE LOST WIFE: Third-Declension Adjectives of Two Endings · Adjectives of Three Endings · Present Active Participle Declension of the Present Participle	128
A CURIOUS WOMAN: Comparison of Adjectives · Formation of the Comparative and the Superlative · Comparison of Adjectives in <i>-er</i> · Comparison of Adjectives in <i>-lis</i> · Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives · Cardinal Numbers	132
A DARING YOUNG MAN: Adjectives Compared Irregularly · Adverbs Compared Regularly · Irregular Adverbs	135
REVIEW OF UNIT VII	137

## UNIT VIII THE FALL OF TROY

A BEAUTY CONTEST: Meaning and Use of the Relative Pronoun · Agreement of the Relative Pronoun · Relative Pronoun with <i>cum</i>	138
PARIS AND HELEN: Direct Quotations · Indirect Quotations · Indirect Discourse · Predicate Noun or Adjective in Indirect Discourse · Present Infinitive in Indirect Discourse	140
HELEN AND THE BEGGAR: Conjugation of <i>eō</i> · Compounds of <i>eō</i>	144
THE WOODEN HORSE: Fourth Declension of Nouns · Endings	146
REVIEW OF UNIT VIII	149

## UNIT IX THE STORY OF IPHIGENIA

A DECEITFUL LETTER: Use of Personal Pronouns · Declension of <i>ego</i> · Reflexive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons · Pronouns with <i>cum</i>	150
RENDEZVOUS WITH DEATH: Meaning of the Past Perfect · Formation of the Past Perfect Active · Past Perfect Passive	152
SURPRISE FOR ACHILLES: Perfect Active Infinitives · Passive Infinitives · Tense of Infinitives in Indirect Discourse	154
DIANA TO THE RESCUE: Fifth Declension · Accusative of Duration of Time · Ablative of Time at Which	156
REVIEW OF UNIT IX	158

## UNIT X ADVENTURES OF ULYSSES

THE LAND OF FORGETFULNESS: <i>mille</i> and <i>milia</i> · Accusative of Extent of Space · The Verb <i>ferō</i> and Its Compounds · The Verbs <i>volō</i> and <i>nōlō</i> · Declension and Use of <i>idem</i>	160
A CLEVER TRICK: Deponent Verbs · Conjugation of <i>possum</i> · Deponents of the Third and Fourth Conjugations	164
TOO MUCH WIND: Ablative of Respect	168
ESCAPE FROM A SORCERESS: Declension and Use of <i>ipse</i> · The Gerund · Future Active Participle · Future Active Infinitive	170
HOME AT LAST	174
FATHER AND SON: Imperative of <i>eō</i> and <i>sum</i> · Negative Commands	174
HIS OWN WIFE DIDN'T KNOW HIM: Meaning of the Future Perfect · Formation of the Future Perfect Active · Future Perfect Passive · Perfect System	176
DOUBLE VICTORY	179
REVIEW OF UNIT X	181

## UNIT XI THE QUEST OF THE GOLDEN FLEECE

THE FLEECE REACHES COLCHIS: Subjunctive Mood · Active of the Imperfect Subjunctive · Subjunctive in <i>cum</i> Concessive Clauses	182
JASON COMES TO COURT: Descriptive Clauses of Situation · Passive of the Imperfect Subjunctive · Imperfect Subjunctive of <i>sum</i> and <i>possum</i> · Past Perfect Subjunctive · Passive of the Past Perfect Subjunctive · Indirect Questions · Subjunctive in <i>cum</i> Causal Clauses	184
THE GOLD SEEKERS: Expressions of Purpose · Subjunctive in a Clause of Purpose · Subjunctive with Expressions of Doubt · Noun Clauses of Desire · Subjunctive in a Dependent Clause in Indirect Discourse	188
WINNING THE FLEECE: Subjunctive in Clauses of Result · Impersonal Verbs · Present Subjunctive	193
REVIEW OF UNIT XI	201

## UNIT XII ROMAN STORIES RETOLD

THE BEGINNINGS OF ROME. Ablative with Deponent Verbs · Dative of Possession	202
ROYAL TWINS: Future Passive Participle · Dative of Agent	204
THREE AGAINST THREE: Gerundive · Distinctions Between Gerund and Gerundive	208
THE HONOR OF A ROMAN: Perfect Subjunctive · Sequence of Tenses	210
A TRUE PATRIOT: Anticipatory Subjunctive · Clauses of Fear	212
REVIEW OF UNIT XII	215

## UNIT XIII CAESAR AND THE HELVETIANS

GAUL AND ITS PEOPLE	217
A NATION OUTGROWS ITS BOUNDARIES: The Irregular Verb <i>fiō</i> · Noun Clauses of Fact	218
LET US PASS	222
YOU SHALL NOT PASS	224
HELP FOR THE INVADED	225
AN ARMY TRAVELS ON ITS STOMACH	228
TWO BROTHERS: Dative of Purpose · Dative of Reference	230
AN OFFICER'S ERROR	233
BATTLE AND VICTORY	234
DEFEAT AND SURRENDER	236
REVIEW OF UNIT XIII	239

## UNIT XIV CAESAR VISITS BRITAIN

PREPARATION FOR AN INVASION	243
OPERATION CHANNEL	246
WINNING A BEACHHEAD	248
A TEMPORARY SETBACK	249
CAESAR PREPARES FOR ANYTHING	251
REVIEW OF UNIT XIV	253



## UNIT XV A TRAVELER'S REPORT

TWO WAYS OF LIFE—PRIESTHOOD AND KNIGHTHOOD . . . . .	255
THE GODS MUST BE APPEASED . . . . .	258
STRANGE GALLIC CUSTOMS . . . . .	259
THE GERMANS WERE DIFFERENT . . . . .	261
REVIEW OF UNIT XV . . . . .	264

## UNIT XVI AN INTREPID LEADER IN GAUL

THE FIRES OF REVOLT BLAZE UP . . . . .	265
HIGH HOPES PROVE VAIN . . . . .	267
REVIEW OF UNIT XVI . . . . .	270

## UNIT XVII THE LANGUAGE OF WESTERN THOUGHT

THE CREATION OF THE WORLD, <i>Genesis</i> I, 1-14 . . . . .	273
CONFESSIONS OF A SAINT, <i>St. Augustine</i> . . . . .	274
A HYMN OF PRAISE, <i>Bishop Nicetas</i> . . . . .	275
CIVIL LAW, <i>Justman</i> . . . . .	276
DAY AND NIGHT, <i>Bishop Isidore</i> . . . . .	278
PORTRAIT OF A KING, <i>Einhard</i> . . . . .	279
THE GREAT CHARTER . . . . .	280
SCIENTIFIC INVENTIONS TO COME, <i>Roger Bacon</i> . . . . .	281
RELIGION AND THE CLASSICS, <i>Erasmus</i> . . . . .	282
THE UNIVERSE IN MOTION, <i>Copernicus</i> . . . . .	284
CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD, <i>Harvey</i> . . . . .	285
PROOF OF MAN'S EXISTENCE, <i>Descartes</i> . . . . .	286
GOD, MAN, AND NATURE, <i>Spinoza</i> . . . . .	287
TIDES, <i>Newton</i> . . . . .	289
CAPITAL AND LABOR, <i>Pope Leo XIII</i> . . . . .	290
THE LANGUAGE OF FLOWERS . . . . .	292

## UNIT XVIII A COMEDY OF ERRORS

SCENES FROM <i>Plautus'</i> MENÆCHMI . . . . .	293
--	-----

## ROMAN LIFE AND LITERATURE

DIGGING UP THE PAST . . . . .	27
ETERNAL ROME . . . . .	61
THE ROMAN GOVERNMENT . . . . .	69
RELIGION OF THE ROMANS . . . . .	73
ROMAN HOUSES . . . . .	89
FURNISHINGS OF THE HOUSE . . . . .	105
ROMAN FOOD . . . . .	117
INDUSTRY . . . . .	131
THE FAR-REACHING EMPIRE . . . . .	143
SOLDIERS OF ROME . . . . .	216
ROMAN BRITAIN . . . . .	240
CROSSING THE CHANNEL . . . . .	241
ROMANS IN GAUL . . . . .	254
THE SPAN OF LATIN . . . . .	272

# LATIN AND ENGLISH

LATIN WORDS AND ENGLISH WORDS . . . . .	21
ENGLISH NOUNS AND LATIN NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION . . . . .	46
ENGLISH VERBS AND LATIN VERBS . . . . .	55
ENGLISH ADJECTIVES AND LATIN ADJECTIVES . . . . .	64
PREFIXES IN LATIN AND IN ENGLISH . . . . .	84
LATIN NOUNS AND ENGLISH NOUNS . . . . .	100
WORD FAMILIES . . . . .	124
ENGLISH ADJECTIVES FROM LATIN ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES . . . . .	148
ENGLISH NOUNS AND LATIN NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION . . . . .	158
CHANGES OF SPELLING IN LATIN COMPOUNDS . . . . .	180
LATIN AND ENGLISH NOUNS WITH SUFFIXES . . . . .	200
LATIN AND ENGLISH VERBS AND LATIN NOUNS MADE FROM VERBS . . . . .	238
LATIN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES . . . . .	252
LATIN WORDS WITH MANY ENGLISH DERIVATIVES . . . . .	263

# HELPS FOR THE STUDENT

SUMMARY OF FIRST- AND SECOND-DECLENSION NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES . . . .	44
THE ROMAN CALENDAR . . . . .	271
GRAMMAR FOR REFERENCE	
INFLECTIONS . . . . .	313
SYNTAX . . . . .	344
SUMMARY OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	368
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	369
PROPER NAMES . . . . .	414
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS . . . . .	429
GRAMMATICAL INDEX . . . . .	434

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS . . . . .	446
---------------------------	-----

# COLLEGE LATIN

# I *America and Other Lands*

---

## WHAT IS LATIN?

The purpose of this book is to teach you to read Latin. How did you learn English? By hearing it spoken, of course. That is the way anyone learns his first language. He uses the forms he hears, imitating speakers. But when you learn a language from a book, you have to understand its forms and usages. These can be learned easily and quickly by analysis and classification.

One important way in which Latin differs from English is in its inflections—that is, changes in the endings of words to show their use. In the reading on the facing page, we have this statement.

*America est pulchra, America is beautiful.*

We might have had also this one.

*Amō Americam, I love America.*

The -m that has been added to **America** in the second statement shows that the word is the object of an action, which may be either mental or physical.

When we read English, we do not look for endings; the great majority of words have exactly the same form most of the time. The meaning is usually determined by the order of words.

*Anna loves Julia. Julia loves Anna.*

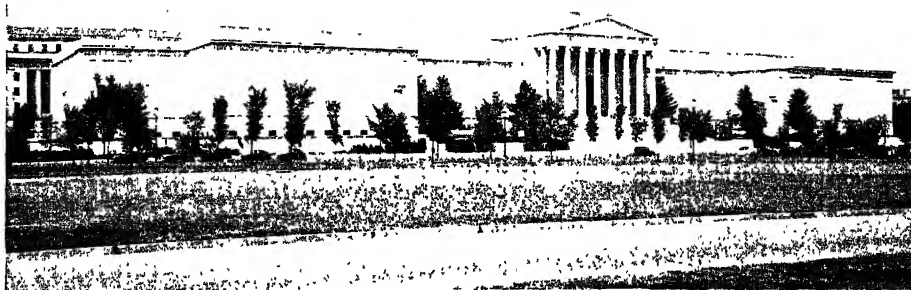
But when we read Latin, we have to notice the endings—the meaning signals—and understand what they tell us.

*Anna Jūliam amat. Anna amat Jūliam. Jūliam Anna amat.*

Regardless of the order of the words, the endings tell us that these statements have the same basic meaning; the change in word order alters only the emphasis.

This basic difference between Latin and English requires you to develop entirely new reading techniques. As you advance in Latin, you will have to use your eyes in ways to which you have not been accustomed. But Latin will not be difficult, for you will get the meaning of many words from their similarity to English, and the form of a Latin word will usually tell you its use.

Here is some Latin you may be able to read at sight:



*The National Gallery of Art in Washington, D.C., is similar in design to public buildings that stood in Rome two thousand years ago*

## YOUR LAND AND MY LAND

America est patria mea. America est patria tua. America est patria nostra.

Patria tua est terra pulchra. Patria mea est terra pulchra. Patria nostra est terra pulchra. America est pulchra.

Patria nostra est terra libera. America est terra libera. America est patria nostra.

America nōn est insula. Eurōpa nōn est insula. Britannia est insula, et Sardinia est insula.

Britannia est magna insula. Britannia nōn est patria nostra, sed Britannia est terra pulchra.

10

Sardinia est insula, sed Sardinia nōn est parva insula. Sardinia est magna insula. Sardinia est terra pulchra.

Italia est terra pulchra, sed Italia nōn est insula. Italia nōn est parva. Hispānia nōn est insula, sed Hispānia est terra pulchra. Hispānia nōn est patria tua.

15

Eurōpa nōn est patria nostra. Britannia nōn est patria mea. Sardinia nōn est patria mea, et Italia nōn est patria tua. America est patria nostra.

How many words did you have to guess the meaning of? What suggested the meaning of *et*, *libera*, *mea*, *nōn*, *nostra*, *parva*, *sed*, *tua*? How did you know the meaning of the others? You can see how a knowledge of English helps you understand Latin. More than half the words in the English language came from Latin; and most of them have meanings related to the Latin words they look like.

## BEAUTIFUL COUNTRIES

Britannia et Sardinia sunt insulae pulchrae. Saepe Britanniam et Sardiniam laudāmus quod insulae sunt pulchrae. Americam et Italiam quoque laudāmus, sed America et Italia nōn sunt insulae.

Americam amāmus quod America est patria nostra. Eurōpam quoque amāmus, sed Eurōpa nōn est patria nostra. Eurōpa multās et magnās silvās habet. America quoque multās et magnās silvās habet; silvae sunt pulchrae. Sardinia parvās silvās habet.

Sardiniam amāmus quod Sardinia est insula pulchra. Agricolae Sardiniam amant, sed Hispāniam quoque amant. Agricolae Hispāniam amant quod Hispānia magnās silvās nōn habet.

Agricolae silvās nōn amant sed agricolae terrās pulchrās amant.

### WORDS WITH CLUES

agri'cola (*agriculture*), farmer  
amā'mus (*amorous*), we love, like;  
a'mant, (they) love, like  
laudā'mus (*laudable*), we praise  
mul'tae (*multitude*), many  
sil'va (*silvan*), forest

### NEW WORDS

ha'bet, (he) has  
quod, because  
quo'que, also  
sae'pe, often  
sunt, (they) are

### PRONUNCIATION

Imitation of a person who pronounces new words accurately as they are met is a good beginning in learning the pronunciation of a second language. For additional help, see page 368.

### SENTENCES

A *sentence* is a group of words which expresses a thought. The word about which something is stated or asked is called the *subject*, and is usually a noun. The names of persons, places, or things, and of qualities or ideas are *nouns*.

An *adjective* is a word which describes (or modifies) a noun. A Latin adjective often follows its noun, but *magna*, *large*, and other adjectives denoting size or number usually stand before their nouns. Latin has no word for *a* (*an*) or *the*, but in translating, we supply these *articles* when needed.

## THE PREDICATE

What we say or ask about the subject is called the *predicate*. The word in the predicate which tells what the subject does or what is done to the subject is called the *verb*. A verb may also show existence, continuance in a place, or connection.

A noun in the predicate which is linked to the subject by a form of the verb meaning *to be* (*est*, etc.) is called a *predicate noun*. A predicate noun denotes the same thing as the subject.

*America est patria nostra, America is our country.*

A *predicate adjective* modifies (or describes) the subject of the sentence. The predicate adjective is linked to the subject by *est* or some other form of the verb *sum*.

*America est pulchra, America is beautiful.*

## TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

In the following sentence *Americam* denotes the thing which the subject, *agricola*, loves.

*Agricola Americam amat, The farmer loves America.*

A word denoting the person or thing directly affected by an act is called the *direct object*. In this lesson the direct objects end in *-am*.

A verb which has a direct object is *transitive*.

*Americam amāmus, We love America.*

If a verb does not have an object, it is *intransitive*.

*Ambulant, They walk.*

In this example the action is complete in itself; the verb has no object and is intransitive.

Some verbs are transitive or intransitive according to the way they are used. But such verbs as *be*, *appear*, *seem* cannot take an object and are therefore always intransitive.

Thus the forms of *sum* are intransitive. In the following sentence the verb *est* merely links the predicate noun, *insula*, to the subject, *Sicilia*.

*Sicilia est insula pulchra, Sicily is a beautiful island.*

## NUMBER

In Latin, as in English, different forms of nouns mean one person or thing, or more than one. *Īnsula* is in the *singular number*, and *īnsulae* is in the *plural number*.

The plural nouns used as subjects or predicate nouns in "Beautiful Countries" end in *-ae*. The direct objects in the plural end in *-ās*.

*Britannia et Sardinia sunt īnsulae, Britain and Sardinia are islands.*

*Agricolae casās amant, The farmers like the cottages.*

## ADJECTIVE ENDINGS

A Latin adjective has different endings, according to its use in the sentence. In "Beautiful Countries" adjectives modifying subjects or predicate nouns end in *-a* or *-ae*, while those modifying direct objects end in *-am* or *-ās*. Since a predicate adjective modifies the subject, predicate adjectives also end in *-a* or *-ae*.

*Patria nostra est terra pulchra, Our country is a beautiful land.*

*Īnsulae nostrae sunt terrae pulchrae, Our islands are beautiful lands.*

*Patriam nostram amāmus, We love our country.*

*Silvās pulchrās amāmus, We like beautiful forests.*

*Patria nostra est pulchra, Our country is beautiful.*

*Silvae nostrae sunt pulchrae, Our forests are beautiful.*

## TWO ADJECTIVES MODIFYING ONE NOUN

In Latin two adjectives modifying the same noun are sometimes connected by *et*, which can often be omitted in translation.

*America multās et magnās silvās habet, America has many large forests.*

## PHRASES

Any group of connected words not containing a subject and verb is called a *phrase*.

*Britannia et Sardinia, Britain and Sardinia*

*patria nostra, our country*

*multās et magnās īsulās, many large islands*



## A SAILOR'S LIFE

Vita nautae est periculōsa, sed vīta agricolae nōn est periculōsa. Nautae vītam periculōsam amant; agricolae vītam quiētam parvae insulae amant.

Corsica et Sardinia et Melita sunt insulae pulchrae. Corsica et Sardinia sunt magnae insulae; Melita est parva insula. Incolae insulārum pulchrārum sunt agricolae et nautae. Casae nautārum sunt parvae, sed casae agricolārum sunt magnae.

Vīta agricolae saepe est longa, sed agricola multās terrās nōn videt. Nautae multās terrās vident, sed interdum vīta nautae nōn est longa quod vīta nautae est periculōsa.

Saepe vīta quiēta est vīta bona; interdum vīta periculōsa quoque est bona. Poētae saepe periculōsam nautārum vītam laudant, sed quiētam agricolārum vītam amō.

Cornēlius est nauta; est incola Sardiniae. Cornēlius Sardiniam amat quod Sardinia est patria. Saepe Hispāniam, Britanniam, Ītaliā videt. Hispāniam et Britanniam laudat, sed Ītaliā nōn amat.

Cornēlius epistulās bonās scribit, quod multās terrās videt. Saepe epistulās videō. Epistulae nautae nōn sunt longae, sed sunt bonae. Epistulae Hispāniam et Britanniam laudant, sed Ītaliā nōn laudant.

Cornēlius vītam periculōsam amat quod nauta est. Epistulās nautae amō, sed vītam periculōsam nōn amō.

Vīta mea est quiēta, sed est vīta bona. Est vīta agricolae, et nōn est periculōsa.

### WORDS WITH CLUES

a'mō (amant), I love, like; a'mat, (he) loves, likes  
bo'na (bonus), good, excellent  
epis'tula (epistle), letter  
lau'dat (laudāmus), (he) praises;  
lau'dant, (they) praise  
lon'ga, long  
nau'ta (nautical), sailor  
periculō'sa (perilous), dangerous  
poē'ta, poet

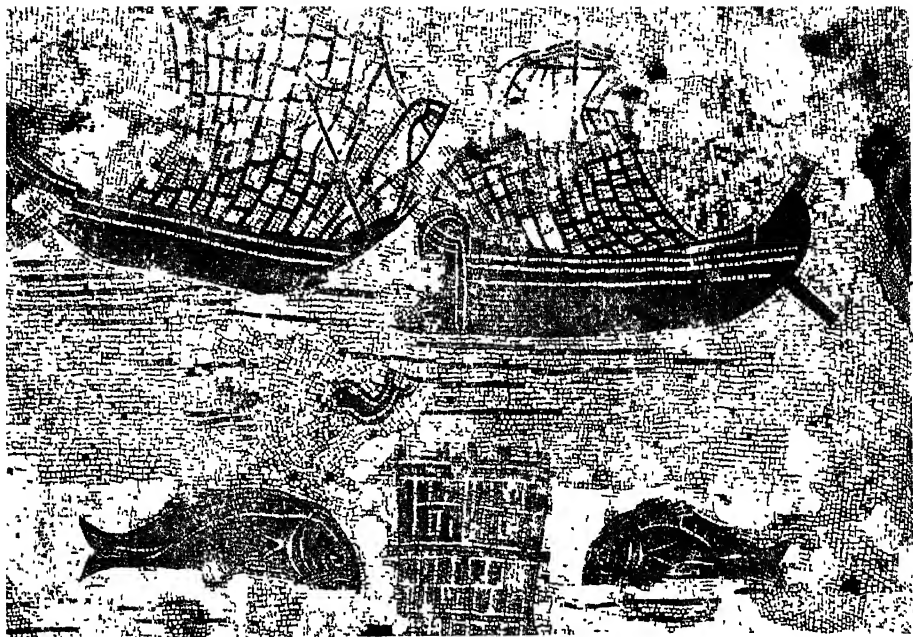
### WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont.

quiē'ta, quiet  
scri'bīt (script), (he) writes  
vi'deō (video), I see; vi'det, (he) sees; vi'dent, (they) see  
vī'ta (vital), life

### NEW WORDS

ca'sa, cottage, house  
in'cola, inhabitant  
inter'dum, sometimes

*With this carved ivory stylus a Roman wrote on a waxed tablet*



*These ancient ships decorated the floor of a building in Ostia*

#### NOUNS DENOTING POSSESSION

In writing English we often show possession by adding an apostrophe and *s* to a singular noun (*girl's*), and an apostrophe to a plural noun (*girls'*). In Latin the form of a word is changed to show possession, and its case is called the *genitive*.

The genitive may be translated either by the possessive case or by *of* and the noun.

*casa nautae, the sailor's cottage or the cottage of the sailor*

Latin nouns which end in *-a* in the nominative and *-am* in the accusative end in *-ae* in the genitive singular. The genitive plural ends in *-ārum*.

*Vita nautae est periculōsa, The sailor's life is dangerous.*

*Casae nautārum sunt parvae, The sailors' cottages are small.*

An adjective modifying a noun in the genitive is also in the genitive and is in the same number as the noun. In "A Sailor's Life" adjectives which modify singular nouns in the genitive end in *-ae*; those which modify plural nouns end in *-ārum*.

## CASE

In English some words have different forms to show how they are used in sentences.

A noun in English has the same form for the subject and for the direct object, but it has a different form to refer to a person as possessing something.

*The boy walks. I see the boy. I have the boy's book.*

These different forms and uses of words in sentences are called *cases* or *case uses*. The subject is in the *nominative case*, the direct object is in the *objective* (or *accusative*) *case*, and the word referring to the possessor is in the *possessive case*.

In Latin also, the subject is said to be in the *nominative case*, and the direct object is said to be in the *accusative case*. The possessive case in Latin is called the *genitive*.

The Latin endings for the nominative, genitive, and accusative of all nouns used thus far are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nominative:</i> -a	-ae
<i>Genitive:</i> -ae	-ārum
<i>Accusative:</i> -am	-ās

## OMISSION OF THE SUBJECT

Just as *amō* is used to mean *I love* or *I like*, without a separate word for *I*, so *amat*, which is translated *loves* when it has a noun subject, means *he* (or *she*) *loves* when there is no noun subject.

*Poēta parvam casam amat; magnās casās quoque amat, The poet likes the small house; he likes large houses, also.*

In the same way, we may translate *scribit* *he writes* or *she writes*, *videt*, *he sees* or *she sees*, and *est*, *he is* or *she is* or *it is*.

From the list at the left below, select the word or phrase that translates the word or words in each parenthesis.

bonae	multās terrās	1. (the long letter) laudāmus.
epistula longa	nauta	2. (a sailor) (many lands) videt.
epistulam longam	nautās	3. (a small island) vidēmus.
puellae	parva insula	4. (the girls) sunt (good).
multae epistulae	parvam insulam	

## AN EMBARRASSING MOMENT

*Cornēlius.* Cūr casam spectātis? Cūr nōn ambulātis?

*Lūcia.* Nōn ambulāmus quod puellam expectāmus.

*Lūcius.* Casam spectāmus quod est casa nautae. Puella est filia nautae. Cūr casam spectās?

5 *Cornēlius.* Casam spectō quod casa est pulchra. Casās pulchrās spectāre amō. Cūr filiam nautae expectātis?

*Lūcia.* Puellam expectāmus quod fābulās saepe nārrat. Fābulās nārrare amat. Puella fābulās bene nārrat quod est filia nautae. Nauta multās terrās videt et fābulās bonās nārrat.

10 *Lūcius.* Lūcia est filia mea. Fābulās bonās amāmus. Interdum fābulās nārrō, sed filia fābulās meās nōn amat. Fābulās nautārum amat.

*Cornēlius.* Nautae multās terrās vident, sed vīta nautārum est periculōsa. Interdum epistulās portant; multam pecūniam quo-  
15 que portant.

*Lūcius.* Multam pecūniam nōn portō. Poēta sum. Vīta mea est quiēta. Vitam periculōsam nautae nōn amō.

*Cornēlius.* Vitam periculōsam amō. Nauta sum. Casam meam spectātis.

20 *Lūcia.* Nauta es! Fīliam tuam expectāmus!

### WORDS WITH CLUES

am'bulō, -āre (*amble*), walk  
be'ne (*benefit*), well  
expec'tō, -āre, wait for, expect  
fā'bula (*fable*), story  
fī'lia (*filial*), daughter  
mul'ta (*multae*), much  
nār'rō, -āre (*narrate*), tell, relate  
pecū'nia (*pecuniary*), money

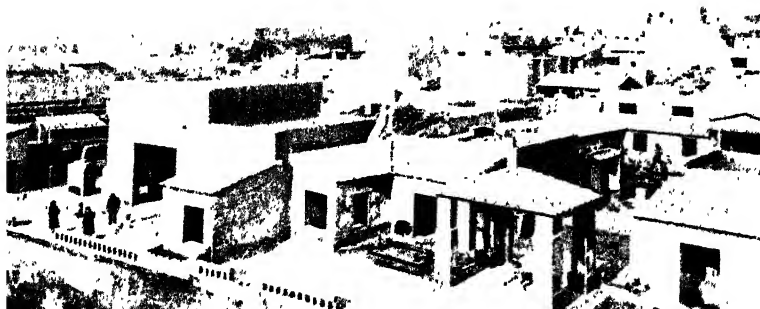
### WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont.

por'tō, -āre (*porter*), carry, bring  
spec'tō, -āre (*spectator*), look at, watch

### NEW WORDS

cūr, why  
puel'la, girl  
sum, I am

*Prosperous people once lived in this section of an ancient town on the seacoast of Italy*



## USE OF *do* IN NEGATIVE SENTENCES AND IN QUESTIONS

The Latin question *Cūr fābulās amās?* may be translated *Why do you like stories?* In the same way, *Multam pecūniam nōn portō* is translated *I do not carry much money.*

In such sentences there is no separate Latin word for *do* or *does*.

### PERSON AND NUMBER OF VERBS

A verb may be in the *first person*, the *second person*, or the *third person*.

<i>First Person:</i>	<i>ambulō, I walk</i>
<i>Second Person:</i>	<i>ambulās, you walk</i>
<i>Third Person:</i>	<i>ambulat, he walks</i>

The first person of a verb shows that the speaker is performing the action. The second person shows that the person spoken to is performing the action. The third person shows that a person or thing spoken of is performing the action.

A verb always agrees with its subject; that is, the person and number of the verb are always the same as the person and number of the subject.

*Poēta patriam amat, The poet loves his country.*

Here, the subject, *poēta*, is third person singular. The verb *amat*, since it agrees with the subject, is also third person singular.

In Latin, a verb has different forms to show person and number.

### THE FORMS OF *sum*

The verb *sum* changes in this way to show person and number.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>First Person:</i>	<i>sum, I am</i>	<i>su'mus, we are</i>
<i>Second Person:</i>	<i>es, you are</i>	<i>es'tis, you are</i>
<i>Third Person:</i>	<i>est, he, she, it is</i>	<i>sunt, they are</i>

The forms of a verb when arranged in regular order make a *conjugation*. When we recite these forms, we *conjugate* the verb.

### POSITION OF THE VERB

The Latin verb commonly stands at the end of the sentence. But forms of the verb meaning *to be* (*is, are, was, were, will be*, etc.) frequently come before the predicate noun or adjective.

*America est terra pulchra, America is a beautiful land.*

## THE INFINITIVE

You are familiar with such English verb forms as *to go*, *to ride*, *to carry*.

*I want to carry the package.*

Such a verb form is called an *infinitive*.

The Latin infinitive meaning *to carry* is *portāre*.

### CONJUGATION OF *portō*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
por'tō, I am carrying	portā'mus, we carry
por'tās, you carry, <i>etc.</i>	portā'tis, you carry
por'tat, he, she, it carries	por'tant, they carry

The *stem* of a verb is found by dropping the *-re* of the infinitive. The stem of *portō* is *portā-*. To this stem the person endings are added.

You will observe that the characteristic vowel of the stem, *-ā-*, disappears before the ending *-ō* and becomes short before *-t* and *-nt*.

The person endings are these.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>First Person:</i>	-ō or -m (I)	-mus (we)
<i>Second Person:</i>	-s (you)	-tis (you)
<i>Third Person:</i>	-t (he, she, it)	-nt (they)

### THE FIRST CONJUGATION

All verbs which have the infinitive ending in *-āre* are of the first conjugation and are conjugated like *portō*. The verbs *ambulō*, *amō*, *expectō*, *laudō*, *nārrō*, and *specō*, forms of which you have already met, are of the first conjugation.

### *You*, SINGULAR AND PLURAL

In English the word *you* may be either singular or plural.

Latin, however, has different forms for the singular and plural of the word meaning *you*, although the Latin word for *you* is not often used as the subject of a verb.

The Latin verb forms for the second person are also different in the singular and plural.

*Singular:* Es agricola.

*Plural:* Estis agricolae.

## LATIN WORDS AND ENGLISH WORDS

Some Latin words give us English words identical in form and similar in meaning.

animal          census          circus          decorum          Sardinia          victor

Other Latin words give English words related in meaning but slightly different in form.

expecto, *expect*          patientia, *patience*          poeta, *poet*

Sometimes the English word which resembles the Latin suggests the best translation: *defendo*, *defend*. In other cases, it merely gives a clue: *erro*, *wander*; *err*, "wander from the right, do wrong."

Some English words are like Latin words without the ending.

angelus, *angel*          laboro, *labor*          matrona, *matron*          signum, *sign*  
benigna, *benign*          longa, *long*          moveo, *move*          vestis, *vest*

Give the English word for each of these Latin words.

removeo          tumultus          valida

Some Latin words ending in -a, -ium, -um, -us, or -o have related English words ending in -e.

causa, *cause*          fatum, *fate*          senatus, *senate*  
sacrificium, *sacrifice*          captivus, *captive*          invito, *invite*

In addition to a change in ending, some English words show the loss of an internal -u- which appears in Latin: *fabula*, *fable*.

Some Latin words ending in -ia give English words in -y. Others ending in -cia and -tia give English words in -ce.

injuria, *injury*          provincia, *province*          abundantia, *abundance*

What English word corresponds to each of the following Latin words?

alumna	clavicula	excito	ignorantia	rosa
ambulo	consul	gloria	Italia	timida
caverna	Europa	gratia	laudo	villa

*The Romans used silver spoons*



## WE SAVE THE JEWELS

Corsica est magna insula; est Sardiniae propinqua. Vita incolārum Sardiniae est periculōsa quod pīrātae Corsicae incolās Sardiniae saepe superant et abdūcunt (*carry off*). Interdum agricolās et nautās necant. Casās agricolārum et nautārum saepe occupant.

5 Pecūnia et gemmae incolārum pīrātīs grātae sunt.

Cornēlius est incola Sardiniae; est nauta. Galba est filius (*his son*); Anna est filia. Jūlius sum; agricola sum.

Hodiē pīrātae casās nostrās spectant, sed pīrātās nōn vidēmus quod labōrāmus. Fēminae et puellae quoque labōrant; pīrātās nōn  
10 vident. Pīrātae Galbam abducunt; Galba clāmat. Anna pīrātās videt; fēminīs Galbam et pīrātās mōnstrat. Nunc clāmant fēminae et puellae.

Cornēlius pīrātās videt et nautās et agricolās vocat. Bene pugnāmus. Pīrātās superāmus et necāmus; insulam pīrātārum occupāmus.  
15 Ibi Galbam nōn vidēmus, sed parva pīrātae filia adest (*is there*) et mihi Galbam mōnstrat. Galbam et parvam puellam quoque servāmus. Parva puella laeta est quod pīrātae Galbam nōn necant. Anna est laeta quod parvam puellam incolīs Corsicae damus.

Nunc pīrātae agricolās et nautās Sardiniae nōn abdūcunt; nunc  
20 pecūniam et gemmās incolārum insulae nostrae nōn occupant.

### WORDS WITH CLUES

clā'mō, -āre (*clamor*), shout, scream

fē'mina (*feminine*), woman

gem'ma, gem, jewel

grā'ta (*gratify*), pleasing

mōn'strō, -āre (*demonstrate*), point out, show

oc'cupō, -āre, occupy, seize, take possession of

propin'qua (*propinquity*), near (to)

pug'nō, -āre (*pugnacious*), fight

ser'vō, -āre (*preserve*), save

su'perō, -āre ([*in*] *superable*), overcome, conquer

### WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont.

vidē'mus (*videt*), we see

vo'cō, -āre (*vocal*), call, summon

### NEW WORDS

dō, dare, give

ho'diē, today

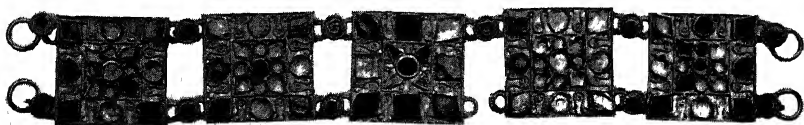
i'bi, there, in that place

lae'ta, happy, glad

mi'hi, me, to me (*as ind. obj.*)

ne'cō, -āre, kill, slay

nunc, now



*A Roman bracelet rich with jewels*



## INDIRECT OBJECT

In the following sentence, *poëtae* is *indirect object* because it denotes the person to whom something is shown.

*Epistulam poëtae mōnstrō, I show the letter to the poet.*

An indirect object may be used with a verb meaning *give* or *say*.

## DATIVE CASE

A Latin noun used as an indirect object is in the *dative case*. Nouns ending in *-a* have *-ae* in the dative singular. Notice that this ending is the same as that of the genitive singular and the nominative plural. These nouns end in *-is* in the dative plural.

*Pirāta nautae epistulam dat, The pirate gives the sailor a letter.*

*Galba incolis epistulam mōnstrat, Galba shows the inhabitants the letter.*

## ADJECTIVES MODIFYING NOUNS IN THE DATIVE

An adjective modifying a noun in the dative case is also in the dative, and is in the same number as its noun. In this lesson the adjectives which modify singular nouns in the dative end in *-ae*; those which modify plural nouns in the dative end in *-is*.

## ADJECTIVES WITH A DEPENDENT DATIVE

In the following sentence *Sardiniae* is in the dative case because it depends on the adjective *propinqua*.

*Corsica est Sardiniae propinqua, Corsica is near Sardinia.*

With adjectives meaning *kind, friendly, dear, pleasing, hostile, near*, and some others the dative is often used as the equivalent of an English phrase with *to*. This use is called the *dependent dative*.

## POSITION OF GENITIVE AND DATIVE

The English noun in the possessive case stands before the word on which it depends, but in Latin the genitive commonly follows.

*the poet's house, casa poëtae*

In Latin the dependent dative commonly precedes the word on which it depends.

*pleasing to the women, fēminis grāta*

The indirect object may either precede or follow the direct object.

## SICILY

Sicilia est magna insula Eurōpae. In Siciliā sunt multae casae et villae. Sunt multae silvae quoque, sed silvae Siciliae nōn sunt magnae.

Incolae ōrae maritimae sunt nautae, sed casae agricolārū ōrae maritimae propinquae nōn sunt.

Aetna est in insulā Siciliā. Incolae Siciliae Aetnam timent. Cūr incolae insulae Aetnam timent? Incolae Aetnam timent quod flammās Aetnae saepe vident.

Sicilia Ītaliae propinqua est. Ex Siciliā Ītaliā vidēmus. Incolae Ītaliae quoque Siciliam vident. Flammās Aetnae vident. Aqua Siciliam ab Ītaliā sēparat, sed aqua est angusta.

Messāna est in ōrā maritimā Siciliae, et incolae Messānae ōram maritimā Ītaliae vident. Casās et villās Ītaliae vident. Incolae Ītaliae insulam Siciliam quoque vident.

Sicilia est insula amoena. Incolae Aetnam timent, sed Siciliam amant, quod est insula amoena.

### WORDS WITH CLUES

ā, ab (*absent*), *prep. with abl.*, from  
a'qua (*aquatic*), water  
ē, ex (*exit*), *prep. with abl.*, from,  
out of  
flam'ma, flame, fire  
in, *prep. with abl.*, in, on  
sē'parō, -āre, separate  
ti'ment (*timid*), (they) fear

### WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont.

vīl'la (*villa*), farmhouse, country house

### NEW WORDS

amoe'na, pleasant  
angus'ta, narrow  
ō'ra, shore; ō'ra mari'tima (*mari-time*), seacoast, seashore

## APPPOSITION

A noun that is set beside another noun to explain its meaning by indicating more definitely who or what is meant is in *apposition* with the noun it explains.

Americam, patriam nostram, amāmus, We love America, our native land.

In this sentence, *patriam* is in *apposition* with *Americam*. A noun in apposition is called an *appositive*. An appositive agrees with its noun; i.e., it is in the same case and number as the noun it explains. Since *Americam* is accusative, *patriam* is also accusative.

In English we often use *of* in translating an appositive that is a place name.

Aetna est in insulā Siciliā, *Aetna is on the island of Sicily.*

### PREPOSITIONS

Words like *from* and *in* are called prepositions. A preposition is usually found with a noun: in insulā. The noun insulā is the object of the preposition in. Together, in and insulā form a *prepositional phrase*.

A preposition shows the relation between its object and some other word. In the sentence In Siciliā sunt multae casae, In shows the relation between its object Siciliā and the verb sunt.

### THE PREPOSITIONS *a, ab*, AND *e, ex*

Two prepositions meaning *from* appear in "Sicily"; *ā* or *ab* and *ē* or *ex*. Both have two forms. Before a vowel or *h*, *ab* and *ex* are used; before most consonants, *ā* and *ē* are generally used.

While both prepositions may be translated by *from*, *ā* or *ab* means *away from*, while *ē* or *ex* means *from* in the sense of *out of*.

Nauta ā casā ambulat, *The sailor is walking away from the house.*  
Agricola pecūniam ex casā portat, *The farmer is carrying the money out of the house.*

### ABLATIVE CASE

Latin prepositions meaning *from* or *in* are followed by the ablative case. In the nouns used thus far, the ablative ends in *-ā* in the singular and in *-īs* in the plural.

An adjective modifying a noun in the ablative case is also in the ablative. A Latin adjective is always in the same case and number as its noun.

### THE EXPLETIVE *there*

In Latin, *ibi* means *there*, in the sense of a place that can be pointed out: *ibi labōrō*. In English, *there* is also used as an *expletive*; that is, to introduce a statement: *There are forests in Sicily*. Latin does not use any word for the expletive *there*. *There are forests in Sicily* is expressed by *Sunt silvae in Siciliā*. In such sentences the Latin verb usually stands before the subject and when spoken, is stressed.

# REVIEW OF UNIT I

---

I. In the following sentences change each singular noun to plural and make other necessary changes.

1. Bona puella casam albam amat.
2. Silvam pulchram amō.
3. Insula est parva.

II. In the first two columns below, are some Latin person endings. Find in the last two columns the English pronoun corresponding to each one.

1. -ō or -m	4. -mus	(a) you ( <i>pl.</i> )	(d) you ( <i>sing.</i> )
2. -s	5. -tis	(b) he	(e) they
3. -t	6. -nt	(c) we	(f) I

III. Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

1. Casae (agricolam, agricolārum, agricolās) sunt pulchrae
2. Puella (casārum, casae, casam) mōnstrat.
3. (Fēmina, Fēminam, Fēminae) interdum ambulat.
4. Pirātae (incola, incolās, incolae) spectant.
5. (Gemmās, Gemma, Gemmae) est pulchra.
6. Fēminae et (puellam, puellās, puellae) sunt laetae.

IV. Tell which word does not belong in each list and give the reason.

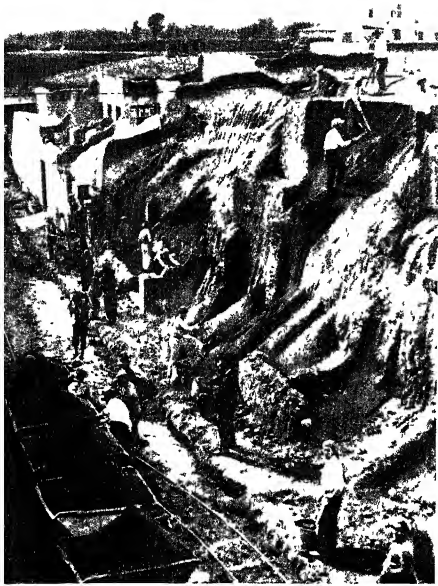
*Sample:* **fīlia, nauta, habet, terra, patria**

*Answer:* **Habet**, because it is a verb and all the others are nouns.

1. agricola, casa, epistula, est, insula
2. amat, habet, laudāmus, nōn, sunt
3. alba, bona, fīlia, libera, mea
4. longa, magna, nostra, nauta, pulchra
5. nauta, patria, quod, silva, terra

V. Give one or more English words related to each Latin word.

aqua	laboro	multa	occupo	specto
femina	longa	narro	porto	terra
insula	magna	nauta	silva	voco



*excavation in Herculaneum All the dirt in the baskets and cars will be sifted and every scrap of metal and crockery saved and examined*

## DIGGING UP THE PAST

*A statue of Mercury recently dug up in England*



*The pieces of a Roman mosaic, exposed by the bombing of an English city in World War II, are being put together in the original design*



## II Stories of Gods and Men

### LATONA AND THE FROGS

Incolae Graeciae saepe deās vident, quod deae saepe in silvīs Graeciae ambulant. Interdum Lātōna in silvīs ambulat. Fēminae Graeciae Lātōnam, deam pulchram, amant, quod Lātōna est fēminīs benigna.

- 5 Nunc Lātōna in silvā ambulat. Cum Lātōnā sunt infantēs (*infants*) Diāna et Apollō.

Agricolae Lātōnam et infantēs spectant; deam timent. Dea agricolās videt; itaque agricolās vocat. Aquam ōrat. Lātōna aquam nōn dēsīderat, sed infantēs aquam dēsīderant.

- 10 Est aqua in lacūnā (*pond*), sed agricolae Lātōnae aquam dare nōn dēsīderant. Itaque in lacūnā ambulant; nunc aqua nōn est bona. Lātōna est irāta quod agricolae sunt in aquā.

Dea irāta clāmat.

- Nunc agricolae sunt rānae. Nunc agricolae in casīs nōn habitant;  
15 in lacūnā habitant, quod sunt rānae.

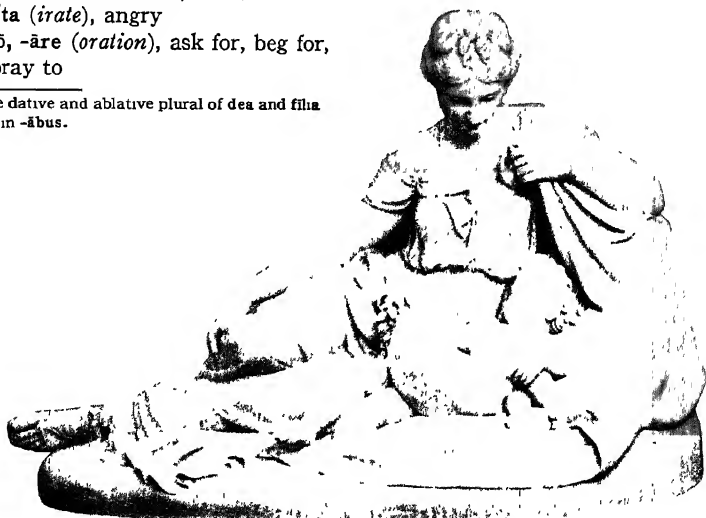
#### WORDS WITH CLUES

benig'na (*benign*), kind  
de'a', -ae (*deity*), goddess  
dēsī'derō, -āre (*desire*), want, desire  
ha'bitō, -āre (*inhabit*), live, dwell  
irā'ta (*irate*), angry  
ō'rō, -āre (*oration*), ask for, beg for,  
pray to

<sup>1</sup>The dative and ablative plural of *dea* and *filia* end in -abus.

#### NEW WORDS

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with  
i'taque, and so, therefore  
rā'na, -ae, frog



A modern statue of Latona with Apollo and Diana

## FIRST DECLENSION

A list of the cases and numbers of a noun or adjective, given in order, is called a *declension*. When you give all the forms of a noun or adjective, you decline it.

Nouns which have the nominative ending in *-a* and the genitive in *-ae* belong to the *first declension*. All first-declension nouns form their cases with the same endings as *silva*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nominative:</i>	<i>sil'va</i>	<i>sil'vae</i>
<i>Genitive:</i>	<i>sil'vae</i>	<i>silvā'rum</i>
<i>Dative:</i>	<i>sil'vae</i>	<i>sil'vis</i>
<i>Accusative:</i>	<i>sil'vam</i>	<i>sil'vās</i>
<i>Ablative:</i>	<i>sil'vā</i>	<i>sil'vis</i>

The part of a noun to which the endings are added is called the *base*. The base may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. Thus, the base of *silva* (found from the genitive *silvae*) is *silv-*.

## CLAUSES

A part of a sentence containing a subject and predicate is called a *clause*. Clauses are of two kinds: *independent* and *dependent*. An independent clause expresses a complete thought. A dependent clause is meaningless without reference to a word in the independent clause.

*Lātōna est irāta quod agricolae sunt in aquā, Lalona is angry because the farmers are in the water.*

*Lātōna est irāta* is the independent clause. The dependent clause is *quod agricolae sunt in aquā*; it depends on *irāta* for its full meaning.

## CONJUNCTIONS

As you know, the words *et*, *and*, and *sed*, *but*, are used to join words. Such words are called *conjunctions*.

*Dīana et Apollō aquam dēsīderant, sed nunc aqua nōn est bona, quod agricolae sunt in lacūnā, Diana and Apollo want water, but the water is not good now, because the farmers are in the pond.*

Conjunctions also join phrases and clauses. Here, *et* connects the two subjects, while *sed* and *quod* join the clauses.

## MAIL FROM HOME

*Cornēlia.* Cūr hīc in jānuā casae amitae meae stās?

*Fulvia.* In jānuā casae stō, quod ē jānuā ōram maritimam videō.

Mox nautae epistulās ex prōvinciīs iterum portābunt.

*Cornēlia.* In prōvinciā quoque habitō, sed nautae mihi epistulās  
5 nōn dabunt.

*Fulvia.* Ubi habitās?

*Cornēlia.* In insulā Siciliā habitō, et casa mea est in ōrā maritimā.

Cum in Siciliā sum, ex fenestris casae nostrae aquam videō. Saepe  
in ōrā maritimā vesperī ambulō. Interdum noctū ibi ambulō et  
10 lūnam clāram spectō. Ubi est casa tua?

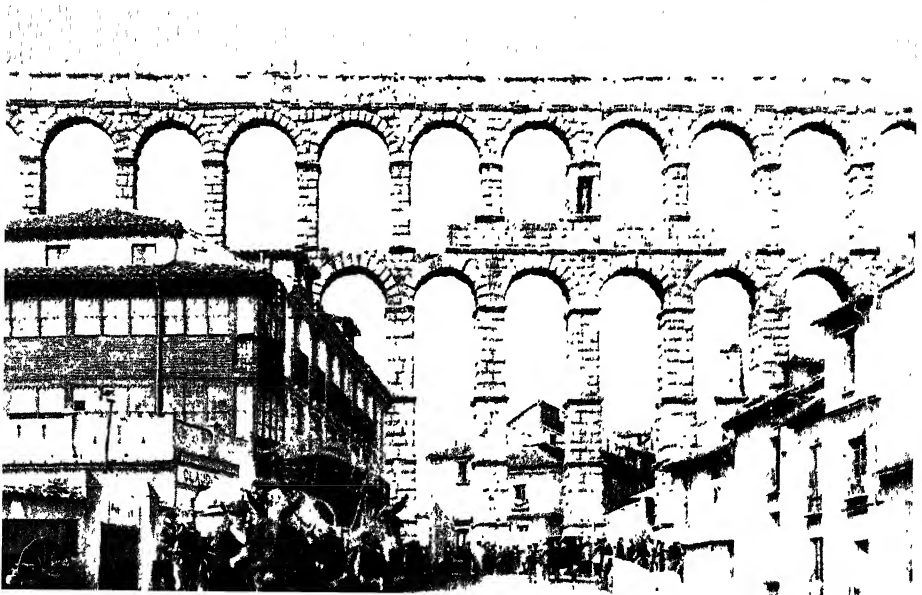
*Fulvia.* Casa mea est in Hispāniā. Mox erō in Hispāniā. Hispānia  
nōn est insula. Casa nostra nōn est ōrae maritimae propinqua; est  
silvis propinqua. Ē jānuā casae magnās silvās vidēmus, sed aquam  
nōn vidēmus. Hīc esse amō, sed quoque in Hispāniā esse amō.

15 *Cornēlia.* Amita mea Hispāniam quoque amat; mox erimus ibi in  
casā nostrā.

*Fulvia.* Spectā, spectā! Nautam videō; celeriter ambulat. Mox  
mihi epistulam dabit.

Puellae clāmant. Nōn puellis, sed amitae nauta epistulam dat.

*For twenty centuries this Roman aqueduct carried water to Segovia, Spain*





cele'riter (*accelerate*), quickly, fast  
 clā'ra (*clarify*), bright, clear; famous  
 i'terum (*reiterate*), again, a second  
 time  
 lū'na, -ae (*lunar*), moon  
 noc'tū (*nocturnal*), at night  
 u'bi (*ubiquitous*), where, when  
 ves'perī (*vesper*), in the evening

a'mita, -ae, aunt  
 cum, conj., when  
 fenes'tra, -ae, window  
 hīc, here  
 jā'nua, -ae, door  
 mox, soon  
 stō, stā're, stand

### INDICATIVE MOOD

In Latin, as in English, the way in which a verb is used determines its *mood*. A verb that states a fact is in the *indicative mood*. A verb used in a question which requires a statement of fact for an answer is also in the *indicative*.

Aquam portō, *I am carrying water.*

Cūr aquam portās? *Why are you carrying water?*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD

A verb used to express a command is in the *imperative mood*.

Spectā! *Look!* Vocāte puellās, *Call the girls.*

The imperative of portō has two forms.

*Singular:* portā, carry (*said to one person*)

*Plural:* portāte, carry (*said to more than one*)

The singular imperative is like the present stem of the verb; the plural is made up of the present stem and *-te*.

nārrā, nārrāte

laudā, laudāte

The imperative forms of dō are dā, date. How do they differ from the imperative forms of other verbs?

### VOCATIVE CASE

In addition to the cases which have been given so far, there is another case, called the *vocative*, which is used in addressing a person. In most Latin nouns the vocative has the same form as the nominative.

Noctū, Anna, lūnam vidēmus, *At night, Anna, we see the moon.*

Vocāte agricolās, puellae, *Girls, call the farmers.*

In a Latin sentence the vocative is usually preceded by **one** or more words.

## TENSE OF VERBS

The forms of a verb which show time are called *tenses*. There are six tenses in Latin: *present*, *past*, *future*, *present perfect*, *past perfect*, and *future perfect*. They may be translated thus:

<i>Present:</i>	I walk	<i>Present Perfect:</i>	I have walked
<i>Past:</i>	I walked	<i>Past Perfect:</i>	I had walked
<i>Future:</i>	I shall walk	<i>Future Perfect:</i>	I shall have walked

### PRESENT TENSE

All the Latin verbs you have had up to this time are in the *present tense*; that is, each one shows that an act is taking place in the present time.

Epistulam portās, *You are carrying the letter.*

The stem *portā-*, which is used to form the present tense of *portō*, is called the *present stem*.

### FUTURE TENSE

In the following sentence *shall go* indicates an act to be done in the future.

*I shall go tomorrow.*

So we say that *shall go* is in the *future tense*. In English *shall* and *will* are the signs of the future tense.

*I shall, or will, praise.*

*You will praise.*

In Latin verbs of the first conjugation the tense sign of the future appears as *-b-* in the first person singular, *-bu-* in the third person plural, and *-bi-* in the other forms.

### FUTURE OF *portō*

The verb *portō* is conjugated as follows in the future tense:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
portā' <i>bō</i> , I shall carry	portā' <i>bimus</i> , we shall carry
portā' <i>bis</i> , you will carry	portā' <i>bitis</i> , you will carry
portā' <i>bit</i> , he, she, it will carry	portā' <i>bunt</i> , they will carry

## STEM OF THE FUTURE

The *future tense*, like the present, is formed on the present stem of the verb, which is, as you know, found by dropping the *-re* of the infinitive.

Present = present stem + person endings

Future = present stem + *-bi-* (*-b-*, *-bu-*) + person endings

The tenses of the verb which are formed on the present stem are said to belong to the *present system*.

## FUTURE OF *sum*

The English verb *to be* has such different forms as *be*, *am*, *is*; and so we call it an *irregular verb*. In the same way the Latin verb *sum* is irregular. In the present tense, as you know, it has such different forms as *sum*, *es*, and *sunt*.

*Sum* is irregular in the future, too. It does not have the tense signs you have seen in the future of regular verbs. The verb *sum* is conjugated as follows in the future tense:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
e'rō, I shall (will) be	e'rimus, we shall (will) be
e'ris, you will be	e'ritis, you will be
e'rit, he, she, it will be	e'runt, they will be

The infinitive of *sum* is *esse*, *to be*.

## FUTURE OF *dō*

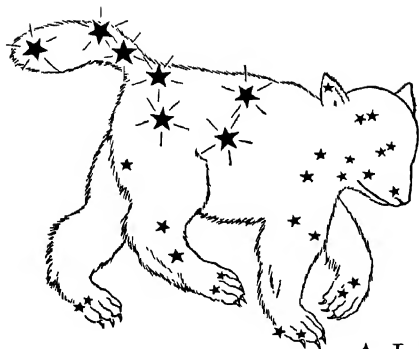
As you know, the stem vowel, *-a-*, is short in the present of *dō* (except the second person singular, *dās*). In all forms of the future, the stem vowel is also short.

## THE CONJUNCTION *cum*

You have already met the conjunctions *et* and *sed*. In "Mail from Home" you meet the Latin conjunction *cum*, meaning *when*. Do not confuse this word with the preposition *cum*, which you have already learned.

*Preposition:* Cum puellis ambulābō, *I shall walk with the girls.*

*Conjunction:* Saepe ambulant cum lūna est clāra. *They often walk when the moon is bright.*



If you can locate the Big Dipper  
on a starry night, you can easily recognize  
Ursa Major, the great bear

## A LADY OR A BEAR?

Cornēlia, filia agricolae, in parvā casā habitat. Casa est silvae propinqua. Cornēlia in silvā saepe ambulat.

Sed ōlim Cornēlia in magnā et obscurā silvā ē viā errāvit. Subitō magnam ursam vidit. Ursa stetit et Cornēliam expectāvit. Ursa

- 5 Cornēliam spectāvit; Cornēlia ursam spectāvit.

Territa Cornēlia clāmāre dēsiderāvit, sed nōn clāmāvit. Viam nōn vidit, sed celeriter ambulāre temptāvit. Ursa quoque celeriter ambulāvit! Cornēlia lēniter ambulāvit. Ursa quoque lēniter ambulāvit! Dēnique ursae pede (*with her paw*) Cornēliae viam mōnstrāvit.

- 10 Subitō Cornēlia casam vidit. Laeta puella properāvit et mox agricolae dē ursā benignā nārrāvit.

Agricola dixit, "Ursa fuit Callistō. Ōlim Callistō fuit fēmina pulchra; nunc est ursae pulchra. Saepe agricolae ursam necāre temptāvērunt, sed ursae semper effūgit (*has escaped*)."

- 15 Cornēlia dixit, "Sum laeta quod agricolae ursam nōn necāvērunt. Ursa benigna mē jūvit; mihi viam mōnstrāvit. Itaque erō ursae benigna; ursae cibum (*food*) dabō."

Sed Cornēlia ursae benignae cibum nōn dedit quod ursam iterum nōn vidit.

### WORDS WITH CLUES

dī'xit (*diction*), said  
mē, *acc. sing.*, me  
obscurā'ra (*obscure*), dim, dark,  
obscure  
temp'tō, -āre, -āvi (*attempt*), try,  
attempt  
ter'rita (*terrified*), frightened  
ur'sa, -ae (*Ursa Major*), bear  
vi'a, -ae (*via*), street, road, way  
vi'dit (*video*), saw, did see

### NEW WORDS

dē, *prep. with abl.*, about, concerning  
dē'nique, finally, at last  
e'rat, was  
ju'vō, -āre, jū'vī, help  
lē'niter, slowly  
ō'lim, some day, sometimes; once  
upon a time, formerly  
pro'perō, -āre, -āvi, hasten, hurry  
sem'per, always  
su'bitō, suddenly

## PERFECT TENSE

You are familiar with the English present perfect tense, which indicates action that took place just before the present time.

*I have walked a mile. He has come.*

The Latin tense which corresponds to our present perfect is the *perfect*. In the following sentence, *laudāvit* is translated as representing action that took place just before the present time.

*Agricola puellam laudāvit, The farmer has praised the girl.*

The Latin perfect is sometimes used where English uses a simple past tense.

*Agricola puellam laudāvit, The farmer praised the girl.*

In this instance the action is represented as happening at any time in the past, and as being a single past act, not continuous. The meaning of the whole sentence or paragraph will help you decide whether to translate a Latin perfect by an English present perfect or by a simple past tense.

## STEM OF THE PERFECT

The present and the future tenses belong to the present system; that is, they use the present stem.

The perfect tense belongs to the *perfect system* and has a different stem, called the *perfect stem*. The perfect stem is found by dropping the *-ī* from the first person singular of the perfect.

*Perfect: portāvī*

*Perfect Stem: portāv-*

## PERSON ENDINGS

The person endings for the perfect are different from those you have seen with the other tenses. They are used only for this one tense.

### SINGULAR

*First Person: -ī (I)*

*Second Person: -istī (you)*

*Third Person: -it (he, she, it)*

### PLURAL

*-imus (we)*

*-istis (you)*

*-ērunt (they)*

To conjugate a verb in the perfect tense you add the perfect endings to the perfect stem.

## PERFECT OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

The verb *portō* is conjugated as follows in the perfect tense:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>portā'vī</i> , I carried, I have carried	<i>portā'vimus</i> , we carried, we have carried
<i>portāvis'tī</i> , you carried, you have carried	<i>portāvis'tis</i> , you carried, you have carried
<i>portā'vit</i> , he carried, he has carried	<i>portāvē'runt</i> , they carried, they have carried

Most first-conjugation verbs have a perfect stem like *portō*, but a few verbs of this conjugation do not. Some of these are listed below.

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE
<i>dō</i>	<i>dare</i>	<i>dedi</i>
<i>stō</i>	<i>stāre</i>	<i>steti</i>
<i>juvō</i>	<i>juvāre</i>	<i>jūvī</i>

## PERFECT OF *sum*

The verb *sum* is conjugated in the perfect: *fui, fuisti, fuit, fuimus, fuistis, fuērunt*. This tense of *sum* is not often used.

If the following paragraph were in Latin, which of the verbs would be imperfect and which perfect?

As I was walking down the street with my mother, I saw a friend who was hurrying home. People were coming toward us, but no one spoke to us. Then we saw Father. He was walking very fast.

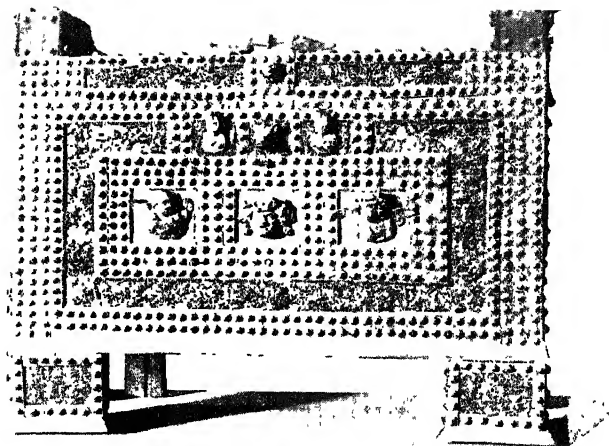
Complete each sentence (1) with a form of the perfect indicative of *temptō*, (2) with a form of the future indicative of *temptō*.

1. *Fābulam nārrāre* — (*I*).
2. *Pirātam mōnstrāre* — (*you, sing.*).
3. *Agricola ursam necāre* —.
4. *Bene labōrāre* — (*we*).
5. *Gemmās portāre* — (*you, pl.*).
6. *Nautae fēminās servāre* —.

Change each verb in the six sentences below, (1) to future, (2) to perfect; (3) translate each sentence you make.

1. *Sagittās portāmus*.
2. *Amitae tuae epistulam dās*.
3. *Puellae in silvā errant*.
4. *Agricola sum*.
5. *In silvā errātis*.
6. *Fulvia rānās spectat*.

This Roman arca  
is made of wood  
covered with bronze



## BURIED TREASURE

Lūcrētia in Siciliā habitābat. Erat filia nautae et in casā albā habitābat. Casa erat ōrae maritimae propinqua. Noctū Lūcrētia saepe in ōrā maritimā stābat et nautam expectābat.

Sed ōlim noctū quattuor pīrātās in ōrā vidit. Pīrātae magnam arcam portābant. Arca erat longa et angusta. Lūcrētia territa pīrātās diū spectābat, sed nōn clāmāvit. Pīrātae terram celeriter effōdērunt (*dug up*) et arcam cēlāvērunt. Tum ab ōrā maritimā properāvērunt.

Mox Lūcrētia nautam vidit; nautae dē quattuor pīrātīs et dē arcā novā nārrāvit.

Nauta filiam laudāvit et dixit, "Incolae insulae nostrae multam pecūniam habent; interdum pecūniam in magnīs arcīs cēlant. Pīrātae saepe incolās Siciliae necant, quod gemmās et pecūniam dēsiderant. Arcam incolīs insulae dabō."

Tum nauta et puella arcam longam et angustam invēnērunt (*found*). In arcā erant gemmae et urnae et pecūnia.

15

Nauta incolīs insulae arcam mōnstrāvit. Incolae nautam et filiam laudāvērunt et nautae multam pecūniam dedērunt. Postea incolae Siciliae pīrātās expectāvērunt et necāvērunt.

### WORDS WITH CLUES

al'ba (*albumen*), white  
habent (*habet*), (they) have  
no'va (*novelty*), strange, new  
post'eā (*postgraduate*), afterwards,  
later  
quat'tuor, *not declined* (*quarter*), four

### NEW WORDS

ar'ca, -ae, box, chest  
cē'lō, -āre, -āvī, conceal, hide  
di'ū, long, for a long time  
tum, then



*Beside this famous temple in Sicily shepherds now pasture their flocks*

#### IMPERFECT TENSE

You are familiar with the Latin perfect tense, which represents an act as happening at any time in the past, and as being a single past act, not continuous.

*Nauta Siciliam mōnstrāvīt, The sailor pointed out Sicily.*

There is also another Latin tense that expresses past time: the imperfect. The imperfect tense represents an act as happening in the past time and as going on, or continuing, in the past.

*Nauta arcam cēlābat, The sailor was hiding the chest.*

In English we sometimes use the simple past tense of a verb to represent an act or situation as continuing. Here also the Latin uses the imperfect.

*Agricola filiam amābat, The farmer loved his daughter.*

You will often find the imperfect and the perfect tenses used in the same sentence or in successive sentences. Here the perfect tells what happened, and the imperfect describes or tells something about the circumstances connected with the act.

*Agricolae pirātās necāvērunt, quod pirātae insulās occupābant,  
The farmers killed the pirates, because the pirates were seizing the islands.*



## TENSE SIGN OF THE IMPERFECT

The syllable *-bā-*, which is seen in all forms of the imperfect, is called the tense sign of the imperfect. The forms all have *-bā-* before the person endings. Notice that in the conjugation of *portō* the *-a-* becomes short before *-m*, *-t*, and *-nt*.

## PERSON ENDINGS

The person endings for the imperfect are the same as those for the present, except that *-m* instead of *-ō* is used for the first person singular, just as it is in the present of *sum*.

## IMPERFECT OF *portō*

The verb *portō* is conjugated as follows in the imperfect:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>portā'bam</i> , I was carrying, I carried	<i>portābā'mus</i> , we were carrying, we carried
<i>portā'bās</i> , you were carrying, you carried	<i>portābā'tis</i> , you were carrying, you carried
<i>portā'bat</i> , he was carrying, he carried	<i>portā'bant</i> , they were carrying, they carried

## PRESENT SYSTEM

The imperfect tense, like the present and future, is formed on the present stem of the verb, which is found by dropping the *-re* of the infinitive. These three tenses make up the *present system*.

As you have seen (pp. 20, 32, and above), in the first conjugation the tenses of the present system are formed as follows:

Present = present stem + person endings  
Future = present stem + *bi* (*b*, *bu*) + person endings  
Imperfect = present stem + *bā* (*ba*) + person endings

## IMPERFECT OF *sum*

The irregular verb *sum* is conjugated as follows in the imperfect:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>e'ram</i> , I was	<i>erā'mus</i> , we were
<i>e'rās</i> , you were	<i>erā'tis</i> , you were
<i>e'rat</i> , he, she, it was	<i>e'rant</i> , they were



*Diana is both huntress and goddess of the moon*

## A WOODLAND TEMPLE

**O**lim in Ītaliā erat templum antiqum Diānae in silvā. Propinqua erat casa ubi hieme nauta cum agricolā habitābat. Aestāte nauta ab Ītaliā nāvigābat et multās terrās spectābat.

Agricola templum amābat quod Diāna, dea lūnae, agricolīs cāra erat.

<sup>5</sup> Sed nauta dixit, "Dea in templō antiqūō nōn habitat."

Ōlim noctū nauta in silvā ambulābat. Lēniter ambulābat quod via erat obscura. Subitō jānuam apertam templī antiqūi et flammās clārās in ārā vīdit. Prō ārā stābat dea pulchra cum multis puellis. Puellae parvās lucernās portābant, sed dea sagittās clārās portābat.

<sup>10</sup> Diāna āram et flammās diū spectābat. Dēnique dea dixit, "Multa templa habeō, sed incolae terrae ārās meās nōn servant. Mihi dōna nōn dant. Dea nōn manet in terrā ubi incolae āram deae nōn servant. Date mihi lucernās, puellae; eritis stellae in caelō. Erō lūna in caelō."

<sup>15</sup> Puellae deae lucernās dedērunt. Templum antiqum erat obscurum; flammae nōn erant in ārā. Sed lūna erat clāra; stellae erant clārae.

Tum nauta ex silvā properāvit. Celeriter ambulāvit, quod nunc via nōn erat obscura. Diāna et puellae erant in caelō.

### WORDS WITH CLUES

anti'quum (*antique*), old, ancient  
aper'ta (*aperture*), open  
dō'num, -ī, N. (*donation*), gift  
ha'beō (*habet*), I have  
ma'net (*permanent*), remains, stays  
nā'vigō, -āre, -āvi (*navigate*), sail  
sagit'ta, -ae, F. (*Sagittarius*), arrow  
stel'la, -ae, F. (*stellar*), star

### NEW WORDS

aestā'te, in summer  
ā'ra, -ae, F., altar  
cae'lum, -ī, N., sky  
cā'ra, dear  
hi'eme, in winter  
lucer'na, -ae, F., lamp  
prō, *prep. with abl.*, in front of, on behalf of, for

## SECOND DECLENSION

Nouns with the genitive singular ending in *-ī* are of the *second declension*. The second-declension nouns are not all alike in the nominative. Some have the nominative ending in *-um*, others in *-us*, and others in *-er*. Those ending in *-um* are declined like *templum*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nominative:</i>	tem'plum	tem'pla
<i>Genitive:</i>	tem'plī	templō'rum
<i>Dative:</i>	tem'plō	tem'plīs
<i>Accusative:</i>	tem'plum	tem'pla
<i>Ablative:</i>	tem'plō	tem'plīs

The case endings differ from those of *silva* and other first-declension nouns everywhere except in the dative and ablative plural.

## GENDER

In English we use the pronoun *he* when referring to a man, a boy, or a male animal, the pronoun *she* when referring to a woman, a girl, or a female animal, and the pronoun *it* when referring to a thing. *He* is in the *masculine gender*, *she* is in the *feminine gender*, and *it* is in the *neuter gender*.

Nouns also are said to have gender. Thus, *brother* is masculine, *sister* is feminine, and *house* is neuter.

In Latin, gender does not depend entirely on meaning, as it does in English. For example, most first-declension nouns are feminine, even though we should expect many of them to be neuter from their meanings. Those denoting males, however, are masculine. Thus, *agricola*, *nauta*, *pīrāta*, and *poēta* are masculine; *incola* may be either masculine or feminine. All other nouns of this declension which have been given are feminine.

You have learned the forms of second-declension nouns ending in *-um*, such as *templum*. All nouns ending in *-um* in the nominative singular are neuter.

## AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES IN GENDER

An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, as well as in case and number. The adjectives which you have learned with the ending *-a* have also a neuter form in *-um* declined like *templum*.

magna insula, a large island    magnum templum, a large temple



*This mosaic shows  
spirited horses  
near a  
Roman farmhouse*

## A FRIEND IN NEED

Sextus et Mārcus erant amīcī. Sextus in magnā villā habitābat. Mārcus sōlus in silvā in parvā casā habitābat.

Saepe aestāte Mārcus in hortis amīcī Sextī labōrābat, et agricolās in agrīs iuvābat. Mārcus equōs amābat, et aestāte erant multī equī  
5 in agrīs Sextī. Interdum hieme Mārcus servōs iuvābat; frūmentum equīs dare amābat.

Ōlim equī Sextī ab agrō errāvērunt.

Territī servī Sextum vocāvērunt et clāmāvērunt, "Nūllī equī sunt in agrīs tuis! Ubi sunt equī tui?"

10 Sextus irātus clāmāvit, "Cūr equōs in agrīs nōn spectābātus, pueri?" Nunc equī in silvā sunt. Ursae equōs meōs necābunt!"

Tum Sextus ē villā properat. In agrō propinquō agricolam videt. Agricolaē dē magnō periculō equōrum nārrat. Celeriter agricola Sextō hastam dat.

15 Via est obscurā in silvā sed Sextus celeriter ambulat quod equōs servāre dēsiderat. Subitō Mārcum videt. Mārcus dēfessus cum magnā ursā pugnat. Est in magnō periculō quod nūllum gladium et nūllam hastam habet.

Sextus clāmat, "Tē iuvābō, Mārce! Hastam habeo!"

20 Celeriter ursam necat et Mārcum amicum servat. Tum Mārcus Sextō equōs territōs mōnstrat.

Sextus laetus equōs spectat, et dicit, "Equōs meōs servāvistī, Mārce; es amīcus fidus!"

a'ger, a'grī, M. (*agricola*), field  
 amī'cus, -ī, M. (*amicable*), friend  
 dī'cit (*dixit*), speaks, says  
 e'quus, -ī, M. (*equestrian*), horse  
 fī'dus, -a, -um (*fidelity*), faithful  
 gla'dius, -ī, M. (*gladiator*), sword  
 hor'tus, -ī, M. (*horticulture*), garden  
 nūl'lus, -a, -um<sup>1</sup> (*null*), no, none  
 perī'culum, -ī, N. (*periculōsa*), dan-  
 ger, peril

pu'er, pu'erī, M. (*puerile*), boy  
 ser'vus, -ī, M., servant, slave  
 sō'lus, -a, -um<sup>1</sup> (*solo*), alone, only  
 tē (*tua, mē*), *acc. sing.*, you

## NEW WORDS

dēfes'sus, -a, -um, tired, weary  
 frūmen'tum, -ī, N., grain  
 has'ta, -ae, F., spear

DECLENSION OF *amicus*

The noun *amicus* is of the second declension. It has the same endings as *templum*, except in the nominative singular and the nominative and accusative plural.

All second-declension nouns which end in *-us* are declined like *amicus*. Most of them are masculine.

SECOND-DECLENSION NOUNS IN *-er*

Second-declension nouns ending in *-er* are masculine, and their forms, except the nominative singular, are the same as those of *amicus*. Two of these, *puer*, *boy*, and *vesper*, *evening*, keep the *-e-* in cases other than the nominative singular. You can remember this by means of English words derived from them: *puerile*, *vespers*. The words *ager*, *field*, *liber*, *book*, and *magister*, *teacher*, do not keep the *-e-*. You can remember this by the words *agriculture*, *library*, *magistrate*.

## VOCATIVE CASE OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

On page 31 you read that the vocative case of most Latin nouns has the same form as the nominative. An exception is the class of nouns in the second declension ending in *-us*. The vocative singular of these nouns ends in *-e*.

*Nominative:* Mārcus, *amicus*      *Vocative:* Mārce, *amīce*

In all nouns the vocative plural is the same as the nominative plural.

<sup>1</sup> Nullus and solus are declined like bonus, except in the genitive and dative singular. (See page 318, 18.)

## SUMMARY OF FIRST- AND SECOND-DECLENSION NOUNS

FIRST DECL.		SECOND DECL.		
		NEUTER		MASCULINE
			SINGULAR	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>silva</i>	<i>templum</i>	<i>amicus</i>	<i>ager</i> <i>puer</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>silvae</i>	<i>templī</i>	<i>amici</i>	<i>agri</i> <i>pueri</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>silvae</i>	<i>templō</i>	<i>amicō</i>	<i>agrō</i> <i>puerō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>silvam</i>	<i>templum</i>	<i>amicum</i>	<i>agrum</i> <i>puerum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>silvā</i>	<i>templō</i>	<i>amicō</i>	<i>agrō</i> <i>puerō</i>
			PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>silvae</i>	<i>templa</i>	<i>amici</i>	<i>agri</i> <i>pueri</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>silvārum</i>	<i>templōrum</i>	<i>amicōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i> <i>puerōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>silvis</i>	<i>templis</i>	<i>amicis</i>	<i>agris</i> <i>pueris</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>silvās</i>	<i>templa</i>	<i>amicōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i> <i>puerōs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>silvis</i>	<i>templis</i>	<i>amicis</i>	<i>agris</i> <i>pueris</i>

All first-declension nouns end in **-a** in the nominative singular and in **-ae** in the genitive singular. Most of them are feminine, but a few are masculine.

Second-declension nouns end in **-us**, **-er (-ir)**, or **-um** in the nominative singular, and in **-i** in the genitive singular. Most **-us** and **-er** nouns are masculine; nouns ending in **-um** are neuter. The nominative plural of **-us** and **-er** nouns ends in **-i**. All neuter nouns end in **-a** in both nominative and accusative plural.

## ENDINGS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	FIRST DECL.	SECOND DECL.		FIRST DECL.	SECOND DECL.	
		MASC.	NEUT.		MASC.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	-a	-us, -er (-ir)	-um	-ae	-ī	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	-ae	-ī	-ī	-ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	-ae	-ō	-ō	-īs	-īs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	-am	-um	-um	-ās	-ōs	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	-ā	-ō	-ō	-īs	-īs	-īs

## ADJECTIVES IN -us

Such adjectives as **bona** and **magna** have a masculine form ending in **-us** in the nominative. The other case endings are also like those of the noun **amīcus**. The adjectives which have the ending **-a** have also a neuter form in **-um** declined like **templum**.

## DECLENSION OF *bonus* IN ALL GENDERS

			SINGULAR
	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nominative:</i>	bo'nus	bo'na	bo'num
<i>Genitive:</i>	bo'nī	bo'nae	bo'nī
<i>Dative:</i>	bo'nō	bo'nae	bo'nō
<i>Accusative:</i>	bo'num	bo'nam	bo'num
<i>Ablative:</i>	bo'nō	bo'nā	bo'nō

			PLURAL
<i>Nominative:</i>	bo'nī	bo'nae	bo'na
<i>Genitive:</i>	bonō'rum	bonā'rum	bonō'rum
<i>Dative:</i>	bo'nīs	bo'nīs	bo'nīs
<i>Accusative:</i>	bo'nōs	bo'nās	bo'na
<i>Ablative:</i>	bo'nīs	bo'nīs	bo'nīs

The following adjectives, of which one or more forms have previously been given, are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um.

albus	clārus	magnus	periculōsus
amoenus	dēfessus	maritimus	propinquus
angustus	fidus	meus	quiētus
antiquus	grātus	multus	territus
apertus	irātus	novus	tuus
benignus	laetus	obscurus	
cārus	longus	parvus	

Notice that the words *meus* and *tuus* are included in this list of adjectives. Like other adjectives, they agree in gender, number, and case with nouns they modify.

Observe the differences in the forms of the adjective used with *amīcus* and the forms of the same adjective used with *puella* or *templum*.

			SINGULAR
<i>Nom.</i>	amī'cus bo'nus	puel'la bo'na	tem'plum bo'num
<i>Gen.</i>	amī'cī bo'nī	puel'lae bo'nae	tem'plī bo'nī
<i>Dat.</i>	amī'cō bo'nō	puel'lae bo'nae	tem'plō bo'nō
<i>Acc.</i>	amī'cum bo'num	puel'lam bo'nam	tem'plum bo'num
<i>Abl.</i>	amī'cō bo'nō	puel'lā bo'nā	tem'plō bo'nō

			PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	amī'cī bo'nī	puel'lae bo'nae	tem'pla bo'na
<i>Gen.</i>	amīcō'rum bonō'rum	puellā'rum bonā'rum	templō'rum bonō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	amī'cīs bo'nīs	puel'lis bo'nīs	tem'plīs bo'nīs
<i>Acc.</i>	amī'cōs bo'nōs	puel'lās bo'nās	tem'pla bo'na
<i>Abl.</i>	amī'cīs bo'nīs	puel'lis bo'nīs	tem'plīs bo'nīs

## ENGLISH NOUNS AND LATIN NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

You already know several first-declension Latin nouns which give us related English nouns. Some are identical in form and similar in meaning: **arena, villa**. Others show slight changes in form.

-a dropped    -a to -e    -ia to -y    -a to -e    -cia, -tia to -ce  
-u- omitted

<b>matrona,</b>	<b>fortuna,</b>	<b>controversia,</b>	<b>epistula,</b>	<b>provincia,</b>	<b>justitia,</b>
<i>matron</i>	<i>fortune</i>	<i>controversy</i>	<i>epistle</i>	<i>province</i>	<i>justice</i>

Latin nouns of the second declension also give us related English words, alike in form and similar in meaning.

**auditorium**                      **campus**                      **forum**

Other second-declension Latin nouns have corresponding English nouns without the ending.

**elephantus, elephant**                      **factum, fact**

Some Latin nouns of the second declension ending in **-ium, -um, or -us** have related English nouns ending in **-e**, and sometimes showing the loss of Latin internal **-u-**.

**domicilium, domicile**                      **oraculum, oracle**                      **captivus, captive**

Several second-declension Latin nouns in **-ium** give English nouns in **-y**.

**matrimonium, matrimony**                      **testimonium, testimony**

There are some English nouns in **-er** which correspond to second-declension Latin nouns in **-um**.

**membrum, member**                      **sepulchrum, sepulcher**

Some English words have *e* where Latin has *ae*. In addition to this internal difference, there is sometimes a change in ending.

**aedificium, edifice**                      **Aethiopia, Ethiopia**

Give the English word corresponding to each of these Latin words.

<b>area</b>	<b>exilium</b>	<b>meritum</b>	<b>praejudicium</b>	<b>stabulum</b>
<b>columna</b>	<b>fatum</b>	<b>monstrum</b>	<b>prudentia</b>	<b>statua</b>
<b>defendo</b>	<b>fumus</b>	<b>patrimonium</b>	<b>receptaculum</b>	<b>tabula</b>
<b>digitus</b>	<b>ignorantia</b>	<b>pendulum</b>	<b>rustica</b>	<b>victoria</b>



# REVIEW OF UNIT II

I. In each list of words below, find one word that does not belong there and tell why it does not belong.

aqua, deārum, fenestrīs, ōrātis, schola, viīs  
 aperta, benigna, cāra, fāma, grāta, irāta  
 damus, dēsīderās, habitāmus, labōrās, ōrās, lucernās  
 ē, cum, dē, dō, ex, in

II. Below are given a number of statements, each followed by three words or syllables, only one of which is correct. Find the one which completes the statement and makes it true.

1. The infinitive of *juvō* is (*juvat, juvā-, juvāre*).
2. The perfect stem of *properō* is (*properāre, properā-, properāv-*).
3. The present stem of *postulō* is (*postulāre, postul-, postulā-*).
4. The tense sign of the future is (*-bā-, -bi-, -āre*).
5. The tense sign of the imperfect is (*-ō, -bā-, -bi-*).

III. Fill each blank with the imperative of the verb given.

1. — *hīc in jānuā, Anna.* (*stō*)
2. — *ursam, agricolae.* (*necō*)
3. — (*pl.*) *celeriter sagittās.* (*portō*)
4. — *pirātam, nauta.* (*necō*)
5. — *lūnam clāram, amita.* (*spectō*)

IV. Find in group B the English equivalent of each Latin word in group A.

A		B		
1. <i>celeriter</i>	5. <i>minimē</i>	(a) <i>afterward</i>	(e) <i>finally</i>	(i) <i>slowly</i>
2. <i>dēnique</i>	6. <i>posteā</i>	(b) <i>at night</i>	(f) <i>formerly</i>	(j) <i>so</i>
3. <i>ita</i>	7. <i>subitō</i>	(c) <i>by day</i>	(g) <i>here</i>	(k) <i>suddenly</i>
4. <i>lēniter</i>	8. <i>tum</i>	(d) <i>by no means</i>	(h) <i>quickly</i>	(l) <i>then</i>

V. Give one or more English words related to each Latin word.

<i>amicus</i>	<i>filius</i>	<i>nullus</i>	<i>separo</i>
<i>donum</i>	<i>leo</i>	<i>praejudicium</i>	<i>solus</i>
<i>equus</i>	<i>navigo</i>	<i>pugno</i>	<i>validus</i>

## THE GOLDEN TOUCH

**M**idās in magnā rēgiā habitābat, ubi erant multae arcae, urnae, lucernae, statuae. Sed Midās nōn erat laetus, quod multum aurum dēsiderābat.

5 Ōlim Midās deum iūvit, et deus dixit, “Tibi praemium dabō. Quid dēsiderās?”

Itaque Midās dixit, “Multī multum aurum habent; aurum quoque amō. Dā mihi contāctum (*touch*) aureum. Multa mūtābō; tum erit multum aurum in rēgiā meā.”

10 Deus dōnum virō laetō dedit. Statim Midās multa mūtāre temptāvit. Per (*through*) hortum ambulāvit; rosae erant aureae. Per rēgiam ambulāvit; lucernae, mēnsae, urnae, arcae, statuae erant aureae. Midās erat vir laetus, quod aurum spectāre amābat. Vesperī multōs incolās convocāvit; aurum incolīs mōnstrāvit.

Dēnique magnam cēnam postulāvit. “Parāte cēnam bonam,” dixit. 15 Postea Midās cēnam edere (*to eat*) temptāvit, sed cēna erat aurea! Aquam bibere (*to drink*) temptāvit, sed aqua quoque aurea erat! Midās erat territus. Contāctum aureum nōn dēsiderābat; cēnam dēsiderābat. Multum aurum nōn dēsiderābat; aquam dēsiderābat.

Midās miser deum vocāvit. “Juvā mē! Juvā mē!” clāmāvit.

20 Deus erat benignus et virum miserum servāvit. Iterum Midās magnam cēnam postulāvit. Cēna erat bona; nōn erat aurea.

Midās erat laetus et dixit, “Nunc sum liber; contāctum aureum nōn habeo. Nunc laetus sum, quamquam multum aurum nōn habeo.”

## WORDS WITH CLUES

convocō, -āre, -āvi (*convocation*), call together  
deus, -ī, M. (*dea*), a god; *nom pl.*, dī, the gods

liber, libera, liberum (*liberty*), free  
miser, misera, miserum (*miserable*), unhappy

mūtō, -āre, -āvi (*mutation, commute*), change

parō, -āre, -āvi, prepare

postulō, -āre, -āvi (*postulate*), demand

praemium, praemiū, N. (*premium*), reward

## WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont

rēgia, -ae, F. (*regal*), palace

vir, virī, M. (*virile*), man

## NEW WORDS

aureus, -a, -um, golden, of gold

aurum, -ī, N., gold

cēna, -ae, F., dinner, feast

mēnsa, -ae, F., table

quamquam, although

quid, what

statim, at once, immediately

tibi (*tua, tē, mihi*), to you, you (*as ind. obj.*)

For a summary of Latin pronunciation, including syllabication and accent, see page 368.

## ADJECTIVES WITH MASCULINE IN *-er*

You have already met the adjectives *pulchra* and *misera*. These forms are feminine. The masculine form of these words in the nominative singular ends in *-er* instead of *-us*: *pulcher*, *miser*.

Some adjectives in *-er* keep *-e-* throughout the declension: *miser*, *misera*, *miserum*, etc. In this book you will meet only three such adjectives: *alter*, *liber*, and *miser*. English words derived from them—*alteration*, *liberation*, *miserable*—will help you remember them.

Other adjectives in *-er* drop the *-e-* before *-r* in all forms except the nominative singular masculine: *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*. In this book you will meet only six adjectives which drop the *-e-*: *aeger*, *impiger*, *noster*, *piger*, *pulcher*, and *vester*.

Remember that only in the nominative singular is there any difference between the declension of these adjectives and that of *bonus*.

## ADJECTIVES WITH MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

An adjective must agree with its noun in gender, but its endings are not necessarily the same as those of the noun. Since *agricola*, *nauta*, *pīrāta*, and *poēta* are masculine, an adjective modifying one of them will be masculine. The words for *a good sailor* are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nominative:</i>	<i>nauta bonus</i>	<i>nautae bonī</i>
<i>Genitive:</i>	<i>nautae bonī</i>	<i>nautārum bonōrum</i>
	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

## ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

The masculine plural of some adjectives may be used without a noun to denote persons. Thus *multi* means *many (persons)* and *bonī* means *the good (persons)*. In descriptions of war or military operations of any kind, *nostrī* means *our men* or *our soldiers*.

The neuter form of some adjectives may be used in the plural to denote things. Thus *multa* means *many things*.

## DECLENSION OF *vir*

In "The Golden Touch" are several forms of the noun *vir*. Its declension is like that of *amicus* except for the nominative singular. There are no other words like *vir* in Latin.

### THREE BOOKS FOR THE PRICE OF NINE

Tarquinius Superbus, vir clārus et validus, rēgnum Rōmānum occupāvit. Rōmānī virum superbū nōn amābant; itaque Tarquiniō fidī nōn erant.

5 Ōlim Tarquinius prō rēgiā fēminam sōlam vidit. Fēmina rēgiam spectābat. Vesperī Tarquinius fēminam in rēgiā vidit. Jam fēmina novem librōs in parvā arcā portābat. Tarquiniō librōs mōnstrāvit, et magnum pretium postulāvit.

Tarquinius risit (*laughed*) et dixit, "Cūr librī tuī sunt pretiōsī? Tibi magnum pretium nōn dabō. Librōs pretiōsōs nōn dēsiderō."

10 Statim fēmina irāta ē rēgiā Tarquiniī properāvit, sed postridiē in rēgiā iterum Tarquiniō librōs mōnstrāvit.

"Nōn jam novem, sed sex librōs habeo," dixit. "Trēs librōs dēlēvī (*I have destroyed*). Dā mihi pretium novem librōrum, et tibi sex librōs dabō."

15 Tarquinius iterum risit, et iterum fēmina irāta ē rēgiā properāvit.

Postridiē fēmina Tarquiniō trēs librōs mōnstrāvit et dixit, "Aut dabis mihi pretium novem librōrum aut trēs librōs quoque dēlēbō (*I will destroy*)."

20 Tarquinius erat territus; jam librōs dēsiderābat. Itaque fēminae dixit, "Dā mihi trēs librōs et tibi pretium novem librōrum dabō."

Quod pretium novem librōrum dabat, trēs librī Tarquiniō cārī erant.

Posteā Rōmānī templum pretiōsum aedificāvērunt; semper librī pretiōsī erant in templō. Librī Rōmam ē periculō servābant, quod Rōmānis arcāna (*secrets*) mōnstrābant. Erant librī Sibyllinī.

#### WORDS WITH CLUES

aedificō, -āre, -āvī (*edifice*), build  
liber, librī, M. (*library*), book  
pretiōsus, -a, -um (*precious*), expensive, costly  
pretium, -ī, N. (*pretiōsus*), price

#### WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont

rēgnum, -ī, N. (*regia, regal*), kingdom  
sex, *not declined* (*sextet*), six  
trēs, M and F. *nom and acc. pl.* (*triple*), three  
validus, -a, -um (*valid*), strong, well

#### NEW WORDS

aut, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, either . . .  
or  
jam, *adv.*, now, already; non jam, no longer  
novem, *not declined*, nine  
postridiē, *adv.*, on the next day  
superbus, -a, -um, proud, haughty

*Michelangelo's Cumaeen Sybil*



## THE ADVERB

We often use a word with a verb to tell how or when an action is done.

*He runs swiftly.*

*They came today.*

The word *swiftly* tells how the act of the verb *runs* is done; the word *today* tells when the act of the verb *came* was done. Such words are called *adverbs*.

Adverbs are also used to tell something about adjectives and even about other adverbs.

too small

very swiftly

probably right

In this lesson you meet the Latin adverbs **jam** and **postrīdiē**, which tell when the action of a verb is done. You have already met the adverbs **celeriter**, **diū**, **ibi**, **nōn**, **saepe**, **statim**, **ubi**, and many others, which tell something about verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.

The Latin adverb regularly precedes the word it modifies.

### DISTINCTION BETWEEN *nunc* AND *jam*

Both **nunc** and **jam** may be translated *now*. But **nunc** merely indicates a point of time.

**Nunc** pugnāt, *He is fighting now (at this moment).*

**Jam** indicates that something is now true which was not true before.

**Jam** novem pirātās necāvit, *He has now (by this time or already) killed nine pirates.*

### IMPERFECT OF *dō*

You will remember that **dō** has short *a* in all forms of the present, except the second person singular, **dās**. In the imperfect, all forms have the short *a* before the tense sign.

For each blank in the sentences below, substitute **nunc** or **jam** and explain your choice.

1. Puella fābulam — nārrat.

4. Terrae liberāe — sunt quiētae.

2. Agricola validus sex ursās —  
necāvit.

5. Pīrāta gemmās pulchrās nōn  
— habet.

3. Virī in ōrā maritimā — ambu-  
lant.

6. Fēmina trēs librōs Tarquiniō —  
dat.



*Aeneas plucks the golden bough*

## THE GOLDEN BOUGH

**O**lim in cavernā propinquā oppidō Cūmīs Sibylla nōta habitābat.  
Post bellum Trōjānum Aenēās multīs cum virīs ad oppidum  
Cūmās nāvīgāvit.

Hic Aenēās ante jānuam cavernae Sibyllae stetit et clāmāvit, “Ē  
rēgnō mortuōrum Anchīsēs, pater (*father*) meus, mē vocat. Mōnstrā  
mihi viam!”

Sibylla dixit, “Noctū et interdiū jānuā est aperta. Multi in terram  
mortuōrum properant, sed nōn iterum patriam spectant.”

“Māter (*mother*) mea est dea. Dī mē juvābunt,” Aenēās clāmāvit.  
10 “In silvā propinquā est rāmus aureus,” Sibylla dixit. “Primō  
portā ad mē rānum aureum. Deinde tibi jānuam terrae mortuōrum  
mōnstrābō.”

Statim Aenēās cum amicō fidō in silvam obscurā properāvit.  
Subitō Aenēās per rāmōs aurum clārum vidit.

15 “Ecce!” dixit. “Est rāmus aureus! Dī nōs juvant!”

Laetus rānum aureum ad cavernam portāvit.

Tum Sibylla clāmāvit, “Dī tē amant. Ecce! Jānuā cavernae est aperta; nunc rāmum aureum ad Prōserpinam, rēginam mortuōrum, portābimus.”

Aenēās et Sibylla in cavernam properāvērunt et primō per viās periculōsās et obscurās ambulāvērunt. Deinde Sibylla rēgiam Prōserpinae mōnstrāvit, et Aenēās rāmum aureum ad jānuam rēgiae portāvit. Dōnum erat rēginae grātum.

Itaque trāns agrōs amoenōs ambulāvērunt. Ibi erat pater Anchisēs. Tum Anchisēs multa filiō nārrāvit, et multa in terrā mortuōrum mōnstrāvit.

#### WORDS WITH CLUES

**ante**, *prep. with acc.* (*anterior*), before, in front of  
**bellum**, -i, N. (*belligerent*), war  
**filius**, filiū, M. (*fīlia*), son  
**mortuus**, -a, -um (*mortuary*), dead;  
 M. *as noun*, dead man  
**nōtus**, -a, -um, noted, well-known  
**post**, *prep. with acc.* (*postea*), behind, back of, after  
**primō**, *adv.* (*primary*), at first  
**rēgina**, -ae, F. (*regia, regnum*), queen  
**trāns**, *prep. with acc.* (*transil, transport*), across

#### NEW WORDS

**ad**, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward, near  
**deinde**, *adv.*, then, next  
**ecce**, look!  
**interdiū**, *adv.*, by day, during the day  
**nōs**, *nom. and acc. pl.*, we, us  
**oppidum**, -i, N., town  
**per**, *prep. with acc.*, through  
**rāmus**, -i, M., branch, bough

#### CASE USE WITH PREPOSITIONS

The prepositions **ab**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, and **in**, as you know, take the ablative case. There are, however, many prepositions with which the accusative is used. In fact, the number of prepositions taking the accusative is larger than the number taking the ablative.

Thus you see that the accusative not only is the case of the direct object of a verb, but is also found with some prepositions. Here you meet five prepositions which take the accusative: **ad**, *to, toward*; **ante**, *before, in front of*; **per**, *through*; **post**, *behind, after*; and **trāns**, *across*.

Per viam ad scholam properat, *He hurries to school through the street.*

Trāns viam est casa, *Across the street is a cottage.*

Hortus est ante templum; nōn est post templum. *The garden is in front of the temple; it is not behind the temple.*



*This ancient sculpture shows Aeneas escaping from Troy with his father and his son*

#### PHRASES WITH *to*

We have seen that the Latin indirect object is in the dative case without a preposition. In English a phrase with the preposition *to* is often used to express the same idea.

Rosam puellae dō, *I give the rose to the girl.*

But when the Latin shows to what place a person or thing moves, it does not use the dative, but the preposition *ad*, followed by the accusative.

Ad silvam properat, *He hastens to the forest.*

#### *In* WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

Thus far you have seen the preposition *in* used only with the ablative. The ablative with *in* (meaning *in* or *on*) denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. The accusative with *in* (meaning *into* or *in*) denotes the place to which motion is directed.

*Ablative:* In oppidō habitās, *You live in the town.*

*Accusative:* In oppidum properās, *You hasten into the town.*



## ENGLISH VERBS AND LATIN VERBS

Many Latin verbs give us English verbs similar in form and meaning. You have already met some Latin verbs which have corresponding English words. Some are without -o: *adorno*, *adorn*. Others have final -e instead of -o: *observo*, *observe*.

For another group of Latin verbs there are English verbs ending in -ate.

*libero*, *liberate*      *migro*, *migrate*      *navigo*, *navigate*

Give the English verb corresponding to each of the following Latin verbs.

*attendo*      *commemoro*      *excito*      *tempto*

Some Latin verbs are related to Latin nouns, just as some English verbs and nouns are related.

In some cases, the English noun names the doer of the action described by the verb, and in others, the noun gives the result of the verb's action.

*sing*      *write*  
*singer* (one who *sings*)      *writing* (that which is *written*)

Discuss the following groups of English words, giving the meaning of each noun and telling how it is related to the corresponding verb.

*audit*      *build*      *fly*      *labor*      *rule*  
*auditor*      *building*      *flier*      *labor*      *ruler*

Latin also has pairs of related verbs and nouns.

*bello*      *ceno*      *pugno*      *specto*      *timeo*  
*bellum*      *cena*      *pugna*      *spectator*      *timor*

Since *bellum* means *war*, it is easy to see that the verb *bello* means *make war*. The Latin word *spectator* means *one who watches* or *looks at* something; what does *specto* mean? By association, you can deduce the meaning of related Latin words and remember them easily.

Translate the pairs of Latin words above, and discuss the relationship in meaning between each noun and its corresponding verb. Then consider each Latin word on the page and give as many related English words as possible.

## THE FLOOD

**O**lim viri malī in terrā habitābant. Deōs nōn timēbant; templa deōrum nōn cūrābant.

Itaque Juppiter deōs convocāvit et dīxit, "Quamquam virōs et fēminās monēmus, tamen dōna deīs nōn dant. Nōn jam incolae  
5 malī in terrā manēre dēbent."

Tum multa aqua in terrā erat. Diū aqua in terrā manēbat. Mox aqua alta agrōs cēlāvit; in agrīs nūllī virī erant. Aqua alta oppida quoque cēlāvit; in oppidis nūllī virī et nūllae fēminae erant. Incolae malī erant mortuī.

10 Deucaliōn sōlus erat vir bonus et impiger, et Pyrrha sōla erat fēmina bona et impigra. Itaque dī virum bonum et fēminam bonam servāverunt.

Dēnique aqua alta nōn jam terram cēlāvit, sed Deucaliōn et Pyrrha nūllōs virōs, nūllās fēminās in terrā vidēbant. Lēniter ambulābant.  
15 Caelum et aquam spectābant. Maximē auxilium dēsīderābant.

Templum erat propinquum et Deucaliōn dīxit, "In templum properābimus. Ibi manēbimus et dī nōs juvābunt."

Subitō ōrāculum dīxit, "Jacite (*throw*) ossa mātis (*the bones of your mother*) post terga."

20 Deucaliōn et Pyrrha maximē timēbant. Tum Deucaliōn dīxit, "Dī bonī sunt. Terra est māter (*mother*) nostra. Saxa sunt ossa mātis nostrae."

Itaque Pyrrha saxa post tergum jēcīt (*threw*) et dī saxa in fēminās mūtāverunt.

25 Deucaliōn quoque saxa post tergum jēcīt et dī saxa in virōs mūtāverunt. Ita terra iterum incolās habēbat.

### WORDS WITH CLUES

altus, -a, -um (*altitude*), deep; high, tall

auxilium, -ī, N. (*auxiliary*), help, aid  
cūrō, -āre, -āvī (*curator*), take care of  
dēbeō, -ēre (*debt*), owe, ought; must

### WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont.

malus, -a, -um (*malicious*), bad, wicked

maximē, adv. (*maximum*), very much, especially

moneō, -ēre (*admonish*), warn, advise

### NEW WORDS

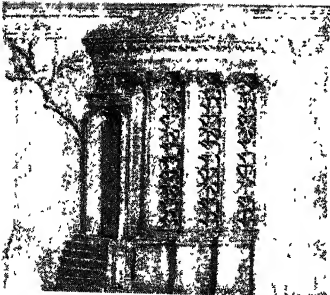
impiger, -gra, -grum, industrious

ita, adv., so, thus; yes

saxum, -ī, N., stone, rock

tamen, adv., nevertheless

tergum, -ī, N., back, rear



*An ancient temple*

## SECOND CONJUGATION

You are familiar with a number of verb forms of the first conjugation.

*portat, he carries*                      *portābit, he will carry*  
*portābat, he was carrying, he carried*

Verb forms of the *second conjugation* differ slightly from these.

*monet, he warns*                      *monēbit, he will warn*  
*monēbat, he was warning, he warned*

Notice that these second-conjugation forms have *-e-* before the person ending and before the tense sign, where the first conjugation has *-a-*.

The verb *moneō*, of the second conjugation, has the infinitive *monēre*. For the present, imperfect, and future forms of *moneō*, see page 329.

Notice that the person endings are the same as those in the corresponding forms of *portō*.

All verbs which have the infinitive ending in *-ēre* are of the second conjugation and are conjugated like *moneō*. Thus *videō*, *habeō*, *maneō*, and *timeō*, forms of which have been used in previous lessons, are of the second conjugation, as well as *moneō* and *dēbeō*, which occur in the vocabulary of this lesson.

### PRESENT SYSTEM OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

As in the first conjugation, the tenses of the present system are formed as follows:

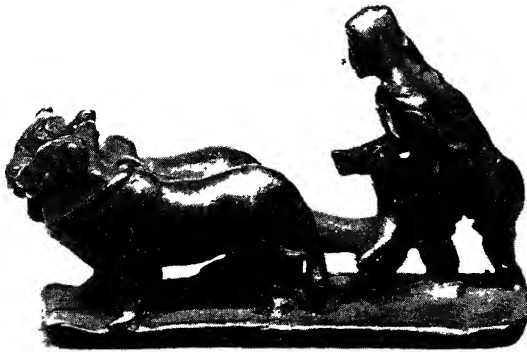
Present = present stem + person endings  
Future = present stem + *bi* (*b*, *bu*) + person endings  
Imperfect = present stem + *bā* (*ba*) + person endings

### PRESENT IMPERATIVE OF *moneō*

You are familiar with the present imperative of the first conjugation. The imperative of the second conjugation is formed in the same way, using the present stem for the singular and the present stem with the ending *-te* for the plural.

FIRST CONJUGATION  
*Singular:* *portā*  
*Plural:* *portāte*

SECOND CONJUGATION  
*monē*  
*monēte*



*An ancient plowman*

## A TALL TALE

Piratae semper ab incolis prōvinciārum timentur. Saepe parva oppida ā pirātis oppugnantur; agrī agricolārum vāstantur. Fābula ā Sextō, agricolā prōvinciae Siciliae, saepe nārrātur.

Piratae frūmentum Siciliae dēsiderant; magna castra in ōrā maritimā insulae nostrae habent. In castris est Seleucus, pirāta malus.

Quamquam dē magnō periculō monēmur, tamen in agris labōrāmus; sed puerī et puellae vigilant. Castra pirātārum ab agricolis et ā pueris nōn videntur.

Fīlia mea sōla pirātās videt et clāmat, "Pirātās videō. Properāte, puerī, ad agrōs; vocāte agricolās!"

Ex agris properāmus. Ab incolis oppidī propinquī et ā nautis iuvāmur. Incolae bona arma, scūta lāta, galeās validās habent. Bona arma portāmus, sed nullās galeās et nulla scūta habēmus. Cum pirātis diū et ācritēr pugnāmus.

Dēnique clāmō, "Ubi est Seleucus? Mihi Seleucum mōnstrāte! Sōlus Seleucum necābō."

Sed Seleucus abest (*is absent*). Piratae male pugnant; multī necantur. Sōlus centum pirātās necō.

Posteā castra ā Rōmānis occupantur et Seleucus gladiō necātur. Dux (*general*) mē laudat. Dicit, "Siciliam, Sexte, servāvisti!"

### WORDS WITH CLUES

**arma**, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, arms, weapons, tools

**centum**, *not declined (century)*, one hundred

**lātus**, -a, -um (*latitude*), wide, broad  
**male**, *adv.* (*malus*), badly

**oppugnō**, -āre, -āvi (*pugnō*), attack

**scūtum**, -ī, N. (*escutcheon*), shield

### WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont.

**vāstō**, -āre, -āvi, devastate, destroy

**vigilō**, -āre, -āvi (*vigilant*), watch, keep awake

### NEW WORDS

**ācritēr**, *adv.*, fiercely

**castra**, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, camp

**galea**, -ae, F., helmet

## USE OF PASSIVE VOICE

The following two sentences both have the word *boy* as subject, since in each sentence we assert something about the boy.

*The boy helps his friend. The boy is helped by his friend.*

In the first sentence the subject does the act, that is, he helps someone; in the second sentence something is done to the subject. A verb which denotes something that the subject does is in the *active voice*. A verb which denotes something done to the subject by another person or thing is in the *passive voice*. In the illustrative sentences given above, *helps* is in the active voice and *is helped* is in the passive voice.

### PRESENT PASSIVE OF *portō* AND *moneō*

Thus far all the verb forms you have met have been in the active voice. In Latin, just as in English, there is a passive voice. The verbs *portō* and *moneō* are conjugated as follows in the present passive:

#### SINGULAR

por'tor, I am carried	mo'neor, I am warned
portā'ris, you are carried	monē'ris, you are warned
portā'tur, he, she, it is carried	monē'tur, he, she, it is warned

#### PLURAL

portā'mur, we are carried	monē'mur, we are warned
portā'minī, you are carried	monē'minī, you are warned
portan'tur, they are carried	monen'tur, they are warned

These forms may also be translated *I am being carried, I am being warned*, etc.

### PASSIVE ENDINGS

As you see from the conjugations on this page, the person endings used in the passive voice are as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>First Person:</i>	-or (-r)	-mur
<i>Second Person:</i>	-ris	-mini
<i>Third Person:</i>	-tur	-ntur

In the active voice we have seen that the vowel *-ā-* or *-ē-* of the stem becomes short before the person endings *-t* and *-nt*. The *-ā-* disappears before *-ō*, and the *-ē-* becomes short. In the passive voice the *-ā-* and *-ē-* become short before the ending *-ntur*. The *-ā-* disappears before *-or*, and the *-ē-* becomes short.

## ā OR *ab* MEANING *by*

In "Sicily" you met the word ā or *ab*, used to mean *from*. But *from* is not the only meaning of this preposition. In "A Tall Tale" you find ā or *ab* used to mean *by*.

Pirātae semper ab incolis prōvinciārum timentur, *Pirates are always feared by the inhabitants of the provinces.*

With passive verbs the person by whom the act is done is expressed by the ablative with the preposition ā or *ab*, meaning *by*.

Epistulae ā puerō portantur, *The letters are carried by the boy.*

This use is called the *ablative of agent*.

## ABLATIVE OF MEANS

In the preceding lessons the ablative has been used as the object of certain Latin prepositions. Sometimes, however, the ablative is used without a preposition.

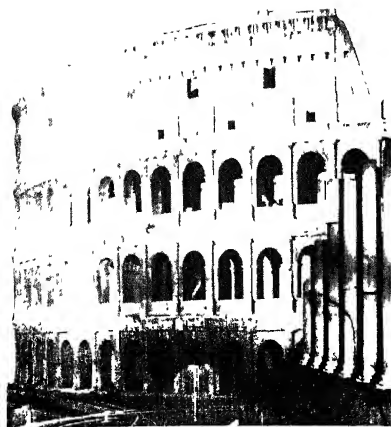
Virī gladiis pugnābant, *The men were fighting with swords.*

Puer ursam sagittā necāvit, *The boy killed the bear with an arrow.*

In these sentences gladiis and sagittā denote *the means by which* or *with which* an act is done. This use is called the *ablative of means*.

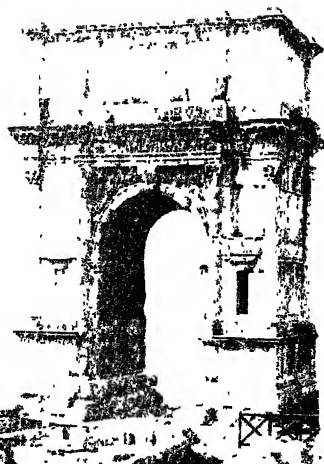
Choose the correct word or phrase to complete each sentence and give the reason for your choice.

1. A *bona fide* offer is made \_\_\_\_.  
(a) deceitfully (b) in good faith (c) jokingly
2. The leaves of gladioli are shaped like \_\_\_\_.  
(a) arrows (b) hearts (c) swords
3. A person in peril is \_\_\_\_.  
(a) gay (b) in danger (c) safe
4. When you are satisfied, you have \_\_\_\_.  
(a) enough (b) too little (c) too much
5. A pilot making a solo flight is flying \_\_\_\_.  
(a) alone (b) for the first time (c) in a monoplane



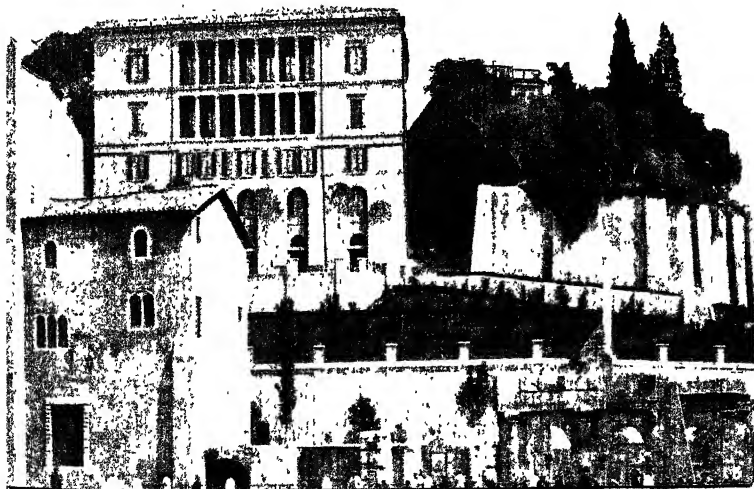
*A night view of the Colosseum*

## ETERNAL ROME



*Arch of  
the emperor Titus*

*Roman ruins on the site of the ancient Forum Holitorium, the vegetable market. Here old and new meet—on the left, a medieval house, and above, a modern building*



## THE FIRST PYRRHIC VICTORY

**O**lim Pyrrhus cum cōpiis Graecis ad Ītaliā nāvigāvit. Ad oppidum Graecum, Tarentum, auxilium portābat, quod Tarentīni cum populō Rōmānō pugnābant. Quamquam Tarentum erat in Ītaliā, tamen incolae Tarentī erant Graeci.

5 Tarentīni cum Rōmānis saepe pugnābant. Nunc auxilium maximē dēsiderābant.

Itaque Pyrrhus ad Ītaliā cōpiās Graecās portāvit. In cōpiis Graecōrum erant multī sagittārii et funditōrēs (*slingers*). Virī gladiōs longōs, hastās, scūta, galeās habēbant.

10 Rōmānī quoque bona arma—jacula, pila, galeās, scūta, gladiōs—habēbant, sed gladii Rōmānōrum nōn erant longī. Rōmānī multōs equōs habēbant, et interdum in proeliō equitēs (*cavalrymen*) ā dextrā et ā sinistrā stābant.

In magnō proeliō Rōmānī cum Pyrrhō ācritēr pugnāvērunt, sed  
15 dolus novus Pyrrhum in hōc proeliō jūvit. Pyrrhus multōs elephantōs habuit. Elephantī erant magnī; in tergīs elephantōrum erant parva tēcta ubi virī stābant. Virī in dextrīs longās et acūtās hastās et longās sagittās habēbant.

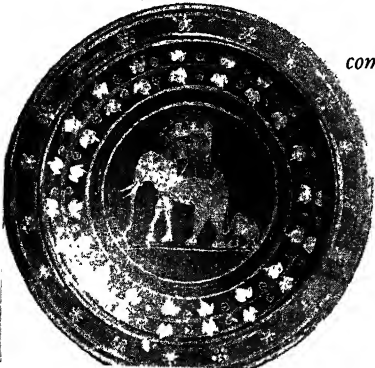
Rōmānī hastās et sagittās minimē timēbant, sed elephantōs maximē  
20 timēbant. Equī Rōmānōrum quoque novōs elephantōs timēbant. Itaque equī territī fūgērunt (*fled*); multōs Rōmānōs equī territī et elephantī necāvērunt.

Quamquam dolus novus Pyrrhō victōriam dedit, tamen in hōc proeliō Rōmānī quoque multōs Graecōs necāvērunt. Itaque Pyrrhus  
25 magnam victōriam nūntiāvit; tamen victōria Pyrrhī fuit pretiōsa.

### WORDS WITH CLUES

cōpia, -ae, F. (*copious*), plenty;  
abundance; *pl.*, forces, troops  
dextra, -ae, F., (*dexterity*), right  
hand; ā dextrā, on the right

*This plate  
commemorates  
the victory  
of Pyrrhus*



### WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, announce, report  
populus, -ī, M. (*population*), people  
sagittārius, -ī, M. (*sagitta*), archer  
sinistra, -ae, F. (*sinister*), left hand;  
ā sinistrā, on the left

### NEW WORDS

dolus, -ī, M., trick; scheme  
hic, haec, hoc, this  
jaculum, -ī, N., javelin  
minimē, *adv.*, no; not at all  
pilum, -ī, N., spear  
proelium, -ī, N., battle  
tēctum, -ī, N., house



*An archer and  
a slinger*



### PERFECT TENSE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

As shown on pages 35 and 36, the forms of the perfect are made up of the perfect stem, with special endings which are used in no other tense. The formation of this tense is the same for all Latin verbs.

To make the perfect tense of the second conjugation, we simply add the perfect endings to the perfect stem, as we did for *portō*.

The verb *moneō* is conjugated as follows in the perfect tense:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>mo'nuī</i> , I warned, have warned	<i>monu'imus</i> , we warned, have warned
<i>monuis'ti</i> , you warned, have warned	<i>monuis'tis</i> , you warned, have warned
<i>mo'nuit</i> , he, she, it warned, <i>etc.</i>	<i>monuē'runt</i> , they warned, <i>etc.</i>

The perfects of *timeō* and *habeō* are like that of *moneō*. The perfect of *maneō* is *mānsī*, *mānsistī*, *etc.*; that of *videō* is *vīdī*, *vidistī*, *etc.*

Change the tense of each verb to the perfect, in the same person and number.

1. *Cōpiās in castrīs vidēmus.*
2. *Rōmānī galeās et scūta habent.*
3. *Populus prope tēctum manet.*
4. *Nūllum pērīculum timēs.*
5. *Cūr ad templum properātis?*
6. *Puerō praemium dabit.*
7. *Rēgīnam miseram monēbam.*

## ENGLISH ADJECTIVES AND LATIN ADJECTIVES

You have met some Latin adjectives that give us English adjectives with almost the same spelling. In one class the ending *-us* disappears; in another the *-us* becomes *-e*.

*rapidus, rapid*

*privatus, private*

Other English adjectives have *-y* where the Latin has *-ius*.

*ordinarius, ordinary*

*contrarius, contrary*

What is the corresponding Latin adjective for each of these English ones?

*contradictory*

*imaginary*

*peremptory*

Give the English adjective corresponding to each of the following Latin adjectives and explain its formation.

*acutus*

*frigidus*

*quietus*

*solus*

*amplius*

*magicus*

*secretus*

*superbus*

*auxiliarius*

*perfectus*

*severus*

*temporarius*

Some Latin adjectives ending in *-ius* or *-uus* give English adjectives in *-ious* or *-ous*.

*anxius*

*assiduus*

*continuus*

Some Latin adjectives came from nouns. The suffix *-alis* or *-aris* added to a Latin noun made an adjective meaning *pertaining to*.

NOUN

ADJECTIVE

*natura*

*naturalis*

*consul*

*consularis*

*miles*

*militaris*

What is the English adjective from each of the three Latin adjectives above? How does it differ in spelling from the Latin word?

Below are some Latin nouns with English adjectives. What is the Latin adjective from the noun?

*familia*, \_\_\_\_\_, *familiar*

*judicium*, \_\_\_\_\_, *judicial*

*lex*, \_\_\_\_\_, *legal*

*manus*, \_\_\_\_\_, *manual*

*mors*, \_\_\_\_\_, *mortal*

*pes*, \_\_\_\_\_, *pedal*

# REVIEW OF UNIT III

I. Find in the list a verb to complete each sentence below.

ambulō dēbēmus manēbunt manēre monēbit necābant  
necābunt portāte vidēbant vidēbis vidēbunt vident videt

1. Ā tergō villam vidēre (*we ought*).
2. Multōs virōs et multās fēminās (*you will see*).
3. Hieme hīc (*they will remain*).
4. Puerōs bonōs (*he will warn*).
5. In villā (*to remain*) dēbēmus.
6. Tamen puerī templa deōrum (*see*).
7. Fēminae Americam, patriam pulchram, (*saw*).
8. Virī Britanniam et Eurōpam (*will see*).

II. In the following paragraph find at least five words or phrases that can be translated by Latin adverbs.

Immediately he called together his friends and told them about his plan. At first they did not approve because they were already tired. And so on the next day only nine men wanted to fight. Afterward he again demanded aid. Then many were ready to help, and finally the troops were sufficiently strong.

III. For each blank supply an adjective in the correct form.

1. Scūtum est \_\_\_\_.
2. Pretium erat \_\_\_\_.
3. Cavernae \_\_\_\_ sunt in Italiā.
4. Jacula virōrum erant \_\_\_\_.
5. Rāmī \_\_\_\_ sunt aureī.
6. Virīscūta \_\_\_\_, galeās \_\_\_\_, gladiōs \_\_\_\_ habent.
7. Virī \_\_\_\_ sunt in castrīs \_\_\_\_.

IV. For each blank substitute ā, ab, ē, ex, or dē.

1. Tamen sagittāriī \_\_\_\_ proeliō properāre dēbuērunt.
2. Cum \_\_\_\_ tergō castra ācritē oppugnābantur, populus \_\_\_\_ oppidīs properāvit.
3. Monēte populum \_\_\_\_ hōc periculō.
4. Arma acūta \_\_\_\_ hōc virō portantur.
5. Centum agrī \_\_\_\_ virīs malīs vāstantur.

V. For each Latin verb give a related English verb and a connected noun.

adorno	definio	migro	prohibeo
comparo	exploro	occupo	reporto
consumo	libero	perturbo	transcribo



*Appius Claudius entering the senate*

UNIT

## IV *History and Legend*

### APPIUS CLAUDIUS—PUBLIC SERVANT

Appius Claudius, vir clārus, in Rōmā antiquā habitābat. Quod Rōma satis magnam cōpiam aquae bonae nōn habēbat, Appius longum aquaeductum (*aqueduct*) aedificāvit. Hic nōtus aquaeductus, Aqua Appia, aquam ab altīs locīs ad populum oppidī Rōmae portābat.

Appius quoque longam viam ab oppidō Rōmā ad oppidum Capuam aedificāvit. Haec via erat Via Appia.

Fāma Appiī Claudii erat magna propter hunc aquaeductum et hanc viam, sed in senātū (*senate*) Rōmānō quoque Appius erat nōtus. Tamen post multōs annōs Appius nōn saepe in senātū aderat quod jam caecus erat.

Ōlim Pyrrhus, Graecus, contrā Rōmānōs pugnābat, et populus Rōmānus propter magnam victōriam Pyrrhī dolēbat. Jam nūntius Graecus in senātū aderat et dēditionem (*surrender*) multōrum oppidōrum Rōmānōrum postulābat. Multi Rōmānī Graecōs timēbant et oppida Pyrrhō dare dēsiderābant.

Quamquam Appius aberat, tamen dē nūntiō audīvit. Statim auxiliō servōrum in senātum (*acc.*) properāvit, ubi nūntius Pyrrhī aderat.

Ibi dīxit, "Interdum amicī mei dolent quod sum caecus. Sed hodiē sum laetus quod illum nūntium in hōc locō nōn videō. Quam caeci estis, Rōmānī! Rōma erit tūta; illa oppida erunt tūta! Rōmānī in terrā Rōmānā nōn superābuntur!"

Propter Appium Claudium Rōmānī cōnsilium Pyrrhī nōn pro-

bāvērunt. Postea cōpiae Rōmānae ācrit̄er pugnāvērunt et Pyrrhum superāvērunt. Itaque Appius Claudius magnam fāmam habēbat quod Rōmae fidus erat.

#### WORDS WITH CLUES

**absum, abesse, āfuī**, be absent, be away  
**adsum, adesse, adfuī**, be present, be here  
**annus, -ī**, M. (*annual*), year  
**audīvit** (*audible*), heard  
**cōsiliū, cōsiliī**, N. (*counsel*), plan, advice  
**contrā, prep. with acc.**, contrary to, against  
**doleō, -ēre, -uī** (*doleful*), grieve, grieve for  
**fāma, -ae**, F. (*fame*), report; reputation

#### WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont.

**locus, -ī**, M. (*local*), place; *pl.*, loca, -ōrum, N.  
**nūntius, -ī**, M. (*announce*), messenger; message, news  
**probō, -āre, -āvi**, approve, approve of  
**satis, adv.** (*satisfactory*), sufficiently, enough

#### NEW WORDS

**caecus, -a, -um**, blind  
**ille, illa, illud**, that  
**propter, prep. with acc.**, on account of; because of  
**quam, adv.**, how, as, than  
**tūtus, -a, -um**, safe, unharmed

#### DECLENSION OF *hic* AND *ille*

The English word *this* has only two forms: *this*, singular, and *these*, plural. The Latin *hic*, *this*, has different forms for the different cases and genders.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hic</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>hu'jus</b>	<b>hu'jus</b>	<b>hu'jus</b>	<b>hō'rum</b>	<b>hā'rum</b>	<b>hō'rum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hoc</b>	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>

This word points out something, and so it is called a demonstrative adjective.

Another Latin demonstrative is *ille*, *that* (plural, *those*). It is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>il'le</b>	<b>il'la</b>	<b>il'lud</b>	<b>il'li</b>	<b>il'lae</b>	<b>il'la</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>illi'us</b>	<b>illi'us</b>	<b>illi'us</b>	<b>illō'rum</b>	<b>illā'rum</b>	<b>illō'rum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>il'li</b>	<b>il'li</b>	<b>il'li</b>	<b>il'lis</b>	<b>il'lis</b>	<b>il'lis</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>il'lum</b>	<b>il'lam</b>	<b>il'lud</b>	<b>il'lōs</b>	<b>il'lās</b>	<b>il'la</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>il'lō</b>	<b>il'lā</b>	<b>il'lō</b>	<b>il'lis</b>	<b>il'lis</b>	<b>il'lis</b>

A demonstrative adjective, like any other adjective, must agree in number, gender, and case with the noun it modifies.

You have already learned that an adjective can be used as a noun.

multi, *many men*

multa, *many things*

In the same way a demonstrative may be used as a pronoun.

ille, *that man*

illa, *those things*

The demonstratives *hic* and *ille* both point out persons or things. Usually *hic* refers to a person or thing near the speaker, while *ille* indicates a person or thing farther away. Sometimes *hic* and *ille* are used in the same sentence.

Hic liber est bonus; ille liber est malus, *This book is good; that book is bad.*

#### THE VERBS *adsum* AND *absum*

The verb *adsum* is made from *sum* and the prefix *ad*. The verb *absum* is made from *sum* and the prefix *ab*. Such verbs are called *compound verbs*.

*Adsum* and *absum* are conjugated like *sum*: *ad'sum*, *I am present*; *ad'es*, *you are present*, etc.; *ab'sum*, *I am absent, am away from*; *ab'es*, *you are absent, are away from*, etc.

Complete each sentence with a form of *absum* or *adsum*.

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Fēminae ( <i>are here</i> ).    | 5. Multi ( <i>were present</i> ).        |
| 2. Agricola ( <i>was here</i> ).   | 6. Puer ( <i>is absent</i> ).            |
| 3. In patriā ( <i>I will be</i> ). | 7. Puellae ( <i>have been away</i> ).    |
| 4. Ille ( <i>has been away</i> ).  | 8. Hodiē ( <i>they will be absent</i> ). |

Find in the list of Latin phrases one that completes each sentence correctly.

ā dextrā  
ā sinistrā

haec jacula  
hujus bellī

hōrum poētārum  
in proeliō

in silvīs  
virī et puerī

1. Sagittāriī ā sinistrā stetērunt; elephantī — stetērunt.
2. Primō — Pyrrhus Rōmānōs elephantīs superāvit.
3. Hodiē librī — nōn laudantur.
4. Amīcus tuus causam — nūntiābit.
5. — sunt viae lātae; ā dextrā sunt hortī.



# THE ROMAN GOVERNMENT

*A consul of Rome  
preceded by  
twelve attendants*

*A Roman judge*



*A man who held  
in turn  
all the offices  
that Rome offered  
—Julius Caesar*



*A meeting of the senate*



## THE TIMID SOUL

**L**ocus est Hispānia, prōvincia Rōmāna. Virī, fēminae, puerī, puellae in viā parvī oppidī stant aut ambulant. Galba, vir timidus, cum Titō, ā sinistrā stat. Nūntius dēfessus ā dextrā celeriter venit.

5 *Galba.* Quis est ille vir? Epistulās portat. Estne nūntius?

*Titus.* Ille vir est Pūblius, filius Sextī. Sextus in Galliā pugnat.

*Nūntius.* Epistulās ē Galliā portō. Sextus hās epistulās ad incolās hujus oppidī mittit. Barbarī Galliam oppugnant. Fortūna bellī est dubia. Perīculum est magnum!

10 *Galba.* Habēbantne Galli sociōs? Nōnne Galli auxilium postulāvērunt?

*Nūntius.* Ita, Galli auxilium postulāvērunt, sed multōs sociōs nōn habēbant.

*Titus.* Quī Gallīs auxilium dedērunt?

15 *Nūntius.* Incolae Britanniae Gallīs auxilium dedērunt. Galli et Britannī fortiter pugnavērunt, sed barbarī—

*Galba.* Quī oppida Gallōrum occupāvērunt? Quōrum agrōs vāstāvērunt?

*Nūntius.* Noctū barbarī agrōs Gallōrum vāstāvērunt et oppida  
20 occupāvērunt et—

*Virī et fēminae.* Galli sunt sociī nostrī. Gallōs juvāre dēbēmus!

*Galba.* Timentne Britannī barbarōs?

*Nūntius.* Minimē, aqua Britanniam ā Galliā sēparat. Sed jam perīculum Hispāniae est magnum. Mox barbarī oppida nostra  
25 oppugnābunt.

*Galba.* Heu! Aqua Hispāniam ā Galliā nōn sēparat. Gallōs timeō. Britannōs timeō. Barbarōs timeō. Heu! Heu!

### WORDS WITH CLUES

barbarus, -a, -um, barbarous; M. *as noun*, a barbarian

dubius, -a, -um (*dubious*), doubtful

fortiter, *adv.* (*fortitude*), bravely

mittit (*remit*), sends, is sending

socius, -ī, M. (*sociable*), ally, companion

venit (*advent*), comes

### NEW WORDS

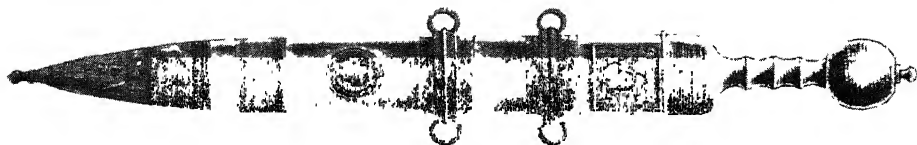
heu, oh me! alas!

-ne, attached to a word, to denote a question

nōnne, a word used to introduce a question which expects the answer "yes"

quis, quid, who, what





*This scabbard, in which some Roman officer carried his sword, was found in Spain*

## THE PRONOUN

In the following sentence notice that the word *him* is used instead of *boy*.

*The man saw the boy and warned him.*

A word which is used instead of a noun is called a *pronoun*.

The noun to which a pronoun refers is called its *antecedent*. In the sentence given above, *boy* is the antecedent of *him*.

The pronouns *I, you, he, she, it, we, and they* are called *personal pronouns*. In Latin you have already met forms of some personal pronouns: *mē, me; mihi, to me; nōs, we, us; tē, you; and tibi, to you*.

When the words *who, which, and what* are used to introduce questions, they are called *interrogative pronouns*.

The interrogative pronoun is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		
MASC. AND FEM.		NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> quis, who		quid, what
<i>Gen.</i> cu'jus, whose, of whom		cu'jus, of what
<i>Dat.</i> cui, to whom, whom ( <i>as indirect object</i> )		cui, to what
<i>Acc.</i> quem, whom ( <i>as direct object</i> )		quid, what ( <i>as direct object</i> )
<i>Abl.</i> quō, (from, with, by) whom		quō, (from, with, by) what
PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> quī, who	quae, who	quae, what
<i>Gen.</i> quō'rum, whose, of whom	quā'rum, whose, of whom	quō'rum, of what
<i>Dat.</i> qui'bus, to whom, whom ( <i>as ind. obj.</i> )	qui'bus, to whom, whom ( <i>as ind. obj.</i> )	qui'bus, to what ( <i>as ind. obj.</i> )
<i>Acc.</i> quōs, whom ( <i>as dir. obj.</i> )	quās, whom ( <i>as dir. obj.</i> )	quae, what ( <i>as dir. obj.</i> )
<i>Abl.</i> qui'bus, (from, with, by) whom	qui'bus, (from, by, with) whom	qui'bus, (from, with, by) what

In the singular the same forms of the interrogative pronoun are commonly used for the masculine and feminine, but the plural is regularly declined in the three genders.

## CASE OF THE INTERROGATIVE

The case of an interrogative pronoun is, of course, determined by its use in the sentence. In the following sentence the English interrogative, *whom*, is in the objective case, and the accusative will be required in the Latin.

Whom did you see?    Quem vīdistī?

## FORMS OF QUESTIONS

In each of the following Latin sentences the syllable **-ne** has been added to the first word.

Habetne poēta filiam?    *Has the poet a daughter?*

Estne Sicilia magna insula?    *Is Sicily a large island?*

The syllable **-ne** indicates that these sentences are questions. There is no separate English word for **-ne**. In English we indicate that a sentence is a question by the order of words and by the punctuation.

Questions of another form are introduced by **nōnne**.

Nōnne patriam tuam amās?    Do you not (Don't you) love your native country?

**Nōnne** implies the answer *yes*, but with **-ne** the answer expected is not indicated.

You have had questions introduced by **cūr** and **ubi**. With such interrogative words or interrogative pronouns **-ne** and **nōnne** are not used.

## ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS

In Latin one generally answers *yes* to a question by repeating the words of the question in the form of a statement.

Estne Sicilia magna insula?    Sicilia est magna insula.

One may answer *no* by repeating the words of the question as a statement with **nōn**.

Habetne poēta fīliam?    Poēta filiam nōn habet.

Sometimes **minimē** is used for *no* and *ita* for *yes*.

# RELIGION OF THE ROMANS



*A Lar, one  
of the gods  
of the household*



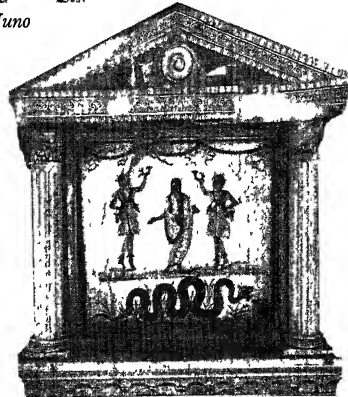
*Jupiter*



*Juno*



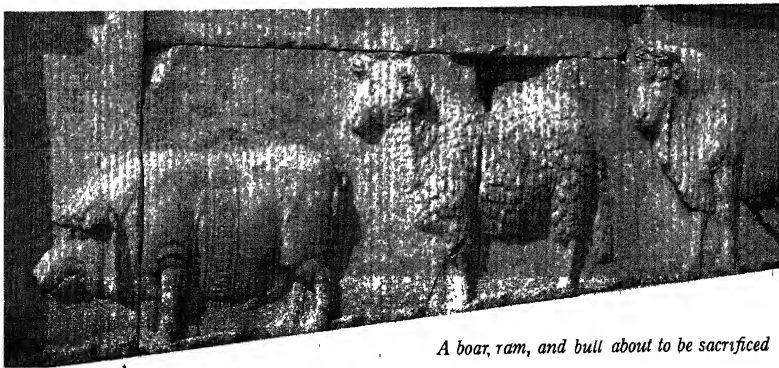
*Mars*



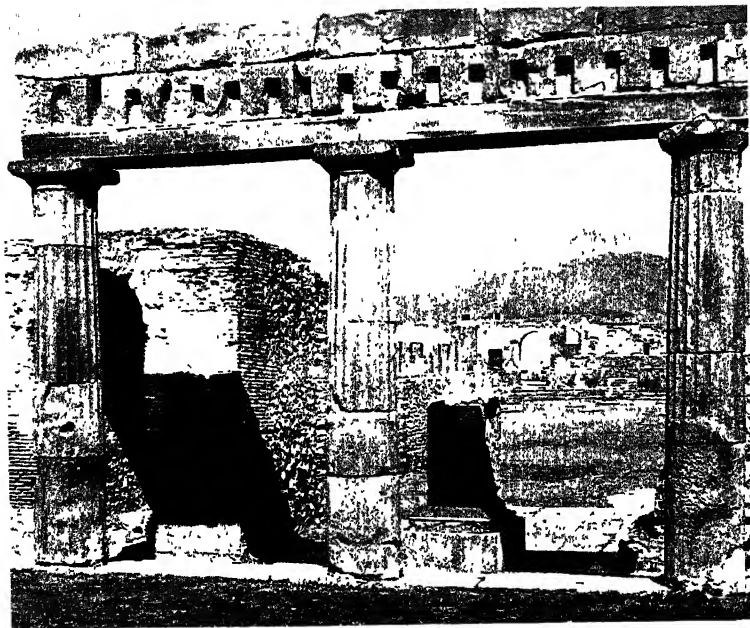
*A household shrine*



*Venus*



*A boar, ram, and bull about to be sacrificed*



*Vesuvius seen  
through an  
arch in  
Pompeii*

## VESUVIUS AND POMPEII

Plinius sum; cum avunculō meō habitābam. Villa nostra erat in locō altō inter oppidum Misēnum et ōram maritimam.

Ōlim māter (*mother*) mea in hortō villae ambulābat. Subitō illa clāmāvit, “Spectā flammās clārās! Spectā caelum! Quam obscurum  
5 est caelum! Quod periculum est propinquum?”

Caelum spectāvi. Circum Vesuvium flammae erant clārae et fūmus erat dēnsus. Statim Plinium, avunculum meum, vocāvi.

Avunculus Vesuvium spectāvit. Tum jussit, “Vocā servōs! Villae amicōrum nostrōrum sunt in magnō periculō; nōn longē ā Vesuviō  
10 absunt. Amicōs nostrōs juvāre dēbeō. Quī servi mē juvābunt?”

Avunculus meus cum multīs servīs ad ōram maritimam properāvit. Diū in hortō avunculum expectābam. Noctū quoque avunculum meum expectābam.

Postridiē erat magnus tremor terrae (*earthquake*); fūmus dēnsus  
15 caelum cēlāvit; cinis (*ashes*) erat dēnsus in hortō et circum mūrōs.

Nōs ā villā per viās Misēni properāvimus. Propter fūmum dēnsū viae erant obscurae; multi incolae territi per viās angustās errābant.

Post multās hōrās iterum ad villam lēniter ambulābāmus. Ibi avunculum meum expectābāmus.

20 Postridiē nūntius vēnit et mihi nūntiāvit, “Vesuvius Pompeiōs et Herculāneum vāstāvit. Avunculus tuus est mortuus.”

WORDS WITH CLUES

circum, *prep. with acc. (circumference)*, around  
 fūmus, -ī, M., fume, smoke  
 hōra, -ae, F., hour  
 inter, *prep. with acc. (interscholastic)*, between, among  
 mūrus, -ī, M. (*mural*), wall

WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont.

vēnit (venit), came

NEW WORDS

avunculus, -ī, M., uncle  
 jubeō, -ēre, jussī, order  
 longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance  
 quī, quae, quod, which, what

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

You are familiar with interrogative pronouns.

Quid videō? *What do I see?*

Sometimes an interrogative word is used to modify a noun.

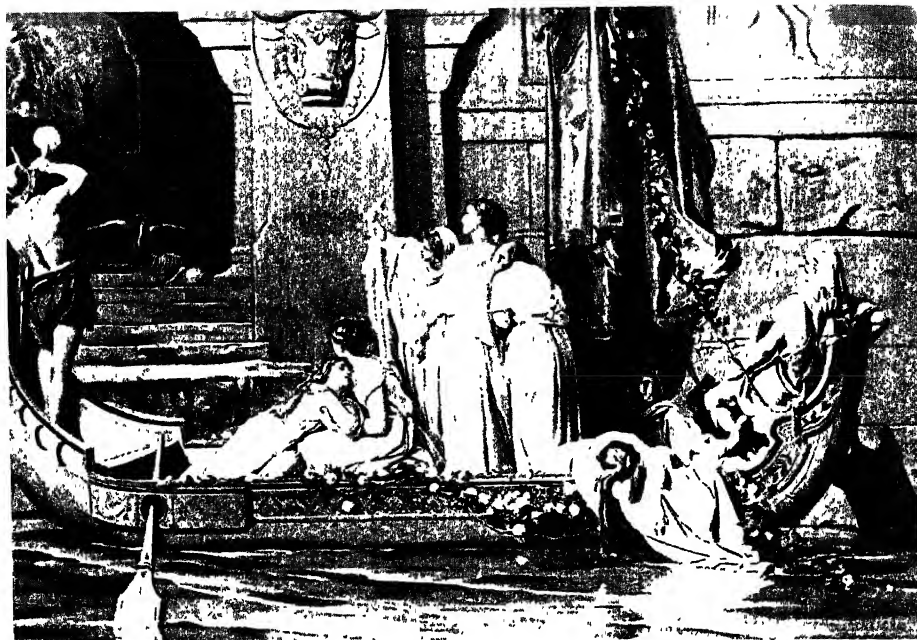
Quod oppidum videō? *What city do I see?*

Here **Quod** modifies **oppidum** and is therefore an *interrogative adjective*. Like any other adjective, an interrogative adjective must always agree in number, gender, and case with the noun it modifies.

	SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	
<i>Nom.</i>	quī, quis	quae	quod	which, what
<i>Gen.</i>	cu'jus	cu'jus	cu'jus	of which, what
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	to which, what
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	which, what
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	(from, with, by, in, on) which, what
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae	which, what
<i>Gen.</i>	quō'rum	quā'rum	quō'rum	of which, what
<i>Dat.</i>	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus	to which, what
<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae	which, what
<i>Abl.</i>	qui'bus	qui'bus	qui'bus	(from, with, by, in, on) which, what

Read each question and answer it in a Latin sentence.

1. Quod oppidum ā villā avunculī nōn longē aberat? 2. Quid Plīnius in caelō vidit? 3. Quōs avunculus vocāvit? 4. Quōrum villae erant in periculō? 5. Ad quem locum avunculus et servī properāvērunt? 6. Per quās viās Plīnius properāvit? 7. Quis Plīniō dē Vesuviō nūntiāvit? 8. Quae oppida Vesuvius vāstāvit?



*Victims for the Minotaur*

## THESEUS AND THE MINOTAUR

Crēta, insula nōta, ā Graeciā nōn longē abest. In hāc insulā Daedalus, vir ēgregius, magnum Labyrinthum aedificāvit. Hīc Mīnōtaurus habitābat et per multās et caecās viās hujus Labyrinthi errābat. Hoc mōnstrum nōn cibum, sed virōs, fēmīnās, puerōs, 5 puellās edēbat (*used to eat*).

Ōlim populus Athēnārūm filium rēgis (*of the king*) Crētae necāvit. Propter hoc factum malum, sacrificium postulābātur. Itaque pueri et puellae saepe ab oppidō Athēnis ad hunc Labyrinthum portābantur, ubi ā mōnstrō necābantur.

10 Thēseus, filius rēgis Athēnārūm, puer ēgregius et validus, maximē dolēbat.

Ita dixit, "Populus puerōs et puellās Mīnōtaurō dare nōn dēbet. Sum validus; Mīnōtaurum superābō. Hodiē pueri ad Crētā nāvīgant; cum cēteris nāvīgābō."

15 Itaque Thēseus cēteris cum pueris ad Crētā nāvīgāvit. Perīculum vidēbātur magnum, sed ab Ariadnā, filiā rēgis Crētae, Thēseus juvābātur. Ariadna Thēseō viam sēcrētā in Labyrinthum mōnstrāvit, et Thēseō filum (*ihread*) longum dedit.

Noctū Thēseus sēcrētō hoc filum ad jānuam Labyrinthī alligāvit (*tied*). Taedam quoque in Labyrinthum portāvit quod via erat obscura. Mīnōtaurus irātus Thēseum vidit et statim puerum necāre temptāvit.

Sed Thēseus erat validus et parātus; gladiō mōnstrum necāvit. Deinde sine periculō cēterōs puerōs cum multis et miseris viris, fēminis, puellis servāvit.

Dēnique auxiliō fili ad jānuam Labyrinthī tūtus iterum vēnit, ubi ab Ariadnā expectābatur.

#### WORDS WITH CLUES

factum, -ī, N. (*fact*), deed, act  
sēcrētō, *adv.*, secretly

#### NEW WORDS

cēterī, -ae, -a, *pl.*, the rest of, the other  
cibus, -ī, M., food

#### NEW WORDS—Cont

ēgregius, -a, -um, excellent, distinguished, unusual  
parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared  
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without  
taeda, -ae, F., torch  
videor, -ērī, seem

#### IMPERFECT PASSIVE

You have already met the imperfect active of the first and second conjugations. As you know, the tense sign of the imperfect is **-bā-**. The imperfect passive differs from the imperfect active only in having passive endings instead of the active endings you met on page 39. The vowel **-ā-** becomes short before the endings **-r** and **-ntur**.

The imperfect passive of the first and second conjugations is given below. Notice that the vowel preceding the tense sign is **-ā-** in the first conjugation and **-ē-** in the second conjugation.

#### SINGULAR

portā'bar, I was being carried  
portābā'ris, you were being carried  
portābā'tur, he, she, it was being carried

monē'bar, I was being warned  
monēbā'ris, you were being warned  
monēbā'tur, he, she, it was being warned

#### PLURAL

portābā'mur, we were being carried  
portābā'mini, you were being carried  
portāban'tur, they were being carried

monēbā'mur, we were being warned  
monēbā'mini, you were being warned  
monēban'tur, they were being warned

The imperfect passive is frequently translated by a simple past: *I was carried*, etc.

## THE FIRST MAN TO FLY

Olim Daedalus in insulā Crētā cum filiō Īcarō habitābat. Quamquam Daedalus erat vir ēgregius, tamen liber nōn erat. Captivus in eā insulā servābātur, sed semper viam fugae parāre temptābat. Neque terra neque aqua eī auxilium dedit.

5 Deinde in caelō avēs (*birds*) vīdit. Diū avēs spectābat.

Dēnique filiō dixit, "Illae avēs ālis volant. Nōs quoque volābimus. Hās avēs necābimus et pennīs eārum ālās parābimus."

Itaque Daedalus et Īcarus sagittīs multās avēs necāvērunt et pennās eārum servāvērunt. Auxiliō cērae magnās ālās parāvērunt.

10 Dēnique ālae erant parātae. Statim Daedalus eās temptāvit et Īcarum ālās temptāre invitāvit. Mox Īcarus cum Daedalō volābat.

"Ālae sunt validae, sed propter cēram prope sōlem (*sun*) volāre nōn dēbēmus," Daedalus filium monuit.

Primō Īcarus erat timidus et prope terram manēbat, sed nōn diū  
15 prope terram manēbat. Daedalus territus filium appellāvit et eum dē periculō iterum monuit. Sed Īcarus longē ā terrā et ab aquā per caelum altum volābat. Prope sōlem volābat.

Daedalus filium spectābat et propter audāciam ejus lacrimābat. Subitō cēra ā pennīs sēparābātur et braccia Īcarī erant sine ālis. In  
20 aquam puer cecidit (*fell*), et aqua eum cēlāvit.

Posteā Daedalus propter filium mortuum semper dolēbat et iterum in caelō nōn volāvit.

### WORDS WITH CLUES

appellō, -āre, -āvī (*appellation*),  
name, call

audācia, -ae, F. (*audacious*), bold-  
ness, daring

bracchium, -ī, N. (*bracelet*), arm

### NEW WORDS—Cont

fuga, -ae, F. (*fugitive*), flight  
lacrimō, -āre, -āvī (*lacrimal*), weep,  
cry

penna, -ae, F. (*pen*), feather  
prope, *prep. with acc.* (*propinquus*),  
near

volō, -āre, -āvī (*volatile*), fly

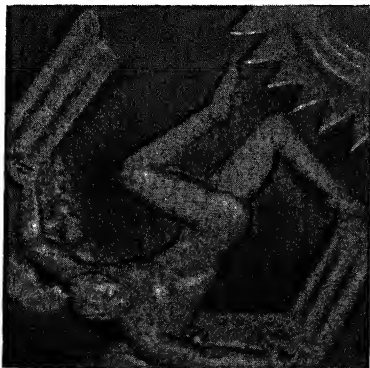
### NEW WORDS

āla, -ae, F., wing

cēra, -ae, F., wax

is, ea, id, that, this, *pl.*, those, these;  
*as pronoun*, he, she, it, *pl.*, they

neque, *conj.*, nor, and not; neque . . .  
neque, neither . . . nor



*A panel from a door in the memorial  
to the Wright Brothers at Kitty Hawk, N.C.*



## THE DEMONSTRATIVE *is*

You have learned two demonstratives: *hic*, *this*, and *ille*, *that*. There is also another important demonstrative, *is*.

When used as adjectives, the forms of *is* may be translated either *this* or *that*, as the sense requires, since *is* does not emphasize that the thing is near, as does *hic*, or that it is some distance away, as does *ille*.

Is puer nauta est, This boy (or that boy) is a sailor.

### PRONOUN USE OF *is*

The forms of *is* are very commonly used as pronouns, meaning *he*, *she*, *it*, *his*, *her*, *its*, etc., as shown in the translation below.

When *is* is used as a pronoun, it must agree with its antecedent in number and gender, but its case depends on the use in the sentence.

Ager est magnus. Vidēsne eum? The field is large. Do you see it?

In the example above, *eum*, a masculine singular form, is used, because the antecedent, *ager*, is masculine singular. In this instance, the masculine form, *eum*, is translated *it*, because in English *field* is neuter. *Eum* is accusative because it is the object of the verb *vidēs*.

The forms of *is* with its meanings as a pronoun are as follows:

	MASC.	SINGULAR FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	is, he	e'a, she	id, it
Gen.	e'jus, his	e'jus, her ( <i>possessive</i> )	e'jus, its
Dat.	e'i, to him, him ( <i>as indirect object</i> )	e'i, to her, her ( <i>as indirect object</i> )	e'i, to it, it ( <i>as indirect object</i> )
Acc.	e'um, him ( <i>as direct object</i> )	e'am, her ( <i>as direct object</i> )	id, it ( <i>as direct object</i> )
Abl.	e'ō, (from, with, by) him	e'ā, (from, with, by) her	e'ō, (from, with, by) it
	PLURAL		
Nom.	e'i } they ii }	e'ae, they	e'a, they, those things
Gen.	eō'rum, their	eā'rum, their	eō'rum, their
Dat.	e'is } to them, them iis } ( <i>as ind. obj.</i> )	e'is } to them, them iis } ( <i>as ind. obj.</i> )	e'is } to them, them iis } ( <i>as ind. obj.</i> )
Acc.	e'ōs, them ( <i>as dir. obj.</i> )	e'ās, them ( <i>as dir. obj.</i> )	e'a, them ( <i>as dir. obj.</i> )
Abl.	e'is } (from, with, by) them iis }	e'is } (from, with, by) them iis }	e'is } (from, with, by) them iis }

The forms *ii* and *iis* are pronounced in one syllable as if spelled *i* and *is*.



*Chimera—  
an Etruscan  
statue*

## THE CAPTURE OF VEII

Quamquam Veii, magnum oppidum Etruscōrum, erant prope Rōmam, tamen populus Veiorum saepe cum Rōmānīs pugnābat. Rōmānī Veios oppugnābant et mūrōs eōrum vehementer dēlēre temptābant. Sed mūrī erant altī et validī, et diū incolae Veiorum  
5 tūti vidēbantur.

Sed post multōs annōs incolae magnam cōpiam cibī nōn habēbant; multi erant aegrī; tamen cēteri incolae oppidum vehementer dēfendēbant.

Dēnique incola Veiorum in mūrō oppidī stābat. "Haec sunt verba ōrāculī," clāmāvit. "Veios nōn occupābitis, Rōmānī, dum aqua  
10 erit in lacū (*lake*) Albānō. Semper erit aqua in lacū. Dī semper Veios cūrābunt, et Veii semper erunt tūti."

Rōmānī respondērunt, "Es stultus! Oppidum tuum occupābitur; templa tua dēlēbuntur; dī Veiorum ad oppidum nostrum portābuntur; dī tui Rōmānōs cūrābunt."

15 Statim Rōmānus Camillus bonum cōsiliū mōnstrāvit. Cēteri virī id cōsiliū probāvērunt.

Noctū Camillus multōs Rōmānōs ē castris ad lacum Albānum sēcrētō dūxit. Sēcrētō hī virī magnum cuniculum (*tunnel*) sub terrā fodiēbant (*dug*). Celeriter labōrābant quod populus Veiorum in  
20 tectis erat. Dēnique per hunc cuniculum aqua ē lacū trāns campōs fluxit (*flowed*). Jam erat nūlla aqua in lacū Albānō.

Iterum multi Rōmānī Veiōs fortiter oppugnāvērunt. Iterum mūrōs vehementer dēlēre temptābant. Quamquam incolae Veiōrum diū et ācriter pugnāvērunt, tamen nōn jam tūti erant. Nulla aqua in lacū erat; itaque Rōmānī oppidum occupāvērunt. Verba ōrāculi erant vēra.

5

#### WORDS WITH CLUES

**campus**, -ī, M. (*camp*), level plain, plain  
**dēfendēbant**, (they) defended, were defending  
**dēleō**, -ēre, dēlēvī (*delete*), destroy  
**dūxit** (*conduct*), (he, she) led, did lead  
**respondeō**, -ēre, **respondī** (*respond*), answer, reply  
**sub**, *prep. with acc. or abl. (subway)*, under, below

#### WORDS WITH CLUES—Cont.

**vehementer**, *adv. (vehemently)*, violently, strongly  
**verbum**, -ī, N. (*verbal*), word  
**verus**, -a, -um (*veracity*), true

#### NEW WORDS

**aeger**, -gra, -grum, sick, ill  
**dum**, *conj.*, while, as long as  
**stultus**, -a, -um, stupid, foolish

#### FUTURE PASSIVE OF *portō* AND *moneō*

You have already met the future active of verbs of the first and second conjugations. In the future passive *portō* and *moneō* are conjugated as follows:

##### SINGULAR

<b>portā'bor</b> , I shall be carried	<b>monē'bor</b> , I shall be warned
<b>portā'beris</b> , you will be carried	<b>monē'beris</b> , you will be warned
<b>portā'bitur</b> , he, she, it will be carried	<b>monē'bitur</b> , he, she, it will be warned

##### PLURAL

<b>portā'bimur</b> , we shall be carried	<b>monē'bimur</b> , we shall be warned
<b>portābi'mini</b> , you will be carried	<b>monēbi'mini</b> , you will be warned
<b>portābun'tur</b> , they will be carried	<b>monēbun'tur</b> , they will be warned

The syllable -bi- is the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations. Notice that this tense sign has the form -bu- in the third person plural of both voices, -b- in the first person singular of both voices, and -be- in the second person singular of the passive.

#### *hic* AND *ille* AS PRONOUNS

The forms of *hic* and *ille* are sometimes used instead of the forms of *is* as pronouns meaning *he, she, it, his, her, him*, etc. The plural forms *hī, illī*, etc., mean *these* or *those (persons)*; the neuter *haec, illa*, etc., mean *these things* or *those things*.

## MANLIUS SAVES THE CAPITOL

Galli erant barbari, et Rōmāni eōs maximē timēbant. Jam Galli ā portis Rōmae nōn longē aberant. Propter magnum periculum multī incolae Rōmae manēre ibi nōn dēsiderābant; itaque ad oppida propinqua fūgērunt.

- 5 Virī validi sōli in oppidō manēbant. Tamen in tēctis nōn manēbant, sed in Capitoliō. Hic Juppiter et Jūnō et Minerva templa habēbant. In templō Jūnōnis erant ānserēs (*geese*) sacri.

- Quamquam Capitōlium propter templa ab hīs viris dēfendēbatur, tamen oppidum tōtum erat minimē tūtum. Portae Rōmae erant  
10 apertae, et mox Galli ferī adfuērunt; mox tēcta et templa et ārās dēlēbant.

- Dēnique noctū Galli viam sēcrētā vidērunt. Via erat dūra sed eōs ad mūrū Capitoliī dūxit. Quamquam Rōmāni Capitōlium vigilābant, tamen Gallōs nōn vidērunt. Nullus sonus erat; Galli  
15 erant maximē quiētī.

Sed in templō Jūnōnis sacri ānserēs strepuērunt (*cackled*), et eōrum clangor Mānlium excitāvit. Statim Mānlius cēterōs Rōmānōs vocāvit et ad mūrū properāvit.

- Prīmus Gallus jam in mūrō stābat. Sē servāre temptāvit, sed  
20 celeriter Mānlius eum gladiō necāvit. Post prīmum Gallum erant multi socii ejus, sed statim ā Gallō cadenti (*falling*) dē viā angustā dēpulsī sunt (*were knocked off*). Mox hī Galli quoque ā Mānliō et ab amicis ejus necābantur et Capitōlium servābatur.

*This mosaic is so cleverly made that the ducks seem to be modeled*



### WORDS WITH CLUES

clangor (*clang*), noise  
dēfendēbatur, was being defended  
excitō, -āre, -āvi (*excite*), arouse, alarm  
ferus, -a, -um, fierce, wild  
fūgērunt (*fuga*), (they) fled  
porta, -ae, F. (*portal*), gate  
prīmus, -a, -um (*prīmō, prime*), first  
sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred  
sonus, -ī, M. (*sonorous*), sound, noise  
sui (*suicide*), of himself, herself, itself, themselves  
tōtus, -a, -um (*total*), whole

### NEW WORD

dūrus, -a, -um, hard, difficult

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

As you have already learned, the demonstratives *is*, *hic*, and *ille* are sometimes used as pronouns. One use of such a pronoun is as the object of a verb whose subject refers to a different person or thing.

Mānlius virōs excitāvit et eōs servāvit, *Manlius aroused the men and saved them.*

In the following sentence the object, *himself*, means the same person as the subject, *he*.

Sē servat, *He saves himself.*

A pronoun which is thus used is called a *reflexive pronoun*.

The Latin reflexive pronoun is used in the genitive, dative, accusative, or ablative case to denote the same person as the subject of the sentence in which it stands.

The Latin reflexive pronoun meaning *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *themselves* is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Genitive:</i>	su'ī	su'ī
<i>Dative:</i>	si'bi	si'bi
<i>Accusative:</i>	sē, sē'sē	sē, sē'sē
<i>Ablative:</i>	sē, sē'sē	sē, sē'sē

Choose the correct Latin pronoun for each English pronoun.

1. Tōtum oppidum nōn dēlēbitur; (*it*) vigilāmus.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{illum} \\ \text{id} \\ \text{sē} \end{array} \right.$
2. Vir ferus (*himself*) necāvit.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sē} \\ \text{suī} \\ \text{eum} \end{array} \right.$
3. Haec verba erant dūra sed vēra; populus (*them*) audīvit.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sibi} \\ \text{ea} \\ \text{sē} \end{array} \right.$
4. Portae servābuntur, quod (*them*) dēlēre nōn temptābimus.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{eās} \\ \text{sēsē} \\ \text{ea} \end{array} \right.$
5. Hic puer (*to himself*) cārus est, sed cēteris nōn grātus est.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{suī} \\ \text{eī} \\ \text{sibi} \end{array} \right.$

## PREFIXES IN LATIN AND IN ENGLISH

As you know, a new word is often formed, both in Latin and in English, by adding a prefix to a word. Many Latin adjectives add the prefix *in-* to make a negative.

*in-* + *credibilis* = *incredibilis*, *incredible*

Explain the make-up and meaning of each of these adjectives.

<i>inauditus</i>	<i>infelix</i>	<i>insanus</i>	<i>invalidus</i>
<i>incertus</i>	<i>infinitus</i>	<i>insciens</i>	<i>invictus</i>

The prefix *in-* also gives a negative meaning to some nouns.

<i>indignitas</i>	<i>infamia</i>	<i>injuria</i>
-------------------	----------------	----------------

This prefix is called inseparable, because it cannot be used as a separate word. There is another prefix *in* which is used with verbs and which has the meaning of *in* or *into*.

<i>incedo</i> , <i>move in</i>	<i>induco</i> , <i>lead in</i>
--------------------------------	--------------------------------

Many new Latin verbs are made by adding a prefix to a known verb. Common Latin prefixes used in making compound verbs are *ab*, *ad*, *circum*, *de*, *ex*, *per*, *re-*, *trans*.

<i>abduco</i> , <i>lead away</i>	<i>educo</i> , <i>lead out</i>
<i>adduco</i> , <i>lead to</i>	<i>perduco</i> , <i>lead through</i>
<i>circumduco</i> , <i>lead around</i>	<i>reduco</i> , <i>lead back</i>
<i>deduco</i> , <i>lead down</i>	<i>transduco</i> , <i>lead across</i>

The prefix *com-*, meaning *with* or *together*, appears in some words as *co-*, *col-*, *con-*, or *cor-*.

<i>conduco</i>	<i>colloco</i>	<i>confirmo</i>
----------------	----------------	-----------------

Give the meaning of each of the following verbs.

<i>abeo</i>	<i>circumspecto</i>	<i>depono</i>	<i>permitto</i>
<i>admitto</i>	<i>comporto</i>	<i>exeo</i>	<i>renuntio</i>

Other Latin prefixes used with verbs are *inter*, *among*, *between*; *prae*, *before*, *in front*; *pro*, *before*, *forward*.

Give the meaning of these compound verbs.

<i>interpono</i>	<i>praecedo</i>	<i>praesto</i>	<i>promoveo</i>
<i>intervenio</i>	<i>praecurro</i>	<i>produco</i>	<i>provideo</i>

The same three prefixes occur in many English words.

Which of the Latin words on this page have English derivatives? How do the English words differ in meaning from the Latin?

# REVIEW OF UNIT IV

I. Select the correct form and tell why you chose it.

1. Celeriter populus ā servō impigrō { moneor.  
monentur.  
monētur.
2. Cibus ā populō maximē { postulābat.  
postulātur.  
postulāvit.
3. Sagittārius prope saxum lātum et altum { excitāvī.  
excitātur.  
excitantur.
4. Quam male hoc tēctum ā filiīs { aedificāris!  
aedificātur!  
aedificābit!
5. Ubi vir haec facta dūra nūntiābat, fēminae { dolēbat.  
doluērunt.  
dolētur.

II. Explain the grouping of these words, all of which refer to time.

hodiē	interdum	aestāte	interdiū	deinde
postridiē	saepe	hieme	noctū	dēnique
	semper		vesperī	mox
nunc		ante		olim
tum		post		primō

III. From the following list of adverbs select one that replaces each blank in the sentences below.

bene	fortiter	lēniter	maximē	postea	statim
celeriter	hic	longē	minimē	postridiē	tum
diū	ita	male	nunc	satis	vehementer

1. Primō puerī — ambulāvērunt; deinde, territī, — ambulāvērunt.
2. Puerī impigrī — labōrant; puerī cēterī — labōrant.
3. Oppidum ā silvā dēnsā — abest.
4. Amāsne hunc campum? Respondē “—” aut “—.”
5. Nūntium — expectāvistī; nūntius — nōn vēnit; tamen — aderit.



*Illa est sagitta Trojana!*

UNIT

V *Tales of Adventure*

ASCANIUS AND THE WHITE STAG

Postquam Graeci Trōjam dēlēvērunt, Trōjānus Aenēās ad Ītaliā cum filiō suō et multis sociis nāvigāvit. Hic erat Latium, rēgnum Latīni. Aenēās prō sē et suis sociis agrōs rogāvit. Latīnus Aenēae et ejus viris benignus erat et eis agrōs dedit. Tamen multī incolae  
 5 Latī Trōjānis inimīci erant.

Prope castra Trōjāna agricola Tyrrhus habitābat; trēs filiōs et filiam, Silviam, habēbat. Ōlim Tyrrhus et ejus filiū cervum album paene mortuum ē silvā portāvērunt. Cervum Silviae dedērunt.

Silvia suum cervum cūrābat et amābat. Māne per silvās cervus  
 10 errābat sed vesperī semper ad Silviam redībat (*came back*).

Ōlim Ascanius, filiū Aenēae, cum sociis suis in silvā errābat et cervum album vidit. Quod prō sē glōriam dēsiderābat et nōn quod Silviae inimīcus erat, Ascanius cervum necāre temptābat. Itaque eum sagittā suā vulnerāvit.

15 Cervus ad casam Silviae fūgit. Ubi Silvia cervum paene mortuum vidit, vehementer lacrimāvit.



Sed ubi Tyrrhus sagittam vīdit, irātus erat. Dixit, “Illa est sagitta Trōjāna! Perfīdī Trōjānī! Cervum filiae meae sagittis vestris vulnerāvistis; sagittis nostris, igitur, Ascanium et sociōs ejus vulnerābimus.”

Itaque Tyrrhus cum filiis suis et amicis eorum castra Trōjāna vehementer oppugnāvit; hoc erat initium bellī.

cervus, -ī, M., stag; cerva, -ae, F., deer  
fūgit, fled  
igitur, *adv.*, therefore  
inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly; M.  
and F. as noun, enemy  
initium, -ī, N., beginning  
māne, *adv.*, in the morning  
paene, *adv.*, almost

perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous  
postquam, *conj.*, after  
rogō, -āre, -āvī, ask, request  
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their;  
his own, etc.  
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*of more than one person*)  
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, wound

#### USE OF *SUUS*

In the first sentence below, the word *his* refers to the subject. In the second sentence the word *their* refers to the subject.

*The boy praises his friends.*

*The boys praise their friends.*

In both sentences the possessors are the same persons as the subjects. The Latin word for *his*, *her*, *its*, or *their* when referring to the subject is *suus*.

*Puer amicōs suos laudat.*

*Puerī amicōs suos laudant.*

To decide whether *suos* in such a sentence means *his*, *her*, *its*, or *their*, notice whether the subject is singular or plural and whether it is masculine, feminine, or neuter. In the first sentence above, *suos* is translated *his*, because *puer* is masculine singular; in the second sentence above, *suos* is translated *their*, because *puerī* is plural. In the following sentence *suos* is translated *her*, because *puella* is feminine singular.

*Puella amicōs suos laudat, The girl praises her friends.*

#### DECLENSION OF *SUUS*

*Suus* is an adjective declined like *meus* and *tuus*. Since it is an adjective, it must agree in number, gender, and case with the noun it modifies. Thus, in the sentence above, *suos* is masculine plural accusative, to agree with *amicōs*.

## *ejus* AND *eōrum*

Sometimes *his*, *her*, or *their* does not refer to the subject of the sentence.

*They praise his friends.      He praises their friends.*

In the sentences above, the possessors are not the same persons as the subjects. When thus used, *his*, *her*, *its* are expressed by *ejus*; and when *their* is similarly used, it is expressed by *eōrum* (or *eārum*).

Amicōs ejus laudant.

Amicōs eōrum laudat.

*Ejus* is the genitive singular of *is*, and *eōrum* (*eārum*) is the genitive plural. Since they are pronouns in the genitive case, their forms are not affected by the nouns which they modify.

Sometimes a possessive word is omitted in Latin when the meaning is clear, even though the corresponding English sentence requires a possessive. Possessives are to be supplied in translation whenever the sense requires.

Fēmina filiam amat, *The woman loves her daughter.*

Choose the correct form to complete each sentence.

1. Librum (suum, *ejus*) nōn habet; librum (suum, *ejus*) habet.
2. Librōs (suos, *eōrum*) habent; librōs (suos, *eōrum*) habemus.
3. Postquam arma (sua, *eōrum*) vīdimus, (ea, sua) timēbāmus.
4. Virī perfidī fūgerunt; cōpiae (nostrae, vestrum) igitur (eōs, suos) superāvērunt.
5. Pirāta amīcis (suīs, *ejus*) arcam pulchram mōnstrat; amīcī (suī, *ejus*) arcam maximē laudant.

Find a phrase that correctly completes each sentence.

casae suae

filiam *ejus*

filium suum

in oppidum

castra *eōrum*

filiam suam

filius *ejus*

oppida *eōrum*

fīlia sua

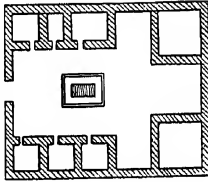
filium *ejus*

in agrō suō

oppida sua

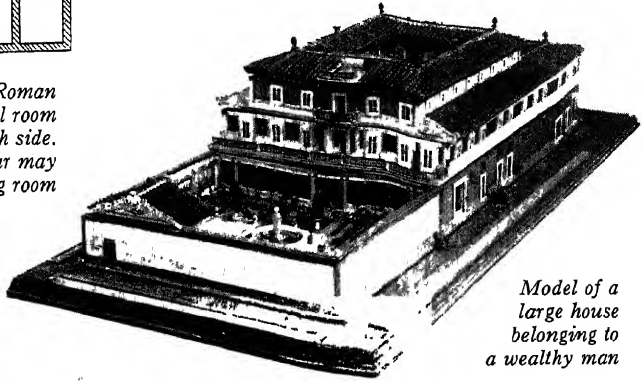
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Agricola ( <i>in his own field</i> )<br>labōrat. | 5. ( <i>His son</i> ) nōn laudō.                  |
| 2. ( <i>His son</i> ) quoque in agrō<br>labōrat.    | 6. Ab hōc locō ( <i>their camp</i> )<br>vidēmus.  |
| 3. Barbarī ( <i>their own towns</i> )<br>dēlēbant.  | 7. ( <i>Their towns</i> ) oppugnābuntur.          |
| 4. Vir ( <i>his son</i> ) laudat.                   | 8. Fēmina saepe ( <i>her daughter</i> )<br>monet. |
|   | 9. ( <i>Her daughter</i> ) monēmus.               |

*The center of family life in this Pompeian house was the atrium*

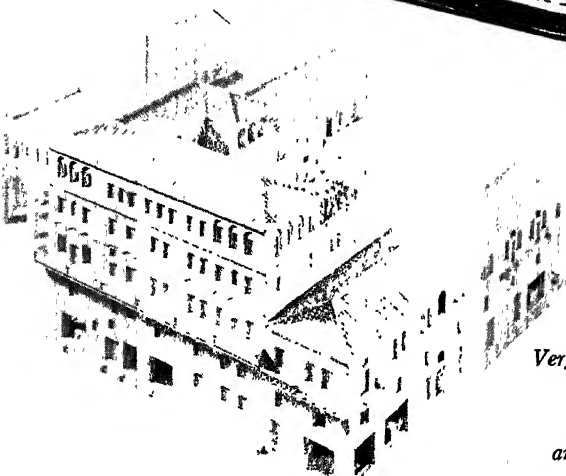


*This plan of a simple Roman house shows the large central room with small rooms at each side. The corner rooms at the rear may have been kitchen and dining room*

## ROMAN HOUSES



*Model of a large house belonging to a wealthy man*



*Very modern in appearance is this ancient Roman apartment house, shown here in a model. Notice the height of the building and the shops on the ground floor*

## SERTORIUS AND DIANA'S DEER

**O**lim in Italiā Sulla, dux Rōmānus, cōpiās Marii, cōsulis Rōmānī, superāvit. Postea Sertōrius, amicus Marii, ad Hispāniam fugit.

Tum Hispānī rēgēs nōn habēbant, sed ducēs bonōs et bona cōsilia bellī habēbant. Quamquam Hispānī multis Rōmānīs inimīcī erant, tamen Sertōrium amābant, quod mātribus et patribus lēgēs bonās dedit; liberīs eōrum scholās bonās dedit. Magistrī Rōmānī in scholīs Hispāniae labōrābant. Liberī Hispānōrum togās Rōmānās habēbant et in scholīs linguam Rōmānam discēbant (*learned*).

Postea Sertōrius pācem ōrāvit, sed ducēs Rōmānī eī respondērunt, “Rōma pācem virīs perfidīs nōn dat.”

Sertōrius igitur in silvis Hispāniae contrā cōpiās Rōmānās pugnāre parābat.

Ōlim Hispānus cervam albam Sertōriō dedit. Hoc dōnum Sertōriō erat grātum. Cervam cōpiīs suis mōnstrāvit et dīxit, “Haec cerva est dōnum Diānae. Dum ea est tūta, Diāna cōpiīs nostrīs auxilium dabit.”

Postea Sertōrius dīxit, “Per hanc cervam Diāna mihi dīcit et mē dē periculīs nostrīs monēbit.”

Multae vōcēs clāmāvērunt, “Sertōrius est frāter noster! Diāna frātrī nostrō auxilium dabit. Rōmānōs superābimus.”

Diū haec cerva alba Sertōrium juvābat; Rōmānī saepe superābantur. Dēnique cerva in silvam errābat, neque Hispānī eam iterum vīdērunt. Nōn jam fortūna Sertōriō benigna erat. Dēnique ejus inimīcī eum necāvērunt.



cōnsul, -ulis, M., consul, a Roman  
magistrate

dux, ducis, M., leader

frāter, frātris, M., brother

lēx, lēgis, F., law

līberī, -ōrum, M., *pl.*, children

lingua, -ae, F., tongue, speech,  
language

magister, -trī, M., teacher, master

māter, mātris, F., mother

pater, patris, M., father

pāx, pācis, F., peace

rēx, rēgis, M., king

schola, -ae, F., school

vōx, vōcis, F., voice

*An ancient bronze statue*

### THIRD DECLENSION

The declension to which a Latin noun belongs can always be determined from the ending of the genitive singular. First-declension nouns have the ending *-ae* in the genitive, and second-declension nouns have *-i*. All third-declension nouns have the genitive singular ending in *-is*, but the endings of the nominative singular are of many kinds. Examples of the various types will be given in the following lessons.

#### MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE FIRST CLASS

Nouns of the third declension may be divided into two classes. Those of the first class have the genitive plural ending in *-um*. Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

*māter*, F., *mother*   *rēx*, M., *king*   *dux*, M., *leader*   *prīnceps*, M., *chief*

##### SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mā'ter</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>dux</i>	<i>prīn'ceps</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mā'tris</i>	<i>rē'gis</i>	<i>du'cis</i>	<i>prīn'cipis</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mā'trī</i>	<i>rē'gī</i>	<i>du'cī</i>	<i>prīn'cipī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mā'trem</i>	<i>rē'gem</i>	<i>du'cem</i>	<i>prīn'cipem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mā'tre</i>	<i>rē'ge</i>	<i>du'ce</i>	<i>prīn'cipe</i>

##### PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mā'trēs</i>	<i>rē'gēs</i>	<i>du'cēs</i>	<i>prīn'cipēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mā'trum</i>	<i>rē'gum</i>	<i>du'cum</i>	<i>prīn'cipum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mā'tribus</i>	<i>rē'gibus</i>	<i>du'cibus</i>	<i>prīnci'pibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mā'trēs</i>	<i>rē'gēs</i>	<i>du'cēs</i>	<i>prīn'cipēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mā'tribus</i>	<i>rē'gibus</i>	<i>du'cibus</i>	<i>prīnci'pibus</i>

#### ENDINGS

You will observe that the case endings in this class of the third declension are as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nominative:</i>	—	-ēs
<i>Genitive:</i>	-is	-um
<i>Dative:</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Accusative:</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Ablative:</i>	-e	-ibus

## A SOLDIER'S LETTER

**M**ārcus Sextō salūtem dicit. Sī valēs, bene est; valeō. Sumus in magnā silvā Galliae, et legiō nostra castra in rīpā magnī flūminis posuit (*pitched*). Hoc flūmen lātum et altum est.

Militēs bene labōrāvērunt et circum castra mūrū aedificāvērunt.

- 5 Multī rāmōs et saxa ex silvā portābant, multī equōs cūrābant, multī tabernācula parābant, sed cum illis militibus nōn labōrābam. Cum paucis militibus cibum in dēnsā silvā petēbam (*was seeking*).

- In hāc regiōne sunt multa genera bēstiārū. Sunt nūlli leōnēs in Galliā, sed in silvā ursās paucās et multōs cervōs vidimus. Multōs  
10 cervōs necāvimus et corpora eōrum ad castra portāvimus.

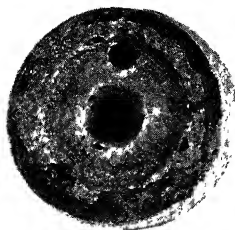
- Hodiē cum sociis paucis iterum in silvam ambulāvi. Nōn longē ā castris nostris parvum flūmen vidimus. Silvam circumspectāvimus, sed nūllōs Gallōs vidimus. In mediō flūmine erat magnum saxum. Cum sociis meis ad hoc saxum natāvi. In hōc saxō diū sēdimus et  
15 militēs in dextrā rīpā flūminis spectāvimus. Pauci in flūmine natābant; capita eōrum in aquā vidimus.

- Laetus sum quod in hāc regiōne diū manēbimus. Germānī magnās cōpiās trāns Rhēnum habent et hanc regiōnem vāstāre parant, sed eōs nōn timēmus. Galli Germānōs timent quod corpora valida habent  
20 et sunt barbari. Princeps Germānus est homō perfidus, sed ducēs nostrī bona cōsilia bellī habent et hominēs Galliae iuvāre dēsiderant.

Nōne legiō tua mox erit in Galliā? Tum tē vidēbō et tibi multa dē hāc regiōne nārrābō. Valē.

bēstia, -ae, F., beast, animal  
caput, capitis, N., head  
corpus, corporis, N., body  
flūmen, flūminis, N., river  
genus, generis, N., kind, sort  
homō, hominis, M., man, human  
being  
legiō, -ōnis, F., legion, *a Roman division of soldiers (4000 to 6000 men)*

leō, -ōnis, M., lion  
medius, -a, -um, middle, the middle  
of  
mīles, militis, M., soldier  
natō, -āre, -āvi, swim  
pauci, -ae, -a, *pl.*, few, a few  
princeps, principis, M., chief, prince,  
leader  
ripa, -ae, F., bank (*of a stream*)  
salūs, salūtis, F., safety; salūtem  
dicit, gives greetings  
sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sit, be seated;  
settle down, settle  
sī, conj., if  
tabernāculum, -ī, N., tent  
valeō, -ēre, -ui, be well; valē (*at  
end of a letter*), farewell



*Roman  
writing materials*



## MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Among other masculine nouns and feminine nouns in the first class of the third declension are these.

<b>mīles</b> , M., <i>soldier</i>	<b>mercātor</b> , M., <i>trader</i>	<b>homō</b> , M., <i>man</i>
<b>legiō</b> , F., <i>legion</i>	<b>calamitās</b> , F., <i>calamity</i>	

These words illustrate different formations of the nominative singular, but they are all declined in the same way.

## NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST CLASS

Many neuter nouns of the third declension belong to the same class as the masculine and feminine nouns which you met on page 91, that is, they have the genitive plural in *-um*. Neuter nouns of this class are declined as follows:

**flūmen**, N., *river*   **caput**, N., *head*   **corpus**, N., *body*   **genus**, N., *kind*

### SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i> flū'men	ca'put	cor'pus	ge'nus
<i>Gen.</i> flū'minis	ca'pitis	cor'poris	ge'neris
<i>Dat.</i> flū'minī	ca'pitī	cor'porī	ge'nerī
<i>Acc.</i> flū'men	ca'put	cor'pus	ge'nus
<i>Abl.</i> flū'mine	ca'pite	cor'pore	ge'nere

### PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> flū'mina	ca'pita	cor'pora	ge'nera
<i>Gen.</i> flū'minum	ca'pitum	cor'porum	ge'nerum
<i>Dat.</i> flūmi'nibus	capi'tibus	corpo'ribus	gene'ribus
<i>Acc.</i> flū'mina	ca'pita	cor'pora	ge'nera
<i>Abl.</i> flūmi'nibus	capi'tibus	corpo'ribus	gene'ribus

Change the italicized words to plural and make any other necessary changes.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Parvum <i>caput</i> vidī.<br>2. Temptā nārrāre dē <i>bellō</i> Rōmānō.<br>3. <i>Corpus militis</i> validum erat.<br>4. Militēs trāns illud <i>flūmen</i> properābant. | 5. <i>Mīles</i> in rīpā <i>flūminis</i> lātī sedēbat.<br>6. <i>Homō</i> in rīpā illius flūminis vulnerābātur.<br>7. Aut in flūmine <i>natō</i> aut in rīpā <i>sedeō</i> . |
|--|---|

## THE BLIND POET

**V**ir in summō colle ambulat; lyram portat. Quamquam est caecus, celeriter ambulat. Cum virō in viā dūrā est parva puella.

*Puella.* Nox est et in silvā avēs et animālia silent. Via est obscura; lūnam nōn videō quod nūbēs eam cēlant.

5 *Vir.* Longē ā tēctō nostrō absumus. Es dēfessa et nūllum cibum habēmus.

*Puella.* Undique collēs et montēs sunt. Neque urbem neque oppidum videō. Tamen nōn longē lūmen videō. Lūmen est in parvō tēctō.

*Vir.* Appropinquābimus et cibum rogābimus, quod dēfessus sum et  
10 nūllam pecūniam habeō. Illi virī nōn barbarī sunt et cibum dabunt. Pecūniam nōn rogābimus.

In tēctō parvō agricola et puer sedent. In fenestrā tēctī est lucerna. Nōn jam via est obscura quod subitō per nūbēs lūna vidētur.

*Puer [magnā vōce].* Ecce, pater! Virum et parvam puellam videō. Ad  
15 tēctum appropinquant.

*Agricola.* Virum et puellam appellāre dēbēmus. Eīs cibum dabimus; vir est dēfessus.

Puer ad jānuam properāvit; virum et puellam appellāvit.

*Vir.* Tēctum meum longē trāns mare abest. Caecus sum et nūllam  
20 pecūniam habeō.

*Agricola.* Sed es homō, et homō hominem juvāre dēbet!

Itaque vir cum puellā in tēctum vēnit. Agricola eīs cibum dedit. Post cēnam vir caecus lyram suam ōrāvit et dē urbe longinquā et dē bellō Trōjānō cantāvit.

25 Caecus erat Homērus, clārus poēta Graeciae.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, approach  
avis, avis, -ium, F., bird  
cantō, -āre, -āvi, sing

collis, collis, -ium, M., hill  
longinquus, -a, -um, distant  
lūmen, lūminis, N., light  
mare, maris, -ium, N., sea, ocean  
mōns, montis, -ium, M., mountain  
nox, noctis, -ium, F., night  
nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, F., cloud  
silēō, -ēre, siluī, be silent  
summus, -a, -um, highest; highest  
part of, top of  
undique, adv., on all sides, from all  
sides  
urbs, urbis, -ium, F., city



*Poeta caecus*



## MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE SECOND CLASS

Nouns of the third declension which make up the second class end in *-ium* in the genitive plural. Practically all masculine and feminine nouns of the second class have (a) the same number of syllables in the nominative and the genitive singular or (b) two consonants immediately preceding the ending of the genitive singular: *nūbēs, gen., nūbis; nox, gen., noctis.*

<i>collis, M., hill</i>	<i>nox, F., night</i>	<i>mōns, M., mountain</i>
<i>nūbēs, F., cloud</i>	<i>urbs, F., city</i>	

### SINGULAR

<i>Nom. col'lis</i>	<i>nū'bēs</i>	<i>nox</i>	<i>urbs</i>	<i>mōns</i>
<i>Gen. col'lis</i>	<i>nū'bis</i>	<i>noc'tis</i>	<i>ur'bis</i>	<i>mon'tis</i>
<i>Dat. col'lī</i>	<i>nū'bī</i>	<i>noc'ti</i>	<i>ur'bī</i>	<i>mon'tī</i>
<i>Acc. col'lem</i>	<i>nū'bem</i>	<i>noc'tem</i>	<i>ur'bem</i>	<i>mon'tem</i>
<i>Abl. col'le</i>	<i>nū'be</i>	<i>noc'te</i>	<i>ur'be</i>	<i>mon'te</i>

### PLURAL

<i>Nom. col'lēs</i>	<i>nū'bēs</i>	<i>noc'tēs</i>	<i>ur'bēs</i>	<i>mon'tēs</i>
<i>Gen. col'lium</i>	<i>nū'bium</i>	<i>noc'tium</i>	<i>ur'bium</i>	<i>mon'tium</i>
<i>Dat. col'libus</i>	<i>nū'bibus</i>	<i>noc'tibus</i>	<i>ur'bibus</i>	<i>mon'tibus</i>
<i>Acc. col'lēs</i>	<i>nū'bēs</i>	<i>noc'tēs</i>	<i>ur'bēs</i>	<i>mon'tēs</i>
<i>Abl. col'libus</i>	<i>nū'bibus</i>	<i>noc'tibus</i>	<i>ur'bibus</i>	<i>mon'tibus</i>

## NEUTER NOUNS OF THE SECOND CLASS

The second class of third-declension nouns has a number of neuters. These end in *-e, -al, or -ar* in the nominative.

<i>animal, animālis, N., animal</i>	<i>exemplar, exemplāris, N., example</i>
<i>mare, maris, N., sea</i>	

These nouns differ from neuter nouns of the first class in that the genitive plural ends in *-ium*, the ablative singular ends in *-ī*, and the nominative and accusative plural end in *-ia*. As with all neuter nouns, the nominative and accusative singular are alike, and the nominative and accusative plural are alike. For their declension, see page 314, 5.

## GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

You can remember the gender of third-declension nouns in this way. Nouns ending in *-tor* are usually masculine; in *-iō, -tās, or -tūs*, feminine; in *-al, -ar, -e, or -t*, neuter.

## ANDROCLES AND THE LION

Androclēs erat servus dominī Rōmānī in Āfricā. Quod ejus dominus erat malus, Androclēs in loca fera fūgit, ubi in spēluncā obscurā latēbat.

Sed ōlim leō ferus in hanc spēluncam vēnit ubi Androclēs sedēbat, et fugitīvum magnopere terruit. Tamen, servus nōn sē mōvit. Leō lēniter ad Androclem vēnit, et pedem suum, longā spīnā vulnerātum, mōnstrāvit. Androclēs benignus ex pede leōnis spīnam celeriter remōvit.

Jam leō servum benignum amāre vidēbātur. Cum amīcō suō manēre dēsīderābat. Itaque diū homō et leō in spēluncā obscurā habitāvērunt.

Sed dēnique milītēs Rōmānī fugitīvum procul ā spēluncā vīdērunt. Androclēs, sonō pedum monitus, celeriter fūgit, sed milītēs eum hastīs vulnerāvērunt. Quod Androclēs erat servus, dux milītum eum ad dominum ejus dūxit.

Dominus servum vulnerātum ad Ītaliām portāvit. Hic vir malus dixit, "Imperātor Rōmānus est amīcus meus; crās in arēnā ā leōnibus ferīs necāberis."

Postridiē milītēs armātī Androclem in arēnam portāvērunt. Statim leō ferus ad servum appropinquāvit. Subitō leō stetit et servum spectāvit. Tum ad eum lēniter vēnit et pedem mōnstrāvit. Nōn jam leō erat ferus; Androclēs erat amīcus.

Primō populus erat irātus quod leō servum nōn necāvit. Sed, ubi dē leōne et spīnā audīvit, imperātor, magnopere mōtus, Androclem et leōnem liberāvit.

armātus, -a, -um, armed; M. *pl. as*  
*noun*, armed men, soldiers  
 crās, *adv.*, tomorrow  
 dominus, -ī, M., master  
 imperātor, -ōris, M., commander,  
 emperor  
 lateō, -ēre, -uī, lurk, hide, be con-  
 cealed

magnopere, *adv.*, greatly, very much  
 manēre, to remain  
 pēs, pedis, M., foot, paw  
 procul, *adv.*, at a distance, far  
 spelunca, -ae, F., cave, den  
 spīna, -ae, F., thorn  
 terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten,  
 terrify



*From an ancient bas-relief*

## USE OF PARTICIPLES

There are certain verb forms which not only denote action, but also tell something about a person or thing, very much as an adjective does.

*The boy, frightened by the noise, called for help.*

In the sentence above, the word *frightened* is a form of the verb *frighten*, but it also tells something about the situation or condition of the boy. It is called a *participle*, and it shares something of the character of a verb and of an adjective. It has the character of a verb in that it denotes action, and it has the character of an adjective in that it modifies a noun or pronoun.

## FORMS OF THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

The perfect passive participle of *portō* is *portātus*, -a, -um, translated either *having been carried* or *carried*.

The perfect participle of *juvō* is *jūtus*, -a, -um; of *dō* is *datus*, -a, -um (differing from *portātus* in that the a is short). The perfect participles of all the other verbs of the first conjugation which you have met thus far are formed like that of *portō*;<sup>1</sup> for example, *laudātus*, *amātus*.

The participle of *moneō* is *monitus*, -a, -um, meaning *having been warned* or simply *warned*. Some other second-conjugation verbs form the perfect passive participle like *moneō*; for example, *dēbitus*, -a, -um; *habitus*, -a, -um.

## DECLENSION OF THE PARTICIPLE

The perfect passive participle is declined like *bonus*. Like any adjective, a participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun it modifies.

Puer, ā patre monitus,  
ad scholam properābat.

{ The boy, having been warned by his  
father, was hurrying to school,  
or  
The boy, warned by his father, was  
hurrying to school.

The Latin participle is usually placed at the end of the participial phrase.

<sup>1</sup>The verb *stō* has no perfect participle.



## PICUS—KING AND WOODPECKER

**P**icus, rēx Latii antiqui, magnam rēgiam in mediō campō habēbat. Circē, maga clāra, prope rēgiam Picī habitābat. Magnam et malam potestātem habēbat; saepe hominēs in bēstiās aut in avēs mūtāvit. Ōlim Circē Picum vidit et statim rēgem amāvit. Sed Picus Circam nōn amāvit; nympham pulchram hujus regiōnis amāvit.

Dēnique Picus nympham in mātirimōnium dūxit. Postridiē civēs et uxōrēs civium ad magnam cēnam convocāvit. Sed ante cēnam Pīcus cum paucis comitibus in silvam propinquam vēnit. Circē quoque in silvam sēcrētō properāvit et sub altā arbore stetit. Tum comitēs rēgis, magnopere territi, spectāculum mirum spectābant. Ubi Pīcus ad hanc arborem appropinquāvit, maga invidiōsa fōrmam ejus mūtāvit.

Nōn jam caput Picī corōnā sed cristā (*crest*) adōrnātur; manūs (*hands*) ejus in ālās mūtantur; pedēs ejus in pedēs avis; oculi ejus in parvōs oculōs avis. Nōn jam vōcem hominis habet; ōs (*mouth*) ejus in rōstrum mūtātur. Multī colōrēs in corpore et in ālis videntur. Pīcus rēx jam est Pīcus avis.

Hōra cēnae vēnit; civēs et uxōrēs eōrum aderant; rēgīna aderat; sed Rēx Pīcus aberat. Subitō per apertam portam rēgiae avis pulchra, multīs colōribus adōrnāta, volāvit. Circum magnam rēgiam errāvit; tum ē fenestrā celeriter volāvit.

Jam Pīcus avis in arboribus et in rīpīs flūminis, aut in silvīs aut in hortīs habitat. Semper clāmat, “Ōlim rēx fui et corōnam habui; nunc avis sum et rōstrō meō cibum in arbore inveniō (*find*).”

arbor, -oris, F., tree  
civis, civis, -ium, M. and F., citizen  
comes, comitis, M. and F., companion  
corōna, -ae, F., crown  
invidiōsus, -a, -um, jealous  
maga, -ae, F., witch

mīrus, -a, -um, strange, remarkable  
oculus, -ī, M., eye  
potestās, -tātis, F., power  
rōstrum, -ī, N., beak  
uxor, -ōris, F., wife

### PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

There are certain forms of a verb which show important facts regarding its conjugation. These four forms of each Latin verb are commonly listed in a vocabulary. They are called *principal parts*.

*Present Active (first person singular):* portō  
*Present Infinitive:* portāre  
*Perfect Active (first person singular):* portāvī  
*Perfect Passive Participle:* portātum

## PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FIRST-CONJUGATION VERBS

Most verbs of the first conjugation form their principal parts like **portō**. Among the verbs given thus far, there are three that do not.

**dō, dare, dedī, datum**  
**juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum**  
**stō, stāre, steti**

The verb **stō** has no perfect passive participle; **dō** is different in having the **a** short in the infinitive and in the perfect participle. You will remember that **dō** also has short **a** in all forms of the present tense except the second person singular, **dās**, and in all forms of the imperfect and future.

## STEMS OF THE VERB

A Latin verb regularly has three stems: present, perfect, and participial.

### PRESENT STEM

The present stem is found by dropping the **-re** of the infinitive.

*Infinitive:* **portāre**                      *Present Stem:* **portā-**

The present stem is used to form the tenses of the present system: present, imperfect, and future, both active and passive.

### PERFECT STEM

The perfect stem is found by dropping **-ī** from the first person singular of the perfect active.

*Perfect Active:* **portāvī**                      *Perfect Stem:* **portāv-**

The perfect stem is used only in the active voice. You have already learned one tense which is formed on the perfect stem: the perfect active. You will learn the others later.

### PARTICIPIAL STEM

The participial stem is found by dropping **-um** from the perfect participle.

*Perfect Participle:* **portātum**                      *Participial Stem:* **portāt-**

Only a few forms aside from the perfect participle are made on the participial stem. You will learn these later.

## LATIN NOUNS AND ENGLISH NOUNS

Many Latin nouns of the third declension give us English nouns which have the same spelling and similar meanings: **animal**, *animal*; **labor**, *labor*.

What is the Latin word for each of the following nouns?

*color*                      *error*                      *honor*                      *omen*                      *victor*

Some English nouns come from Latin nouns ending in **-io**. Such nouns end in **-n** because they are made from the stem of the Latin noun, which ends in **-n**: **educatio**, *education*; **opinio**, *opinion*.

What, then, is the Latin word for each of the following nouns?

*accommodation*                      *description*                      *expectation*                      *inflation*

Some English nouns ending in **-y** come from Latin nouns ending in **-tas**: **calamitas**, *calamity*; **infirmitas**, *infirmity*.

What is the Latin word for each of the following nouns?

*antiquity*                      *dignity*                      *liberty*                      *security*

Some third-declension nouns ending in **-o** have corresponding English words ending in **-e**: **altitudo**, *altitude*.

What is the Latin for each of the following words?

*longitude*                      *magnitude*                      *multitude*

With what familiar Latin adjective is each of these connected?

Many Latin nouns ending in **-or** have come unchanged into English: *dictator*, *spectator*. In such cases the **-or** is a Latin suffix and has the same meaning as in English—one *who*.

There is an English word spelled exactly like each of the following words. What does each of these Latin words mean?

<b>curator</b>	<b>gladiator</b>	<b>monitor</b>	<b>orator</b>
<b>educator</b>	<b>moderator</b>	<b>narrator</b>	<b>victor</b>

Give the English noun which comes from each Latin noun.

<b>clamor</b>	<b>dictator</b>	<b>humanitas</b>	<b>regio</b>	<b>suspicio</b>
<b>collectio</b>	<b>difficultas</b>	<b>recitatio</b>	<b>religio</b>	<b>terror</b>

# REVIEW OF UNIT V

---

I. Choose the correct verb form to complete each sentence.

1. Sagittārius in hōc proeliō (*will be wounded*).  
vulnerābitur      vulnerābātur      vulnerābat      vulnerātur
2. Vir ā servō (*will be feared*).  
timēbat      timēbitur      timēbit      timēbuntur
3. Ōlim illa puella trāns Tiberim (*was swimming*).  
natābit      natābunt      natābat      natat
4. Novem oppida (*will be destroyed*).  
cūrābitur      dēlēbat      movēbitur      dēlēbuntur
5. Magna castra Rōmāna māne (*will be moved*).  
movēbitur      oppugnābuntur      manēbunt      movēbuntur
6. Captivī natāre ad ripam (*will try*).  
temptābuntur      temptābit      temptābunt      temptābant
7. Rōmānī dare decem puerōs et decem puellās (*were ordered*).  
jubēbantur      jubēbuntur      jubēbant      jubēbunt

II. Read the following paragraphs and answer the Latin questions below.

Sextus est avunculus Jūliae; Fulvia est amita Jūliae; Cornēlia est comes Jūliae. Jūlia in casā Sexti et Fulviae habitat.

Sextus multōs amīcōs habet; Sextus saepe eōs amīcōs in viis videt. Mārcus est amīcus Sexti, et Sextus saepe Mārcum ad casam invitat. Sed hodiē Mārcum nōn videt.

Jūlia saepe Cornēliam ad casam amitae invitat. Interdum amita Jūliae dōna Cornēliae dat. Interdum Sextus dōnum Mārcō dat. Mārcus saepe cum Jūliā et Cornēliā ambulat. Interdum Fulvia cum Sextō et Mārcō ambulat.

1. Cujus amīcus est Mārcus?
2. In quōrum casā Jūlia habitat?
3. Ā quō Mārcus saepe invitātur?
4. Quid Sextus Mārcō dat?
5. Quae amita Jūliae Cornēliae dat?
6. Quōs Sextus saepe in viis videt?
7. Quem hodiē nōn videt?
8. Quis Cornēliam ad casam Fulviae invitat?
9. Cui Sextus dōnum interdum dat?
10. Cui Fulvia dōna dat?

VI *The Birth of a Nation*

In his long epic poem, the Aeneid, Vergil tells how Aeneas, after escaping from Troy, wandered for years around the Mediterranean, searching for the location of the kingdom that, according to prophets, he was to rule. The part of the story here retold deals with events leading up to the fulfillment of the prophecy—his winning of the Latin princess Lavinia and the union of the Latin and Trojan peoples.

## BAD OMENS

Lāvinia Turnum, rēgem Rutulōrum, amābat, sed mala ōmina eōrum mātrimōnium prohibuērunt.

In mediō hortō rēgiae ubi Lāvinia cum patre, rēge Latīnō, habitābat, arbor sacra erat. Ōlim multae apēs ā marī trāns Tiberim volāvērunt et ad urbem appropinquāvērunt. Prīmō circum mūrōs urbis volāvērunt; dēnique in hortum volāvērunt et in arbore sacrā sēdērunt.

Comitēs rēgis et populus erant territī. Servi apēs terrēre temptāvērunt, sed apēs in arbore mānsērunt. Militēs tubās inflāre jussī sunt, sed apēs mānsērunt. Ducēs ad rēgiam vocātī sunt et rēx Latīnus ē somnō excitātus est. Tum rēx territus deōs ōrāvit.

Vōx magna respondit, "Apēs sunt ōmen. Jam advena appropinquat. Apēs trāns mare ad urbem tuam volāvērunt et in summā arbore sēdērunt; advena in summā arce mox sēdēbit."

Postridiē Latīnus ōmen iterum vidit. Lāvinia prō ārā stābat ubi Latīnus ignem sacrum incendēbat (*was kindling*). Subitō flammae comam longam Lāviniae occupāvērunt. Puella territa per rēgiam fugit. Sed flammae subitō cessāvērunt (*ceased*) et Lāvinia servāta est.

Rēx, hīs ōminibus magnopere territus, in silvam ad ōrāculum sacrum properāvit. Hic mediā nocte Latīnus magnās vōcēs audīvit.

Hae vōcēs ei dicere vidēbantur, "Nōn Turnus, sed advena Lāviniam in mātrimōnium dūcet (*fut.*). Advenae erunt filii tui, Ō Latine; advenae nōmen tuum habēbunt. Advenae, Trōjānī nunc appellātī, mox Latīnī appellābuntur. Hī advenae nōmen Latīnum ad stellās portābunt; gēns tua erit clāra."

advena, -ae, M., stranger, foreigner  
apis, apis, -ium, F., bee  
arx, arcis, -ium, F., citadel  
coma, -ae, F., hair  
dicere, to say  
gēns, gentis, -ium, F., nation  
ignis, ignis, -ium, M., fire

inflō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, blow into,  
blow; play on  
nōmen, nōminis, N., name  
prohibeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum, prohibit,  
prevent  
somnia, -i, M., sleep  
tuba, -ae, F., trumpet



## PERFECT PASSIVE OF *portō* AND *moneō*

The perfect passive, unlike the other tenses which you have met, is not formed by adding person endings to a stem. Instead, the perfect passive participle is used with the present tense of *sum*. Two separate words are used to represent each person and number.

The verbs *portō* and *moneō* are conjugated as follows in the perfect passive:

### SINGULAR

<i>portā'tus sum</i> , I was carried, I have been carried	<i>mo'nitus sum</i> , I was warned, I have been warned
<i>portā'tus es</i> , you were carried, you have been carried	<i>mo'nitus es</i> , you were warned, you have been warned
<i>portā'tus est</i> , he, she, it was carried; he, she, it has been carried	<i>mo'nitus est</i> , he, she, it was warned; he, she, it has been warned

### PLURAL

<i>portā'ti sumus</i> , we were car- ried, we have been carried	<i>mo'niti sumus</i> , we were warned, we have been warned
<i>portā'ti estis</i> , you were carried, you have been carried	<i>mo'niti estis</i> , you were warned, you have been warned
<i>portā'ti sunt</i> , they were car- ried, they have been carried	<i>mo'niti sunt</i> , they were warned, they have been warned

The participle used in forming the perfect passive agrees with the subject in gender and number.

*Puella laudāta est*, *The girl has been praised.*

*Puer laudātus est*, *The boy has been praised.*

*Pueri laudātī sunt*, *The boys have been praised.*

## PREDICATE NOUN WITH PASSIVE FORMS

As you have already learned, a noun or pronoun which is used after some form of the verb *sum*, and which means the same thing as the subject, is called a predicate noun. It is in the nominative case.

Like the forms of *sum*, the passive forms of *appellō* and other words of *naming* and *calling* may have a predicate noun.

*Viri Galli appellābantur*, *The men were called Gauls.*

*Puer Mārcus appellātur*, *The boy is called Marcus.*

In the first sentence *Galli* refers to the same people as the subject *virī*. In the second sentence *Mārcus* refers to the same person as *puer*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SECOND-CONJUGATION VERBS

The principal parts of seven second-conjugation verbs which have appeared in preceding lessons are given below, with their stems.

dēbeō	dēbere	dēbuī	dēbitum	lateō	latēre	latuī	—
	dēbē-	dēbu-	dēbit-		latē-	latu-	
habeō	habere	habuī	habitus	sileō	silēre	siluī	—
	habē-	habu-	habit-		silē-	silu-	
moneō	monere	monuī	monitum	timeō	timēre	timuī	—
	monē-	monu-	monit-		timē-	timu-	
terreō	terrere	terruī	territum				
	terrē-	terru-	territ-				

The last three verbs in the list above have no perfect passive participle.

### DIFFERENT ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT STEM

All the second-conjugation verbs given above have the perfect ending in -uī. But this is not true of all verbs of this conjugation. Other ways of forming the perfect are seen in the following:

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain  
 jubeō, jubere, jussī, jussum, order, command  
 moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, move  
 sedeō, sedere, sēdī, sessum, sit  
 videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum, see  
 dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētum, destroy  
 respondeō, respondere, respondī, respōnsum, answer, reply

In the numbered list find a Latin word equivalent to each English phrase.

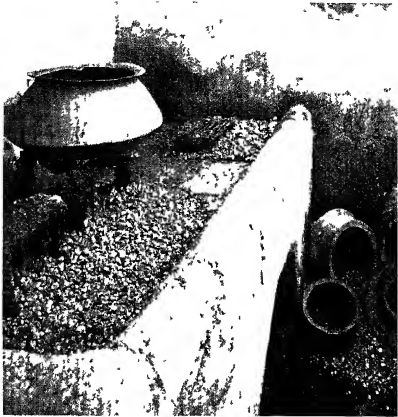
- |              |               |                      |                   |
|--------------|---------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. fuērunt   | 9. movent     | (a) he advised       | (h) they were     |
| 2. fuistī    | 10. mōvērunt  | (b) he answers       | (i) having been   |
| 3. jussērunt | 11. respondet | (c) he has remained  | warned            |
| 4. jussī     | 12. respondit | (d) I helped         | (j) we saw        |
| 5. jūvī      | 13. terruistī | (e) she has answered | (k) you have been |
| 6. mānsit    | 14. timuistī  | (f) they have moved  | (l) you feared    |
| 7. monitī    | 15. vidimus   | (g) they ordered     |                   |
| 8. monuit    |               |                      |                   |

FURNISHINGS OF  
THE HOUSE



*A portable  
Roman stove*

*Stove and  
cooking pots  
from a  
Pompeian kitchen*

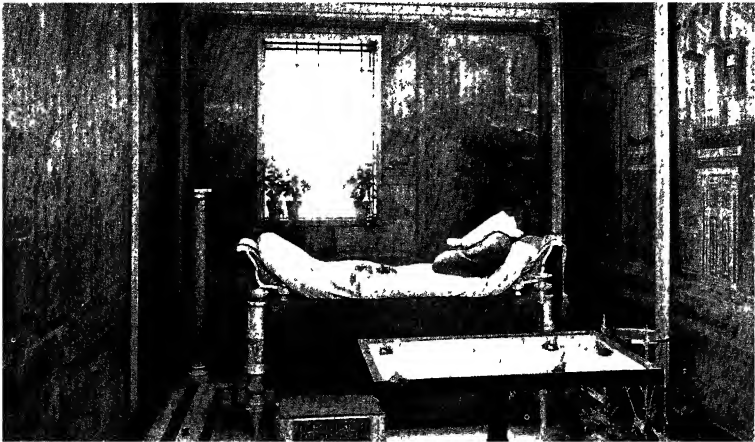


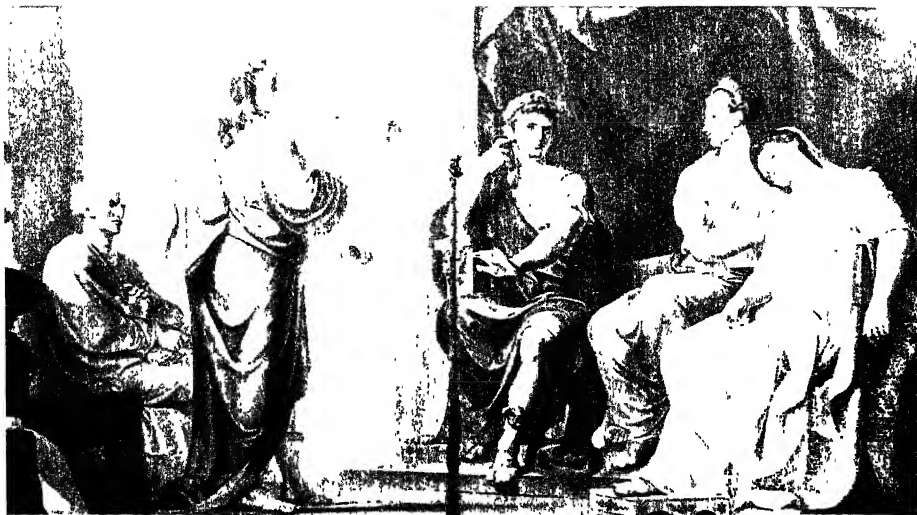
*Lamp*



*Glass bottles*

*Reconstruction of a Roman bedroom*





Vergil reading his long poem, the Aeneid

## AN AMBIGUOUS PROPHECY

Postquam Trōja ā Graecis vāstāta est, Aenēās, dux Trōjānus, cum sociis suis ad Thrāciam nāvigāvit.

In litore erat tumulus. Hic tumulus parvis arboribus cēlātus est. Aenēās paucos rāmōs ab arbore remōvit quod āram adōrnāre dēsiderāvit. Sed ubi sanguinem in rāmīs vidit magnopere territus erat.

Tum vōx ē tumulō clāmāvit, "Ō Aenēās, mē miserum vulnerāvistī. Sum Polydōrus Trōjānus. Rēx hujus terrae mē necāvit et hīc sub hōc tumulō corpus meum cēlāvit. Fuge (*flee*) ab hīs litoribus periculōsis sine morā!"

Hīs verbis mōti, Aenēās et socii ejus ā litoribus Thrāciae fūgērunt. Īnsula Dēlos, ubi erat templum Apollinis, nōn longē aberat. Hic Aenēās auxilium dei rogāvit.

Ita Aenēās ōrāvit, "Ō Apollō, dā Trōjānis domicilium idōneum; dā gentem validam et urbem mānsūram (*lasting*); dā nobis ōmen bonum."

Vōx dei respondit, "Exquīrite (*seek*) antiquam mātrem vestram. Ibi Aenēās erit rēx, et liberi ejus erunt rēgēs."

"Ubi est māter nostra antiqua?" rogāvērunt socii Aenēae.

Tum sine morā Anchisēs, pater Aenēae, dixit, "In insulā Crētā initium gentis nostrae fuit. Illa insula est māter nostra antiqua."

Itaque Trōjāni laeti, ventis portāti, ad Īnsulam Crētā nāvigāvērunt, ubi parvam urbem aedificāvērunt. Sed postea pestilentia multos Trōjānos necāvit.

Tum Aenēas ā deīs suīs ita monitus est, “Crēta nōn est antīqua māter vestra. Longē ab hāc īnsulā in terrā Ītaliā tūtum domicilium vōs expectat.”

domicilium, -ī, N., home  
 idōneus, -a, -um, suitable  
 lītus, litoris, N., seashore, beach  
 mora, -ae, F., delay  
 nōbīs, dat. and abl. of nōs, us

sanguis, -inis, M., blood  
 tumulus, -ī, M., mound, tomb  
 ventus, -ī, M., wind  
 vōs, you (nom. and acc. pl.)

#### ABLATIVE WITH *cum*

On page 28 you learned that *cum*, meaning *with*, is followed by the ablative.

Cum amīcō ambulō, *I walk with my friend.*

In the sentence above, *amīcō* denotes the *person in company with whom* the act is done. Hence it is called the *ablative of accompaniment*.

There is another common use of the ablative with *cum*, which denotes the way an act is done. This is called the *ablative of manner*.

Ibi magnā cum difficultāte parvum oppidum aedificāvit, *With great difficulty he built a small town there.*

#### KINDS OF ABLATIVES

You are already familiar with the ablative of agent and the ablative of means.

Ursa ā mīlite necāta est, *The bear was killed by the soldier.*

Ursa hastā necāta est, *The bear was killed with a spear.*

The ablative of agent shows the person by whom the act is done, just as the ablative of means shows the means by which an act is done.

Remember these points about ablatives:

1. The ablative of accompaniment usually has *cum*.
2. The ablative of agent is used only with the passive voice and always has *ā* or *ab*.
3. The ablative of manner usually has *cum*.
4. The ablative of means never has a preposition.

## THIS IS NOT THE PLACE

**N**āvibus parātīs, Aenēās iterum trāns mare ab insulā Crētā nāvigāvit. Tamen ubi longē ā litore āfuit, et caelum undique et undique mare vīdit, magna tempestās eum per undās periculōsās in vada portāvit. Dēnique Aenēās cum sociīs suis ad insulam vēnit.

5 Hīc Trōjānī dēfessī multa animālia in litore vidērunt. Pauca animālia necāvērunt et cēnam et sacrificia parāvērunt. Sed subitō dē caelō avēs ferae circum eōs volāvērunt. Haec mōnstra habēbant corpora avium, capita fēminārum; Harpyiae appellābantur. His mōnstrīs vīsīs, Trōjānī territī fūgērunt. Postea, verbis ducis Aenēae  
10 excitātī, contrā Harpyiās pugnāre temptābant, sed haec erat difficultās —etiam gladiīs acūtis terga dūra avium nōn vulnerāta sunt.

Subitō Harpyia fera magnā cum vōce clāmāvit, “Animālia nostra necāvistis; nōs necāre temptāvistis. In hāc terrā igitur pācem numquam habēbitis. In Ītaliā urbem dēsiderātam habēbitis.”

15 Propter terrōrem mortis Trōjānī in hōc locō manēre nōn jam audēbant. Itaque, mente mūtātā, ab insulā celeriter nāvigāvērunt.

Deinde Aenēās prope ōram Graecam nāvigāvit, et dēnique cum Trōjānīs cēterīs ad terram vēnit ubi Helenus erat rēx. Helenus, filius rēgis Trōjānī, erat laetus ubi amīcōs vīdit, et eōs ad rēgiam dūxit.

20 Ibi eīs cibum et multa dōna dedit.

Tum, auxiliō deī prō Aenēā rogātō, Helenus dixit, “Magna erunt perīcula et magnae erunt difficultātēs; per multa maria nāvigābitis, sed dēnique in Ītaliā domicilium tūtum et idōneum post itinera periculōsa habēbitis.”

audeō, -ēre, dare

etiam, *adv.*, even, also

iter, *itineris*, N., road; journey,  
march; route, course

mēns, *mentis*, -ium, F., mind,  
purpose

mors, *mortis*, -ium, F., death

nāvis, *nāvis*, -ium, F., ship, boat

numquam, *adv.*, never

unda, -ae, F., wave

vadum, -ī, N., shoal, ford

### THE INDEPENDENT PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION

A phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun and a participle is sometimes used in a sentence without being closely connected with any other word in the sentence.

*A new leader having been chosen, we may expect better results.*

In this sentence the phrase *A new leader having been chosen* is not directly connected with any word in the rest of the sentence. Such a phrase is said to be independent of the rest of the sentence.

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

The case which is used in Latin for such independent constructions is the ablative. In the sentence on page 108 as an example the word for *leader* would be put in the ablative in Latin, and the participle for *having been chosen* would agree with it in case as well as in gender and number. This use of the ablative is called the *ablative absolute*—the word *absolute* here meaning virtually “independent.”

Nāvibus parātis, Aenēās ab insulā nāvigāvit, *The ships having been prepared, Aeneas sailed from the island.*

Auxiliō rogātō, Helenus dē periculīs dixit, *Aid having been asked, Helenus spoke about the dangers.*

Often an adjective or another noun is used instead of a participle as the second part of the ablative absolute.

Amicō meō aegrō, nōn manēbō, *My friend (being) sick, I shall not remain.*

Sextō duce, milītēs semper fortiter pugnābant, *Sextus (being) leader, the soldiers always fought bravely.*

When we translate an ablative absolute of which the second part is an adjective or a noun, we often supply the participle *being*, as in the illustrative sentences above.

## FREE TRANSLATION OF THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

In English, independent phrases corresponding to the literal translation of the ablative absolute are not often used. So it is frequently necessary to translate the ablative absolute in other ways.

Sometimes a perfect passive participle in an ablative absolute is best translated by an English perfect active participle.

Nōmine mūtātō, vir fūgit, *Having changed his name, the man fled.*

Frequently the best translation of the ablative absolute is a dependent clause introduced by *when*, *after*, *if*, *since*, or *although*.

monte occupātō, *when the mountain had been seized*

duce vocātō, *after the leader had been called*

Turnō necātō, *if Turnus is killed*

amicō meō aegrō, *since my friend is sick*

puerō caecō, *although the boy was blind*

Sometimes prepositional phrases are used in translating this ablative.

Sextō cōnsule, *in the consulship of Sextus*

<sup>1</sup> The original force of the ablative in this construction may be seen if the preposition *with* is used in the translation of these phrases: *with the leader called; with my sons (having been) praised.*

## AENEAS AND DIDO

Post multa et longa itinera, Aenēās iterum ad Ītaliā nāvigāre temptat. Sed Jūnō, rēgīna deōrum, magnam tempestātem mittit, et nāvēs Aenēae ad litus Āfricae portantur. Classis Trōjāna inter vada et magna saxa paene vāstātur, sed dēnique Trōjānī tūti in  
5 litore stant.

Frūmentum portātum ē nāvibus nōn est bonum. Virī dēfessī alium cibum habēre dēbent. Itaque in silvā propinquā Aenēās sagittīs cervōs septem necat, et socii cēnam in orā parant.

Postridiē Aenēās et socii ejus magnam et pulchram urbem, Carthāginem, vident.  
10

Didō, ōlim rēgīna Phoenīciae, post mortem conjugis suī trāns mare Mediterrāneum ad Āfricā cum multīs comitibus nāvigāvit et hanc novam urbem aedificāvit.

Calamitatē Trōjānōrum nūntiātā, Didō, nunc rēgīna Carthāginis, advenīs benigna est. Aenēās et Ascanius, filiū ejus, cum multīs principibus ad rēgiā dūcuntur. Cibus quoque et alia dōna ad cēterōs Trōjānōs mittuntur.  
15

Noctū in rēgiā magna cēna parātur. Hic Aenēās, verbīs rēginae mōtus, fābulam Trōjae nārrat. Dux Trōjānus hanc fābulam bene nārrat; Didō statim Aenēam maximē amat.  
20

Quod Aenēam et Trōjānōs in Āfricā diū manēre dēsīderat, rēgīna Aenēae et sociīs ejus domicilia in rēgnō suō dat.

Dēnique Juppiter, hāc morā vīsā, Mercurium celeriter ad Aenēam mittit.

Mercurius dicit, "Carthāgō nōn est urbs Trōjānis ā deīs data. Ītalia tē trāns mare expectat. Ibi urbem clāram aedificābis; ibi Lāvīnia, filia rēgis, erit conjūnx tua. Relinque hanc urbem. In Ītaliā pete domicilium tuum."  
25

Tum Aenēās, verbīs deī mōtus, sine morā urbem relinquit. Ē rēgiā Didō misera nāvēs Trōjānās videt. Nunc mortem dēsīderat; sine Aenēā vīta nōn jam amoena est.  
30

alius, -a, -ud, another, other  
classis, classis, -ium, F., fleet;  
division, class  
conjūnx, -jugis, M., husband;  
F., wife

petō, -ere, seek  
relinquō, -linquere, leave, leave  
behind  
septem, *not declined*, seven



### THIRD CONJUGATION

Verbs of the *third conjugation* have the ending *-ere* in the present infinitive. This ending must be distinguished from that of the second conjugation, which is *-ēre*.

There are two classes of verbs of the third conjugation, one class with the ending *-ō* and the other class with the ending *-iō* in the first person singular of the present active.

#### PRESENT TENSE OF *-ō* VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

Verbs of the first class are conjugated as follows in the present tense:

SINGULAR	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE
dū'cō, I lead, am leading	dū'cor, I am being led, am led
dū'cis, you lead, <i>etc.</i>	dū'ceris, you are being led, are led
dū'cit, he, she, it leads, <i>etc.</i>	dū'citur, he, she, it is being led, <i>etc.</i>
PLURAL	
dū'cimus, we lead, <i>etc.</i>	dū'cimur, we are being led, <i>etc.</i>
dū'citis, you lead, <i>etc.</i>	dūci'minī, you are being led, <i>etc.</i>
dū'cunt, they lead, <i>etc.</i>	dūcun'tur, they are being led, <i>etc.</i>

In the second person singular of the passive, the vowel before the person ending is *-e-* (not *-i-* as in the active). In the third person plural of both voices it is *-u-*.

You have already met forms of six verbs which are conjugated like *dūcō*, *dūcere*:

dēfendō, dēfendere	mittō, mittere	relinquō, relinquere
dicō, dicere	petō, petere	scribō, scribere

#### IMPERATIVE OF *-ō* VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

As in the first and second conjugations, the singular imperative of most third-conjugation verbs is like the present stem of the verb:

dēfende	mitte	pete	relinque	scribe
---------	-------	------	----------	--------

Exceptions are the short forms *dic* and *dūc*.

In the plural imperative, all third-conjugation verbs have the same ending.

dēfendite	dicite	dūcite	mittite	petite	relinquite	scribite
-----------	--------	--------	---------	--------	------------	----------



*Dona ad regem mittuntur*

## THE PROMISED BRIDE

Post multās difficultātēs et calamitātēs classis Trōjāna ad Ītaliā et urbem Latīnī rēgis venit. Multa et pretiōsa dōna ad rēgem ab Aenēā, prīncepe Trōjānō, mittuntur, et pāx et salūs ā Trōjānīs petuntur.

- 5 Tum rēx Latīnus comitibus suis dīcit, "Ille dux Trōjānus est advena ā nōbīs expectātus. Aenēās erit conjūnx filiae meae. Haec ōmine apīum mōnstrantur."

- Itaque Aenēās ad rēgiā dūcitur, et Lāvīnia, filia rēgis, eī conjūnx prōmittitur. Sed Lāvīnia ā Turnō, rēge Rutulōrum, amātur, et  
10 Amāta, uxor Latīnī, Turnum esse conjugem filiae suae cupit. Itaque Amāta mātīmōnium Aenēae et Lāvīniae prohibēre in animō habet; auxilium Jūnōnis, rēgīnae deōrum, ōrat.

Statim Allēctō, rēgīna Furiārum, ā deā irātā ad rēgiā mittitur. Allēctō Amātam verbīs insānis excitat.

- 15 Rēgīna Amāta igitur Latīnum petit et cum lacrimis dīcit, "Lāvīnia ab Aenēā petitur. Ōminibus territus, dabisne filiam nostram huic advenae Trōjānō?"

Alia verba quoque ā rēgīnā irātā dicuntur; sed Lātīnus, ā deīs monitus, mentem suam nōn mūtāt. Itaque Amāta sēcrētō filiam suam capit et noctū in montēs altōs fugit. Ibi Lāvīniam cēlat.

Interim Allēctō mala ad urbem Rutulōrum volat et haec verba Turnō dicit, “Rēgnum tuum et conjūnx tua ab hōc advenā Trōjānō capiuntur. Convocā comitēs tuōs fidōs; oppugnā castra hostium; dūc mīlitēs validōs contrā hostēs; pugnā prō virgine; cōfirmā animum. Dī tē juvābunt; Fortūna tibi victōriam dabit.”

Sine morā Turnus populum convocat et clāmat, “Uxōrem meam, Lāvīniam, postulō! Trōjānī sunt perfidī! Ā deīs dūcimur; victōria nōbīs dabitur!”

animus, -ī, M., mind; in animō

habēre, to intend

capiō, -ere, take, seize

cupiō, -ere, wish, want

hostis, hostis, -ium, M., enemy (*a*

*public enemy*); *pl.*, the enemy

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile

lacrima, -ae, F., tear

prōmittō, -mittere, promise

virgō, -inis, F., maiden, girl

## PRESENT TENSE OF THIRD-CONJUGATION -iō

### VERBS

#### ACTIVE

#### PASSIVE

#### SINGULAR

ca'piō, I take

ca'pior, I am being taken; am taken

ca'pis, you take

ca'peris, you are being taken; are taken

ca'pit, he, she, it takes

ca'pitur, he, she, it is being taken; is taken

#### PLURAL

ca'pimus, we take

ca'pimur, we are being taken; are taken

ca'pitis, you take

capi'mini, you are being taken; are taken

ca'piunt, they take

capiun'tur, they are being taken; are taken

Notice that the -i- of the first person singular ending appears also in the third person plural ending, both active and passive. This is the only difference between -ō and -iō verbs of the third conjugation in the present tense.

You have also met forms of fugiō, fugere, a verb conjugated like capiō, capere.

## IMPERATIVES OF -iō VERBS

The imperatives of these verbs are:

#### SINGULAR

cape

fuge

#### PLURAL

capite

fugite

## A BROKEN TREATY

**R**utulīs superātīs, rēx Latīnus ā Trōjānīs pācem petere dēsīde-  
rāvit.

Sed Turnus ācritēr respondit, "Mortem nōn timeō. Vītā sine glōriā nōn cupiō. Gladiō meō Aenēam vincere temptābō."

5 Itaque Rutulī et Trōjānī castra sua reliquērunt et sub moenia urbis prōcessērunt ubi locum certāminis parāvērunt.

Tum in medium campum Latīnus et Turnus cum magnō agmine prīncipum suōrum prōcessērunt. Ad eōs Aenēās et Ascanius cum paucīs comitibus appropinquāvērunt. Populus silentium tenēbat.

10 Primō Aenēās ita dixit, "Foedus aeternum petimus; hoc foedus bellum prohibēbit. Rēx Latīnus arcem suam, urbem suam, rēgnum suum habēbit. Turnō victōre, Trōjānī numquam hoc rēgnum op-  
pugnābunt. Sed, sī erō victor, Latīnī sub potestāte Trōjānōrum numquam erunt. Trōjānī urbem suam aedificābunt, et Lāvīnia huic  
15 urbi novae nōmen suum dabit."

Deinde Latīnus ita dixit, "Haec probō. Hoc foedus sacrum semper erit. Pāx aeterna inter nōs erit."

Hōc foedere probātō ab Aenēā Latīnōque furor mentēs Rutulōrum occupāvit. Eis hoc foedus nōn erat grātum; bellum, nōn pācem,  
20 dēlēgērunt.

Turnus sōlus ad āram silentiō prōcessit. Subitō silentium frāctum est. Soror Turnī, Jūturna, clāmāvit, "Ubi est honor? Ubi est fāma? Capite arma, Rutulī! Pugnāte prō patriā nostrā! Turnus sōlus pugnāre nōn dēbet. Nōs eum juvāre dēbēmus."

25 Verbīs sorōris auditīs, animus Turnī quoque furōre occupātus est. Etiam mēns ejus jam mūtāta est. Itaque Rutulī foedus frēgērunt. Arma petīta sunt; hastae jactae sunt. Foedere frāctō, militēs cum militibus iterum pugnābant.

**agmen, agminis**, N., column, line,  
line of march

**audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum**, hear, listen  
to, listen

**certāmen, certāminis**, N., contest

**dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum**, choose  
foedus, foederis, N., agreement,

treaty

**frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum**, break

**furor, -ōris**, M., madness, frenzy

**jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum**, throw, hurl  
**moenia, -ium**, N. *pl.*, walls (*of a*  
*city*), fortifications

**-que, conj.** (*attached to a word*), and  
**soror, -ōris**, F., sister

**teneō, -ēre, -uī**, hold, hold to; keep,  
keep back

**vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum**, defeat,  
conquer, overcome

## FOURTH CONJUGATION

Verbs of the *fourth conjugation* have the present infinitive ending in *-ire*: *audiō, I hear, audire, to hear*. The present of *audiō* is conjugated on page 329.

As you will observe, the characteristic vowel, *i*, is long, except in the first person singular, active and passive, the third person singular, active, and the third person plural, active and passive.

The present tense, active, of the fourth conjugation is like that of the *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation, except for the long *i*. The passive differs also in the second person singular.

You have already met forms of *veniō, -ire*, which is conjugated like *audiō, -ire*.

### IMPERATIVE OF FOURTH-CONJUGATION VERBS

As in other conjugations, the singular imperative of fourth-conjugation verbs is like the present stem of the verb: *audī, venī*.

In the plural imperative, *-te* is added to the present stem: *audīte, venīte*.

### PERFECT ACTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

As shown on pages 35-36, the forms of the perfect active are made up of the perfect stem, with special endings which are used in no other tense. The formation of this tense is the same for all verbs of the Latin language, in all conjugations, and for irregular as well as regular verbs.

There is, therefore, nothing new to learn for the perfect active of the third and fourth conjugations. We simply add the perfect endings to the perfect stem as shown in the principal parts.

#### SINGULAR

<i>dū'xī, I led, I have led</i>	<i>audī'vī, I heard, I have heard</i>
<i>dūxis'tī, you led, etc.</i>	<i>audīvis'tī, you heard, etc.</i>
<i>dū'xit, he, she, it led, etc.</i>	<i>audī'vit, he, she, it heard, etc.</i>

#### PLURAL

<i>dū'ximus, we led, etc.</i>	<i>audī'vimus, we heard, etc.</i>
<i>dūxis'tis, you led, etc.</i>	<i>audīvis'tis, you heard, etc.</i>
<i>dūxē'runt, they led, etc.</i>	<i>audīvē'runt, they heard, etc.</i>

## PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

The perfect passive, like the perfect active, is the same in its method of formation for all Latin verbs. As you learned on page 103, it consists of the perfect passive participle with the present forms of *sum*. Remember that the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number.

The perfect passive of third- and fourth-conjugation verbs, therefore, is formed like that of first- and second-conjugation verbs.

### PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THIRD-CONJUGATION VERBS

The principal parts of *dūcō* and other third-conjugation verbs which have appeared in preceding lessons are as follows:

<i>dēfendō</i>	<i>-fendere</i>	<i>-fendī</i>	<i>-fēsum</i>	<i>prōmittō</i>	<i>-mittere</i>	<i>-mīsī</i>	<i>-missum</i>
<i>dēligō</i>	<i>-ligere</i>	<i>-lēgī</i>	<i>-lēctum</i>	<i>scribō</i>	<i>scribere</i>	<i>scripsī</i>	<i>scriptum</i>
<i>dīcō</i>	<i>dicere</i>	<i>dixī</i>	<i>dictum</i>	<i>vincō</i>	<i>vincere</i>	<i>vīcī</i>	<i>victum</i>
<i>dūcō</i>	<i>dūcere</i>	<i>dūxī</i>	<i>ductum</i>	<i>capō</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>cēpī</i>	<i>captum</i>
<i>mittō</i>	<i>mittere</i>	<i>mīsī</i>	<i>missum</i>	<i>cupiō</i>	<i>cupere</i>	<i>cupīvī</i>	<i>cupitum</i>
<i>petō</i>	<i>petere</i>	<i>petīvī</i>	<i>petitum</i>	<i>fugiō</i>	<i>fugere</i>	<i>fūgī</i>	—

### PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FOURTH-CONJUGATION VERBS

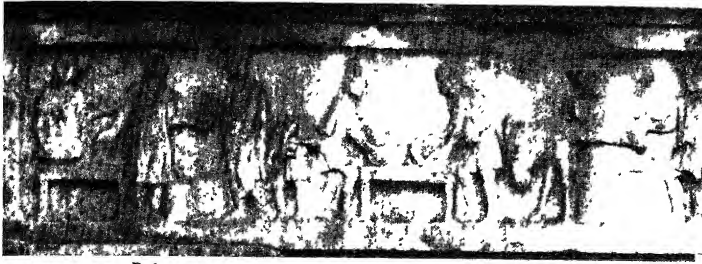
The principal parts of fourth-conjugation verbs which have appeared in preceding lessons are as follows:

<i>audiō</i>	<i>audire</i>	<i>audivī</i>	<i>audītum</i>
<i>veniō</i>	<i>venire</i>	<i>vēnī</i>	<i>ventum</i>

Find in the list of Latin phrases below, one that translates each English clause.

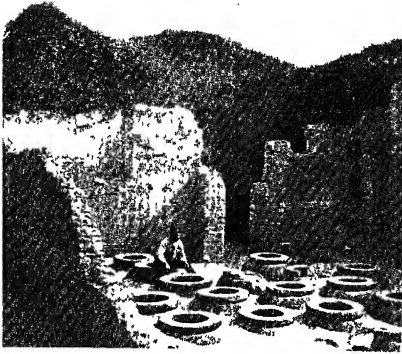
- |                                      |                                     |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. after the city was taken          | 4. when many had been wounded       |
| 2. after the monster had been killed | 5. when the house was built         |
| 3. on seeing the enemy               | 6. because his wife had been killed |

<i>certāmine temptātō</i>	<i>classe dēlētā</i>	<i>conjugē necātā</i>	<i>hostibus vīsīs</i>
<i>lītore occupātō</i>	<i>mōnstrō necātō</i>	<i>morte nūntiātā</i>	<i>multīs vulnerātīs</i>
	<i>tēctō aedificātō</i>	<i>urbe occupātā</i>	

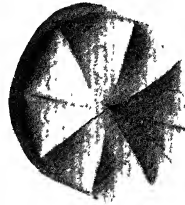


*Bakers at work The mill is turned by a donkey*

## ROMAN FOOD



*Storage vault  
for olive oil*



*Loaf of bread*

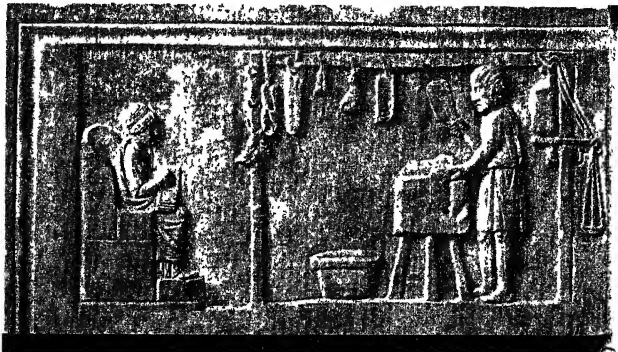


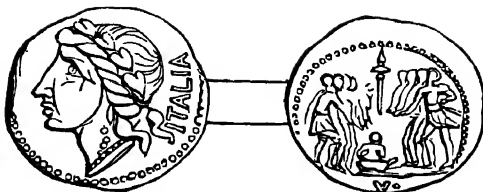
*Wine container*



*Fish plate*

*Roman meat  
market*





*An ancient coin commemorating a treaty*

## THE WRATH OF AENEAS

**F**oedere frāctō, Aenēās irā excitātus Trōjānōs magnā vōce vocāvit. “Cūr bellum iterum geritis?” clāmāvit. “Foedus factum est! Huic foederi fidus erō. Sōlus cum Turnō pugnāre dēbeō.”

Tamen neque Trōjānī neque Rutulī ā proeliō recēdēbant; eum nōn  
 5 audiēbant. Etiam Turnus in certāmine hastam contrā Trōjānōs vehementer jēcit. Sed ab Aenēā inter agmina Rutulōrum petēbātur, quod dux Trōjānus cum illō sōlō pugnāre cupiēbat.

Undique magnus numerus sociōrum Aenēae, necātus ā Turnō perfidō, in terrā jacēbat. Jam Aenēās, sociis mortuis visis, irā agitābātur;  
 10 prope urbem Latīnī veniēbat. Urbe visā, subitō mēns ejus mūtāta est.

“Oppugnāte moenia!” militēs suōs Aenēās jussit. “Dēbetne haec urbs, causa bellī, manēre, dum nostrī in proeliō injūstō interficiuntur?”

Mox Trōjānī moenia ascendēbant et portās oppugnābant. Nōn sōlum hastae sed etiam taedae in urbem jaciēbantur. Magnus erat  
 15 terror cīvium; urbs et domicilia eōrum dēlēbantur.

“Ubi est Turnus?” clāmāvit rēgīna Amāta, maximē furōre agitāta. “Urbs nostra vincitur. Turnus sōlus nōs servābit; sine eō superābimur. Sum causa calamitātis; nōn jam vīvere dēbeō.”

Statim Amāta sē interfēcit. Propter mortem rēgīnae cīvēs multīs  
 20 cum lacrimis dolēbant. Clāmōre auditō, Turnus ad urbem fūmō flammisque cēlātam properāvit. Undique militēs ab aliis militibus interficiēbantur.

“Ō Rutulī et Latīnī!” Turnus clāmāvit, “sōlus Aenēam in certāmine petō.”

ira, -ae, F., anger  
 jaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie, lie down  
 nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only  
 . . . but also  
 numerus, -ī, M., number  
 recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, with-  
 draw, retreat  
 vivō, -ere, vixī, vīctum, live

agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, drive on;  
 agitate; pursue  
 faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make; do  
 gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, wear,  
 carry; carry on, wage  
 injūstus, -a, -um, unfair, unjust  
 interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,  
 kill, slay



## IMPERFECT OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

The tense sign of the imperfect in the third and fourth conjugations is *-bā-*, just as in the first and second conjugations. The imperfect tense of *dūcō* is formed in exactly the same way as the imperfect tense of *moneō*, with *-ē-* before *-bā-*. Verbs of the fourth conjugation have *-iē-* before the tense sign.

### ACTIVE SINGULAR

<i>dūcē'bam</i> , I was leading, I led	<i>audiē'bam</i> , I was hearing, I heard
<i>dūcē'bās</i> , you were leading, you led	<i>audiē'bās</i> , you were hearing, you heard
<i>dūcē'bat</i> , he, she, it was leading; he, she, it led	<i>audiē'bat</i> , he, she, it was hearing, <i>etc.</i>

### PLURAL

<i>dūcēbā'mus</i> , we were leading, we led	<i>audiēbā'mus</i> , we were hearing, we heard
<i>dūcēbā'tis</i> , you were leading, you led	<i>audiēbā'tis</i> , you were hearing, <i>etc.</i>
<i>dūcē'bant</i> , they were leading, they led	<i>audiē'bant</i> , they were hearing, <i>etc.</i>

### PASSIVE SINGULAR

<i>dūcē'bar</i> , I was being led, I was led	<i>audiē'bar</i> , I was being heard, I was heard
<i>dūcēbā'ris</i> , you were being led, you were led	<i>audiēbā'ris</i> , you were being heard, you were heard
<i>dūcēbā'tur</i> , he, she, it was being led; he, she, it was led	<i>audiēbā'tur</i> , he, she, it was being heard, <i>etc.</i>

### PLURAL

<i>dūcēbā'mur</i> , we were being led, we were led	<i>audiēbā'mur</i> , we were being heard, we were heard
<i>dūcēbā'minī</i> , you were being led, you were led	<i>audiēbā'minī</i> , you were being heard, <i>etc.</i>
<i>dūcēban'tur</i> , they were being led, they were led	<i>audiēban'tur</i> , they were being heard, <i>etc.</i>

The imperfect of *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation is just like the imperfect of the fourth conjugation.



*Juppiter et Juno e caelo spectabant*

## THE GODS DESERT TURNUS

Vōce Turnī auditā, Aenēās urbem reliquit et ācriter ad certāmen prōcessit. Hoc certāmen, autem, Juppiter et Jūnō ē caelō spectābant.

Procul Aenēās hastam suam contrā hostem jēcit, sed hasta suprā  
 5 caput Turnī volāvit et in arbore stetit. Tum gladiis Aenēās et Turnus vehementer pugnābant. Subitō gladius Turnī scūtō Aenēae frāctus est. Gladiō āmissō, dux Rutulus, captus terrōre, celeriter fūgit. Interim soror ejus, Jūturna, alium gladium invēnit eumque frātrī suō dedit.

10 Hōc visō, Juppiter dixit, "Quī erit finis hujus certāminis, Ō conjūnx mea? Nōnne Aenēās Turnum vincet? Quid in animō facere habēs? Noctū et interdiū, aestāte et hieme, Trōjānōs per terrās et maria agitāvistī. Propter tē, nōn solum foedus frāctum est, sed etiam bellum malum iterum inceptum est. Auxiliō tuō, Jūturna gladium invēnit  
 15 et frātrī suō eum dedit. Jam ad finem hoc certāmen veniet. Prohibeō tē haec iterum facere."

Jūnō respondit, "Propter tē, magne Juppiter, Turnum et terram reliquī. Facta Jūturnae probāvī; meō auxiliō illa gladium invēnit. Tamen, potestātem meam āmittam. Nōn jam Turnus vōcem sorōris  
 20 suae audiet; nūllum auxilium inveniet. Fātis repulsa, nōn jam finem gentis Trōjānae postulō. Mors Turnī finem certāminis faciet. Aenēās vītam suam nōn āmittet; is vivet; sed Turnus interficiētur."

Tum Juppiter haec prōmīsīt, “Quamquam Aenēās erit rēx eōrum, Latīnī nōmen suum linguamque suam tenēbunt. Ūnam (*one*) gentem Trōjānī Latīnīque facient; ūnam linguam habēbunt; et ex eōrum liberīs populus clārus veniet.”

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,  
lose, let go  
autem, *conj.*, but, however (*never  
stands first in a clause*)  
finis, finis, -ium, M., end, boundary,  
limit

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin  
inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,  
find, discover  
suprā, *prep. with acc.*, above, over

### FUTURE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

We have seen that in the first and second conjugations the tense sign of the future is **-bi-**. In the third and fourth conjugations the future tense sign is **-ē-**, which is replaced by **-a-** in the first person singular. The **-ē-** becomes short before the person endings **-t**, **-nt**, and **-ntur**.

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		SINGULAR	
dū'cam, I shall lead		dū'car, I shall be led	
dū'cēs, you will lead		dūcē'ris, you will be led	
dū'cet, he, she, it will lead		dūcē'tur, he, she, it will be led	
		PLURAL	
dūcē'mus, we shall lead		dūcē'mur, we shall be led	
dūcē'tis, you will lead		dūcē'minī, you will be led	
dū'cent, they will lead		dūcen'tur, they will be led	
ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		SINGULAR	
au'diam, I shall hear		au'diar, I shall be heard	
au'diēs, you will hear		audiē'ris, you will be heard	
au'diet, he, she, it will hear		audiē'tur, he, she, it will be heard	
		PLURAL	
audiē'mus, we shall hear		audiē'mur, we shall be heard	
audiē'tis, you will hear		audiē'minī, you will be heard	
au'dient, they will hear		audien'tur, they will be heard	

The future of **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation is just like the future of the fourth conjugation.



*Aeneas Turnum gladio interfecit*

## THE END OF THE CONFLICT

**A**vis fera, missa ad terram ā deīs, Turnum inter agmina Rutulōrum petēbat. Ante oculōs et circum umerōs ducis Rutulī volābat scūtumque ejus ālis suis oppugnābat. Turnus potentiam (*power*) deōrum et ōmen mortis recognōvit.

- 5 Jūturna hanc avem procul vīdit et clāmāvit, "Certē haec avis missa est quod dī Turnum interfici et Rutulōs superārī cupiunt. Frātre meō interfectō Rutulisque victis, nōn jam vīvere dēsiderō."

His verbis dictis, Jūturna sē in undās Tiberis jēcit.

Interim Aenēas Turnum agitāre iterum incēpit.

- 10 "Cūr recēdis, Turne?" dixit. "Cūr mortem tuam fugere temptās?"

Turnus respondit, "Verba tua mē nōn terrent. Dī et odium deōrum mē terrent. Jupiter est hostis meus."

Tum Aenēas magnam hastam jēcit, et Turnus, graviter vulnerātus, ad terram cecidit (*fell*).

- 15 Rutulus victus dixit, "Vītā meā āmittere prō patriā meā jam diū parātus sum. Satis pugnāvī; nunc mē vicisti. Lāvīnia erit conjūnx

tua. Vitam nōn ōrō, sed certē prō patre miserō meis amicis corpus meum dabis."

Prīmō Aenēās Turnum interficere in animō nōn habēbat. Tum in umerō hostis vulnerātī insigne nōtum vidit. Ōlim amicus Aenēae illud insigne gerēbat; jam ille erat mortuus—necātus ā Turnō. Celeriter Aenēās irātus Turnum gladiō interfēcit. Ita mors Turni finem certāminis fēcit.

certē, *adv.*, surely, certainly  
graviter, *adv.*, severely, heavily;  
greatly, deeply  
insigne, insignis, -ium, N., decoration, badge

odium, -ī, N., hatred  
recognōscō, -cognōscere, -cognōvī,  
-cognitum, recognize  
umerus, -ī, M., shoulder

#### PRESENT INFINITIVES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

You have seen the present active infinitives of the four conjugations:

I	II	III	IV
portāre, to carry	monēre, to warn	{ dūcere, to lead capere, to take	audire, to hear

Each verb has also a present passive infinitive, for instance, *portārī, to be carried*. The passive infinitives of the four conjugations of regular verbs are like the following:

I	II	III	IV
portārī, to be carried	monērī, to be warned	{ dūcī, to be led capī, to be taken	audīrī, to be heard

Notice that in the first, second, and fourth conjugations the final -e of the active endings (-āre, -ēre, -īre) is replaced by -ī in the passive; in the third conjugation the entire ending (-ere) is replaced by -ī.

Find in the list at the right the Latin verb form corresponding to each English phrase.

- |                 |              |              |              |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. to begin     | 6. to find   | (a) dūcere   | (f) invenīre |
| 2. to be led    | 7. to make   | (b) dūcī     | (g) scribere |
| 3. to be broken | 8. to lead   | (c) facere   | (h) timēre   |
| 4. to seem      | 9. to see    | (d) frangī   | (i) vidēre   |
| 5. to fear      | 10. to write | (e) incipere | (j) vidērī   |

## WORD FAMILIES

It is easy to see that the English words below are related.

*love*                      *lover*                      *lovable*                      *unlovely*

The following Latin words all come from the same root.

**amo**                      **amor**                      **amabilis**                      **amicus**                      **inimicus**

A group of words having a common root is often called a word family. Individual words in such a group may be different parts of speech, though all are related in form and meaning.

*civis*, *citizen* (noun)  
*civilis*, *civil* (adj.), pertaining to citizens  
*civitas*, *citizenship* (noun), state of being a citizen  
*vigilo*, *watch* (verb)  
*vigil*, *sentinel* (noun), one who watches  
*vigilia*, *watch* (noun), act of watching

Discuss the meaning of each Latin word below, explaining its relationship to **rex**.

**rex**, **regis**, *king*  
**regina**, *queen*  
**rego**, *guide; rule*  
**regia**, *palace*  
**regius**, *royal*  
**regio**, *region*  
**regno**, *reign*  
**regnum**, *royal authority; kingdom*

Latin word families sometimes contain words made from other words by the addition of prefixes. In the group of verbs below, the relationship is evident, though the prefixes have altered the meanings.

**fugio**, *flee*                      **defugio**, *flee from*                      **profugio**, *flee before*

Give the meaning of each word in the following word family, pointing out its connection with **duco**.

**duco**                      **deductio**                      **deduco**                      **induco**  
**dux**                      **reductio**                      **educio**                      **perduco**

Give some common English derivatives from the Latin words above.

# REVIEW OF UNIT VI

I. Complete each sentence with the required form of audiō and translate the sentence.

1. Dicō et ā multīs hominibus (*I am heard*).
2. Vesperī in hortō avem (*I hear*).
3. Nōne sonum militum (*you [pl.] hear*)?
4. Apēs rēgis vidēmus et (*we hear*).
5. Multī militēs ā virīs (*are heard*).
6. Apēsne in hortō (*do you [sing.] hear*)?
7. Clāmor militum graviter vulnerātōrum (*is heard*).
8. Sēcrētō ad flūmen properāmus, sed ab hostibus (*we are heard*).

II. Choose the word that completes each sentence correctly and justify your choice.

- |                               |   |                                      |   |                                |                       |
|-------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. Magna fuit                 | { | animus.<br>calamitās.<br>domicilium. | { | 4. Animus<br>Furōris<br>Vadum  | } Aenēae erat magnus. |
| 2. Classēm<br>Undae<br>Ventum | { | vidimus.                             | { | 5. Mors                        | } erat idōnea.        |
|                               |   |                                      |   | conjugem<br>mōnstrī<br>tumulus |                       |
- 
- |            |   |  |              |
|------------|---|--|--------------|
| 3. Trōjānī | { | certāmina<br>difficultātis<br>sanguine | } habuērunt. |
|------------|---|--|--------------|

III. Make three complete sentences of each of the following by translating the phrases.

1. Militēs frūmentum \_\_\_ invenient.  
*in the city of the inhabitants in the fields*
2. Miles \_\_\_ fūgit.  
*overcome by the enemy severely wounded frightened by trumpets*
3. Sed cōpiae Rōmānae in campō \_\_\_\_\_.  
*will fight will hear their leader will conquer the enemy*
4. Foedus ā Rōmānīs et Latīnīs \_\_\_\_\_.  
*will be approved will be broken will be sought*
5. Puer saxum \_\_\_ jēcit.  
*into the water over the house above his friend's head*
6. Turnus \_\_\_\_\_.  
*will be killed will break the spear will not be king*



*Proserpina a Plutone capta est*

UNIT

VII *Famous Myths*

**M**YTHS are stories of such universal appeal that people will not let them die. Greek myths not only reflect the legendary past of the race, but also symbolize many basic human experiences

AN UNHAPPY BRIDE

**N**ŭlla puella uxor Plūtōnis esse dēsiderābat quod ille erat rēx mortuōrum et in Orcō habitābat.

Ōlim, autem, ubi Plūtō in terrā equōs suōs agēbat, Prōserpinam, filiam Cereris, vidit. Statim puellam pulchram amāvit et in māt-  
rīmōnium dūcere cupiēbat. Rēx potēns igitur puellam vī (*by force*)  
capere cōstituit.

Celeriter Prōserpina infēlix capta est et ā Plūtōne sub terram in Orcum, rēgnum mortuōrum, portāta est. In terrā puella misera vēstigia nŭlla reliquit.

Jam Plūtō uxōrem habēbat. Jam Prōserpina erat rēgīna mortuōrum, sed illa erat rēgīna infēlix. Semper magnopere dolēbat quod mātrem vidēre cupiēbat. Lūcem, autem, amābat, et in Orcō erat, ubi neque sōl neque lūna erat.

Diū mātēr infēlix Prōserpinam filiam in terrā invenire temptābat.  
Mox nŭllum frūmentum in agrīs erat et nŭlla folia in arboribus erant, quod Cerēs, dea agricultūrae, per multās terrās errābat neque agricultūram cūrābat.

Dēnique Cerēs dē Plūtōne et dē uxōre infēlicī audīvit. Dea irāta



ad Jovem, rēgem potentem deōrum, properāvit et auxilium ab eō postulāvit.

Juppiter respondit, "Filiam tuam tibi dare cupiō, sed Prōserpina in Orcō manēre dēbet quod cibum gustāvit (*has tasted*). Illa est lēx deōrum."

Mōtus Cereris lacrimīs, autem, Juppiter benignus cōnsilium bonum cōstituit.

"Annum dīvidam," dixit. "Per sex mēnsēs Prōserpina in terrā cum mātrem suā habitābit; tum in Orcō cum conjuge suō per sex mēnsēs manēbit."

Itaque aestāte, dum Prōserpina est in terrā, Cerēs est fēlix et hominibus frūmentum dat. Hieme, autem, dum Prōserpina est in Orcō, Cerēs est infēlix et hominibus nihil dat.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, do; drive  
cōstituō, -stitūere, -stitui, -stitūtum,  
decide, decide upon, set up  
fēlix, *gen.*, fēlicis, happy, fortunate,  
lucky  
folium, -ī, N., leaf  
infēlix, *gen.*, infēlicis, unhappy, un-  
lucky

lūx, lūcis, F., light; prīma lūx, day-  
break  
mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium, M., month  
nihil, N., *not declined*, nothing  
potēns, *gen.*, potentis, powerful  
sōl, sōlis, M., sun  
vēstigium, -ī, N., footstep; track,  
trace

### THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

We have seen that many adjectives are declined like nouns of the first and second declensions. There is also a large group of adjectives declined like nouns of the third declension.

### THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

Some adjectives of the third declension have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> fē'lix	fē'lix	fēli'cēs	fēli'cia
<i>Gen.</i> fēli'cis	fēli'cis	fēli'cium	fēli'cium
<i>Dat.</i> fēli'cī	fēli'cī	fēli'cibus	fēli'cibus
<i>Acc.</i> fēli'cem	fē'lix	fēli'cēs	fēli'cia
<i>Abl.</i> fēli'cī	fēli'cī	fēli'cibus	fēli'cibus

The neuter is given separately though it differs from the masculine and feminine only in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

## THE LOST WIFE

Per silvam sonus lyrae audī-  
tus est. Omnēs avēs, sonō  
lyrae audītō, cantāre dēsti-  
tērunt. Bēstiae ācrēs quidem  
5 stetērunt et nōn jam necāre  
hominēs temptāvērunt.

Orpheus, filius Apollinis, lyram  
habēbat et cantābat. Eurydicē,  
virgō pulchra, Orpheum cantan-  
10 tem audīvit. Eum vidēre cupiēns,  
ad eum properāvit. Orpheus eam  
venientem vidit et statim eam  
amāvit. Postēā Eurydicē in  
mātrimōnium dūxit.

15 Ōlim serpēns pedem Eurydicēs  
ambulantis in agrō momordit (*bit*).  
Illa statim ē vitā excēdēns sub  
terram in Orcum, locum mortuō-  
rum, ducta est.

20 Orpheus, propter uxōrem āmissam dolēns, eam etiam in Orcō  
petere cōstituit. Itaque per cavernam sub terram dēscendit.

Sed ubi ad flūmen Stygem vēnit, portitor (*ferryman*) Charōn eum  
viventem trāns flūmen nāve suā portāre recūsāvit. Orpheus autem  
lyram cēpit et cantāvit; tum Charōn libenter eum trāns flūmen  
25 portāvit. Ibi Cerberus, magnus canis, eum terrēre temptāvit. Sed  
Orpheus iterum cantāvit et canis statim dormīvit.

Ita post multa perīcula Orpheus ad rēgiam Plūtōnis vēnit et ā  
Plūtōne uxōrem petīvit. Plūtō autem Eurydicē āmittere recūsābat.  
Tum Orpheus, capiēns lyram, cantāvit.

30 Dēnique Plūtō sonō lyrae victus Eurydicē Orpheō dedit, sed sub  
hāc lēge: "Orpheus ad terram prōcēdet; Eurydicē post sē venientem  
nōn respiciet. Sī Orpheus respiciet, Eurydicē in Orcum iterum  
dūcētur."

Orpheus laetus ad terram ascendere incēpit. Dum sub terrā Orpheus  
35 erat, nōn respexit. Subitō prope portam cavernae respexit et uxōrem  
amātam suam vidit.



*Orpheus and Cerberus, famous for  
his three heads*

Eurydicē misera clāmāvit, "Valē! Iterum ad mortuōs dūcar. Valē!"

Conjuge suā iterum āmissā, Orpheus dolōre ācrī victus est et in terrā nōn diū habitābat. Mox in Orcō Eurydicēn iterum invēnit.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp; fierce, eager  
 canis, -is (*gen. pl. -um*), M. and F., dog  
 dolor, -ōris, M., grief, sorrow  
 dormiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, sleep  
 excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,  
 go out, depart  
 libenter, *adv.*, gladly, freely

omnis, -e, all, every, whole; N. *pl.*  
*as noun*, everything  
 quidem, *adv.*, certainly, indeed  
 recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, refuse,  
 reject  
 respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum,  
 look back, look back at

### THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

There are many third-declension adjectives that have two endings in the nominative singular—one for the masculine and feminine and one for the neuter.

In the masculine and feminine, these adjectives are declined like *collis* (p. 95) and in the neuter like *insigne* (p. 314, 5), except that the ablative singular of all genders ends in *ī*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	om'nis	om'ne	om'nēs	om'nia
<i>Gen.</i>	om'nis	om'nis	om'nium	om'nium
<i>Dat.</i>	om'nī	om'nī	om'nibus	om'nibus
<i>Acc.</i>	om'nem	om'ne	om'nēs	om'nia
<i>Abl.</i>	om'nī	om'nī	om'nibus	om'nibus

### ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

There are a few third-declension adjectives which have separate forms for the three genders in the nominative singular. In all other respects they are declined exactly like those with two endings.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ā'cer	ā'cris	ā'cre	ā'crēs	ā'cria
<i>Gen.</i>	ā'cris	ā'cris	ā'cris	ā'crium	ā'crium
<i>Dat.</i>	ā'crī	ā'crī	ā'crī	ā'cribus	ā'cribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ā'crem	ā'cre	ā'cre	ā'crēs	ā'cria
<i>Abl.</i>	ā'crī	ā'crī	ā'crī	ā'cribus	ā'cribus

## PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

You are familiar with the perfect passive participle.

*portātus, having been carried*

There are also participles in the active voice.

*Present Active Participle: portāns, carrying*

The present participles of regular verbs in the four conjugations are as follows:

I	II	III	IV
(portō)	(moneō)	(dūcō)	(capiō)
portāns	monēns	dūcēns	capiēns
<i>carrying</i>	<i>warning</i>	<i>leading</i>	<i>taking</i>
			(audiō)
			audiēns
			<i>hearing</i>

As you can see from these examples, the present active participle of a Latin verb ends in *-ns*, and is formed on the present stem.

The present participle of *-ō* verbs of the third conjugation is exactly like that of the second conjugation. In the fourth conjugation and in *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation the stem ending appears as *-iē-*.

## DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

Like other participles, the present participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun it modifies. It is declined as an adjective of the third declension:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> por'tāns	por'tāns	portan'tēs	portan'tia
<i>Gen.</i> portan'tis	portan'tis	portan'tium	portan'tium
<i>Dat.</i> portan'ti	portan'ti	portan'tibus	portan'tibus
<i>Acc.</i> portan'tem	por'tāns	portan'tēs	portan'tia
<i>Abl.</i> portan'te, -ī	portan'te, -ī	portan'tibus	portan'tibus

Supply the participle for each blank.

1. *Serpēns* pedem *Eurydicēs* — in *hortō* vulnerābat. (*walk*)
2. *Cerēs*, — *filiam* āmissam, in *Orcum* properāvit. (*grieve for*)
3. *Lyram* — et —, *Orpheus* ad *rēgiam* *Plūtōnis* vēnit. (*carry, sing*)
4. *Orpheus* *uxōrem* post *sē* — respexit. (*come*)
5. *Charōn* *virōs* — *trāns* *flūmen* *nāve* *suā* *nōn* portābat. (*live*)

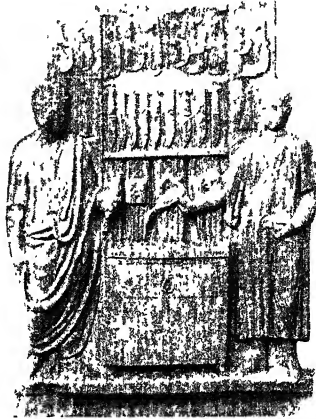
# INDUSTRY



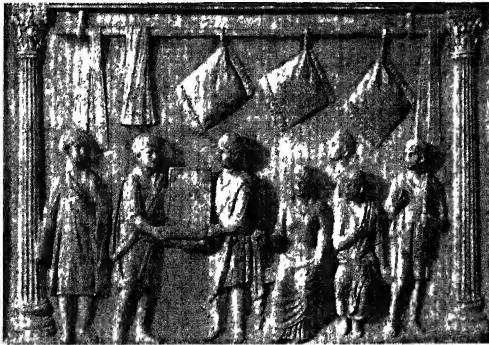
*This scene was  
on the tomb of a wine merchant*



*Building a boat*



*An ancient Roman  
version of a  
hardware store*



*In this shop  
cushions and  
scarves  
were sold*

*A blacksmith and his helper at the bellows*



## A CURIOUS WOMAN

**O**lim in terrā sōla fēmina erat uxor Epimētheī. Haec fēmina nōn solum pulcherrima erat, sed etiam cūriōsissima erat. Multa dōna ā deīs data habēbat. Nōmen ejus igitur erat Pandōra, significāns “dōna omnia.” Inter dōna deōrum erat parva arca, dōnum Jovis.

- 5 “Haec arca,” Juppiter dixit, “magnum sēcrētum tenet; aperiri nōn dēbet. Sī aperiētur, pericula gravia in terrā aderunt. Dā arcam clausam tuō conjugī, et fēlicior eris.”

Epimētheus arcam libenter cēpit; sed, ā deīs monitus, eam nōn aperuit. Nōn satis sapiēns autem erat conjūnx Pandōrae cūriōsae.

- 10 Arcam nōn cēlāvit.

Cotidiē Pandōra arcam spectābat, cupiēns eam aperire. Timēns autem pericula gravia ā Jove prōmissa, ab eā procul manēre temptāvit.

- Ōlim Pandōra sōla erat in hortō ubi arca erat. Fēmina cūriōsa eam diū spectāvit; scripta in arcā haec verba vidit: “Teneō omnia  
15 gaudia deōrum. Aperī mē.”

Maximē haec gaudia habēre cupiēns, Pandōra arcam aperuit. Subitō mala, nōn gaudia, ex arcā volāvērunt. Prīmō duo mala, deinde tria alia ex arcā vērērunt. Dēnique omnia mala hominū per terrās volāvērunt. Pandōra miserrima celeriter arcam clausit.

*Pandora as the English artist Rossetti  
painted her*



- 20 Mox autem Pandōra infēlix audīvit vōcem dīcentem: “Aperi iterum arcam. Summum bonum in arcā reliquistī. Hominēs juvābō. Liberā mē!”

- 25 Itaque Pandōra cūriōsa parvam arcam iterum aperuit. Ex arcā Spēs (*Hope*), solum dōnum bonum deōrum, vēnit.

aperiō, -ire, -uī, apertum, open  
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, close  
cotidiē, *adv.*, every day, daily  
cūriōsus, -a, -um, curious  
duo, duae, duo, two  
gaudium, -i, N., joy, delight, pleasure  
gravis, -e, heavy, severe, serious  
sapiēns, *gen.*, -entis, wise  
significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, mean

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Most Latin adjectives may be used in the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*.

<i>Positive:</i>	<b>altus,</b> high	<b>fortis,</b> brave	<b>fēlix,</b> happy
<i>Comparative:</i>	<b>altior,</b> higher	<b>fortior,</b> braver	<b>fēlicior,</b> happier
<i>Superlative:</i>	<b>altissimus,</b> highest	<b>fortissimus,</b> bravest	<b>fēlicissimus,</b> happiest

Sometimes a comparative adjective is translated with *too* or *rather* instead of an English comparative, and a superlative with *very* instead of an English superlative.

## FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND THE SUPERLATIVE

The comparative of Latin adjectives regularly ends in *-ior* for the masculine and feminine and *-ius* for the neuter. These endings are added to the base. The base is found by dropping the masculine genitive ending of the positive form.

<b>altus,</b> genitive <b>alti,</b> base <b>alt-</b>	<i>Comparative:</i> <b>altior,</b> <b>altius</b>
<b>fortis,</b> genitive <b>fortis,</b> base <b>fort-</b>	<i>Comparative:</i> <b>fortior,</b> <b>fortius</b>
<b>fēlix,</b> genitive <b>fēlicis,</b> base <b>fēlic-</b>	<i>Comparative:</i> <b>fēlicior,</b> <b>fēlicius</b>

The superlative is formed regularly by adding *-issimus*, *-issima*, *-issimum* to the base.

<b>altus,</b> genitive <b>alti,</b> base <b>alt-</b>	<i>Superlative:</i> <b>altissimus,</b> <b>-a,</b> <b>-um</b>
<b>fortis,</b> genitive <b>fortis,</b> base <b>fort-</b>	<i>Superlative:</i> <b>fortissimus,</b> <b>-a,</b> <b>-um</b>
<b>fēlix,</b> genitive <b>fēlicis,</b> base <b>fēlic-</b>	<i>Superlative:</i> <b>fēlicissimus,</b> <b>-a,</b> <b>-um</b>
<b>potēns,</b> genitive <b>potentis,</b> base <b>potent-</b>	<i>Superlative:</i> <b>potentissimus,</b> <b>-a,</b> <b>-um</b>

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-er*

The superlative of adjectives ending in *-er* may be formed by adding *-rimus* to the nominative singular of the masculine. Their comparative is formed like that of other adjectives.

<i>Positive:</i>	<b>miser, -era, -erum</b>	<b>pulcher, -chra, -chrum</b>
<i>Comparative:</i>	<b>miserior, -ius</b>	<b>pulchrior, -chrius</b>
<i>Superlative:</i>	<b>miserrimus, -a, -um</b>	<b>pulcherrimus, -a, -um</b>

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-lis*

The superlative of five adjectives ending in *-lis* may be found by adding *-limus* to the base:

<i>facilis</i> , easy	<i>similis</i> , like	<i>humilis</i> , low
<i>difficilis</i> , difficult	<i>dissimilis</i> , unlike	
<i>Positive</i> : <i>facilis</i> , -e		<i>humilis</i> , -e
<i>Comparative</i> : <i>facilior</i> , -ius		<i>humilior</i> , -ius
<i>Superlative</i> : <i>facillimus</i> , -a, -um		<i>humillimus</i> , -a, -um

Most other adjectives ending in *-lis* form the superlative regularly with *-issimus*.

## DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Adjectives in the comparative are declined as third-declension adjectives. The ablative singular, however, ends in *-e*, and the genitive plural in *-um*.

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nominative</i> : <i>lā'tior</i>		<i>lā'tius</i>	<i>lātiō'rēs</i>	<i>lātiō'ra</i>
<i>Genitive</i> : <i>lātiō'ris</i>		<i>lātiō'ris</i>	<i>lātiō'rum</i>	<i>lātiō'rum</i>
<i>Dative</i> : <i>lātiō'rī</i>		<i>lātiō'rī</i>	<i>lātiō'ribus</i>	<i>lātiō'ribus</i>
<i>Accusative</i> : <i>lātiō'rem</i>		<i>lā'tius</i>	<i>lātiō'rēs</i>	<i>lātiō'ra</i>
<i>Ablative</i> : <i>lātiō're</i>		<i>lātiō're</i>	<i>lātiō'ribus</i>	<i>lātiō'ribus</i>

The superlative of any adjective is declined like *bonus*.

## CARDINAL NUMBERS

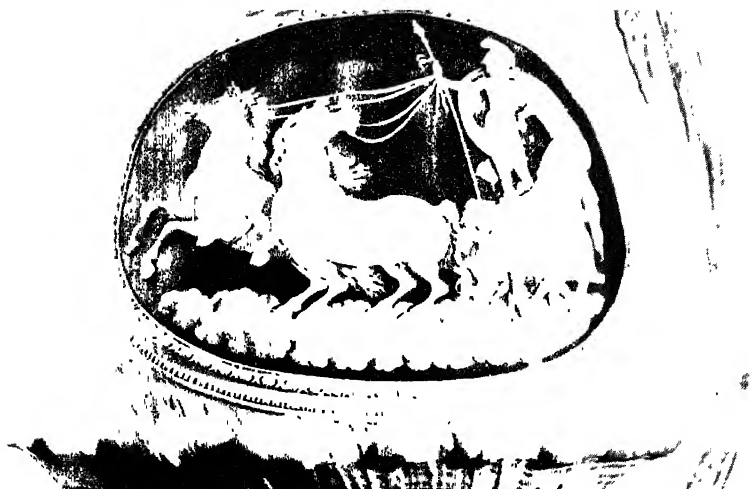
The cardinal numbers from one to ten in Latin are *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, *quattuor*, *quīque*, *sex*, *septem*, *octō*, *novem*, *decem*. Of these, only the first three are declined. *Ūnus*, -a, -um is declined like *bonus* except in the genitive and dative singular (for which see page 318, 18). *Duo* and *trēs* are, of course, always in the plural.

They are declined as follows:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>du'o</i>	<i>du'ae</i>	<i>du'o</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tri'a</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duō'rum</i>	<i>duā'rum</i>	<i>duō'rum</i>	<i>tri'um</i>	<i>tri'um</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duō'bus</i>	<i>duā'bus</i>	<i>duō'bus</i>	<i>tri'bus</i>	<i>tri'bus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>du'ōs</i> , <i>du'o</i>	<i>du'ās</i>	<i>du'o</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tri'a</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duō'bus</i>	<i>duā'bus</i>	<i>duō'bus</i>	<i>tri'bus</i>	<i>tri'bus</i>



*Apollo driving  
his chariot  
—a cameo  
carved  
on a shell*



### A DARING YOUNG MAN

**P**haëthōn erat puer superbissimus quod Apollō erat pater ejus. Saepe juvenis Apollinem, deum sōlis, agentem equōs potentēs trāns caelum spectābat. Ōlim ad rēgiam sōlis vēnit.

Filiō salūtātō, Apollō dixit, “Quid cupiēns vēnistī? Nihil recūsābō.”

Phaëthōn magnō cum gaudiō respondit, “Equōs sōlis trāns caelum agere cupiō.”

Apollō cum dolōre dixit, “Ō Phaëthōn infēlix, es fortis sed neque satis potēns neque satis sapiēns. Tua audācia quidem tibi mortis, mihi dolōris causa erit.”

Filius, autem, respondit, “Deus hoc prōmissum recūsāre nōn audet. Certus sum; mentem nōn mūtābō. Potentior et sapientior sum, quod filius dei sum.”

Māne, igitur, equī ācerimī jūctī sunt, et per portās Aurōrae apertās Phaëthōn eōs libenter ēgit. Equī subitō respicientēs territī erant. Prīmō prope terram, deinde altius inter stellās juvenem infēlicem portantēs, dēsistere recūsābant. In agrīs arātis flammae frūmentum vāstābant; aquae quidem flūminum mariumque recēdēbant.

Tum Juppiter, periculō gravissimō visō, fulmen (*thunderbolt*) jēcit. Statim inter flammās Phaëthōn ē caelō in flūmen cecidit (*fell*). Postea sororēs ejus in ripā flūminis lacrimantēs in arborēs mūtatae sunt, et folia eārum sonum fēminārum dolentium facere numquam dēstitērunt.

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, plow, till,  
cultivate

certus, -a, -um, certain, sure; prō  
certō, certainly

fortis, -e, brave, strong

jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūctum, join,  
yoke, fasten together

juvenis, juvenis (*gen. pl. -um*), M.,  
young man, youth

## ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY

There are a few adjectives which are compared irregularly. The most important are the following:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus, -a, -um, good	melior, melius, better	optimus, -a, -um, best
malus, -a, -um, bad	pejor, pejus, worse	pessimus, -a, -um, worst
magnus, -a, -um, large	major, majus, larger	maximus, -a, -um, largest
parvus, -a, -um, small	minor, minus, smaller	minimus, -a, -um, smallest
multus, -a, -um, much	—, plūs, more	plūrimus, -a, -um, most
	ulterior, ulterius, farther	ultimus, -a, -um, farthest

In the singular, plūs is a neuter noun, with the genitive plūris. In the plural it is declined as an adjective with the forms plūrēs, plūra, etc.

## ADVERBS COMPARED REGULARLY

In adverbs derived from adjectives the comparative is regularly the same as the neuter accusative singular form of the comparative of the corresponding adjective. The superlative is made by adding -ē to the base of the superlative of the corresponding adjective.

<i>Pos.</i>	lātē ( <i>from lātus</i> )	ācriter ( <i>from ācer</i> )	facile ( <i>from facilis</i> )
<i>Comp.</i>	lātius	ācrius	facilius
<i>Super.</i>	lātissimē	ācerrimē	facillimē

## IRREGULAR ADVERBS

The following adverbs are irregular either in their formation or their comparison:

<i>Positive:</i>	bene, well	male, badly	magnopere, greatly
<i>Comparative:</i>	melius, better	pejus, worse	magis, more
<i>Superlative:</i>	optimē, best	pessimē, worst	maximē, very greatly
<i>Positive:</i>	multum, much	parum, little	
<i>Comparative:</i>	plūs, more	minus, less	
<i>Superlative:</i>	plūrimum, most	minimē, least	



*Roman drinking cups*

# REVIEW OF UNIT VII

---

## I. Supply the participle for each blank.

1. Nōmen fēminae Pandōra erat, — “dōna omnia.” (*meaning*)
2. — ā deō, Epimētheus arcam nōn aperuit. (*Warned*)
3. — pericula, Pandōra arcam spectābat. (*Fearing*)
4. Haec gaudia habēre —, arcam aperuit. (*desiring*)
5. Audīvit vōcem —, “Liberā mē!” (*saying*)

II. Supply the missing words and arrange the sentences in the order of the story on page 135.

1. Tum — fulmen jēcit.
2. Filius —, “Certus sum; — nōn mūtābō.”
3. Phaēthōn cupīvit equōs sōlis trāns — agere.
4. Phaēthōn erat — Apollinis.
5. Apollō dixit, “Quid cupīs? — recūsābō.”
6. Apollō dixit, “Es neque satis potēns neque satis —.”
7. Subitō equī — erant.
8. Phaēthōn ē — in flūmen cecidit.

## III. Complete each sentence with the correct Latin word.

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Sex et quattuor sunt —. | 4. Novem et ūnus sunt —.  |
| 2. Quīnque et trēs sunt —. | 5. Octō et duo sunt —.    |
| 3. Septem et duo sunt —.   | 6. Septem et trēs sunt —. |

IV. Choose the word that fits each sentence and tell why you chose it.

- |   |              |               |
|---|--------------|---------------|
| 1. Mārcus erat ( <i>very stupid</i> ).            |              |               |
| stupidus  | stupidior    | stupidissimus |
| 2. Ille est liber ( <i>better</i> ).              |              |               |
| bonus   | melior       | optimus       |
| 3. Pandōra erat fēmina ( <i>curious</i> ).        |              |               |
| cūriōsissima                                      | cūriōsa      | cūriōsior     |
| 4. Magna arca est ( <i>too heavy</i> ).           |              |               |
| gravis  | gravior      | gravissima    |
| 5. Phaēthōn erat ( <i>a very brave</i> ) juvenis. |              |               |
| altissimus  | fēlicissimus | fortissimus   |

UNIT  
VIII *The Fall of Troy*

*The Greek poet Homer wrote the story of the Trojan War in deathless verse. Other ancient writers told it again and again until it became one of the most famous stories of antiquity. Here are some interesting incidents connected with the Trojan War.*



A BEAUTY CONTEST

**O**lim dī deaeque ad magnam cēnam invitāti sunt. Discordia erat sōla dea quae nōn invitāta est. Tamen, maximē irāta, ad cēnam vēnit et jēcit inter deōs deāsque mālum aureum in quō  
5 hoc verbum scriptum est: “Pulcherrimae.”

Statim erat contrōversia inter deās Jūnōnem et Minervam et Venerem. Omnēs mālum aureum habēre cupiēbant.

Juppiter, quī aderat, dixit, “In hāc contrōversiā  
10 jūdex esse nōn cupiō. In monte Īdā, autem, habitat pāstor, cujus nōmen est Paris. Petite eum; is hoc mālum, insigne victōriae, deae ‘pulcherrimae’ dabit.”

Deae, igitur, in montem Īdam convēnērunt. Cum eīs erat Mercurius, cujus auxiliō deae Paridem invēnērunt.

15 Mercurius pāstōrī mālum aureum mōnstrāvit, et dixit, “In hōc mālō quod teneō ūnum verbum scribitur: ‘Pulcherrimae.’ Magna est contrōversia inter hās deās quibuscum veniō. Juppiter, igitur, tē jūdicem hujus contrōversiae dēlēgit.”

Itaque Paris, graviter agitātus, verba deārum audiēbat. Primō  
20 Jūnō dixit, “Dā mihi mālum aureum, Paris. Pulchrior quam aliae sum. Rēgīna deōrum sum; divitiās potentiamque tibi dabō.”

Deinde Minerva jūdicī dixit, “Dā mihi mālum aureum. Dea sapientiae sum; magnam sapientiam et cōnsilia bona tibi dabō.”

Dēnique Venus pulchra prō jūdice stetit. “Finem hujus con-  
25 trōversiae facile faciam,” dixit. “Dā mihi mālum aureum. Dea amōris sum; pulcherrimam fēminam quae in orbe terrārum (*the world*) vivit conjugem tibi dabō!”

Paris, autem, jūdicium facile nōn fēcit. Divitiae, potentia, sapientia—omnēs juvenī grātae erant. Tamen conjugem pulcherrimam  
30 prōmissam ā Venere maximē cupiēbat. Itaque deae amōris mālum dedit.

amor, -ōris, M., love  
 conveniō, -venīre, -vēni, -ventum,  
 assemble, gather  
 divitiae, -ārum, F., *pl.*, riches, wealth  
 facile, *adv.*, easily  
 iūdex, iūdīcis, M., judge

iūdicium, -ī, N., judgment, decision  
 mālum, -ī, N., apple  
 pāstor, -ōris, M., shepherd  
 potentia, -ae, F., power  
 quī, quae, quod, who, which, that  
 sapientia, -ae, F., wisdom

## MEANING AND USE OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

On page 29 you met a dependent clause introduced by a *conjunction* to show its relationship to an independent clause.

In the sentence *The boy whom you saw yesterday is my brother*, the dependent clause *whom you saw yesterday* is introduced by the relative pronoun *whom*. The word *whom* connects the dependent clause with the independent clause and is a pronoun with *boy* as its antecedent.

The English relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, and *that*. We use *who* to refer to persons and *which* to refer to things. We may use *that* for either persons or things. In the following sentence *quem* is a relative pronoun.

Homō quem vidēs amicus meus est, *The man whom you see is my friend.*

The Latin relative pronouns may be translated *who* (*whom*), *which*, or *that*. For their forms, see page 322, 30.

## AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Homō quem vidēs amicus meus est, *The man whom you see is my friend.*

In the sentence above, *quem* is masculine singular to agree with its antecedent, *homō*. It is accusative because it is the object of *vidēs*.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN WITH *cum*

When the ablative forms of the relative pronoun are used as objects of the preposition *cum*, they regularly have *cum* added as a final syllable.

quōcum, quācum, quibuscum, *with whom, with which*

This is also true of the interrogative pronoun.

## PARIS AND HELEN

**M**ālō aureō acceptō, Venus Paridī nūntiāvit, “Fēmina pulcherrima  
(*most beautiful*) in Graeciā habitat. Nōmen ejus est Helena;  
Helena erit tua conjūnx.”

Dea Paridī quoque dixit patrem et mātrem ejus esse rēgem et rē-  
5 gīnam Trōjae. “Monitus ōrāculō, pater tuus mortem tuam cupiēbat  
et tē in silvīs reliquit; pāstor tē servāvit,” dixit.

Dea ostendit Hectorem, frātre[m] Paridis, in rēgiā Trōjānā habitāre  
et ā populō propter magnam audāciam laudārī.

Itaque Paris invidiōsus irātusque ad urbem Trōjam prōcessit. Ubi  
10 Priamus rēx pāstōrem vidit, statim sēnsit eum esse filium suum. Nōn  
jam mortem Paridis cupiēbat. Laetus quod Paris vīvēbat, Priamus  
juvenem libenter in rēgiā invitāvit.

Posteā cum classe Paris ad Graeciam nāvigāvit, quamquam pater  
ejus crēdidit eum ad aliā terram iter facere. Hic audivit Helenam,  
15 fēminā ā Venere prōmissam, Spartae rēgīnam et uxōrem Menelāi esse.

Itaque Paris sōlus ad urbem Spartam prōcessit, sed cum Helenā  
sēc[r]etō discessit. Rēgīna perfida, conjugē relictō, ad urbem Trōjam  
cum Paride fūgit.

Uxōre āmissā, Mene-  
20 lāus principēs Graeciae  
convocāvit. Graviter  
agitātus, rēx in animō  
bellum contrā Trōjānōs  
gerere habuit.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-  
tum, receive, accept  
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēdi-  
tum, believe, trust  
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -ces-  
sum, depart, withdraw  
ostendō, -tendere, -tendī,  
-tentum, show, display  
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsū,  
feel, believe

*Helena cum  
Paride fugit*



## DIRECT QUOTATIONS

A *direct quotation* is one which repeats the exact words of the speaker.

*He said, "I will come."*

The exact words of the speaker are inclosed in quotation marks.

## INDIRECT QUOTATIONS

An *indirect quotation* is one which repeats the thought, but not the exact words of the original speaker. In English an indirect quotation is often introduced by the conjunction *that*, but sometimes the conjunction is omitted.

*He said that he would come, or He said he would come.*

No conjunction is used to introduce indirect quotations in Latin. An indirect quotation has its verb in the infinitive and its subject in the accusative.

*Dicit puerum in silvā ambulāre, He says that the boy is walking in the forest.*

In the direct form this quotation would be *Puer in silvā ambulat*. In the indirect quotation *puer*, the subject, becomes *puerum*, and *ambulat* becomes *ambulāre*.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The name *indirect discourse* is given to the use of the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect quotations.

Certain other expressions which are not exactly quotations take the same form as indirect quotations.

*I heard that you had received a letter.*

*Everyone thought that the day would be pleasant.*

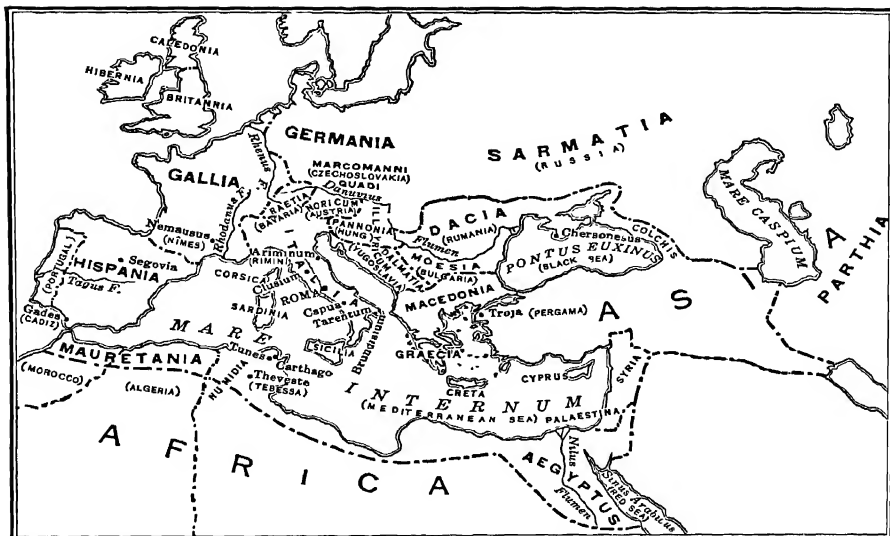
In the sentences above, the clauses introduced by *that* would be in the form of indirect discourse in Latin. Accordingly, their verbs would be infinitives and their subjects would stand in the accusative.

Indirect discourse is used with verbs of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing*, and the like.

*Crēdō tē librum meum habēre, I believe (that) you have my book.*

When the speaker makes a statement about himself in indirect discourse, the reflexive pronoun is used.

*Dicit sē librum tuum habēre, He says that he has your book.*



The dash-and-dot line marks the boundaries of the Roman Empire

## PREDICATE NOUN OR ADJECTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

A predicate noun or adjective used with an infinitive in indirect discourse is in the accusative, to agree with the subject of the infinitive.

*Crēdimus ducem nostrum fortem esse, We believe (that) our leader is brave.*

## PRESENT INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The act expressed by the present infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as occurring at the time shown by the tense of the main verb.

*Dicit sē periculum timēre, He says that he fears danger.*

*Dixit sē periculum timēre, He said that he feared danger.*

Choose the correct verb to complete each sentence.

1. Paris dicit fēminam in Graeciā (habitāre habitat).
2. Helena dicit, "In Graeciā (habitāre habitō)."
3. Dea nūntiat juvenem filium rēgis (esse est).
4. Priamus dicit, "Paris (esse est) filius meus."
5. Rēgīna dicit, "Conjugem meum (āmīsī āmittere)."



# THE FAR-REACHING EMPIRE



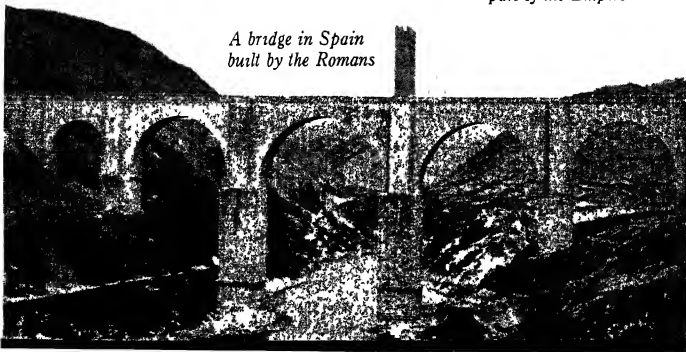
*Ancient arches  
uncovered  
in Africa*



*Settlers in the  
Rhineland paying  
rent to a Roman agent*



*Remains of a town on  
the Black Sea once  
part of the Empire*



*A bridge in Spain  
built by the Romans*

## HELEN AND THE BEGGAR

Postquam Paris et Hector ā Graecīs interfectī sunt, magnus dolor mentēs populī Trōjānī occupāvit. In viās urbis Helena exire nōn audēbat, quod fēminae Trōjānae clāmāverunt, "Propter tē, fēmina mala, dī nōs nōn jam amant."

- 5 In templis sacerdotēs dixerunt, "Deōs, Trōjānī, ōrāre dēbētis; in ārīs sacrificia pōnite. Ōmina sunt mala. Fāta nōs nostramque urbem dēlēbunt."

Trōjānī sciēbant sē ducēs bonōs nōn jam habēre.

- Jam Helena ad Graecōs trānsire cupiēbat. Tamen nōn solum iram  
10 Menelāi timēbat sed etiam portae urbis clausae sunt.

Ōlim Helena in urbe mendicum vīdit. Multī liberī, clāmantēs et lapidēs jacentēs, ad eum ībant. Helena subitō sēnsit hunc mendicum esse Ulixem, ducem clārum Graecum. Itaque servō suō dixit, "Vocā mendicum in rēgiam; dā eī cibum et aquam."

- 15 Hōc factō, Helena servōs suōs expulit et parvā vōce mendicō dixit, "Tē recognōscō; tū es Ulixēs. Quid in hāc urbe facis? Nōnne ad Graecōs redibis?"

Ulixēs respondit sē  
portās et viās urbis spec-  
20 tāre; Graecōs novum cōn-  
siliū habēre. "Certē,"  
dixit, "urbs Trōja dē-  
lēbitur."

- Tum Helena dixit, "Tē  
25 juvābō; tibi viam sēcrētā  
in mediā urbem mōn-  
strābō. Ita, meō auxiliō,  
Graeci Trōjam vāstā-  
bunt."

eō, ire, ī (ivi), itum, go  
lapis, lapidis, M., a stone  
mendicus, -ī, M., beggar  
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum,  
place, put; castra pōnere,  
to pitch camp  
sacerdōs, -dōtis, M. and F.,  
priest, priestess  
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum,  
know  
tū, you

*Helen at Troy*



## CONJUGATION OF *eō*

The irregular verb *eō*, *go*, is conjugated in the present system as follows:

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
	SINGULAR	
<i>e'ō</i> , I go	<i>ī'bam</i> , I was going, I went	<i>ī'bō</i> , I shall go
<i>īs</i> , you go		<i>ī'bis</i> , you will go
<i>it</i> , he, she, it goes	<i>ī'bās</i> , you were going, you went	<i>ī'bit</i> , he, she, it will go
	<i>ī'bat</i> , he, she, it was going; he, she, it went	
	PLURAL	
<i>ī'mus</i> , we go	<i>ībā'mus</i> , we were going, we went	<i>ī'bimus</i> , we shall go
<i>ī'tis</i> , you go		<i>ī'bitis</i> , you will go
<i>e'unt</i> , they go	<i>ībā'tis</i> , you were going, you went	<i>ī'bunt</i> , they will go
	<i>ī'bant</i> , they were going, they went	

The principal parts are *eō*, *īre*, *īī* or *īvī*, *itum*. The perfect is conjugated as follows:

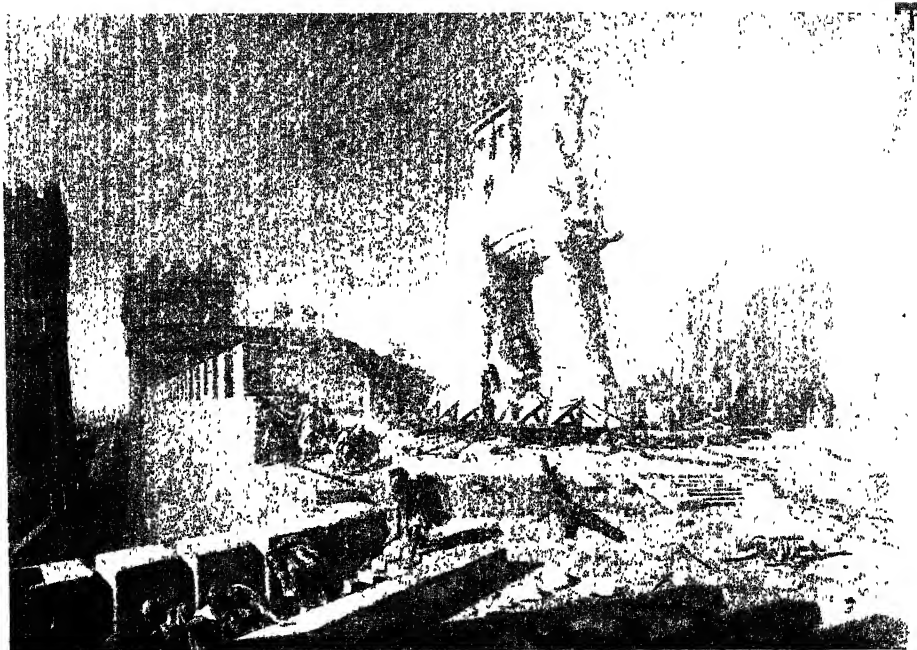
SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>i'ī</i> , I went, I have gone	<i>i'imus</i> , we went, we have gone
<i>īs'tī</i> , you went, you have gone	<i>īs'tis</i> , you went, you have gone
<i>i'it</i> , he, she, it went; he, she, it has gone	<i>iē'runt</i> , they went, they have gone

## COMPOUNDS OF *eō*

There are many compounds of *eō*, such as *exeō*, *go out*, *redeō*, *go back*, *trānseō*, *go across*. They are conjugated like *eō*, with the syllable *ex-*, *red-*, *trāns-*, etc., prefixed: present, *exeō*, *exīs*, etc.

Supply the correct forms of the verb *eō* in the following sentences.

1. Deae ad montem — (*are going*).
2. Paris ad urbem Trōjam — (*was going*).
3. Ad urbem Spartam mox — (*he will go*).
4. Ad ōram maritimam saepe — (*we have gone*).



*Graeci descenderunt*

## THE WOODEN HORSE

Hectore mortuō, tamen exercitūs Graeci urbem Trōjam nōn cēpērunt. Quamquam Helena Graecōs juvāre dēsiderāvit, fortēs Trōjānī eam prohibuērunt.

Dēnique Graeci dolum parāvērunt. Magnum equum ligneum  
 5 fēcērunt in quō paucōs virōs fortēs cēlāvērunt. Noctū cēteri Graeci, equō in cōnspectū Trōjānōrum relictō, ad insulam propinquam discessērunt. Reliquērunt ūnum ē comitibus suis, cujus nōmen erat Sinōn; et is prope urbem sē cēlāvit.

Māne Trōjānī ex urbe magnō cum gaudiō prōcessērunt et in castra  
 10 Graecōrum dēserta convēnērunt. Equum spectāvērunt. Multī qui dolum nōn sēnsērunt eum in urbem trahere dēsiderāvērunt. Alii, autem, equum timuērunt eumque dēlēre dēsiderāvērunt.

Deinde Lāocoōn, sacerdos, clāmāvit in equō latēre dolum. "Timeō Graecōs," dixit, "etiam dōna dantēs."

15 Hīs verbis dictis, statim Lāocoōn hastam contrā equum jēcīt. Subitō autem duo serpentēs ē marī vēnērunt et Lāocoontem et ejus duōs filiōs interfēcērunt.

Tum omnēs dixērunt Lāocoontem malum esse. Clāmāvērunt, “Dī sunt irātī. Equum in urbem trahere dēbēmus.”

Interim Sinōn inventus est et ad rēgem celerrimē ductus est.

“Graecus sum,” dixit. “Cēteri Graeci mē interficere temptāvērunt. Fūgī, autem, et mē (*myself*) cēlāvī. Jam Graeci in patriam suam sēcrētō rediērunt. Equus est sacer deae Minervae. Pōne eum in arce; ita urbs tua semper tūta erit.”

Equō in arce positō, deīs sacrificia Trōjānī fēcērunt. In tōtā urbe magnum erat gaudium.

Mediā nocte (*at midnight*) Sinōn ad equum vēnit. Jānuam parvam in corpore equī aperuit; Graeci dēscendērunt et portās urbis aperuērunt. Jam omnēs exercitūs Graeci adfuērunt; signum proeliī cornibus dedērunt; impetum in Trōjānōs fēcērunt. Urbs, capta auxiliō equī lignei, mox ā Trōjānis dēserēbātur.

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., sight

cornū, -ūs, N., horn; wing of an army

dēserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum,

desert, abandon

dēsertus, -a, -um, deserted

exercitus, -ūs, M., army

impetus, -ūs, M., attack

ligneus, -a, -um, wooden, of wood

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, drag,

draw, pull

#### FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS

In the *fourth declension* the genitive singular ends in -ūs.

The nominative singular ends in -us for the masculine and feminine and in -ū for the neuter. Most nouns ending in -us are masculine.

	exercitus, M., army		cornū, N., horn	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	exerc'itus	cor'nū	exerc'itūs	cor'nua
Gen.	exerc'itūs	cor'nūs	exerci'tuum	cor'nuum
Dat.	exerci'tui	cor'nū	exerci'tibus	cor'nibus
Acc.	exerc'itum	cor'nū	exerc'itūs	cor'nua
Abl.	exerc'itū	cor'nū	exerci'tibus	cor'nibus

#### ENDINGS

As you see, the endings of fourth-declension nouns of the two classes are as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nominative:	-us	-ū	-ūs	-ua
Genitive:	-ūs	-ūs	-uum	-uum
Dative:	-ui	-ū	-ibus	-ibus
Accusative:	-um	-ū	-ūs	-ua
Ablative:	-ū	-ū	-ibus	-ibus

## ENGLISH ADJECTIVES FROM LATIN ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES

Many Latin adjectives give us English adjectives similar in form and meaning. Some of these Latin adjectives are made from nouns plus suffixes. Besides those ending in *-alis* or *-aris*, there are adjectives with *-inus* or *-ilis* (English *-ine* and *-il* or *-ile*) which come from nouns and mean *pertaining to* or *like*.

*femininus* (*femina*), *feminine* (like a woman)  
*civilis* (*civis*), *civil* (pertaining to a citizen)  
*hostilis* (*hostis*), *hostile* (pertaining to an enemy)

What is the English adjective from each Latin adjective below?

*canis*, *caninus*                      *puer*, *puerilis*

Some Latin adjectives coming from nouns have the suffixes *-osus* (English *-ous* or *-ose*) and *-icus* or *-ticus* (English *-ic* or *-tic*).

*copiosus* (*copia*), *copious*    *domesticus* (*domus*), *domestic*

Latin adjectives come also from verbs. Some present participles used as adjectives have corresponding English words. First-conjugation verbs usually give the English ending *-ant*; other verbs *-ent*.

*vigilans*, *-antis* (*vigilo*), *vigilant*                      *latens*, *-entis* (*lateo*), *latent*

Perfect passive participles also give Latin and English adjectives.

*adversus* (*adverto*), *adverse*                      *oppositus* (*oppono*), *opposite*

Other participles give Latin adjectives which do not have English cognates, though a connection may often be seen.

*paratus* (*paro*), *prepared*                      *terrītus* (*terreo*), *terrified*

What English adjectives come from the following Latin words?

*conveniēns*              *definitus*              *expectans*              *separatus*

Latin adjectives ending in *-bilis* and *-idus* were also made from verbs and often give corresponding English adjectives.

*terribilis* (*terreo*), *terrible*                      *timidus* (*timeo*), *timid*

Give the English adjective corresponding to each of these Latin adjectives.

<i>antiquus</i>	<i>felinus</i>	<i>horribilis</i>	<i>patiens</i>	<i>significans</i>
<i>aquaticus</i>	<i>gloriosus</i>	<i>ornatus</i>	<i>servilis</i>	<i>vocalis</i>

# REVIEW OF UNIT VIII

---

I. Complete each of the following sentences with a form of the relative pronoun.

1. Vir — vidī fuit dux noster.
2. Insigne — gerēbat aureum erat.
3. Hic est lapis — vir necātus est.
4. Virī — cum ambulābant iudicēs sunt.
5. Sacerdōtēs — vidēbimus convēnērunt.

II. In the following sentences a form of one of these words should be supplied for each blank. Select the right word and the right form.

cōspectus	exercitus	mālum
cornū	impetus	pāstor

1. Crēdō — esse filium rēgis.
2. Audimus — Venerī dari.
3. Dicit — exercitūs contrā hostēs — facere.
4. Crēdō — ducis mentēs militum cōfirmāre.
5. Silentium — proelium parārī ostendit.

III. Find in the list below, the verb that completes each sentence correctly.

1. Cervum, puerī, (*you have killed*).
2. Bellum in hāc terrā (*has been waged*).
3. Multa vēstigia (*have been seen*).
4. Multae virginēs in proeliō (*were slain*).
5. Castra fortiter (*was defended*).
6. In urbe, sorōrēs, (*you have been seen*).
7. Sumus militēs, sed graviter (*we have been wounded*).
8. Silentio hastae (*were being hurled*).
9. In urbem, Anna, (*you are being led*).
10. Magnum numerum militum (*he recognized*).

dēfendunt	gestum est	jaciēbantur	vīsaē estis
dēfēnsa sunt	interfēcistis	jactae sunt	visa sunt
dūceris	interfectae sunt	recognōvit	vulnerāmus
dūcimini	interficiuntur	vidēbitur	vulnerātī sumus

IX *The Story of Iphigenia*

*The story of Iphigenia, a character in the Iliad, has been often retold, but the most famous account is that of the Greek dramatist Euripides. Some scenes are here given in part.*

## A DECEITFUL LETTER

Nox erat, et castra Graecōrum, prope urbem Aulidem posita, silēbant. In tabernāculō Agamemnonis, ducis Graeci, erat lūmen clārum. Subitō rēx ad portam tabernāculi vēnit servumque fidum ad sē vocāvit.

5 *Servus.* Ō domine, vocāvistine mē?

*Agamemnōn.* Ita; ego dēsiderō hanc epistulam ad uxōrem meam, Clytemnestram, sine morā portārī.

*Servus.* Tibi semper fidus sum. Cūr, domine, per tōtam noctem numquam tū dormivisti?

10 *Agamemnōn.* Magnam causam dolōris habeo. Ventī adversī per trēs mēnsēs nāvēs nostrās nāvīgāre prohibuērunt. Calchās sacerdos mihi nūntiāvit Diānam esse irātā, magnaue sacrificia postulāre. Meam filiam, Īphigeniā, sacrificāre iussus sum.

*Servus.* Certē Calchās est vir malus. Īphigeniā nobīs cāra est.

15 *Agamemnōn.* Sed Menelāus, frāter meus, dixit, "Hōc sacrificiō ā tē factō, ventī secundī nōs ad urbem Trōjam portābunt. Nōbiscum et auxiliō deōrum Trōjānōs superābis."

*Servus.* Cūr Menelāus filiam suam nōn dat? Tū tē tuamque familiam dēfendere dēbēs.

20 *Agamemnōn.* Dī filiam ejus nōn postulāverunt. Itaque maestus ad uxōrem meam jam mīsi epistulam in quā scripsi, "Achillēs filiam nostram, Īphigeniā, in mātirimōnium dūcere dēsiderat. Mitte eam sine morā ad castra nostra."

*Servus.* Sed cūr nunc alam epistulam mittis?

25 *Agamemnōn.* Mentem meam mūtāvi. In hāc epistulā quam tibi dō scripsi, "Ō conjūnx amāta, servā tē et filiam nostram; periculum magnum est; tenē eam domī."

*Servus* fidus, epistulā acceptā, per noctem fūgit.

adversus, -a, -um, unfavorable  
domī, at home  
ego, I

maestus, -a, -um, sad, gloomy  
secundus, -a, -um, favorable; second



## USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Thus far the personal pronouns *I*, *you*, and *we*, as subjects of the verb, have been indicated in Latin by the person endings of the verb, -ō, -s, -mus, -tis. But when the importance of the subject is emphasized or a contrast is brought out between subjects which are not in the same person, a personal pronoun in the nominative is used in Latin just as in English. The nominative forms are: *ego*, *I*; *tū*, *you*; *nōs*, *we*; *vōs*, *you* (plural).

The cases other than the nominative are used as we should expect, except that the genitive is not used to indicate possession.

### DECLENSION OF *ego*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>e'go</i> , I	<i>nōs</i> , we
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>me'ī</i> , of me	<i>nos'trum</i> , <i>nos'trī</i> , of us
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mi'hi</i> , to me, me ( <i>as indirect object</i> )	<i>nō'bīs</i> , to us, us ( <i>as indirect object</i> )
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i> , me ( <i>as direct object</i> )	<i>nōs</i> , us ( <i>as direct object</i> )
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i> , (from, with, by) me	<i>nō'bīs</i> , (from, with, by) us

For declension of *tū*, see page 320, 23.

### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSONS

On the previous page you learned the declension of the personal pronouns *ego* and *tū*. The genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative forms of these words are used as reflexive pronouns.

Examples of the accusative used as reflexive are given below.

*Mē* *nōn laudō*, *I do not praise myself.*

*Nōs* *nōn laudāmus*, *We do not praise ourselves.*

*Tē* *nōn laudās*, *You do not praise yourself.*

*Vōs* *nōn laudātis*, *You do not praise yourselves.*

### PRONOUNS WITH *cum*

When the ablative forms *mē*, *tē*, *nōbīs*, and *vōbīs* are used as objects of the preposition *cum*, they usually have *cum* attached as the final syllable.

*mēcum*, with me    *tēcum*, with you    *nōbiscum*, with us    *vōbiscum*, with you

## RENDEZVOUS WITH DEATH

Servus portāns epistulam Agamemnonis ā vigilibus captus erat, sed Agamemnōn haec nōn audīverat. Ubi, igitur, audīvit Clytemnestram cum Īphigeniā ad castra appropinquāre, graviter mōtus erat, quod scīvit filiam suam ad mortem dūcī. Itaque ad Menelāum  
5 vānerat.

*Agamemnōn.* Heu! Uxor mea filiam nostram mox ad mē dūcet. Ego, rēx potēns sapiēnsque, ad mortem filiam meam mittō! Jam in vincula Īphigeniā conjiciētur. Numquam iterum fēlix laetusque erō. Hanc calamitātem timēbam. Fāta mē regunt.

10 *Menelāus.* Dīc eis Achillem ā castris abesse; Calchās in tabernāculō manēbit filiamque nōn vidēbit.

*Agamemnōn.* Sed Ulixēs, vir sapiēns, voluntātem deōrum scit. Ego sciō hunc virum potentem cum inimicīs meis sē jungere.

Interim Clytemnestra et Īphigeniā, ā mīlite ductae, ad Agamemnonem appropinquāverant.  
15

*Clytemnestra.* Ecce, Īphigeniā, pater tuus! Laeta, Agamemnōn, tē videō. Propter imperāta tua ad castra pervēnimus.

*Īphigeniā.* Ō pater, iter erat dūrum. Heu! Tū es maestus! Nōne putās Achillem mē in mātrīmōnium dūcere dēbere? Putō Achillem  
20 esse virum potentem, sapientem, fēlicem. Fēlix erō, uxor ducis clārissimī.

*Agamemnōn.* Ita, Achillēs vir fortis est. Sed Trōja est longinqua.

*Īphigeniā.* Sciō iter esse longum; bene sciō omne bellum esse ācre.

Ubi est Achillēs? Cūr ad mē nōn venit? Cūr nōs nōn salūtat?

25 *Agamemnōn.* Achillēs cum cōpiīs suis in lītore nunc est. Mox aderit.

Hōc dictō, Agamemnōn fēminās in tabernāculum dūcit.

*Agamemnōn* [tabernāculō relictō]. Heu! Jam miser vivō! Certē servus meus epistulam ad Clytemnestram nōn portāvit.

conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum,  
throw, hurl

imperātum, -ī, N., command, order;  
imperāta facere, carry out orders,  
obey commands

perveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventum,  
arrive at, reach

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think  
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, direct; rule  
vigil, vigiliis, M., watchman, guard,  
sentinel  
vinculum, -ī, N., chain, bond  
voluntās, -ātis, F., wish, desire

## MEANING OF THE PAST PERFECT

The *past perfect tense* represents an act which took place before some specified or suggested time in the past. The English past perfect has the auxiliary verb *had*.

*I had carried.*

*You had carried.*

## FORMATION OF THE PAST PERFECT ACTIVE

The past perfect active of a Latin verb has the tense sign *-erā-*, which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are used as in the imperfect. The *-ā-* of the tense sign is short before the endings *-m*, *-t*, and *-nt*. The past perfect is formed in the same way for all four conjugations.

### SINGULAR

portā'veram, I had carried  
portā'verās, you had carried  
portā'verat, he, she, it had  
carried

monu'eram, I had warned  
monu'erās, you had warned  
monu'erat, he, she, it had  
warned

### PLURAL

portāverā'mus, we had carried  
portāverā'tis, you had carried  
portā'verant, they had carried

monuerā'mus, we had warned  
monuerā'tis, you had warned  
monu'erant, they had warned

## PAST PERFECT PASSIVE

The past perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the perfect participle with the imperfect tense of *sum*. This is true of all four conjugations.

### SINGULAR

portā'tus eram, I had been  
carried  
portā'tus erās, you had been  
carried  
portā'tus erat, he, she, it had  
been carried

mo'nitus eram, I had been  
warned  
mo'nitus erās, you had been  
warned  
mo'nitus erat, he, she, it had  
been warned

### PLURAL

portā'ti erāmus, we had been  
carried  
portā'ti erātis, you had been  
carried  
portā'ti erant, they had been  
carried

mo'nitī erāmus, we had been  
warned  
mo'nitī erātis, you had been  
warned  
mo'nitī erant, they had been  
warned

## SURPRISE FOR ACHILLES

**M**āne Achillēs, quī nōn audiverat Clytemnestram in castra pervēnisse, prō tabernāculō Agamemnonis stetit.

*Achillēs* [magnā vōce]. Ubi est Agamemnōn quī exercitūs Graecōs agit? Dic ei Achillem prō tabernāculō stāre. Omnēs sciunt mē  
5 ad hoc bellum ā Menelāō arcessitum esse. Jam pugnāre parātus, exercitus meus propter moram longam graviter dolet.

Clytemnestra ē tabernāculō venit.

*Achillēs*. Quem videō? Certē tū fēmina nōbilis es.

*Clytemnestra*. Sum Clytemnestra, conjūnx Agamemnonis. Laeta  
10 sum quod tū filiam meam in mātīmōnium dūcēs.

*Achillēs*. Quid dīcis? Ego sum Achillēs. Quis dīxit mē filiam tuam in mātīmōnium petīvisse?

*Clytemnestra*. Quid? Agamemnōn scrīpserat tē cupere eam in mātīmōnium dūcere.

15 *Achillēs*. Ego filiam tuam numquam arcessivī.

Servus territus ad Clytemnestram properat.

*Servus*. Ō rēgīna, mala sunt ōmina! Agamemnōn in animō magnum scelus habet. In animō habet filiam suam occīdere! Nōn solum āram parātam et gladium sed etiam sacerdotem vidī. Jam Calchās  
20 sacrificium parāverat; nunc virī animālia ad āram dūcunt. Tua filia quoque sacrificābitur.

*Clytemnestra*. Crēdō conjugem meum insānum esse. Quis hoc scelus parāvit? Achillēs, juvā nōs! Servā filiam meam, quae uxor tua erit!

25 *Achillēs* [graviter excitātus]. Ō Clytemnestra, ego filiam tuam ab omnī impetū dēfendam! Meōs mīlitēs contrā Agamemnonem agam.

arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, summon  
nōbilis, -e, noble, M. *pl. as noun*,  
the nobles

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, kill,  
slay

scelus, sceleris, N., crime; scelus  
facere, to commit a crime

*Iphigenia, filia  
Agamemnonis*



## PERFECT ACTIVE INFINITIVES

You have already learned the present active infinitive.

*portāre, to carry*

The perfect active infinitive of *portō* is *portāvisse, to have carried*.

This infinitive is formed by adding *-isse* to the perfect stem. The present and perfect active infinitives of the model verbs of the four conjugations are:

	I	II	III	IV
<i>Present:</i>	<i>portāre</i>	<i>monēre</i>	<i>dūcere</i>	<i>audīre</i>
<i>Perfect:</i>	<i>portāvisse</i>	<i>monuisse</i>	<i>dūxisse</i>	<i>audīvisse</i>

## PASSIVE INFINITIVES

You are familiar with the present passive infinitive.

I	II	III	IV
<i>portārī</i>	<i>monērī</i>	<i>dūcī capī</i>	<i>audīrī</i>

The perfect passive infinitive of all verbs is made up of the perfect participle followed by *esse*.

I	II	III	IV
<i>portātus esse</i>	<i>monitus esse</i>	<i>ductus esse captus esse</i>	<i>audītus esse</i>

## TENSE OF INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The act expressed by the present infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as occurring at the time shown by the tense of the main verb.

Dīcit sē perīculum timēre, *He says that he fears danger.*

Dixit sē perīculum timēre, *He said that he feared danger.*

The act expressed by the perfect infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as already past at the time shown by the tense of the main verb.

Hostēs fūgissee videō, *I see that the enemy have fled.*

Hostēs fūgissee vīdī, *I saw that the enemy had fled.*

Complete each sentence in the first column with a word or phrase from the second.

- |                                 |                |
|---------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. Juvā                         | (a) ad portam  |
| 2. Tēcum ībimus                 | (b) ad templum |
| 3. Jūdex, dūc nōs               | (c) tē         |
| 4. Scīmus vōs sacerdotēs habēre | (d) tibi       |
| 5. Causam dolōris ducis nārrābō | (e) vōbiscum   |



*Puellam ad locum longinquum  
Diana portavit*

## DIANA TO THE RESCUE

Agamemnōn filiam suam amātam sacrificāre nōn dēsiderāvit, sed putāvit deōs hoc per Calcham sacerdotem jussisse.

Diē sacrificiī militēs omnium exercituum Graecōrum in litore Īphigeniam multās hōrās expectāvērunt, ventōs secundōs et iter fēlix multōs mēnsēs petiverant; itaque mortem virginis nōn dolēbant.

Achillēs tamen suōs militēs ad tabernācula sua redire subitō jusserat. Ulixēs et Menelāus, ubi audivērunt Achillem hanc rem nōn probāre, graviter mōti erant.

Clytemnestra, clāmōribus hominum auditīs, sēnsit Īphigeniam ā militibus arcessitam esse. Agamemnōn tōtam noctem doluerat sed filiam suam ē tabernāculō ad āram dūcere parābat.

Īphigenia mātři maestae dīxit, "Māter amāta, nūllō tempore pater meus mē sacri-

ficāre dēsiderāvit; injūriam nōn facit; est voluntās deōrum. Nōn erō ignāva; cupiō militēs nostrōs contrā fortunam malam dēfendī. Brevi tempore exercitūs Graeci ā portū ventis secundis nāvigābunt; Graeci victōriam habēbunt; omnēs scient mē prō patriā occisam esse."

Ubi Agamemnōn filiam ad āram dūxit, puella fortis militibus dīxit, "Sentiō deōs mortem meam cupere. Mortem nōn recūsābō."

Multae rēs ā sacerdotē parātae erant et puella in ārā posita est. Subitō magnus clāmor auditus est magnumque lūmen in caelō apparuit (*appeared*). Dea Diāna aderat. Dea corpus cervae in ārā posuit quod Graeci corpus Īphigeniae esse crēdidērunt. Puellam, nūbe dēnsā tēctam, per caelum ad locum longinquum Diāna portāvit.

brevis, -e, short, brief  
diēs, diēi, M. and F., day  
ignāvus, -a, -um, idle; cowardly; M.  
as noun, coward  
portus, -ūs, M., harbor

rēs, rei, F., thing, affair, fact, matter  
tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, cover, protect  
tempus, temporis, N., time

## FIFTH DECLENSION

Nouns of the fifth declension may be recognized by the ending *-ēī* (*-eī* after a consonant) of the genitive singular. The nominative singular always ends in *-ēs*.

*Diēs*, *day*, is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine in the singular, but always masculine in the plural. The other nouns of this declension are feminine, except one compound of *diēs*.

*Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns which have all the forms. The few nouns in this declension are almost always used in the singular.

For declension of *diēs* and *rēs*, see page 315, 7.

## ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

In English we sometimes use a noun without a preposition to tell how long an act or a situation continues.

*We stayed in the country three days.*

Sometimes we use a preposition with the noun to express this idea.

*We stayed in the country for three days.*

The expressions *three days* in the first sentence and *for three days* in the second mean exactly the same thing.

In Latin a word which is used to denote duration of time is regularly put in the accusative without a preposition.

*Multās hōrās in insulā mānsī, I remained on the island many hours (or for many hours).*

## ABLATIVE OF TIME AT WHICH

The time at which or within which something happens is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

*Eō annō pater meus tēctum aedificāvit, My father built a house that year (or in that year).*

*Paucīs hōrīs portum vidēbit, In a few hours he will see the harbor.*

Commonly these expressions of time have the preposition *in* or *on* or *at* in English: *in that year; on the same day; at the appointed hour.*

The *ablative of time* answers the question "When?" The *accusative of duration of time* answers the question "How long?"

## ENGLISH NOUNS AND LATIN NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION

You already know Latin nouns of the first, second, and third declensions which give us English nouns similar in form and meaning. Many fourth-declension words also have related English nouns.

Some such words are spelled the same in both Latin and English.

consensus                  conspectus                  impetus

Other English nouns do not have the ending *-us*.

adventus, *advent*                  conventus, *convent*                  exitus, *exit*

From another group of fourth-declension Latin nouns come English nouns ending in *-e*.

domus, *dome*                  lacus, *lake* (*c* has become *k*)                  magistratus, *magistrate*

Give the English noun which corresponds to each of the following Latin nouns.

aestimatio	avaritia	detrimentum	fortitudo
aquaeductus	census	doctrina	senatus
augurium	colonia	eventus	temeritas

## REVIEW OF UNIT IX

---

I. In the following sentences translate the pronouns.

1. He knows that you (*pl.*) have seen the boys on the shore with me.
2. I think that Iphigenia was not sacrificed by the priest.
3. They had gone to the seashore for a short time on that day.
4. The men with whom you (*sing.*) contended about that matter have summoned guards.
5. Surely the leader knows that we have been in the city all day.
6. The goddess by whose order Iphigenia had been seized was Diana.
7. The army had refused to recognize the strangers with you (*pl.*).
8. The noble king had ruled for ten years.

II. Translate the following verbs in the sentences above, tell what each form is, and account for the form.

*have seen* (1)    *was sacrificed* (2)    *had gone* (3)    *have summoned* (4)  
*have been* (5)    *had been seized* (6)    *to recognize* (7)    *had ruled* (8)



III. Translate the following expressions of time in the sentences above: *on that day* (3) *all day* (5) *for ten years* (8)

IV. Give the Latin for the missing word.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Puella librum ( <i>her</i> ) habet.       | 6. Puellaelibrōs ( <i>their own</i> ) habent. |
| 2. Puella librum ( <i>their</i> ) habet.     | 7. Puella cum amīcīs ( <i>her</i> ) vēnit.    |
| 3. Puella librōs ( <i>her</i> ) habet.       | 8. Puella cum amīcīs ( <i>their</i> ) vēnit.  |
| 4. Puella librōs ( <i>his</i> ) habet.       | 9. Puella cum amīcō ( <i>her</i> ) vēnit.     |
| 5. Puerī librōs ( <i>their own</i> ) habent. | 10. Puella cum amīcō ( <i>their</i> ) vēnit.  |

V. Find in the list below, the equivalent of each English phrase in the Latin sentences and translate the complete sentences.

āctum esse	dūxisse	fuisse	parāvisse
arcessivisse	dēsertum esse	occidī	trānsisse

1. Crēdimus oppidum ā duce (*was abandoned*).
2. Certē filia nōbilis (*to be killed*) nōn dēbet.
3. Scīmus bellum causam magnī dolōris (*has been*).
4. Servus dīcit sacerdotē sacrificium (*has prepared*).
5. Menelāus ostendit Helenam ad Graecōs (*had gone across*).
6. Agamemnōn dixit sē Īphigenīam ad castra (*had summoned*).
7. Achillēs dīxit exercitum suum ad bellum (*had been driven*).

VI. Change each italicized word or phrase in the following sentences to a word of similar meaning, but of Latin derivation. For help, see the list of Latin words below the sentences.

1. The *flyers* made many *night* flights.
2. The *chief lawmakers* were *not present*.
3. *Bodily* punishment is *unlawful* in this *district*.
4. The *enmity* ceased soon after the arrival of the *peacemakers*.
5. The *beginning* paragraph of the *yearly* report was in *large* letters.
6. In spite of his *kingly* bearing he showed a spirit of *brotherly comradeship*.
7. He *replied* with *boldness* that he was *doubtful* about the *truthfulness* of the *fearful* man.

absum	corpus	lēx	respondeō
annus	dubius	nox	rēx
audācia	frāter	pāx	socius
avis	hostis	prīnceps	timidus
caput	initium	regiō	vērus

# X *Adventures of Ulysses*

---

After the Trojan War, the victors set out for their homes in different parts of Greece. On the way to the island of Ithaca, where his wife and son awaited him, Ulysses had many adventures. These delayed his return for ten years. The experiences of this famous Greek chief are related by the poet Homer in the *Odyssey*; some of them are retold here.

## THE LAND OF FORGETFULNESS

Postquam nāvēs Graecōrum pauca mīlia passuum ā litore Trōjae prōcessērunt, magna tempestās furere<sup>1</sup> incēpit.

Nāvis Ulixis, vī<sup>2</sup> tempestātis ad merīdiem (*south*) dēlāta,<sup>3</sup> ad lītus Libyae appulsa est. Ancorā jactā, Ulixēs nōnnūllōs<sup>4</sup> ē sociīs in terram  
 5 expōnere cōstituit. Eōs aquam referre et nātūrā regiōnis cognōscere jussit.

Dum hī fontem quaerunt,<sup>5</sup> ā quibusdam<sup>6</sup> incolīs vīsi sunt, quī eōs

### mīlle AND mīlia

The Latin word for *a thousand* is *mīlle*, an indeclinable adjective.

However, in referring to more than one thousand, Latin always uses a noun, *mīlia*, *mīlium*, which really means *thousands* and is therefore always followed by a genitive. *Mīlia* is declined like *insignia*.

Mīlle perīcula vīdī, *I have seen a thousand dangers.*

Duo mīlia hominū vīdī, *I saw two thousand men.*

## ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE

The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent of space.

Multa mīlia passuum nāvīgāvī, *I have sailed many miles.*

Ad hortum suum, quī pauca mīlia passuum aberat, properāvit,  
*He hastened to his garden, which was a few miles away.*

<sup>1</sup> With *tempestās*, what is a good translation of *furere*?

<sup>2</sup> *by force*, ablative singular of irregular noun *vis*. See page 315, 8.

<sup>3</sup> From *dēferō*. The conjugation of *ferō* and its compounds is given on the facing page

<sup>4</sup> *some, several*. What is the literal translation of *nōn + nūllōs*?

<sup>5</sup> *were seeking*. The present tense is used with *dum* meaning *while*, even though the main verb denotes past tense.

<sup>6</sup> From *quīdam*, *a certain, some*. For declension, see page 324.

## THE VERB *ferō* AND ITS COMPOUNDS

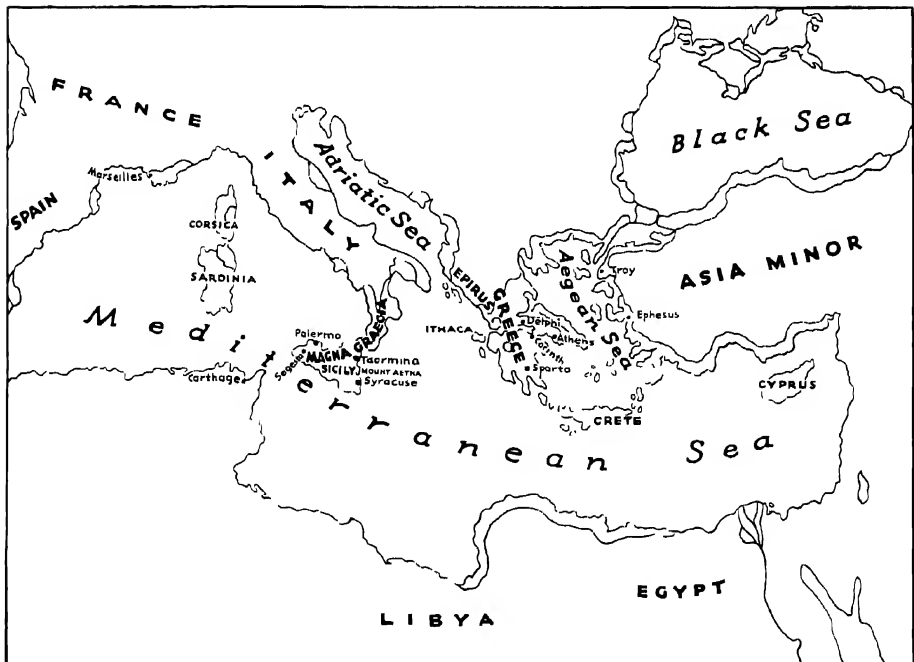
The verb *ferō*, *I carry*, *I bring*, is irregular. Its principal parts are: *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*. In the present indicative it is conjugated as follows:

ACTIVE	SINGULAR	PASSIVE
<i>ferō</i> , I carry		<i>feror</i> , I am carried
<i>fers</i> , you carry		<i>ferris</i> , you are carried
<i>fert</i> , he, she, it carries		<i>fertur</i> , he, she, it is carried
	PLURAL	
<i>ferimus</i> , we carry		<i>ferimur</i> , we are carried
<i>fertis</i> , you carry		<i>ferimini</i> , you are carried
<i>ferunt</i> , they carry		<i>feruntur</i> , they are carried

In the imperfect and future indicative *ferō* is conjugated as a regular *-ō* verb of the third conjugation *ferēbam*, *ferēbās*, etc.; *feram*, *ferēs*, etc. The perfect system is formed like that of all verbs.

Forms of two compounds of *ferō*—*dēferō*, *carry down*, and *referō*, *bring back*—appear on page 160. Other compounds are *auferō*, *cōnferō*, *differō*, *effērō*, *inferō*. Observe carefully the spelling of the principal parts of these compounds as they occur.

*While trying to reach Ithaca, Ulysses sailed the Mediterranean for ten years*





*Eos ad navem invitos reportavit*

benignē accēpērunt. Cibus eōrum hominum paene omnīnō ē quōdam mīrō frūctū cōnstābat,<sup>1</sup> quem lōtum appellābant.

Nautae, simul atque hunc cibum gustāvērunt (*tasted*), memoriā patriae et sociōrum statim dēposuērunt. In eā terrā amoenā semper  
5 manēre et illum cibum dulcem (*sweet*) edere volēbant.<sup>2</sup>

Ulixēs ab hōrā septimā<sup>3</sup> ad vesperum expectāvit, sed socii ejus nōn rediērunt. Id mīrum esse vidēbātur, et alii complūrēs nautae in eandem<sup>4</sup> regiōnem dēnique missi sunt.

Hī ad vicum, quī nōn longē aberat, iērunt, ubi comitēs suōs mox  
10 invēnērunt. Sed eī redire ad nāvēs nōlēbant.<sup>5</sup> Illis<sup>6</sup> igitur resistere ac manū sē dēfendere incēpērunt, saepe clāmantēs sē numquam ex eō locō abire velle.<sup>7</sup> Neque patriam neque domōs neque amīcōs in memoriā jam habēbant. Nihil praeter lōtum et illam terram amoenam dēsiderābant.

15 Tum nūntiī haec<sup>8</sup> ad Ulixem rettulērunt, quī statim ad eum locum sē contulit.<sup>7</sup> Manūs eōrum vīxit quī lōtum ēderant et in eā terrā manēre volēbant, et eōs ad nāvem invitōs reportāvit. Deinde ancoram sustulit<sup>8</sup> et portum reliquit.

<sup>1</sup> consisted (of).

<sup>2</sup> For volō and nōlō see the facing page.

<sup>3</sup> What time was it? On page 271 there  
18 is an explanation of the Roman method of calculating hours.

<sup>4</sup> A form of idem. See the facing page.

<sup>5</sup> Dative with resistere. See page 346, 64.

<sup>6</sup> With rettulērunt (from referō), reported this fact. The neuter plural of hic may often be translated this or this fact.

<sup>7</sup> made his way; literally, brought himself.

<sup>8</sup> From tollō, raise, not from a compound of ferō.

## THE VERBS *volō* AND *nōlō*

The principal parts of the irregular verbs *volō*, *I wish*, and *nōlō*, *I am unwilling*, are: *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*; *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*.

The stem vowel -o- in *volō* appears as -e- in the infinitive *velle*, but the -ō- of *nōlō* is unchanged in the infinitive *nōlle*.

*Volō* is conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>volō</i> , I wish	<i>volumus</i> , we wish
<i>vīs</i> , you wish	<i>vultis</i> , you wish
<i>vult</i> , he, she, it wishes	<i>volunt</i> , they wish

In the present indicative *nōlō* is conjugated: *nōlō*, *nōn vīs*, *nōn vult*, *nolumus*, *nōn vultis*, *nōlunt*.

In the imperfect and future indicative, *volō* and *nōlō* are conjugated as regular -ō verbs of the third conjugation: *volēbam*, *volēbās*, etc., *volam*, *volēs*, etc.; *nōlēbam*, *nōlēbās*, etc., *nōlam*, *nōlēs*, etc. The perfect system of these verbs is formed like that of all verbs.

## DECLENSION AND USE OF *īdem*

The declension of *īdem*, *same*, is as follows:

	SINGULAR	
	MASC.	FEM.      NEUT.
<i>Nominative:</i>	<i>ī'dem</i>	<i>e'adem      i'dem</i>
<i>Genitive:</i>	<i>ejus'dem</i>	<i>ejus'dem</i>
<i>Dative:</i>	<i>eī'dem</i>	<i>eī'dem</i>
<i>Accusative:</i>	<i>eun'dem</i>	<i>ean'dem      i'dem</i>
<i>Ablative:</i>	<i>eō'dem</i>	<i>eā'dem      eō'dem</i>
	PLURAL	
<i>Nominative:</i>	<i>eī'dem, ī'dem</i>	<i>eae'dem      e'adem</i>
<i>Genitive:</i>	<i>eōrun'dem</i>	<i>eārun'dem      eōrun'dem</i>
<i>Dative:</i>	<i>eīs'dem, īs'dem</i>	<i>eīs'dem, īs'dem      eīs'dem, īs'dem</i>
<i>Accusative:</i>	<i>eōs'dem</i>	<i>eās'dem      e'adem</i>
<i>Ablative:</i>	<i>eīs'dem, īs'dem</i>	<i>eīs'dem, īs'dem      eīs'dem, īs'dem</i>

As you will observe, the forms of *īdem* are for the most part identical with those of *is* with the syllable -*dem* added. Before *d* a final -*m* is changed to -*n*.

Occasionally *īdem* is used as a pronoun meaning *the same person* (neuter, *īdem*, *the same thing*). But it is commonly used as an adjective in agreement with a noun.



*Duos e numero eorum corripuit*

### A CLEVER TRICK

Postquam nautae eam tōtam noctem rēmis contendērunt, postridiē ad terram ignōtam vērunt. Ibi gigās<sup>1</sup> habitābat, qui tantum<sup>2</sup> ūnum oculum habēbat. Is crūdēlissimus erat et saepe hominēs dēvorābat. Nōmen ejus erat Polyphēmus.

- 5 Ulixēs et comitēs ejus ingēns antrum<sup>3</sup> invērunt in quō Polyphēmus noctū dormiēbat, sed is tum ab antrō aberat. Graeci multās rēs quās ibi vidērunt mirābantur.<sup>4</sup>

- Mox Polyphēmus rediit et Graecōs vidit, quamquam hī terrōre paene exanimāti in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē cēlāre  
10 cōnābantur.<sup>4</sup>

Sine morā duōs<sup>5</sup> ē numerō eōrum corripuit. Tum carnem eōrum avidē<sup>6</sup> dēvorāvit. Posterō diē duōs aliōs interfectōs dēvorāvit. Deinde

<sup>1</sup> The English adjective *gigantic* gives two clues—one to the meaning of *gigās*, the other to its stem. Give the meaning and the stem.

<sup>2</sup> *only*; an adverb.

<sup>3</sup> *Antrum* is a medical term used for a cavity in the skull.

<sup>4</sup> A deponent verb. See facing page.

<sup>5</sup> *Two of their number*. With *ūnus*, *duo*, and some other numerals (and also with *quidam*) the ablative with *ex* or *dē* is used instead of the genitive.

<sup>6</sup> The English derivative is *avidly*. What synonym is better here?

## DEPONENT VERBS

Some Latin verbs are passive in form but active in meaning, e.g., *cōnor*, *I try*; *polliceor*, *I promise*. These are called *deponent verbs*. They have only three principal parts:

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PRESENT INFINITIVE	PERFECT INDICATIVE
<i>cōnor</i>	<i>cōnārī</i>	<i>cōnātus sum</i>
<i>polliceor</i>	<i>pollicērī</i>	<i>pollicitus sum</i>

Deponents have only two stems, the present and the participial.

Their present and perfect infinitives are passive in form, active in meaning; the future infinitives are active in both form and meaning.

- I. *cōnārī*, to try; *cōnātus esse*, to have tried; *cōnātūrus esse*, to be about to try
- II. *pollicērī*, to promise; *pollicitus esse*, to have promised; *pollicitūrus esse*, to be about to promise

The present indicative of deponents of the first and second conjugations is formed exactly like the present passive of *portō* and *moneō*.

I	SINGULAR	II
<i>cōnor</i> , I try		<i>polliceor</i> , I promise
<i>cōnāris</i> , you try		<i>pollicēris</i> , you promise
<i>cōnātur</i> , he, she, it tries		<i>pollicētur</i> , he, she, it promises
PLURAL		
<i>cōnāmur</i> , we try		<i>pollicēmur</i> , we promise
<i>cōnāmini</i> , you try		<i>pollicēmini</i> , you promise
<i>cōnantur</i> , they try		<i>pollicentur</i> , they promise

In the imperfect and future, the use of tense signs and person endings is the same as in the passive of *portō* and *moneō*: *cōnābar*, etc., *cōnābor*, etc.; *pollicēbar*, etc., *pollicēbor*, etc.

The perfect tense of deponent verbs of the first and second conjugations is formed like the perfect passive of *portō* and *moneō*.

I	SINGULAR	II
<i>cōnātus sum</i> , I tried, I have tried		<i>pollicitus sum</i> , I promised, <i>etc.</i>
<i>cōnātus es</i> , you tried, you have tried		<i>pollicitus es</i> , you promised, <i>etc.</i>
<i>cōnātus est</i> , he, she, it tried, <i>etc.</i>		<i>pollicitus est</i> , he, she, it promised, <i>etc.</i>
PLURAL		
<i>cōnāti sumus</i> , we tried, we have tried		<i>polliciti sumus</i> , we promised, <i>etc.</i>
<i>cōnāti estis</i> , you tried, you have tried		<i>polliciti estis</i> , you promised, <i>etc.</i>
<i>cōnāti sunt</i> , they tried, <i>etc.</i>		<i>polliciti sunt</i> , they promised, <i>etc.</i>

ex antrō excessit et ovēs caprōsque (*sheep and goats*) ad montēs ēgit<sup>1</sup> ubi eōs pāscēbat (*he pastured*). Ulixēs autem dolum callidum fēcit. Magnum pālum, quem praeacūtum effēcerat, in igne posuit.

Tum gigās, quī sub<sup>2</sup> vesperum in antrum redierat, multum vīnum  
 5 bibit<sup>3</sup> et mox somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs et comitēs ejus Polyphēmum circumvērunt et oculum ejus pālō acūtō trānsfōdērunt (*gouged out*). Gigās magnōs clāmōrēs sustulit<sup>4</sup> et in antrō vagātus est, sed quod jam caecus erat, Graecōs capere nōn poterat.<sup>5</sup>

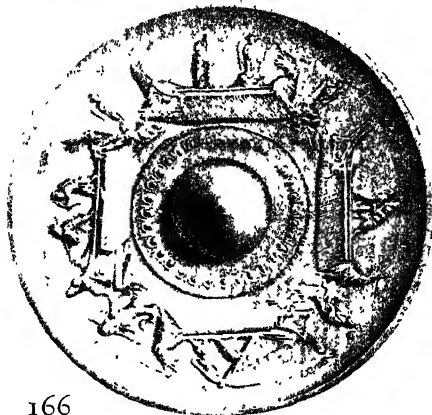
Porta antrī autem magnō saxō obstrūcta est, neque Graecī hoc  
 10 saxum āmovēre poterant.<sup>5</sup> Sed posterō diē māne<sup>6</sup> Polyphēmus saxum āmōvit et pecudēs ex antrō mīsīt. Tum Graecī effūgērunt. Tūti ad nāvēs contendērunt et statim profectī sunt.<sup>7</sup>

### CONJUGATION OF *possum*

The verb *possum*, *I am able* or *I can*, is irregular. It is a compound of *sum* and the adjective *potis*, *able*. In the present system in the indicative mood it is conjugated as follows. Notice its similarity to *sum*.

	SINGULAR	
PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
<b>possum</b>	<b>poteram</b>	<b>poterō</b>
<b>potes</b>	<b>poterās</b>	<b>poteris</b>
<b>potest</b>	<b>poterat</b>	<b>poterit</b>
	PLURAL	
<b>possumus</b>	<b>poterāmus</b>	<b>poterimus</b>
<b>potestis</b>	<b>poterātis</b>	<b>poteritis</b>
<b>possunt</b>	<b>poterant</b>	<b>poterunt</b>

The principal parts are *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*. The perfect is formed like that of regular verbs: *potuī*, *I have been able*, *potuistī*, *you have been able*, etc.



<sup>1</sup> *drove*, from *agō*.

<sup>2</sup> *loward*.

<sup>3</sup> Compare English *winebibber*.

<sup>4</sup> From *tollō*.

<sup>5</sup> A form of *possum*, given on this page.

<sup>6</sup> *the next morning*; literally, *on the next day in the morning*.

<sup>7</sup> *they set out*, from the deponent verb *proficiscor*, *proficisci*. For its forms, see the conjugation of *sequor* on the facing page.

*A Greek tray showing some of Ulysses' adventures*



## DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

The present tense of deponents of the third and fourth conjugations is formed like the present passive of *dūcō* and *audiō*.

III	SINGULAR	IV
<b>sequor</b> , I follow		<b>partior</b> , I share
<b>sequeris</b> , you follow		<b>partiris</b> , you share
<b>sequitur</b> , he, she, it follows		<b>partitur</b> , he, she, it shares
PLURAL		
<b>sequimur</b> , we follow		<b>partimur</b> , we share
<b>sequimini</b> , you follow		<b>partimini</b> , you share
<b>sequuntur</b> , they follow		<b>partiuntur</b> , they share

The present and perfect infinitives of deponents of the third and fourth conjugations are also passive in form and active in meaning, while the future infinitives are active in both form and meaning.

III. *sequi*, to follow; *secūtus esse*, to have followed; *secutūrus esse*, to be about to follow

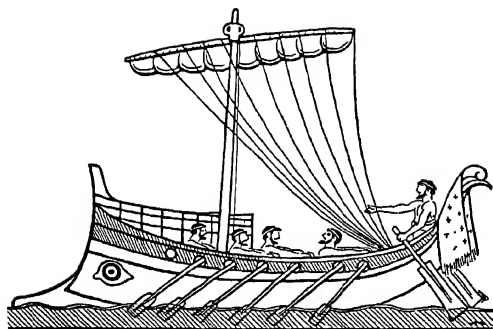
IV. *parti*, to share; *partitus esse*, to have shared; *partitūrus esse*, to be about to share

In the imperfect and future indicative the use of tense signs and person endings is the same as in the passive of the corresponding tenses of *dūcō* and *audiō*: *sequēbar*, *sequēbāris*, etc., *sequar*, *sequēris*, etc.; *partiēbar*, *partiēbāris*, etc., *partiar*, *partiēris*, etc.

There are also deponent verbs corresponding to the *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation. An example is *prōgredior*, *prōgredī*, *prōgressus sum*, *proceed*. It is conjugated like the passive of *capiō*: *prōgredior*, *prōgrederis*, etc.

The perfect system of all deponent verbs is like that of the regular passive system of other verbs: *cōnātus sum*, *cōnātus eram*, *cōnātus erō*, etc.; *pollicitus sum*, *pollicitus eram*, *pollicitus erō*, etc.; *secūtus sum*, *secūtus eram*, *secūtus erō*, etc.; *partitus sum*, *partitus eram*, *partitus erō*, etc.

Remember that the perfect participle of a deponent verb is active in meaning, as *secūtus*, *having followed*.



A Greek ship

## TOO MUCH WIND

Post multōs diēs Ulixēs socii-  
que ejus ad aliam insulam  
pervēnerunt, in quā rēx, Aeolus  
nōmine,<sup>1</sup> habitābat. Aeolus ven-  
tōs regēbat, et insula ejus erat  
patria ventōrum.

Hic Graeci benignē ab Aeolō accepti sunt, et paucōs diēs ibi mānsē-  
runt. Septimō diē, quod omnēs ē labōribus sē recēperant,<sup>2</sup> iterum  
proficisci volēbant.

10 Tum rēx Ulixi magnum saccum ē coriō (*of leather*) cōfectum dedit,  
in quō omnēs ventī praeter ūnum inclūsī erant. Hoc dōnum Ulixēs  
libenter accēpit. Ille ūnus quem rēx nōn inclūserat erat Zephyrus.  
Meridiē Graeci discesserunt, et Zephyrus eōs per flūctūs ferēbat.

Novem diēs cursum tenuerunt atque jam in cōspectum Ithacae<sup>3</sup>  
15 vēnerant. Sed comitēs Ulixis putābant aurum et argentum in eō  
saccō cēlārī. Hās rēs inter sē partiri<sup>4</sup> volēbant.

Itaque dum dux eōrum dormit,<sup>5</sup> saccum solvērunt. Statim ē  
saccō ventī ērūpērunt, et magna tempestās coorta est. Ulixēs,  
ē somnō excitātus, vidit nāvem in periculō esse et Ithacam post  
20 tergum relictam. Ille irātissimus erat.

Sed nūllum auxilium invēnit, et tempestās Graecōs ad insulam  
Aeoli rettulit.<sup>6</sup> Aeolus dixit omnēs deōs Ulixi et comitibus ejus  
inimicōs esse, atque Graecōs iterum juvāre nōlēbat.

### ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

The ablative without a preposition is used to show in  
what respect a statement is true.

**Hae gentēs inter sē linguā differunt,** *These nations differ from  
one another* (lit., *among themselves*) in language.

**In insulā rēx, Aeolus nōmine, habitābat,** *On the island lived a  
king named* (lit., *by name*) Aeolus.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of respect, explained on this page.

<sup>2</sup> With sē, *had recovered*.

<sup>3</sup> Ulysses' home was on the island of Ithaca, west of the Greek mainland.

<sup>4</sup> From *partior*, a deponent verb. What English verb is related?

<sup>5</sup> What tense is used with *dum* meaning *while*?

<sup>6</sup> From *referō*.



*Magna tempestas coorta est*



*Deus Mercurius*

## ESCAPE FROM A SORCERESS

Ulixēs cāsum suum dolēns<sup>1</sup> ā rēgnō Aeolī cum comitibus discessit et ad aliam insulam pervēnit, quam Circē, filia Sōlis, incolēbat.

5 Graecī ibi frūmentum petere cōstituērunt, quod cōpia frūmentī in nāve dēficiēbat. Nōn-nūllī nautae igitur frūmentum prō sē et prō sociis petentēs in partem interiōrem insulae profecti sunt.

10 Mox ad villam pulcherrimam vērunt. Ibi vōcem fēminae cantantis audivērunt. Jānuā

pulsātā, ipsa<sup>2</sup> Circē Graecōs salūtāvit et benignē accēpit.

Sed ūnus ex eis, Euryloclus nōmine,<sup>3</sup> dolum timēns, nōn cum reliquīs intrāvit, sed ad ōstium sedēbat et manēbat. Nautae autem  
s quī intrāverant, cupidī cenandī,<sup>4</sup> cēnam magnificam parātam invērunt.

Sed Circē, quae magicae artis summam scientiam habēbat, vinum eis dedit in quō medicāmentum<sup>5</sup> quoddam posuerat. Tum postquam

### DECLENSION AND USE OF *ipse*

The word *ipse* means *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, or themselves*. It is used for emphasis.

Dux ipse fūgit, *The leader himself fled*.

In this sentence, *ipse* is masculine singular nominative, to agree with *dux*. The word *ipse* always agrees in gender, number, and case with the word to which it refers.

It is translated *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, or ourselves, yourselves, themselves*, according to the person, gender, and number of the word to which it refers.

*Ipse* is declined like *ille* (p. 67), except that the neuter singular ends in *-um* in the nominative and accusative. (See page 321, 28.)

<sup>1</sup> *grieving over*.

<sup>2</sup> A form of *ipse*, explained on this page

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of respect. See page 168.

<sup>4</sup> For explanation and declension of the gerund, see the facing page.

<sup>5</sup> *drug*, compare English *medicine*.

Do not confuse the word *ipse* with the reflexive pronoun. Remember that the reflexive pronoun cannot be omitted without changing the thought of the sentence, whereas *ipse* merely gives additional emphasis.

### THE GERUND

As we have already seen, the English present participle ends in *-ing*.

*The boy standing in the street is my brother.*

In the preceding sentence, *standing* tells something about the *boy* and is therefore a participle.

There is, however, another verb form in English which ends in *-ing*.

*I am fond of fishing.*

In the sentence above, *fishing* is the object of the preposition *of* and is therefore used as a noun. Such a verb form used as a noun is called a *gerund*.

The Latin gerund is declined as a neuter noun of the second declension. It is formed on the present stem as it appears in the present participle. It has no nominative and is used only in the singular.

	I	II	III	IV
<i>Gen.</i>	portandī	monendī	dūcendī	audiendī
<i>Dat.</i>	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō
<i>Acc.</i>	portandum	monendum	dūcendum	audiendum
<i>Abl.</i>	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō

The gerund of *capiō* is declined like that of *audiō*: *capiendī*, etc.

The genitive of a gerund is used with adjectives or nouns and is translated *of carrying*, *of warning*, etc.

*cupidī cēnandī, desirous of eating*

The genitive of the gerund is also frequently employed with the ablative *causā*, *for the sake of*, *for the purpose of*.

*effugiendī causā, for the purpose of escaping*

The dative of the gerund does not often occur. The accusative is used only with prepositions. The ablative is also used with prepositions. The ablative without a preposition is translated *by carrying* or *with carrying*, etc.

*Ulysses and  
his men in  
the house  
of Circe*



Graeci vinum bibērunt, Circē capita eōrum virgā (*with a wand*) aureā tetigit.<sup>1</sup> Statim omnēs in porcōs conversi sunt.

Eurylochus, quī extrā ātrium sedēbat neque vinum biberat, sine morā ad Ulixem contendit atque haec omnia nūntiāvit. Ulixēs,  
5 ubi haec audivit, gladium cēpit et in insulam prōgressus est. Ad villam Circae statim accessūrus<sup>2</sup> erat.

Sed deus Mercurius eum convēnit et dē arte magicā Circae omnia docuit. Herbam quandam quoque eī dedit dixitque hanc herbam contrā artem magicam maximē valēre.<sup>3</sup>

10 Post breve tempus Ulixēs in cōspectum villae vēnit. Ibi Circam vidit et eam dē comitibus suis interrogāvit. Circē eum quoque per magicam artem suam in porcum vertere cōnātā<sup>4</sup> est, sed propter herbam illam<sup>5</sup> nihil efficere potuit. Deinde Ulixēs gladium dēstrinxit et eam interfectūrus erat. Circē, magnopere territa, veniam petivit,  
15 et eōs porcōs quī hominēs fuerant in propriam fōrmam hūmānam convertit.

Sine morā omnēs Graeci magnō cum gaudiō ad litus rediērunt et statim ex insulā discessūrī erant. Sed Circē, quae nunc benigna facta erat,<sup>6</sup> magna beneficia Ulixī et comitibus ejus dabat; et per  
20 ūnum annum ibi mānsērunt.

Tum propter dēsiderium (*longing*) patriae et amicōrum quī in Ithacā eōs expectābant, Ulixēs comitēsque ex insulā discēdendi<sup>7</sup> cupidi erant. Nāvem celeriter refecērunt, quae tempestāte afflicta erat, et omnia ad proficiscendum<sup>8</sup> parāvērunt.

25 Tum nautae vēla ad ventōs pandērunt et rēmōs rapuērunt. Ventī secundī vēla implēbant, et nāvis per flūctūs celeriter cucurrit.

Sed postea in nāvīgandō Graeci in alia pericula incidērunt, et omnēs praeter Ulixem vitam amīsērunt.

<sup>1</sup> From *tangō*, *touch*

<sup>2</sup> The future active participle is explained on the facing page.

<sup>3</sup> With *maximē*, *was very powerful*.

<sup>4</sup> Notice that *cōnātā* agrees with *Circē*, its subject.

<sup>5</sup> For special emphasis a form of *ille* may follow the word it modifies.

<sup>6</sup> *had become*.

<sup>7</sup> *of departing*; a gerund

<sup>8</sup> A deponent verb may have all the forms of the gerund.

## FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

Latin verbs have a future active participle formed on the participial stem. It is declined like the perfect passive participle, from which it differs by having *-ūr-* before the case ending.

portātūrus, -a, -um, *about to carry or going to carry*  
monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to warn or going to warn*

Some verbs which have no perfect passive participle have a future active participle. The future active participle of such verbs is given as the fourth principal part. The future participle of *sum* is *futūrus*. The principal parts of *sum* are *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*. The fourth of the principal parts of *stō* is *stātūrus*.

The future participle is often combined with forms of *sum* to refer to something which someone intends to do or is about to do.

Mānsūrus eram, *I was about to remain, or I intended to remain.*  
Laudātūrus est, *He is about to praise, or He intends to praise.*

## FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

The future active infinitive consists of the future active participle with *esse*.

portātūrus esse monitūrus esse ductūrus esse auditūrus esse

The act expressed by the future infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as future in relation to the time denoted by the main verb.

Puer dicit frātrem ventūrum esse, *The boy says that his brother will come or is going to come.*

Puer dixit frātrem ventūrum esse, *The boy said that his brother would come or was going to come.*

The future infinitive is regularly translated with *shall* or *will* after a main verb in the present tense and with *should* or *would* after a main verb in any past tense.

Translate the italicized words: 1. The young man said that *he had hidden* all weapons. 2. *About to sail*, we sent messages to our friends. 3. We knew that the sailors *would sail* at daybreak. 4. I believe that our leader *will drive* us into a dangerous matter. 5. We heard daily that the barbarians *would take* many towns *by storm*.

## HOME AT LAST!

**D**ecem annōs Ulixēs circum mūrōs Trōjae pugnāverat. Postea decem annōs propter iram deōrum in multis terris errāre coactus erat, quamquam dea Athēna prōmiserat eum ad patriam suam tūtum reditūrum esse.

- 5 Dēnique autem post multōs cāsūs Ulixēs ad Ithacam pervēnit. Nēmō eum recognōvit, quod dea Athēna vestēs ejus et faciem (*features*) mūtāverat. Omnēs crēdidērunt eum esse mendicum.

- Itaque Ulixēs casam Eumaeī, pāstōris fidēlis, petīvit, sed subitō canēs ferī impetum in eum fēcērunt. Magnā cum difficultāte  
10 Eumaeus canēs lapidibus reppulit Ulixemque servāvit. Celeriter eum in casam dūxit et ei cibum vīnumque dedit.

Tum Ulixēs, acceptūrus haec dōna, dixit, “Cūr es mihi, hominī miserō, benignus? Nūllam pecūniam habeō, sed mihi cibum vīnumque dedistī. Dominus tuus erit irātus; tē culpābit.”

- 15 Eumaeus autem respondit, “Ille benignus erat et semper mendicōs juvābat; tamen nōn jam domī adest. Vīginti<sup>1</sup> annōs dominum nostrum expectāvimus. Ejus uxor et filius Tēlemachus crēdunt eum ad tēctum suum reditūrum esse.”

Tum Ulixēs dixit, “Suntne Tēlemachus et rēgīna in rēgiā?”

- 20 Eumaeus respondit, “Tēlemachus Ithacam reliquit; dixit sē patrem suum petītūrum esse. Pēnelopē Ulixem expectat. Cotīdiē in rēgiā textit. Pallā factā, conjugem alium accipere cōgētur. Itaque interdīu textit; noctū pallam textam retexit.<sup>2</sup>”

- “Cotīdiē procī hūc veniunt et animālia, frūmentum, vīnum domini  
25 mei cōnsūmunt, sed mihi pecūniam nōn dant. Jam Pēnelopē territa est, quod procī dīcunt ūnum ē numerō suō brevī tempore eam in mātīmōnium ductūrum esse.”

## FATHER AND SON

- T**ēlemachus quidem per omnēs urbēs Graeciae iter fēcerat, sed nēmō prō certō dicere potuerat patrem Ulixem esse vīvum.  
30 Dēnique dea Athēna in somniō Tēlemachum dē periculō mātīs suae, Pēnelopae, monuerat; itemque dixerat procōs malōs in animō eum interficere habere.

Tēlemachus autem ad patriam suam statim redire cōstituit. Sed quod sciēbat procōs adventum suum expectāre, in portum nōn intrāre

<sup>1</sup> With **annōs**, *For twenty years*. For the form of **Vīginti**, see page 319, 22.      <sup>2</sup> *ravels out*.



potuit. Nāve relictā, ante prīmam lūcem sōlus ad casam Eumaei, pāstōris fidēlis, prōcessit.

Hic Eumaeus et mendicus ignem accenderant cibumque parābant. Vōce hominis audītā, Eumaeus ad portam properāvit.

Ubi Tēlemachum vīdit, juvenem magnō cum gaudiō nōmine appellāvit. Tēlemachus dē mātrem et dē procis atque dē rēgnō et dē multis et aliis rēbus rogāvit, dolēbatque quod pater ad Ithacam nōn redierat.

Dēnique dīxit, “Ego propter suspīciōnem procōrum in casā tuā tōtū diem manēbō; tū, Eumaeae,<sup>1</sup> ad tēctum meum et dīc mātři meae mē tūtum rediisse.”

Eumaeus omnēs hās rēs fēcit. Interim Athēna iterum vestem et faciem (*face*) Ulixis mūtāvit.

Tēlemachus quidem clāmāvit ubi hominem tam mūtātum vīdit, “Tū es deus! Tū nōs juvāre potes! Nōlī<sup>2</sup> nōs relinquere!”

Ulixēs filiō suō respondit, “Nōlī timēre! Nōn deus sum; sum pater tuus, quī post multōs cāsūs rediī. Tempus est breve; necesse est nōs procōs interficere et mātrem tuam liberāre. Tū, Tēlemache, ad rēgiam redi,<sup>1</sup> explōrā omnia; es<sup>1</sup> fortis!

“Paucis hōris ego mendicus ad tēctum veniam. Tum tibi signum dabō. Hōc signō vīsō, ī sēcrētō et portā omnia arma ex ātriō. Sed relinque prope portam duo scūta valida, duās hastās, duōs gladiōs; hīs armīs impetum mēcum facere poteris; hodiē procōs occidēmus.”

#### IMPERATIVE OF *eō* AND *sum*

The imperatives of *eō* are *ī* (*singular*) and *ite* (*plural*). Compounds of *eō* form their imperatives like the simple verb, for example, *trānsī*, *trānsite*.

The imperatives of *sum* are *es* (*singular*) and *este* (*plural*).

Es fortis, *Be brave.* Este fortēs, *Be brave.*

#### NEGATIVE COMMANDS

A command not to do an act is expressed by *nōlī* for the singular and *nōlite* for the plural, followed by the infinitive.

*Singular: Nōlī redire, Do not return.*

*Plural: Nōlite redire, Do not return.*

<sup>1</sup> This imperative form is explained on this page.

<sup>2</sup> The use of *nōlī* in negative commands is explained on this page

## HIS OWN WIFE DIDN'T KNOW HIM

Ulixēs, mendicus, veste iterum mūtātā, ad rēgiam vēnerat. Jussū patris, Tēlemachus arma parāverat. Ulixēs ipse in ātriō cum servīs mānsit quod sciēbat Pēnelopam brevī tempore adfutūrā esse.<sup>1</sup>

Pēnelopē, ubi in ātrium intrāvit, omnēs servōs servāsque dīmisit  
5 praeter nūtrīcem longaevam, cui dixit, “Cāra nūtrix, ubi omnēs servī discesserint,<sup>2</sup> dūc'ad mē mendicum. Certē iter fēcit in regiōnibus ipsīs ubi conjūnx meus errāvit.”

Jussū nūtrīcis Ulixēs ad rēgīnam ipsam appropinquāvit. Pēnelopē sine suspiciōne eī dixit, “Noctū et interdiū doleō quod Ulixēs,  
10 conjūnx amātus meus, ā terrā Trōjānā nōn rediit. Certē in longinquis terris errāvisti. Vidistīne eum?”

Ulixēs Pēnelopae respondit, “Ōlim in Crētā virum quem comitēs Ulixem appellābant vidī. Vestem purpuream (*purple*) cum fibulā aureā gerēbat. In hāc fibulā erant figūrae canis et cervi parvī.”

15 Pēnelopē lacrimāvit quod vestem et fibulam recognōvit. Deinde dīxit, “Certē conjugem meum ipsum vidisti. Illam vestem et illam fibulam Ulixī ipsa dedi.”

Ulixēs respondit, “Sciō Ulixem hōc annō ad patriam ventūrum esse.”

Pēnelopē, magnō gaudiō mōta, jussit nūtrīcem pedēs mendicī lavāre.  
20 Nūtrix fida, ubi pedēs Ulixis lavāre incēpit, lātā cicātrīcem (*scar*) recognōvit.

Magnopere excitāta, parvā vōce eī dixit, “Rediisti, Ulixēs.”

Ulixēs quidem celeriter respondit, “Nōlī clāmāre. Ego sum Ulixēs. Nōlī appellāre mē nōmine meō.”

25 Pēnelopē, quae haec verba nōn audīverat, dīxit, “Crās procī mē conjugem novum dēligere cōgent. Crās arcum in ātrium portārī jubēbō. Ille quī arcum Ulixis tendere potuerit, mē in mātīmōnium dūcet.”



<sup>1</sup> Future active infinitive. See page 173

<sup>2</sup> For this form, see the facing page

*Telemachus and Penelope*

*Ulysses and the  
old nurse*



### MEANING OF THE FUTURE PERFECT

The *future perfect tense* represents an act to be completed before some specified or suggested time in the future.

*I shall have finished the work in two weeks.*

In English the future perfect is used less often than the other tenses. In Latin it is used somewhat more frequently than in English

### FORMATION OF THE FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE

The future perfect active of a Latin verb has the tense sign *-eri-*, which is added to the perfect stem. The person endings are used as in the present tense. The future perfect is formed in the same way for all four conjugations.

#### SINGULAR

portā'verō, I shall have carried	monu'erō, I shall have warned
portā'veris, you will have carried	monu'eris, you will have warned
portā'verit, he, she, it will have carried	monu'erit, he, she, it will have warned

#### PLURAL

portāve'rimus, we shall have carried	monue'rimus, we shall have warned
portāve'ritis, you will have carried	monue'ritis, you will have warned
portā'verint, they will have carried	monu'erint, they will have warned

Notice that the *-i-* of the tense sign disappears before *-ō-* in the first person singular.



*Ulysses*

### FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE

The future perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the perfect participle of the verb with the future indicative of *sum*. This is true of all four conjugations.

#### SINGULAR

portā'tus erō, I shall have been carried	mo'nitus erō, I shall have been warned
portā'tus eris, you will have been carried	mo'nitus eris, you will have been warned
portā'tus erit, he, she, it will have been carried	mo'nitus erit, he, she, it will have been warned

#### PLURAL

portā'ti erimus, we shall have been carried	mo'niti erimus, we shall have been warned
portā'ti eritis, you will have been carried	mo'niti eritis, you will have been warned
portā'ti erunt, they will have been carried	mo'niti erunt, they will have been warned

### PERFECT SYSTEM

You have now met all three tenses of the perfect system: the perfect, the past perfect, and the future perfect.

#### ACTIVE

Perfect = perfect stem + special person endings (-ī, -istī, etc.).  
 Past perfect = perfect stem + -erā- + regular person endings.  
 Future perfect = perfect stem + -eri- + regular person endings.

#### PASSIVE

Perfect = perfect passive participle with present tense of *sum*.  
 Past perfect = perfect passive participle with imperfect of *sum*.  
 Future perfect = perfect passive participle with future of *sum*.

## DOUBLE VICTORY

**P**ostridiē eidem procī ad magnum ātrium properāvērunt. Quisque (each one) quidem crēdidit Pēnelopam sē conjugem dēlēctūram esse. Ulixēs, quī eandem vestem mendicī gerēbat, in ātriō aderat.

Tum procī dīxērunt, “Multōs annōs, Tēlemache, patrem tuum expectāvistī; propter amōrem patris honōrem tibi rēctē dedimus, mātremque tuam in mātirimōnium contrā voluntātem dūcī nōn coēgimus. Sed jam prō certō scīmus Ulixem numquam reditūrum esse.”

Interim Pēnelopē arcum Ulixis et sagittās, arma gravia, in magnum ātrium portāvit.

Tum procīs dixit, “Audite mē, procī nōbilēs. Nūntiāvistis ūnum ē numerō vestrō conjugem meum futurum esse. Ecce, idem arcus et eadem sagittae quae Ulixēs ōlim portābat! Ille quī hunc arcum tendere potuerit, mē in mātirimōnium rēctē dūcet.”

Quamquam omnēs temptāvērunt, nēmō arcum tendere poterat.

Subitō mendicus dixit, “Dā mihi arcum.”

15

Sine difficultāte arcum tetendit; deinde magnā vōce clāmāvit, “Multa mīlia passuum nāvigāvi, contrā mille pericula mē dēfendī. Jam ego Ulixēs ipse adsum!”

Hīs verbīs audītis, Tēlemachus arma cēpit et patrī auxilium dedit; eōdem tempore servī fidī et civēs, quī sēcŕētō arcessītī erant, ātrium intrāvērunt ācritereque pugnāre incēpērunt. Omnibus procīs interfectis, Pēnelopē fidēlis ad Ulixem, conjugem amātum, properāvit.

20

I. Use a form of a word in the list below to complete each of the following sentences:

1. Ulixēs dicit sē in rēgiam ire — . (*is able*)
2. Scīmus procōs in casam Eumaeī nōn — . (*will enter*)
3. Nēmō sēnsit mendicum esse Ulixem ipsum — . (*could*)
4. Nūntiā Tēlemachō Ulixem rēgiam — . (*has entered*)
5. Nēmō, quidem, scit Ulixem arcum in ātriō — . (*will bend*)
6. Civēs ātrium — . (*entered*)
7. Tēlemachus patrī auxilium dare — . (*was able*)

intrō      possum      tendō



Penelope

## CHANGES OF SPELLING IN LATIN COMPOUNDS

You know many Latin compound words made by adding a prefix to a simple word.

absum                  contradico                  desisto                  refero

In these words there is no change in spelling.

In some compounds the last sound of a prefix becomes the same as the first sound of the word to which it is attached.

ad + fero = affero    dis- + fero = differo    ex + fero = effero

What Latin words are made from the combinations below?

ad + pello =          ad + tuli =          ex + fluo =          ex + fugio =

Give the meaning of each of the resulting verbs.

This change is called *assimilation*. It is interesting to notice that the name itself (from ad, to + similis, like) is an example of the change which it describes.

To what Latin compound is each of the following words related?

<i>confer</i>	<i>differ</i>	<i>offer</i>	<i>refer</i>
<i>defer</i>	<i>infer</i>	<i>progress</i>	<i>transfer</i>

In addition to a change in the prefix, there may be a change in the simple word when it becomes part of a compound.

ad + facio = afficio                          re- + capio = recipio

In both these words -a- has become -i-. When a prefix is added to a word which has short -a- at the end of the first syllable (as in fa-ci-o), this -a- usually becomes -i-.

What will be the spelling of the Latin word made from each of these combinations? Give the meaning of each compound you make.

de + facio =	ob + cado =	per + facio =
de + jacio =	per + capio =	pro + habeo =

However, if the short -a- of the simple word is followed by a consonant in the same syllable, the -a- often becomes -e-.

ad + captus = acceptus	ad + capio = accipio
com- + factus = confectus	com- + facio = conficio

Give the correct form for each of the following compounds and tell how you made it.

com- + jacio =	ex + facio =	in + capio =	re- + facio =
com- + jactus =	ex + factus =	in + captus =	re- + factus =

# REVIEW OF UNIT X

## I. Find words in the list to complete each sentence.

1. Posterō diē complūrēs hominēs dē (*the course*) quaerere (*began*).
2. Comitēs (*followed*) ducem suum in antrum ubi ingēns gigās, Polyphēmus (*by name*), habitābat.
3. Nauta, cupidus (*of escaping*), ad vīcum proficiscī (*was unwilling*).
4. (*For the purpose of making*) impetum, Graecī (*had gathered*) saxa.

contulerant	effugere	incēpērunt	nōmine
contulerint	effugiendī	nōlēbat	secūtī sunt
cursū	faciendī causā	nōmen	sequuntur

## II. In the following sentences, change the number of all nouns and verbs and make other changes necessary.

1. Dormī bene.
2. Frange foedus statim.
3. Removēte spīnās ā pedibus vestrīs.
4. Dūc fugitīvōs ad forum.
5. Adōrnā haec aedificia.
6. Dā mihi aut agrum aut villam.

## III. Change the following direct quotations into indirect quotations and account for the new form of the verb in each sentence.

1. Homō dixit, "Ego tē vidēbam."
2. Puer clāmat, "Ursa equum necat."
3. Puella clāmāvit, "Servī captī sunt."
4. Imperātor dīcit, "Miles urbem cēpit."
5. Fēmina dixit, "Eī agricolam vocābant."

## IV. Find in column B the Latin for each English phrase.

- | A                         | B                      |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. he will have recovered | (a) ancoram jaciēbāmus |
| 2. I remembered           | (b) ancoram tollent    |
| 3. it fails               | (c) in memoriā habui   |
| 4. it had been produced   | (d) dēficit            |
| 5. they will weigh anchor | (e) effectum erat      |
| 6. we were casting anchor | (f) sē recēperit       |

*When Ulysses reached Ithaca,  
he was welcomed  
by two faithful servants*



# XI *The Quest of the Golden Fleece*

One of the favorite stories of antiquity, handed down by the Greeks and retold by the Romans, dealt with a fleece that had magic powers. To secure this fleece Jason sailed in the famous Argo, with his men, who were called Argonautae (Argo + nautae). You are now going to read about some of his adventures.

## THE FLEECE REACHES COLCHIS

Aeētēs, rēx Colchidis, vellus aureum ā manū Phrixi accēpit. Deinde fābulam mīram nārrātam ab illō juvene quī advena ad rēgiam vēnerat audivit.

“Arietem magicum quī hoc vellus gerēbat deīs sacrificāvi,” dixit Phrixus. “Tūtus ad hanc urbem ab illō ariete trānsportātus sum. Mea soror Hellē autem territa ā tergō animālis cecidit et in mari āmissa est.”

“Cūr ab ariete aureō ita trānsportābāmini?” rēx rogāvit.

Juvenis maestus respondit, “Fugiēbāmus ā novercā (*stepmother*) nostrā, quae est fēmina crūdēlis et odiōsa. Cum illa in animō mē solum interficere habēret,<sup>1</sup> soror tamen mea quoque illam timēbat.”

“Ubi arietem aureum invēnistis?” Aeētēs iterum rogāvit.

“Mercurius, periculum vidēs, auxilium dedit,” respondit juvenis. “Ille deus benignus nōbīs arietem mīrum dedit, in cujus tergō celeriter fūgimus. Maximē tamen doleō quod Hellē mortua est.”

Hīs auditīs, rēx juvenem benignē accēpit. Dōnum quod Phrixus portāverat rēgī grātissimum erat. Itaque ille in rēgiā habitāvit et mox in mātirimōnium filiam rēgis dūxit.

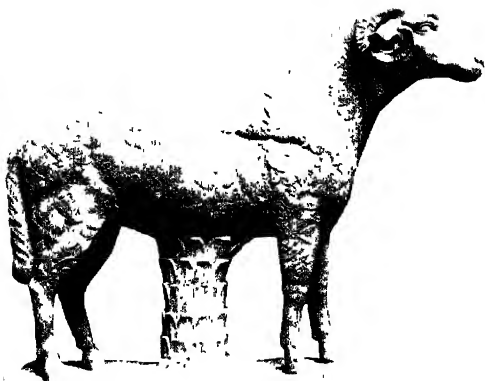
Interim dōnum pretiōsum—vellus aureum—in silvā sacrā pendēbat; noctū et interdiū dracō ingēns hoc vellus custodiēbat. Ōrā-

culum rēgem monuerat vellus prō salūte rēgnī servārī intāctum debere. Multī vellus pulchrum capere temptāverant; omnēs ā dracōne interfecti erant.

Itaque, vellere tūtō, Aeētēs crēdidit sē esse fēlicissimum.

<sup>1</sup> This form and usage are explained on the facing page

*This marble figure, made by a Roman sculptor, stands in the museum of Toledo, Ohio*





## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

The indicative mood of the verb, as has already been explained, is used to state a fact or to ask a question which implies as answer a statement of fact.

The Latin verb has also a mood called the *subjunctive*. This mood is most frequently used in subordinate clauses. No general statement can be given as to how the Latin subjunctive is translated. Its translation in different kinds of clauses will be explained as needed.

The Latin subjunctive has only four tenses, present, imperfect, perfect, and past perfect. The forms of the imperfect are given here.

### ACTIVE OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect subjunctive of all Latin verbs can be formed by adding the regular person endings to the present active infinitive. Notice the long vowels before some of the endings.

I	II	SINGULAR			IV
portārem	monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem	
portārēs	monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audirēs	
portāret	monēret	dūceret	caperet	audiret	
PLURAL					
portārēmus	monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus	
portārētis	monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audirētis	
portārent	monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audirent	

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN *cum* CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

A subordinate clause introduced by *cum* meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive. The subjunctive in clauses of this kind is translated in the same manner as the indicative.

Cum noverca nostra in animō mē solum interficere habēret,  
soror tamen mea quoque illam timēbat, *Although our step-*  
*mother intended to kill only me, my sister, too, was afraid*  
*of her.*

Cum intellegerent dolōrem ejus falsum esse, fābulam tamen  
dē morte pueri finxērunt, *Although they knew his grief was*  
*pretended, still they made up a story about the boy's death.*

Frequently *tamen* is found in the main clause to which a concessive clause is attached.

## JASON COMES TO COURT

**E**rant eō tempore in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, Aesōn et Peliās. Hōrum Aesōn primus rēgnū obtinuerat. At post paucōs annōs Peliās, cupiditāte rēgnī adductus,<sup>1</sup> frātre suū expulit, atque in animō habēbat Jāsonem, Aesonis filium, interficere.

- 5 Noctū tamen amīcī patris Jāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt, et cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent,<sup>2</sup> ei renūtiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās, cum haec audīvisset, etsī, rē vērā<sup>3</sup> magnum gaudium percipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris praeuit et causam mortis quaeiuit. Illi tamen, cum bene intellexerent dolōrem ejus falsum esse, nesciō  
10 quam fābulam<sup>4</sup> dē morte pueri finxērunt.

### DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

The imperfect or the past perfect subjunctive is often used in a clause introduced by *cum* meaning *when*. Such a clause describes the situation in which the act of the main clause takes place.

The subjunctive in clauses of this kind is translated in the same manner as the indicative.

Cum ad rēgem rediissent, ei renūtiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse, When they had returned to the king, they reported to him that the boy was dead.

### PASSIVE OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

I	II	SINGULAR			IV
portārer	monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer	
portārēris	monērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audīrēris	
portārētur	monērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur	
PLURAL					
portārēmur	monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur	
portārēminī	monērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī	
portārentur	monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur	

Observe that -e- is long before the endings of the second person singular and the first and second person plural in both active and passive and in the third person singular of the passive.

<sup>1</sup> influenced by desire for royal power

<sup>2</sup> In this paragraph there are three uses of the subjunctive; with *cum* meaning *when* (ll. 6, 7) and with *cum* meaning *although*

(l. 9). These uses are explained on this page and on page 183.

<sup>3</sup> really, in fact.

<sup>4</sup> some story or other.

# IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *sum* AND *possum*

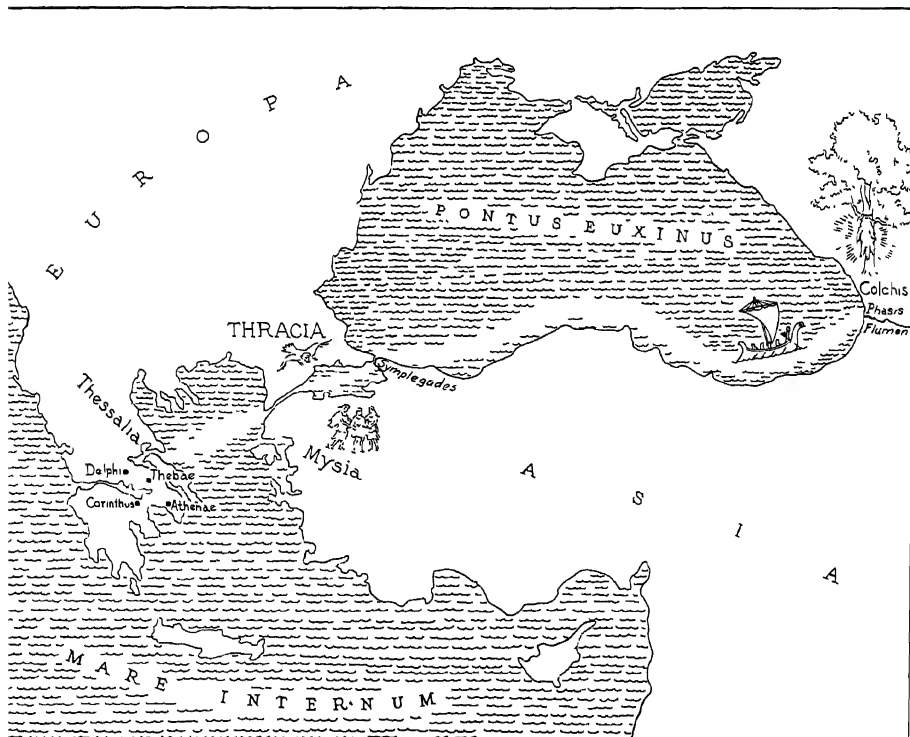
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

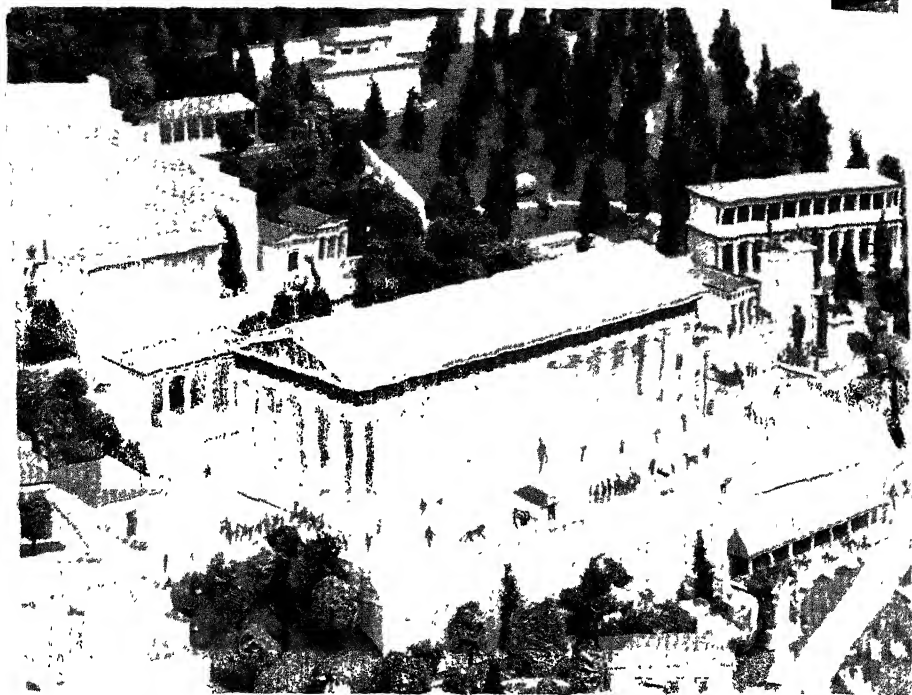
## PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The past perfect subjunctive active of all verbs, regular and irregular, is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign -issē.

I	II	III	IV
SINGULAR			
portāvissem	monuissē	dūxissem	audivissem
portāvisssēs	monuissēs	dūxissēs	audivissēs
portāvisset	monuisset	dūxisset	audivisset
PLURAL			
portāvissemus	monuissēmus	dūxissēmus	audivissēmus
portāvissetis	monuissētis	dūxissetis	audivissetis
portāvissent	monuissent	dūxissent	audivissent

## Voyage of the Argo





*A reconstruction of the sacred inclosure at Delphi, where the oracle spoke*

Peliās, cum rēgnum tantā vi et fraude, occupātum esset,<sup>1</sup> periculum veritus est, et amicum quendam Delphōs<sup>2</sup> ad ōrāculum mīsīt.

Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs<sup>3</sup> sē contulit et quam ob causam<sup>4</sup> vēnisset<sup>5</sup> dēmōstrāvit.

- 1 Ōrāculum hoc respōnsum ad rēgem mīsīt, "Nūllum est in praesentia (for the present) periculum. Sed hominem ūnum calceum gerentem cavē."

Post paucōs annōs rēx Peliās magnum sacrificium facere volēbat. Nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsīt et certum diem conveniendū<sup>6</sup> dixit.

- 10 Diē cōstitūtō magnus numerus hominum undique ex agrīs convēnit; inter aliōs vēnit Jāsōn, quī ā puerō<sup>7</sup> apud Centaurum quendam vīxerat. Dum in itinere quoddam flūmen trānsit,<sup>8</sup> ūnum calceum forte āmīsīt.

Jāsōn igitur, cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset,<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This use of the subjunctive is explained on the facing page

<sup>2</sup> Accusative of place to which. In English we say to the oracle at Delphi. See the picture.

<sup>3</sup> for what reason

<sup>4</sup> Imperative. What does Cavē canem

mean? Romans sometimes put these words in the floor near the front door

<sup>5</sup> for the people to assemble, literally, of assembling

<sup>6</sup> from boyhood.

<sup>7</sup> Present tense. See page 160, note 5, for use of this tense with Dum.

## PASSIVE OF THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

I	II	III	IV
SINGULAR			
portātus essem	monitus essem	ductus essem	auditus essem
portātus essēs	monitus essēs	ductus essēs	auditus essēs
portātus esset	monitus esset	ductus esset	auditus esset
PLURAL			
portāti essēmus	moniti essēmus	ducti essēmus	auditi essēmus
portāti essētis	moniti essētis	ducti essētis	auditi essētis
portāti essent	moniti essent	ducti essent	auditi essent

The past perfect subjunctive passive is made up of the perfect participle and the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*.

### INDIRECT QUESTIONS

A direct question is one which repeats the exact words of the speaker.

*He asked, "Who was that man?"*

The exact words of the speaker are inclosed in quotation marks.

An indirect question is one which repeats the thought, but not the exact words, of the speaker.

*He asked who that man was.*

Indirect questions depend on words of *asking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like.

In Latin an indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive. The subjunctive in indirect questions is usually translated in the same manner as the indicative.

*Quaesivī quis ille vir esset, I asked who that man was.*

*Dēmōnstrāvit quam ob causam vēnisset, He told why (made known for what reason) he had come.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN *cum* CAUSAL CLAUSES

A subordinate clause introduced by *cum*, meaning *since*, has its verb in the subjunctive. The subjunctive in clauses of this kind is translated in the same manner as the indicative.

*Cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, Jāsōn ūnum calceum gerēns pervēnit, Since he could in no way get back the shoe that was lost, Jason came wearing one shoe.*



*Jason before the king*

ūnum calceum gerēns pervēnit. Quem cum<sup>1</sup> vīdisset, Peliās subitō timōre affectus est; intellēxit enim ōrāculum sē dē hōc virō ipsō monuisse.

Hoc igitur iniit cōsilium. Sciēbat rēgem Aeētem rēgnum Colchidis  
<sup>5</sup> illō tempore obtinēre. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum quod Phrixus ōlim ibi reliquerat. Cōstituit igitur Peliās Jāsonem ad eum rēgem mittere ut hoc vellus postulāret.<sup>2</sup> Cum enim rēs esset magni periculī, spērābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse. Jāsonem igitur ad sē arcessivit et quid perficī vellet<sup>3</sup> dēmōnstrāvit. Jāsōn  
<sup>10</sup> autem, etsi bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium libenter suscēpit.

### THE GOLD SEEKERS

Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter<sup>4</sup> ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Jāsōn sōlus proficiscī. Dimisit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs, quī causam itineris docērent<sup>5</sup> et diem conveniendī dicerent.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Translate as if *Cum eum*.

<sup>2</sup> This use of the subjunctive is explained on the facing page.

<sup>3</sup> Imperfect subjunctive of *volō*.

<sup>4</sup> Accusative of extent, defined by the genitive of description. See page 345, 56.

<sup>5</sup> This use of *quī* to introduce a purpose clause is explained on the facing page.

Nāvem aedificārī jussit, et Argus quīdam, quī summam scientiam rerū nauticarū<sup>1</sup> habēbat, huic negōtiō<sup>2</sup> praefectus est. In his rēbus circiter decem diēs cōsūpti sunt; Argus enim magnam diligentiam praebēbat et nē<sup>3</sup> nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermīsīt. Ut multitudō hominū trāsportārētur,<sup>4</sup> nāvis paulō<sup>5</sup> lātior<sup>5</sup> erat quam quae aedificārī solitae erant, atque tōta ē rōbre (oak) facta est ut vim tempestātum perferre posset.

#### EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE

In English we express purpose in different ways.

*I went to hear the music. I went in order to hear the music.*

*I went that (in order that) I might hear the music.*

In the first example the infinitive *to hear* tells the speaker's purpose. In the second example the phrase *in order to hear* tells the purpose. The third example uses a subordinate clause to express purpose.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE IN A CLAUSE OF PURPOSE

In Latin, purpose may be expressed by a subordinate clause with its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is usually introduced by *ut*.

*Vēnī ut tē vidērem, I came to see (lit., that I might see) you.*

*Jāsonem mittere cōstituit ut hoc vellus postulāret, He decided to send Jason to demand (that he might demand) this fleece.*

Sometimes a relative pronoun introduces a purpose clause.

*Dīmīsīt nūntiōs quī causam itineris docērent, He sent messengers to explain the reason for the journey.*

*Nūntium ad nāvem mīsīt quī Jāsonem ad rēgiam vocāret, He sent a messenger to the ship to call Jason to the palace.*

The Latin infinitive is not used to express purpose.

To introduce a negative clause of purpose, *nē* is used.

*Militēs missī sunt nē urbs caperētur, Soldiers were sent that the city might not be captured.*

*Jāson, nē tantam occāsiōnem āmitteret, ad locum cōstitutum sē contulit, In order not to lose so great an opportunity, Jason made his way to the appointed place.*

<sup>1</sup> of the science of navigation.

<sup>2</sup> For this use of the dative with a compound verb, see page 347, 68.

<sup>3</sup> With *quidem*, not even.

<sup>4</sup> Subjunctive in a clause of purpose.

<sup>5</sup> a little wider; literally, wider by a little.



Intereā ea diēs<sup>1</sup> appetēbat quam Jāsōn per nūntiōs ēdixerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī quōs aut rei novitās (*novelty*) aut spēs glōriae movēbat undique conveniēbant. Trādunt<sup>2</sup> in hōc numerō fuisse Herculem, Orpheum — citharoedum<sup>3</sup> praeclārissimum, Thēseum, Castorem, et multōs aliōs  
10 quōrum nōmina nōtissima sunt.

Ex his Jāsōn, quōs<sup>4</sup> arbitrātus est ad omnia pericula paratissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quinquāgintā (*fifty*) dēlēgit et sociōs sibi adjūnxit.

Tum, paucōs diēs commorātus ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit et, tempestātem<sup>5</sup> ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus,  
15 magnō cum plausū (*applause*) omnium solvit.

Argonautae (ita enim appellāti sunt quī in istā<sup>6</sup> nāve vehēbantur) ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et postquam ad lītus nāvem appulerant, laeti in terram ēgressī sunt. Ibi, cum ab incolīs quaesivissent quis rēgnum ejus regiōnis obtinēret, certiōrēs factī sunt Phīneum  
20 quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiam hunc caecum esse et dīrō quōdam suppliciō affici. Ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in filiōs suōs prae buerat.

Cujus suppliciī hoc erat genus. Missa erant ā Jove mōnstra quaedam, speciē horribilī,<sup>7</sup> quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant. Hae volucrēs, quae Harpyiae appellābantur, Phīneō summam molestiam (*annoyance*) afferēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat,<sup>8</sup> veniēbant et cibum appositum<sup>9</sup> statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent,<sup>10</sup> Phīneus famē<sup>11</sup> paene mortuus est.

Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant, cum Argonautae nāvem appulērunt.  
30 Phīneus autem, adventū eōrum auditō, laetissimus erat, sciēbat enim

<sup>1</sup> Here feminine—usually masculine.

<sup>2</sup> They say or It is commonly reported.

<sup>3</sup> one who sang and played the cithara.

<sup>4</sup> Subject of *esse* with antecedent *eōs*. A relative clause in Latin often precedes the antecedent; English idiom requires that the antecedent be translated first.

<sup>5</sup> *weather*; sometimes it means *bad weather*.

<sup>6</sup> For the forms of *iste* see page 321, 27.

<sup>7</sup> Ablative of description. See page 351, 90.

<sup>8</sup> *took a place (reclined) at table*. The Romans half reclined at table, so Phineus is represented as doing the same thing, though he ruled centuries earlier in a different civilization.

<sup>9</sup> *as soon as it was served*

<sup>10</sup> A very common expression in Latin; literally, *since these things were so*, but usually better translated as *a result* or *consequently*

<sup>11</sup> *of hunger*. What English word is connected with *famēs*?



quantam<sup>1</sup> opīniōnem<sup>2</sup> virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quī sibi auxilium ferrent.<sup>3</sup>

Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit quī Jāsonī<sup>4</sup> persuādēret ut sibi auxilium ferret.<sup>5</sup> Ad rēgiā cum Argonautae vēnissent, Phīneus

#### SUBJUNCTIVE WITH EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT

Words and phrases of doubt, when accompanied by a negative, are followed by quīn and the subjunctive.

Nōn dubitāvi quīn nautae fortēs essent, *I did not doubt that the sailors were brave.*

Nōn erat dubium quīn hoc fēcisset, *There was no doubt that he had done this.*

Phīneus nōn dubitābat quīn Argonautae sibi auxilium ferrent, *Phineus did not doubt that the Argonauts would help him.*

#### NOUN CLAUSES OF DESIRE

The subjunctive is sometimes used in clauses introduced by ut, to express desire.

Lēgātus hortātus est ut auxilium statim mitterētur, *The envoy urged that aid be sent at once.*

In the sentence above, the clause ut auxilium statim mitterētur is the object of the verb hortātus est. Such a clause is called a *noun clause*. Noun clauses of desire are used as subjects or objects of verbs meaning *to persuade, urge, direct, command, wish, and decide*.

When these clauses are negative, they are introduced by nē instead of ut, and they do not contain nōn.

Amīcī nostrī hortābantur nē in urbe manērēmus, *Our friends urged us not to (that we should not) remain in the city.*

The subjunctive in a clause of desire introduced by ut or nē is commonly translated by an English infinitive.

Eī persuādere cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret, *They tried to persuade him to remain with them.*

Nūntius Jāsonī persuāsit ut Phīneō auxilium ferret, *The messenger persuaded Jason to help (bring help to) Phineus.*

<sup>1</sup> The subjunctive habērent shows that quantam is an interrogative introducing an indirect question.      pressions of doubt is explained on this page.

<sup>2</sup> *reputation*—often so translated, being the *opinion* of others.      <sup>4</sup> For this use of the dative, see page 346, 64.

<sup>3</sup> The use of the subjunctive with ex-      <sup>5</sup> This use of the subjunctive in a noun clause is explained on this page.

dēmōnstrāvit quantō in periculō suae rēs essent, et prōmīsīt sē magna praemia datūrum esse sī illi remedium repperissent.<sup>1</sup>

Argonautae negōtium libenter suscēpērunt, et ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt. At simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpyiae cēnāculum  
5 (*dining room*) intrāvērunt et cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae primum gladiis volucrēs petivērunt. Cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil<sup>2</sup> prōdesse, Zētus et Calais, quī ālīs instrūctī erant, in āera<sup>3</sup> sē sublevāvērunt ut dēsuper (*from above*) impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent Harpyiae, rēi novitāte (*by the strangeness*) perterritae, statim  
10 fūgērunt neque postea umquam rediērunt.

Hōc factō,<sup>4</sup> Phīneus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam referret, Jāsonī dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vitāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magnitudīne, quae ā Jove positae erant eō cōnsiliō,<sup>5</sup> nē quis<sup>6</sup> ad Colchida pervenīret.

15 Hae parvō intervāllō in marī natābant (*were floating*), et sī quid<sup>7</sup> in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibilī celeritāte concurrēbant.

Postquam igitur dē hīs rēbus certior factus est, Jāsōn, sublātis.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE IN A DEPENDENT CLAUSE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Thus far when you have met indirect discourse, the indirect quotation has consisted of only one clause. In such a sentence the verb is an infinitive, with its subject in the accusative case.

**Prōmīsīt sē itūrum esse, *He promised that he would go.***

But what is indirectly quoted may contain also a dependent clause. Then the verb of the main clause in the quotation is still an infinitive, and the verb of the dependent clause is in the subjunctive.

**Prōmīsīt sē magna praemia datūrum esse sī ille remedium repperisset, *He promised that he would give great rewards if that man found a remedy.***

<sup>1</sup> The use of the subjunctive in a dependent clause in indirect statement is explained on this page.

<sup>2</sup> With *prōdesse*, *profited nothing*, i.e., *had no effect*.

<sup>3</sup> Greek accusative form; *āeris* masculine.

<sup>4</sup> A participle, not a noun.

<sup>5</sup> *with this design (purpose)*; explained by the clause which follows.

<sup>6</sup> *that no one*. Here *quis* is an indefinite pronoun, not an interrogative. In this use it very often follows *sī* or *nē*.

<sup>7</sup> *if anything*. For this use of *quid* see note 6.

*Guided by the dove, the Argonauts  
succeed in passing through  
the Symplegades*



ancoris,<sup>1</sup> nāvem solvit et mox  
ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit.  
Tum in prōrā stāns columbam  
(dove) quam in manū tenēbat  
ēmīsit. Illa rēctā viā<sup>2</sup> per medi- 5  
um spatium tam celeriter volāvit  
ut priusquam rūpēs cōnflīxērunt,  
incolumis ēvāderet,<sup>3</sup> caudā (tail)  
tantum āmissā.

Tum rūpēs utrimque (on both 10  
sides) discessērunt. Argonautae,  
bene intelligentēs omnem spem  
salūtis in celeritāte positam esse,  
nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, dīs grātiās libenter  
ēgērunt, bene enim sciēbant nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem ita fēliciter 15  
ēvēnisse.

## WINNING THE FLEECE

Postquam Phīneus tantō timōre<sup>4</sup> liberātus est, brevī intermissō  
spatiō<sup>5</sup> Argonautae nāvem solvērunt. Dēnique, ērepti ē multis  
periculīs, ad flūmen Phāsīm vērērunt, quod in finibus Colchōrum  
erat. Ibi, cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressi essent, statim 20

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF RESULT

A subordinate clause expressing result is regularly  
introduced by *ut*, *that*, and has its verb in the subjunctive. The  
subjunctive in clauses of this kind is translated in the same manner  
as the indicative. The negative in a result clause is *nōn*.

*Columba tam celeriter volāvit ut incolumis ēvāderet, The  
dove flew so fast that it escaped unharmed.*

<sup>1</sup> Translate freely, *weighing anchor*.

<sup>2</sup> *straight*. What does it mean literally?

<sup>3</sup> This use of the subjunctive is explained  
on this page.

<sup>4</sup> For an explanation of this construc-  
tion, see page 349, 78.

<sup>5</sup> The three words mean *in a short time*;  
literally, *a short time having elapsed*.

ad rēgem Aeētem sē contulērunt et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur.

Ille, cum audivisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, irā commōtus est et diū negāvit sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem  
5 tamen, quod sciēbat Jāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā, prōmīsīt sē vellus trāditūrum sī Jāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et cum is dixisset sē ad omnia perīcula parātum esse, rēx quid agī vellet ostendit.

Primum necesse erat<sup>1</sup> Jāsonem jungere duōs taurōs speciē horribilī,  
10 quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant.<sup>2</sup> Tum, hīs jūctīs, agrum quendam arāre et dentēs dracōnis serere necesse erat.<sup>1</sup> Hīs auditīs, Jāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculī intellegēbat, tamen, sine ūllā morā rēgī respondit sē negōtium suscipere atque haec omnia cōnficere parātum esse.

At Mēdēa, rēgis filia, Jāsonem maximē amāvit, et ubi audivit eum tantum perīculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat.<sup>3</sup> Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Jāsōn morerētur.

Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa, quae summam scientiam medicīnae  
20 habēbat, hoc cōnsilium iniit. Mediā nocte, īnscente patre,<sup>4</sup> ex urbe ēvāsīt; et postquam in montēs finitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit (*she picked*). Tum, sūcō expressō,<sup>5</sup> unguentum parāvit quod vī suā corpus aleret<sup>6</sup> nervōsque (*and sinews*) cōnfirmāret.<sup>6</sup>

Hōc factō, Jāsonī unguentum dedit; praecēpit autem ut eō diē  
25 quō istōs labōrēs cōnfectūrus erat, corpus suum et arma māne oblineret (*he should smear*).

Jāsōn, etsī paene omnibus magnitūdine et vīribus corporis praestābat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus<sup>7</sup> atque in studiīs reī militāris cōnstiterat<sup>8</sup>), statuit tamen sē hoc cōnsilium nōn neglēctūrum esse.

30 Mox is diēs vēnit quem rēx ēdixerat. Jāsōn, nē tantam occāsionem āmitteret, ortā lūce,<sup>9</sup> cum sociīs ad locum cōstitutū sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit, in quō taurī inclūsī erant.

<sup>1</sup> This use is explained on the facing page.

<sup>2</sup> From ēdō, ēdere, *give out*; not from edō, edere, *eat*.

<sup>3</sup> *was deeply grieved*.

<sup>4</sup> *without her father's knowledge*; ablative absolute.

<sup>5</sup> *after she had pressed out the juice*.

<sup>6</sup> A relative clause of purpose.

<sup>7</sup> *hunting*; literally, *huntings*, i.e., *several expeditions*.

<sup>8</sup> *had consisted*, from cōnstō. What are the principal parts of this compound verb?

<sup>9</sup> *at daybreak*; ablative absolute, but equivalent to *primā lūce*.



Tum, portis apertis, taurōs in lūcem trāxit et summā cum difficultāte jugum imposuit.

At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil<sup>1</sup> contrā Jāsonem valēre, magnopere mīrātus est; nesciēbat enim filiam suam auxilium eī dedisse.

Tum Jāsōn, omnibus aspicientibus, arāre coepit. Tantam diligē-  
gentiam prae-buit ut ante merīdiem tōtum opus cōnficeret. Hōc  
factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit et dentēs dracōnis postulāvit;  
quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum quem arāverat magnā cum diligentiā  
sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat tālis ut in eō locō ubi  
sparsī erant virī armātī mīrō quōdam modō gignerentur. 5

Nōndum tamen Jāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcerat; imperāverat enim  
eī Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs ē dentibus nātōs sōlus interficeret. Post- 10

#### IMPERSONAL VERBS

You are familiar with such English expressions as *it rains*, *it thunders*, in which the action is not performed by any person. Such verbs are called impersonal. They occur only in the third person singular. Similar verbs occur in Latin.

*pluit, it rains*

There are also in both English and Latin other impersonal verbs: *necesse est, it is necessary*; *mōs est, it is the custom*; *oportet, it is right (one must)*; *convenit, it is agreed*. Such verbs are often followed by an infinitive.

Necesse erat jungere duōs taurōs, It was necessary to yoke  
two bulls.

<sup>1</sup> With *valēre*, *had no power*. What is the usual meaning of *valeō*?



*Inter se pugnare coeperunt*

quam omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit, Jāsōn, lassitūdine exanimātus, quiētī sē trādidit.

Paucās hōrās dormiēbat. Sub<sup>1</sup> vesperum, tamen, ē somnō subitō excitātus, rem ita ēvēnisse ut<sup>2</sup> praedictum erat cognōvit; nam in  
5 omnibus agrī partibus virī ingentī magnitūdine corporis, gladiīs galeisque armātī, mīrum in modum<sup>3</sup> ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Jāsōn cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa sequi cōstituit. Saxum igitur ingēns (ita enim praecēperat Mēdēa) in mediōs virōs conjēcit.

Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt, et cum quisque sibi id saxum  
10 (nesciō cūr<sup>4</sup>) habēre vellet, magna contrōversia orta est.

Mox, strictīs (*having been drawn*) gladiīs, inter sē pugnāre coepē-

<sup>1</sup> Toward.

<sup>2</sup> With the indicative *ut* means *as* or *when*; in the sense of *as*, it may be correlative with *ita* or *sic*.

<sup>3</sup> The prepositional phrase *mīrum in modum* is equivalent to *mīrō modō*.

<sup>4</sup> *for some reason or other*; what is the literal translation?

runt, et cum hōc modō plūrimī occīsī essent, reliquī vulneribus cōnfectī ā Jāsonē nullō negōtiō interfectī sunt.

At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Jāsonem labōrem prōpositum cōnfēcisse, irā graviter commōtus est; intellegēbat enim id per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium eī tulisset.<sup>1</sup>

5

Mēdēa autem, cum intellexeret sē in magnō fore<sup>2</sup> periculō sī in regiā mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōstituit.

Omnibus igitur ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte, īnscente patre, cum frātre ēvāsīt, et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō subducta<sup>3</sup> erat sē contulit.

10

Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Jāsonis sē prōjēcīt, et multīs cum lacrimīs petivit ab eō nē in tantō discrimīne mulierem dēsereret quae eī tantum prōfuerat.

Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per ejus auxilium ē magnō periculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit, et postquam causam veniendī audivit, hortātus est nē patris iram timēret. Prōmīsīt autem sē quam primum eam in nāve suā āvectūrum esse.

15

Postridiē ejus diēi Jāsōn cum sociīs suīs, ortā lūce, nāvem dēdūxit et, tempestātem idōneam nactī, ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt, quō in locō Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōstrāvit.

20

Eō cum vēnissent, Jāsōn in terram ēgressus est et, sociīs ad mare relictis, ipse cum Mēdēā in silvās viam cēpit. Pauca milia passuum per silvam prōgressus, vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbore suspēsum vidit.

Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis; nōn modo enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnitus erat, sed etiam dracō quīdam, speciē terribilī, arborem custōdiēbat.

25

At Mēdēa, quae, ut suprā dēmōstrāvimus, artis medicae summa scientiam habuit, rānum quem ex arbore proximā dēripuerat venēnō infēcīt.

Hōc factō, ad locum appropinquāvit, et dracōnem, quī faucibus apertīs<sup>4</sup> adventum expectābat, venēnō sparsit. Deinde, dum dracō somnō oppressus dormit, Jāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit et cum Mēdēā quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.<sup>5</sup>

30

Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare nāvem custō-

<sup>1</sup> Why subjunctive? See page 191.

<sup>2</sup> Future infinitive of *sum*, a form often used; here it replaces *futūram esse*. The subject is the reflexive pronoun *sē*.

<sup>3</sup> The comparatively small size of an-

cient ships made it possible to draw them up on the beach when a landing was made. Hence the terms used in Latin.

<sup>4</sup> *with open jaws*.

<sup>5</sup> From *referō*.

diēbant, animō anxio reditum Jāsonis expectābant; bene enim intellegēbant id negōtium summī esse periculī. Postquam igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā expectāverant, dē ejus salūte dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quā aliqui<sup>1</sup> cāsus accidisset.

5 Quae cum ita essent, cēnsuērunt ut auxilium duci ferre dēberent. At, dum proficisci parant, lūmen quoddam subitō cōspiciunt, mirum in modum inter silvās refulgēs (*shining*), et magnopere mirāti quae causa esset ejus rei, ad locum concurrunt. Quō cum<sup>2</sup> vēnissent, Jāsoni et Mēdēae advenientibus occurrērunt, et vellus aureum lūminis  
10 ejus causam esse cognōvērunt.

Ex omni timōre liberāti, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpērunt, et dīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quod rēs ita fēliciter ēvēnerat.

Hīs rēbus gestis, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūsus cōscendērunt et, sublātis ancoris, primā vigiliā<sup>3</sup> solvērunt; neque enim satis tūtum  
15 esse arbitrāti sunt in eō locō manēre.

Tandem post multa pericula Jāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde olim profectus erat. Tum ē nāve ēgressus, ad rēgem Peliam, quī rēgnum adhūc obtinēbat, statim sē contulit et, vellere aureo mōnstrātō, ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnum sibi trāderētur. Peliās enim  
20 pollicitus erat, si Jāsōn vellus rettulisset, sē rēgnum eī trāditūrum esse.

Postquam Jāsōn quid fieri vellet<sup>4</sup> ostendit, Peliās primum nihil respondit, sed diū tacitus permānsit.

Tandem ita locūtus est, “Cum videās<sup>5</sup> mē aetāte jam cōfectum  
25 esse, bene scis rēgnum mox tuum futūrum esse. Petō ut paulisper mihi hanc potentiam relinquās.”

Hāc ōrātiōne adductus, Jāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāset.<sup>6</sup>

Jāsōn autem post multōs annōs mirō modō occisus est. Ille enim  
30 (sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum) sub umbrā (*shadow*) nāvis suae, quae in litus subducta erat, olim dormiēbat. At nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat, in eam partem ubi Jāsōn jacēbat subitō delāpsa (*falling over*), virum infēlicem oppressit.

<sup>1</sup> *some*. It is nominative singular modifying cāsus.

<sup>2</sup> Translate as if Eō cum.

<sup>3</sup> For the purpose of reckoning time the Romans divided the time from sunset to sunrise into four equal parts, each one of which was called a “watch.” The first watch began at sunset, the third at mid-

night. In this story Roman usage is thought of as having been employed in the time of the Argonauts.

<sup>4</sup> *what he wanted done*.

<sup>5</sup> For present subjunctive forms see page 199.

<sup>6</sup> A shortened form of the past perfect subjunctive. What is the regular form?



## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

The tense sign of the present subjunctive in the first conjugation is **-ē-**, which replaces the characteristic letter of the conjugation (**-ā-**).

In the second, third, and fourth conjugations the sign of the present subjunctive is **-ā-**. In verbs of the second conjugation the tense sign is preceded by **-e-**, and in **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation and all verbs of the fourth conjugation, it is preceded by **-i-**.

I	II	III	IV
		ACTIVE	
		SINGULAR	
portem	moneam	dūcam	audiam
portēs	moneās	dūcās	audiās
portet	moneat	dūcat	audiat
		PLURAL	
portēmus	moneāmus	dūcāmus	audiāmus
portētis	moneātis	dūcātis	audiātis
portent	moneant	dūcant	audiant
		PASSIVE	
		SINGULAR	
porter	monear	dūcar	audiar
portēris	moneāris	dūcāris	audiāris
portētur	moneātur	dūcātur	audiātur
		PLURAL	
portēmur	moneāmur	dūcāmur	audiāmur
portēmini	moneāmini	dūcāmini	audiāmini
portentur	moneantur	dūcantur	audiantur

The present subjunctive forms of **sum** and **possum** are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
sim	sīmus	possim	possīmus
sīs	sītis	possis	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint



## LATIN AND ENGLISH NOUNS WITH SUFFIXES

You know many words in both Latin and English made from other words by the addition of suffixes. Latin nouns coming from adjectives often have one of the suffixes *-ia*, *-tia*, *-tas*, *-tudo*. In some cases, the final vowel of the adjective becomes *-i-* when the suffix is added.

<b>angustia</b> ( <b>angustus</b> )	<b>brevitas</b> ( <b>brevis</b> ), <i>brevity</i>
<b>amicitia</b> ( <b>amicus</b> )	<b>solitudo</b> ( <b>solus</b> ), <i>solitude</i>

As you see, for some such Latin nouns there are corresponding English nouns.

Latin nouns also came from verbs. Most nouns of this kind were formed from the stem of the perfect passive participle and *-or*. In such cases, the suffix means *one who*.

**victus** (**vinco**), **victor**, *victor* (one who conquers)

In other Latin nouns *-or* means *act* or *condition*. Many such nouns have corresponding English words.

**terror**, *terror* (condition of fear)      **valor**, *valor*

Give the meaning of each of the following Latin nouns and tell from what verb it was made. How does the corresponding English noun compare in meaning with each Latin word?

**clamor**      **error**      **narrator**      **oppressor**      **spectator**

Some neuter nouns of the second declension were made from Latin verbs by the addition of the suffix *-ium*. There are English words corresponding to many of these nouns.

**aedificium** (**aedifico**), *edifice*      **refugium** (**refugio**), *refuge*

What is the meaning of each Latin noun below? If possible, tell from what Latin word it comes, and give an English derivative.

<b>factor</b>	<b>latitudo</b>	<b>monitor</b>	<b>stipendium</b>
<b>furor</b>	<b>liberator</b>	<b>motor</b>	<b>studium</b>
<b>gratia</b>	<b>libertas</b>	<b>odium</b>	<b>subsidium</b>
<b>imperium</b>	<b>magnitudo</b>	<b>officium</b>	<b>suffragium</b>
<b>laetitia</b>	<b>maleficium</b>	<b>periculum</b>	<b>vigilia</b>

# REVIEW OF UNIT XI

I. In the list below the sentences, find a form (or forms) to complete each sentence. Watch tense, voice, and number.

1. Scitisne quā ratiōne vellus (*may be seized*)?
2. Peliās ad rēgem Jāsonem misit quī vellus (*demand*).
3. Rēx intellēxit quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae (*had*) et nōn dubitābat quīn vellus (*they would seize*).
4. Periculum erat tantum ut maximā difficultāte nāvēs saxa (*avoided*).
5. Cum Argonautae in terram (*had gone out*), ā rēge rogāvērunt ut vellus sibi (*should be handed over*).
6. Argonautae dēmōnstrāvērunt quam ob causam (*they had come*).
7. Multis cum lacrimis Mēdēa petivit nē Jāsōn eam in Colchide (*leave*).
8. Cum Jāsōn vellus aureum (*had seen*), id capere cōnātus est.

caperent	habēbant	relinqueret	vēnerant
caperētur	habērent	relinquit	vēnissent
capiātur	postulāret	reliquisset	vīderat
captum erant	postulāvit	trāderētur	vīdisset
ēgressī essent	relinquās	trādētur	vītābant
ēgressī sunt	relinquerēs	trādidit	vītārent

II. In the list below the English phrases find a word or phrase that translates each one.

- |                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. he will persuade me | 6. it is the custom      |
| 2. I believe the queen | 7. it pleased him        |
| 3. it is agreed        | 8. it was necessary      |
| 4. it is raining       | 9. it will harm the men  |
| 5. it is proper        | 10. the king favored him |

convenit	mihi persuādēbit	oportet	rēx ei favēbat
conventum est	mōs est	rēginae crēdō	pluit
ei placuit	necesse erat	rēginam crēdō	virīs nocēbit

III. Each of the following verbs has an English derivative ending in either *-ant* or *-ent*. From your knowledge of the Latin word, give the meaning of each of these English derivatives.

ascendō	fluō	respondeō
cōstituō	incipiō	significō
conveniō	lateō	sileō
errō	migrō	teneō
expectō	occupō	vigilō



*The site of Troy today*

## UNIT XII *Roman Stories Retold*

---

*Many stories have come down to us of the early days of Rome, some from legendary sources, others based on historic facts. The selections here retold show briefly the origin and development of Rome, first as a kingdom, and later as a republic. The fundamental characteristics of the Roman people are revealed in these tales of the men who shaped the destiny of Rome from its beginnings.*

### THE BEGINNINGS OF ROME

**O**lim in Asiā erat urbs antiq̄ua, quae Trōja appellāta est. Eam urbem Graeci decem annōs obsēdērunt tandemque Trōjā<sup>1</sup> potītī sunt. Priamō rēge filiisque ejus interfectis, urbem dēlēvērunt. Sed Aenēās, qui inter clārissimōs dēfēnsōrēs urbis fuerat, cum paucis  
5 comitibus ex urbe effūgit. Cum profugōs ex omnibus partibus coēgisset, in Ītaliā migrāre cōstituit.

Post septem annōs vēnit in eam partem Ītaliae ubi erat urbs Laurentum. Latīnī, qui tum eum locum tenēbant, agrōs suōs dēfendere parāvērunt. Sed Latīnus, rēx, postquam in colloquiō originem  
10 multitudinis ducisque cognōvit, pācem cum Aenēā fēcit atque postea ei Lāvīniā filiam in mātirimōnium dedit.<sup>2</sup> Trōjānī urbem condidērunt, quam Aenēās ab nōmine uxōris Lāvīnium appellāvit.

<sup>1</sup> This use of the ablative is explained on the facing page.

<sup>2</sup> The marriage of Aeneas and Lavinia signified the union of the two nations.

Posteā, ut Trōjānī et Latīnī eōdem jūre<sup>1</sup> atque nōmine<sup>1</sup> ūterentur, utramque Latīnōs gentem appellāvit.

Post paucōs annōs autem Aenēās mortuus est, et Lāvīnia inde rēgnāvit, quoad Ascanius, Aenēae filius, adolēvit. Tum ille propter abundantem Lāvīniī multitudinem mātīrī urbem reliquit. Ipse novam 5 aliam urbem condidit, quae Alba Longa appellāta est. Multī rēgēs post Ascanium imperium Albānum gessērunt.

Quīdam ex his, cui<sup>2</sup> nōmen Proca erat, duōs filiōs, Numitōrem atque Amūlum, habuit. Numitōrī, quī major<sup>3</sup> erat, rēgnum reliquit. Pulsō

#### ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENT VERBS

Two deponent verbs often used in this book—*ūtōr*, *use*, and *potior*, *get possession of*—take objects in the ablative case.

Eā urbe Graecī potitī sunt, *The Greeks got possession of this city.*

Manū dextrā semper ūtitur, *He always uses his right hand.*

Other deponents which are followed by the ablative are *fruor*, *enjoy*, *fungor*, *perform*, *carry out*, and *vēscor*, *eat*.

#### DATIVE OF POSSESSION

The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative case. The word denoting the thing possessed is then in the nominative as the subject of a form of *sum*.

Sunt mihi multī librī, *I have many books.*

Quīdam ex his, cui nōmen Proca erat, duōs filiōs habuit, *One of these, whose name was (who had the name) Proca, had two sons.*

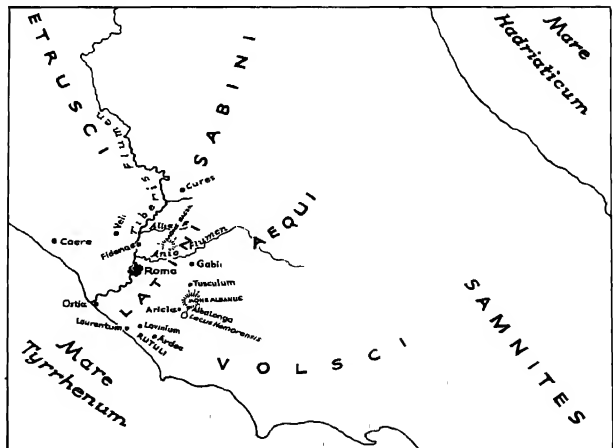
The dative of possession emphasizes the fact of ownership rather than the owner.

<sup>1</sup> This use of the ablative is explained on this page.

<sup>2</sup> See Dative of Possession on this page.

<sup>3</sup> *older*; literally, *greater* [by birth].

*Early Rome and its surroundings*



tamen frātre, Amūlus rēgnāvit. Filium frātris necāvit; filiam, quae Rhēa Silvia appellābātur, per speciem honōris sacerdotem Vestae<sup>1</sup> lēgit.

## ROYAL TWINS

**E**x hāc filiā nātī sunt duo filii, Rōmulus et Remus. Pater eōrum, ut fāma est,<sup>2</sup> Mārs deus erat. Sed nec dī nec hominēs mātrem et puerōs ā crūdēlitate rēgiā dēfendērunt. Sacerdōs in custōdiam data est; puerōs rēx in Tiberim injicī jussit.

Forte Tiberis abundāverat, neque eī quī puerōs ferēbant adire ad altam aquam poterant. Itaque puerōs in alveō (*little boat*) posuērunt  
10 atque in tenuī (*shallow*) aquā reliquērunt.<sup>3</sup> Sed alveus in sicco sēdit.<sup>4</sup> Deinde lupa (*wolf*) ex montibus proximis ad puerōs vēnit.

Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, eam invēnit puerōs nūtrientem (*nursing*). Ab eō atque uxōre puerī educātī sunt.<sup>5</sup> Cum primum adolēvērunt, vēnārī (*to hunt*) coepērunt, et in latrōnēs praedā onustōs (*loaded*)  
15 impetūs facere pāstōribusque<sup>6</sup> praedam dividere.

Dēnique latrōnēs, irātī ob praedam āmissam,<sup>7</sup> impetum in Rōmulum et Remum fēcērunt. Captum Remum rēgi Amūliō trādīdērunt. Puerōs praedam ex agris Numitōris ēgissee incūsābant.<sup>8</sup> Sic ad supplicium Numitōri Remus dēditur.

20 Jam prīdem Faustulus crēdiderat puerōs esse nepōtēs Numitōris. Tum periculō Remī mōtus, rem Rōmulō aperit. Forte Numitor quoque audiverat frātrēs geminōs esse; tum comparāns et aetātem eōrum et nōbilem animum Remī nepōtem recognōvit.

*Lupa et gemini*

<sup>1</sup> a priestess of Vesta, or a vestal.

<sup>2</sup> according to tradition; literally, as the report is

<sup>3</sup> Supply eōs as object.

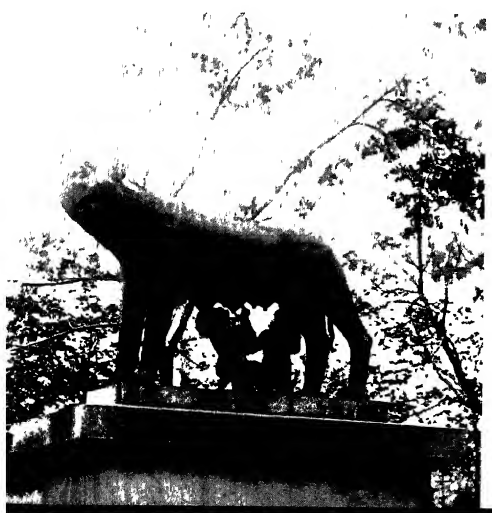
<sup>4</sup> drifted ashore; literally, settled on dry ground.

<sup>5</sup> were brought up. Notice that educate is derived from educō, -āre, not from educō, -ere.

<sup>6</sup> Dative of indirect object. What prepositions do we use with the verb divide?

<sup>7</sup> A good example of how a Latin perfect participle is the equivalent of a whole clause in English.

<sup>8</sup> brought as an accusation, with dependent indirect discourse, Puerōs . . . ēgissee; better, accused the boys of, etc.



Rōmulus cum manū pāstōrum in rēgem Amūlium impetum fēcīt. Remus aliā parātā manū adjuvit. Ita rēx interfectus est. Imperium<sup>1</sup> Albānum Numitōri avō ab juvenibus restitūtum est.

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus dixerunt, "Urbem aedificābimus in eis locis ubi expositi atque educāti sumus." 5

Uterque juvenis nōmen novae urbī dare eamque regere cupiēbat. Sed quod geminī erant, nec rēs aetāte dēcerni poterat, auguriis ūsi sunt.<sup>2</sup> Ā Remō prius visī sunt sex vulturēs. Rōmulō postea duodecim sēsē ostendērunt. Uterque ab amicis rēx appellātus est atque rēgnum postulābat. Cum irātī arma rapuissent, in pugnā Remus 10 cecidit. Ita Rōmulus sōlus imperiō potītus est; conditam<sup>3</sup> urbem ā suō nōmine Rōmam appellāvit.

Palātium<sup>4</sup> primum, in quō ipsē erat educātus, mūnivit. Vocātā ad concilium multitūdine, jūra dedit. Creāvit etiam centum senātōrēs, quī honoris causā<sup>5</sup> patrēs appellāti sunt. 15

Jam rēs Rōmāna<sup>6</sup> firma et finitimis civitātibus<sup>7</sup> bellō pār erat. Sed Rōmānī neque uxōrēs neque cum finitimis jūs cōnūbiū<sup>8</sup> habēbant. Tum Rōmulus quōsdam ex patribus lēgātōs in eās gentēs misit quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent. Nusquam benignē lēgātī audītī sunt; nam finitimī nōn solum Rōmānōs odērunt,<sup>9</sup> sed 20 etiam tantam in mediō crēscēntem urbem timēbant. Itaque irātī Rōmānī vī ūti statuērunt.

Ad eam rem Rōmulus, lūdīs parātīs, finitimōs ad spectāculum invitāvit. Multī convēnērunt ut et lūdōs spectārent et novam urbem vidērent. Sabīnōrum omnis multitūdō inermis cum liberis ac con- 25 jugibus vēnit.

#### The Seven Hills

<sup>1</sup> Here, *absolute power*.

<sup>2</sup> *they resorted to*.

<sup>3</sup> Equivalent to a relative clause.

<sup>4</sup> *the Palatine Hill*. This hill was doubtless the location of the earliest settlement made on the site of Rome.

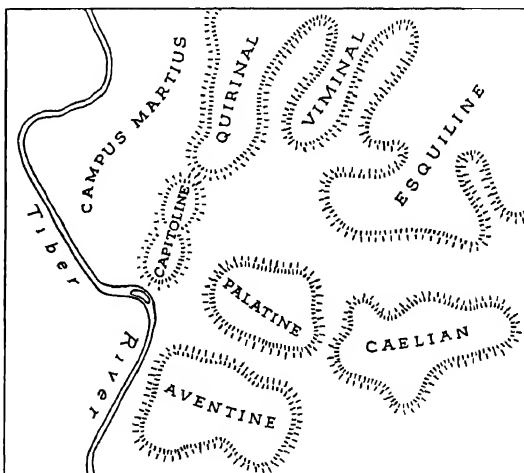
<sup>5</sup> *as a mark of distinction*. Notice that *causā* and *grātiā*, meaning *for the sake of*, stand after the dependent genitive. But Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer use English word order for their motto, *Ars gratia artis*.

<sup>6</sup> I.e., *rēs publica Rōmāna*.

<sup>7</sup> Dative with *pār*.

<sup>8</sup> *right of intermarriage*.

<sup>9</sup> For this form see page 343, 48.





Ubi spectāculi tempus vēnit omnēsque intenti in lūdōs<sup>1</sup> erant, tum, signō datō, Rōmānī rapere (*seize*) virginēs coepērunt. Parentēs virginum profūgērunt clāmantēs Rōmānōs hospitium violāvisse. Nec raptae virginēs aut spem dē sē meliōrem aut indignātiōnem minōrem  
<sup>5</sup> habēbant. Sed ipse Rōmulus circumibat ostendēbatque id patrum superbiā<sup>2</sup> Rōmānīs<sup>3</sup> faciendum esse.<sup>4</sup>

“Quamquam vī captae estis,” inquit, “omnia jūra Rōmānōrum habēbitis.”

Jam multō minus perturbāti animī raptārum<sup>5</sup> erant. At parentēs  
<sup>10</sup> eārum civitātēs finitimās, ad quās ejus injūriae pars pertinēbat, ad arma concitābant. Hae civitātēs omnēs ā Rōmulō victae sunt.

Novissimum bellum ab Sabīnīs ortum est, quod multō maximum fuit. Sabīnī arcem Rōmānam in monte Capitōlinō dolō cēpērunt. Rōmānī posterō diē arcem recuperāre cōnāti sunt. Ubi Hostius Hostilius,  
<sup>15</sup> dux exercitūs Rōmānī, cecidit, cōnfestim aciēs Rōmāna pulsa est.

At Rōmulus templum vōvit (*vowed*) Jovī Statōrī ōrāvitque auxilium.

Tum, crēdēns precēs suās audītās esse, “Hinc (*from here*),” inquit, “Rōmānī, Juppiter optimus maximus<sup>6</sup> nōs resistere<sup>7</sup> ac renovāre pugnam jubet.”

<sup>1</sup> on the games.

<sup>2</sup> because of the haughtiness.

<sup>3</sup> This use of the dative is explained on the facing page.

<sup>4</sup> This form is explained on the facing page.

<sup>5</sup> of the captured women. An example of a perfect participle used as a noun.

<sup>6</sup> A set phrase applied to Jupiter. When the phrase is translated, it is necessary to insert *and* between the adjectives.

<sup>7</sup> to make a stand.



## FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

Three Latin participles have previously been explained.

*Present Active: portāns, carrying*

*Perfect Passive: portātus, having been carried*

*Future Active: portātūrus, about to carry*

In addition, the Latin verb has also a future passive participle.

I	II	III	IV
portandus, -a, -um	monendus, -a, -um	dūcendus, -a, -um	audiendus, -a, -um
		capiendus, -a, -um	

This participle is formed on the present stem and has the endings -ndus, -nda, -ndum in the nominative singular. It is declined like bonus.

In -iō verbs of the third conjugation and in verbs of the fourth conjugation, the present stem has -ie- in the future passive participle, just as in the present active participle: capiēns, capiendus; audiēns, audiendus.

The future passive participle is often used with forms of the verb sum to denote an act which must be done or ought to be done.

Ostendit id faciendum esse, *He explained that this had to be done.*

Rēx dēfendendus est, *The king must be defended.*

## DATIVE OF AGENT

With the future passive participle, the word denoting the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly in the dative.

Id Rōmānīs faciendum erat, *This had to be done by the Romans.*

Expressions which contain a future passive participle are often best translated by changing the verb to the active voice. The Latin dative of agent is then represented in English by the subject of the active verb.

Id Rōmānīs faciendum erat, *The Romans had to do this.*

Restitērunt<sup>1</sup> Rōmānī tamquam caelestī vōce jussī.

Tum Sabīnae mulierēs ausae sunt<sup>2</sup> sē inter tēla volantia inferre<sup>3</sup> ut pācem ā patribus virisque implōrārent. Ducēs eā rē mōtī nōn modo pācem sed etiam cīvitatē ūnam ex duābus faciunt. Rēgnū quoque  
5 cōnsociant (*united*) atque Rōmam faciunt sēdem imperiī.

Multitūdō ita aucta novō nōmine Quiritēs<sup>4</sup> appellāta est ex Curibus, quae urbs<sup>5</sup> caput Sabīnōrum erat. Deinde Rōmulus, populō in cūriās trīgintā divīsō, nōmina mulierum raptārum cūriīs dedit.

### THREE AGAINST THREE

Albānī quoque erant finitimī Rōmānōrum. Sine bonā causā  
A impetum magnō exercitū in agrum Rōmānum fēcērunt.

Forte in utrōque exercitū erant trigeminī frātrēs,<sup>6</sup> nec aetāte nec viribus disparēs, Horātii et Cūriātii. Hī Albānī erant; illī Rōmānī. Frātrēs, ad hanc pugnam dēlēctī, arma capiunt et in medium inter  
15 duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Duo exercitūs in spectāculum animōs in-  
tendunt. Signō datō, ternī<sup>7</sup> juvenēs concurrunt.

Primō congressū duo Rōmānī interfectī sunt, et trēs Albānī vulnerātī. Eum Rōmānum quī integer fuit trēs Cūriātii circumssistere cōnātī sunt. Cum jam Rōmānus paulum fūgisset, respexit atque  
20 vīdit trēs Cūriātiōs magnīs intervāllis sequentēs. Subitō cōstitit et  
in proximum Cūriātium impetum facit.

Dum exercitus Albānus Cūriātiōs obsecrat (*was entreating*) ut frātrī auxilium ferant, Horātius eum interfecit. Deinde victor secundum frātrem petit.

Tum magnō clāmōre Rōmānī adjuvant militem suum, et ille ad cōn-  
25 ficiendum<sup>8</sup> proelium parātus erat. Priusquam cōsecūtus est tertius, Horātius alterum Cūriātium cōnficit. Jamque singulī supererant, sed nec spē nec viribus parēs. Alter integer et ferōx superiōribus victōriīs erat; alter dēfessus vulnere, animō frāctus, in certāmen vēnit. Horātius autem certus vincendi<sup>9</sup> erat. Nec illud proelium fuit.  
30 Cūriātium vix sustinentem arma Horātius caedit et jacentem spoliāt.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> What is the effect of putting the verb first?

<sup>2</sup> A semi-deponent. See page 336, 40.

<sup>3</sup> With *sē*, to *rush in*.

<sup>4</sup> A term of honor.

<sup>5</sup> We say *a city which*, putting *city* in apposition with the name.

<sup>6</sup> *three brothers who were triplets.*

<sup>7</sup> *three on each side.*

<sup>8</sup> This construction is explained on the facing page.

<sup>9</sup> A gerund. See page 171.

<sup>10</sup> Find in this paragraph five or more words which have English derivatives.

## GERUNDIVE

As we saw on page 171, the gerund is a verbal noun.  
cupidus discēdendī, *desirous of departing*

The future passive participle is often used as a verbal adjective (*gerundive*) in a phrase which has the same meaning as a gerund with an object.

*Gerund:* spēs urbem capiendī, *hope of capturing the city*

*Gerundive:* spēs urbis capiendae, *hope of capturing the city*

The word **capiendae** is a verbal adjective, or gerundive. A gerundive agrees with its noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case. When the gerundive is used, the word it modifies is in the same case as the gerund would have been if it had been used.

The case uses of the gerundive construction are in general the same as those of the gerund.

*Genitive:* cupidus oppidī expugnandī, *desirous of storming the town*

difficultātēs bellī gerendī, *difficulties of carrying on the war*

*Accusative:* ad lūdōs spectandōs, *for the purpose of seeing (or to see) the games*

ad cōficiendum proelium, *for the purpose of ending (or to end) the battle*

*Ablative:* dē auxiliō mittendō, *about sending aid*

lapidibus portandīs, *by carrying stones*

The Romans often used the gerundive construction where English usage would lead us to expect a gerund.

## DISTINCTIONS BETWEEN GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

Notice these distinctions between the gerund and the gerundive:

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
A noun	A participle
Active voice	Passive voice
Neuter gender	All genders
Used only in the singular	Both numbers
No nominative case	All cases

## THE HONOR OF A ROMAN

Rōmānī ā Pyrrhō, rēge Ēpirī, proeliō superātī lēgātōs Tarentum  
ad eum dē redimendīs captivīs mīsērunt. Inter lēgātōs Rō-  
mānōs erat C. Fābricius, vir bonus et bellō ēgregius, sed admodum  
pauper (*poor*). Pyrrhus, quī cum Rōmānīs pācem facere volēbat,  
5 lēgātīs magna dōna obtulit ut Rōmānīs pācem suādērent.<sup>1</sup> Quam-  
quam haec omnia sprēta sunt, rēx tamen captivōs dīcitur sine pretiō  
(*ransom*) Rōmam mīsisse.

Pyrrhus, Fābriciī virtutem admirātus, illī sēcretō quārtam etiam  
rēgnī suī partem obtulit sī patriam dēsereret.<sup>2</sup>

10 Cui Fābricius ita respondit, “Sī mē virum bonum iūdicās, cūr  
mē vīs<sup>4</sup> corrumpere (*to corrupt*)? Sīn vērō malum, cūr meam amīci-  
tiam cupis?”

Posteā, omnī spē pācis inter Pyrrhum et Rōmānōs conciliandae  
ablātā, Fābricius cōsul factus contrā eum missus est.

15 Cumque vicīna castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus rēgis nocte  
ad Fābriciū vēnit et dixit, “Polliceor mē Pyrrhum venēnō necātūrum  
sī mihi praemium dederis.”<sup>3</sup>

Hunc Fābricius vīctum ad Pyrrhum remisit atque eum certiōrem  
fēcit quae medicus pollicitus esset.

20 Tum rēx admirātus eum dixisse fertur, “Ille est Fābricius, quī  
difficilius (*with greater difficulty*) ab honōre quam sōl ā suō cursū  
potest āvertī.”

## A TRUE PATRIOT

Cum primō Pūnicō<sup>4</sup> bellō Rōmānī contrā Carthāginiēnsēs dē  
imperiō Siciliae contenderent, M. Atīlius Rēgulus, cōsul Rō-  
25 mānus, nāvālī pugnā classem Pūnicam superāvit. Proeliō factō,  
Hannō, dux Carthāginiēnsis, ad eum vēnit, simulāns sē venīre pācis  
petendae causā. Vēnit rē vērā ut tempus extraheret (*he might gain*),  
dum novae cōpiae ex Āfricā advenīrent.<sup>5</sup>

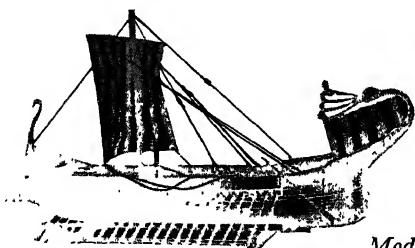
<sup>1</sup> to urge peace on the Romans.

<sup>2</sup> Of what verb is this a form?

<sup>3</sup> See the facing page for this use and tense of the subjunctive.

<sup>4</sup> The Carthaginians were Phoenicians, Pūnici in Latin. Hence the adjective Pūnicus, *Punic*, is often used to mean Carthaginian.

<sup>5</sup> This use of the subjunctive is explained on page 213



Model of a Carthaginian galley

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

The perfect subjunctive, active, is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign *-erī-*.

I	II	III	IV
portāverim	monuerim	dūxerim	audīverim
portāverīs	monuerīs	dūxerīs	audīverīs
portāverit	monuerit	dūxerit	audīverit
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

The perfect subjunctive of *sum* is formed in the same manner on the stem *fu-*: *fuerim*, *fuerīs*, etc.

The perfect subjunctive, passive, is made up of the perfect participle and the present subjunctive of *sum*.

I	II	III	IV
portātus sim	monitus sim	ductus sim	audītus sim
portātus sīs	monitus sīs	ductus sīs	audītus sīs
portātus sit	monitus sit	ductus sit	audītus sit
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES

When the main verb of a sentence denotes present or future time, a subjunctive in a subordinate clause is regularly in the present or perfect tense.

It ut praemium accipiat, *He goes to receive* (lit., *that he may receive*) *a reward.*

Polliceor mē Pyrrhum necātūrum sī mihi praemium dederīs, *I promise to kill* (lit., *that I will kill*) *Pyrrhus if you will give me a reward.*

When the main verb denotes past time, the subjunctive in a subordinate clause is regularly in the imperfect or the past perfect.

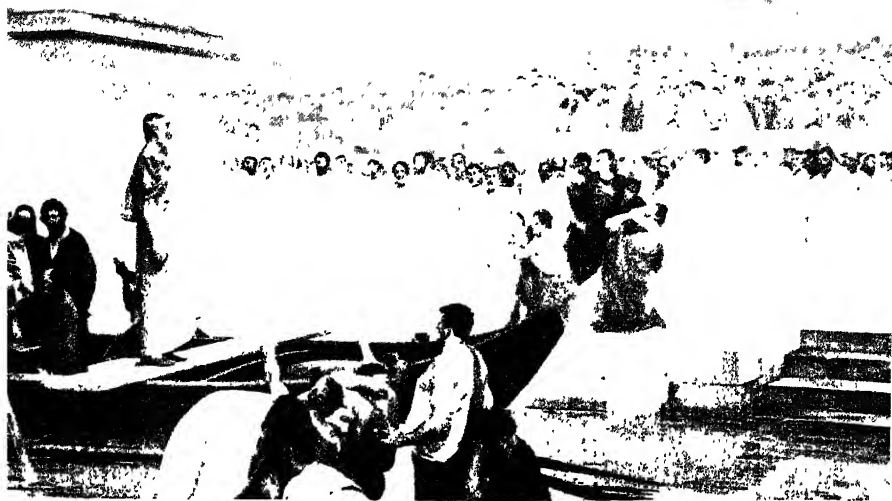
Hostēs fūgērunt cum victī essent, *The enemy fled because they had been defeated.*

If the main verb is a perfect which is equivalent to an English present perfect, i.e., translated with *have* or *has*, a dependent subjunctive may be in the present or in the imperfect.

Vidērunt quid faciam, *They have seen what I am doing.*

Hostēs ācriter pugnāvērunt nē vincerentur, *The enemy have fought fiercely in order that they might not be conquered.*

After a main verb denoting past time a result clause sometimes has its verb in the perfect.



*Regulus and the prisoners*

Mīlitēs Rōmānī clāmāre coepērunt Rēgulum idem facere oportē<sup>1</sup> quod Carthāginiēnsēs paucīs ante annīs in<sup>2</sup> cōsule quōdam fēcissent. Is cōsul in colloquium per fraudem vocātus ā Poenīs comprehēnsus erat et in catēnās coniectus.

- 5 Hannō, priusquam Rēgulus respondēret, dixit, "Sī hoc fēcēritis, nihilō<sup>3</sup> eritis Poenīs<sup>4</sup> meliōrēs."

Cōsul magnā dignitatē respondit, "Fidēs Rōmāna, Hannō, tē istō metū liberat."

- Dē pāce nōn convēnit quia Poenus ex animō nōn agēbat et cōsul  
10 bellum gerere quam pācem facere mālēbat.<sup>5</sup>

Deinde Rēgulus et collēga (*colleague*), L. Mānlius Vulsō, in Āfricam primī Rōmānōrum ducum trānsiērunt. Dum Rēgulus hiemem in Āfricā agit, vilicus (*overseer*) ejus mortuus est, et mercēnārius,<sup>6</sup> rūsticō instrūmentō ablātō, fūgit. Hōc nūntiātō, Rēgulus timēbat nē. dēsertō agrō, cibus uxōrī ac liberīs dēesset.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> ought to do the same thing. The infinitive is due to the indirect discourse. Its subject is another infinitive with subject accusative, Rēgulum . . . facere. In line 3, fēcissent is subjunctive because it is a subordinate verb in indirect statement. See page 192.

<sup>2</sup> in the case of.

<sup>3</sup> no; literally by nothing. Ablative of

degree of difference. See page 351, 87.

<sup>4</sup> than the Carthaginians. Instead of quam Poenī, the ablative of comparison is used. See page 350, 81.

<sup>5</sup> For conjugation see page 341, 47.

<sup>6</sup> hired servant. What is the meaning of the English adjective from this word?

<sup>7</sup> This use of the subjunctive is explained on the facing page.

## ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to denote an act which is anticipated, or expected.

*Expectābam dum frāter redīret, I was waiting until my brother should return (or for my brother to return).*

*Hannō periculum reppulit priusquam Rēgulus respondēret, Hanno avoided the danger before Regulus answered.*

In the first example the verb *redīret* denotes an act which is expected; hence the subjunctive. In the second example the verb *respondēret* also denotes an act that is expected and is likewise in the subjunctive.

The *anticipatory subjunctive* is most frequently used with conjunctions meaning *until* or *before*. Observe that in the first example above, the conjunction *dum* is used with the meaning *until*; in the second example, *priusquam* means *before*.

## CLAUSES OF FEAR

With verbs of fearing, as well as with other expressions of fear, a dependent clause with its verb in the subjunctive may be used to tell what one fears will happen. Such clauses are introduced by *nē* meaning *that* or by *ut* meaning *that . . . not*. (Occasionally *nē . . . nōn* is used instead of *ut*.)

With English expressions of fear the conjunction *that* is sometimes omitted.

*I am afraid he will not arrive today.*

In Latin the conjunction *nē* or *ut* is always used.

Remember that with other subjunctive clauses *ut* means *that* and *nē* means *that . . . not*, while in clauses of fear the translations are exactly reversed.

*Rēgulus timēbat nē cibus uxōrī dēesset, Regulus feared that his wife would lack food (food would be lacking for his wife).*

*Timēmus ut cōpia cibī sit, We fear that there may not be a supply of food.*

In a clause of fear the Latin present subjunctive has the same force as the English future.

*Timeō ut hodiē perveniat, I am afraid that he will not arrive today.*

Itaque ā cōsulibus petivit ut sibi successor mitterētur. At senātus cōstituit rei pūblicae<sup>1</sup> interesse eum in Āfricā manēre. Senātus autem agrum Rēguli colī pūblicē et cibum conjugī ejus ac liberis dari jussit.

Proximō annō Rēgulus, arbitrātus Carthāginiēnsēs jam sē dēdere  
5 parātōs esse, ad colloquium eōs invitāvit. Laetī vērēunt, ut dē pāce agerent. Sed, cum postulāta Rēguli audivissent, cōstituērunt condiōnēs tam dūrās recūsāre bellumque renovāre.

Eō ferē tempore quidam Graecus, nōmine Xanthippus, rei<sup>2</sup> militāris peritissimus, Carthāginem vēnit. Carthāginiēnsibus persuāsit ut sē  
10 ducem facerent. Quō factō, fortūna mūtāta est; nam nōn solum exercitum Rōmānum vicērunt, sed etiam Rēgulum imperātorem cēpērunt.

Paucīs post annīs,<sup>3</sup> cum iterum dē pāce agere cōstituissent, Rēgulum cum lēgātīs Rōmam misērunt quī Rōmānis pācem suādēret et  
15 dē commūtandīs captīvīs ageret.

Jūre jūrاندō autem adstrictus est (*he was bound*) ut, nisi dē captīvīs impetrāret, rediret<sup>4</sup> ipse Carthāginem.

Is, cum Rōmam vēnisset, ēgit aliter ac<sup>5</sup> Poenī mandāverant; nam senātui suāsīt nē pācem cum Poenīs faceret. Dixit enim illōs frāctōs  
20 tot cāsibus spem nūllam habēre; cum haec ita essent, senātum pācem recūsāre dēbēre. Reddī captīvōs negāvit esse ūtile; juvenēs esse et bonōs ducēs, sē jam cōfectum senectūte (*by old age*). Dixit etiam malum exemplum<sup>6</sup> futūrum esse, si captīvī Rōmāni redimerentur.

Senātus eō auctōre<sup>7</sup> pācem recūsāvit Poenōsque captīvōs retinuit.  
25 Rēgulus ut captīvus<sup>8</sup> conjugem parvōsque nātōs<sup>9</sup> ā sē remōvit<sup>10</sup> Carthāginemque rediit. Ibi crūdēlissimīs suppliciīs necātus esse dīcitur.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive with interest. See page 346, 61.

<sup>2</sup> Objective genitive with *peritissimus*. See page 345, 57.

<sup>3</sup> An ablative of degree of difference with *post*. See page 351, 87. We have also had *post paucos annos*.

<sup>4</sup> *bound himself by an oath to return*; implied indirect discourse (*he said he would return*) requires subjunctive for the verb in the subordinate clause, *nisi . . . impetrāret*.

<sup>5</sup> After *aliter* and similar words, *ac* is translated *than*.

<sup>6</sup> A Roman soldier was expected to fight to the death rather than be taken prisoner.

<sup>7</sup> *by his advice*; ablative absolute.

<sup>8</sup> *as a captive*; i.e., not the equal of free Romans.

<sup>9</sup> *children*.

<sup>10</sup> *shunned*.



*In the early days of Rome, values were estimated at so many oxen. That is why an ox is shown on this crude piece of metal.*



## REVIEW OF UNIT XII

---

I. Complete these sentences with correct Latin words.

1. Circē, eā rē (*moved*), porcōs in hūmānam fōrmam convertit.
2. Argonautae (*the king*) nōn resistant.
3. Trōjānī, (*of fighting*) cupidī, agrōs occupāre temptābunt.
4. Dux (*the city*) hostium potitus est, quod hostēs (*swords*) nōn ūsī sunt.
5. (*By fighting*) exercitus hostēs superat.

II. Translate these sentences and explain the uses of the verbs in each one.

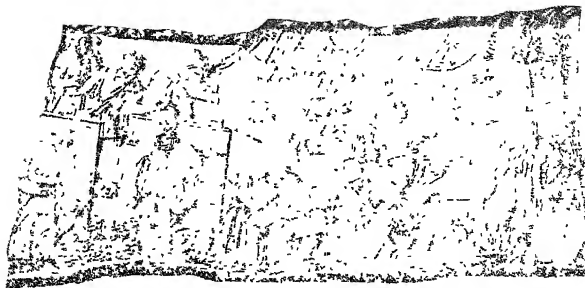
1. Jāsōn nautās convocāre dēbet.
2. Jāsonem nautās convocāre oportet.
3. Nautae Jāsonī convocandī sunt.

III. Translate the following sentences and explain the differences in construction.

1. Spēs superandī Rōmam omnēs Sabīnōs cēpit.
2. Spēs Rōmae superandae omnēs Sabīnōs cēpit.

IV. Select the word, phrase, or clause which completes each sentence correctly.

1. Trōjānī urbem condidērunt, quae (Alba Longa, Lāvīnium, Rōma) appellāta est.
2. Māter Rōmulī et Remī erat (Lāvīnia, Proca, Rhēa Silvia).
3. Rōmulus lēgātōs in cīvitatēs finitimās mīsīt (ad bellum gerendum, quī societātem cōnūbiumque peterent, ut lūdōs spectārent).
4. Horātius (animō frāctus, certus vincendī, dēfessus vulnere) in certāmen vēnit.
5. Pyrrhus, Fābriciī virtūtem admīrātus, dixit, "Tibi quārtam rēgnī meī partem dabō, sī (mē virum bonum iūdicās, patriam dēserueris, Rōmānīs pācem suāseris)."
6. Rēgulus timēbat (nē cibus uxōrī ac liberīs dēesset, nē in catēnās conjicerētur, ut senātus pācem cum Poenīs faceret).



*Soldiers foraging and building camp*

## SOLDIERS OF ROME

*An eagle once  
the standard  
of a legion*



*Tombstone of a  
Roman centurion  
buried in Britain*



*A Roman soldier*



*Soldiers at work*

*Caesar and the Helvetians*

Caesar, newly appointed governor of the Roman Province, was faced with the problem of restless neighbors. The Helvetians, a large tribe of Celtic Gauls living in the mountains of northern Switzerland, were planning a mass migration westward from their tiny homeland. To have thousands of people on the move with an uncertain destination was a threat not only to the Roman Province but to the Gallic allies of Rome. Caesar's encounters with these emigrants in conferences and on the battlefield are described in the early chapters of his Commentaries on the Gallic War.

## GAUL AND ITS PEOPLE

Gallia est omnis<sup>1</sup> divisa in partes tres; unam partem incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam Celtae, qui a nobis Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallios ab Aquitanis Garunna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit.<sup>2</sup>

Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt; minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe<sup>3</sup> veniunt, qui ea important<sup>4</sup> quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent<sup>5</sup>; praeterea sunt proximi Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallios virtute praecedunt, quod ferre cotidianeis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis<sup>6</sup> finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi<sup>6</sup> in eorum<sup>6</sup> finibus bellum gerunt.

Eorum una pars, quam Galli obtinent, initium capit<sup>7</sup> a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garunnâ flumine, Oceanô, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab<sup>8</sup> Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit<sup>9</sup> ad septentriones.

Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentriones et orientem solem.

<sup>1</sup> as a whole.

<sup>2</sup> Singular, because the Marne and the Seine are thought of as one boundary.

<sup>3</sup> With *minimè*, very seldom; what is the literal translation?

<sup>4</sup> A compound of what two Latin words?

<sup>5</sup> Translate *ad . . . pertinent*, tend to break down character.

<sup>6</sup> For what name does each of the pronouns *suis*, *ipsi*, *eorum* stand? Remember that the reflexive *suus* refers to the subject of its clause.

<sup>7</sup> What single English word will translate *initium capit*?

<sup>8</sup> on the side of.

<sup>9</sup> it faces.

Aquitānia ā Garunnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

## A NATION OUTGROWS ITS BOUNDARIES

**A**pud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōsulibus,<sup>1</sup> rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, conjūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvibus persuāsit<sup>2</sup> ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent.

“Perfacile<sup>3</sup> est,” inquit, “cum virtūte omnibus<sup>4</sup> praestēmus, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri.”<sup>5</sup>

- 10 Facilius eis persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur; ūnā ex parte<sup>6</sup> flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Jūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā ex parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis  
15 dīvidit.

Itaque fiēbat ut<sup>7</sup> minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs bellum inferre possent; quā dē causā hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō<sup>8</sup> multitudīne autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in  
20 longitudinē milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinē CLXXX patēbant.

His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī, cōstituē<sup>9</sup> ea<sup>10</sup> quae ad proficiēscendum pertinērent comparāre, jūmentōrum (*of pack animals*) et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs (*sowings*) quam maximās facere ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī  
25 suppeteret (*might be available*), cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et

<sup>1</sup> *in the consulship of*; ablative absolute. The year was 61 B.C.

<sup>2</sup> On pages 218, 219, and 220 *persuādeō* is used four times; it commonly takes a dative (indicating the person persuaded), which is translated as a direct object, and it is usually followed by a noun clause of desire, introduced by *ut* (or *nē*), in which the verb is best translated by an infinitive.

<sup>3</sup> The prefix *per* attached to an adjective gives it the force of a superlative; as a predicate adjective, *Perfacile* modifies *potiri*.

<sup>4</sup> Dative with compound of *prae*; translate as direct object.

<sup>5</sup> *to gain the supreme control*; *imperiō*, object, is the ablative because of *potiri*, which is itself the subject of *est*.

<sup>6</sup> Use the map on page 221 to check the boundaries given by *ūnā ex parte*, *alterā ex parte*, *tertiā ex parte*. What would be *quārtā ex parte*?

<sup>7</sup> *And so it happened that*. The use of the subjunctive in a noun clause of fact and the forms of *fiō* are given on the facing page.

<sup>8</sup> *in proportion to*.

<sup>9</sup> Find the four infinitives which depend on *cōstituē* *re*.

<sup>10</sup> Object of *comparāre*.

amīcitiā cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.

Orgetorix dux dēligitur. Is lēgātiōnem ad civitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupāret; pater enim ejus rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat 5

### THE IRREGULAR VERB *fiō*

The verb *faciō* has no passive forms in the present system. The missing passive is replaced by the irregular verb *fiō*, *I become*, *I am made*. The principal parts are *fiō, fieri, factus sum*.

PRESENT		INDICATIVE IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
<i>fiō</i>	—	<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fiēbāmus</i>	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiēmus</i>
<i>fīs</i>	—	<i>fiēbās</i>	<i>fiēbātis</i>	<i>fiēs</i>	<i>fiētis</i>
<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiēbat</i>	<i>fiēbant</i>	<i>fiet</i>	<i>fient</i>
PRESENT		SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERFECT			
<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>	<i>fierem</i>	<i>fierēmus</i>		
<i>fiās</i>	<i>fiātis</i>	<i>fierēs</i>	<i>fierētis</i>		
<i>fiat</i>	<i>fiant</i>	<i>fieret</i>	<i>fierent</i>		

The perfect system of *faciō* in the passive is formed regularly: *factus sum, factus eram*, etc.

### NOUN CLAUSES OF FACT

The third person singular of *fiō* is often translated *it results* (freely, *the result is*). A verb meaning *it happens, it results, it comes about* may have as subject a clause introduced by *ut* with its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is called a noun clause of fact. The subjunctive in clauses of this kind is translated in the same manner as the indicative.

Saepe accidit ut frātre tuum in urbe videam, *It often happens that I see your brother in the city.*

Fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur, *The result was (It resulted) that they roamed less widely.*

Such a clause may be used as the object of a verb meaning *to bring about, to make, to cause*.

Hoc effēcit ut castra tūta essent, *This fact brought it about that the camp was safe* (i.e., *made the camp safe*).

et ā senātū populī Rōmānī<sup>1</sup> amicus appellātus erat. Itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, quī eō tempore principātum in civitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat.

- 5 “Perfacile est,” inquit, “cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse meae civitātis imperium obtentūrus<sup>3</sup> sum. Nōn est dubium quin<sup>4</sup> tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possint.<sup>5</sup> Meis cōpiis meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō.”

Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et jūs jūrandum dant<sup>6</sup> et, 10 rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae imperiō sēsē potiri posse spērānt.

Ea rēs est Helvētiis per indicium<sup>7</sup> ēnūtiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere<sup>8</sup> coēgērunt. Sī damnārētur (*he should be convicted*), igne eum cremātūrī erant (*they were going to burn*).

- 15 Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis,<sup>9</sup> Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad<sup>10</sup> hominum milia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque<sup>11</sup> suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit.

Cum civitās,<sup>12</sup> ob eam rem incitāta, armīs jūs suum exsequi (*to enforce*) cōnārētur multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est. Multī ex Helvētiis arbitrantur ipsum sē interfēcisse.



<sup>1</sup> The genitive populī Rōmānī is to be taken with senātū.

<sup>2</sup> What infinitive, modified by Perfacile, is the subject of est?

<sup>3</sup> What is the tense of obtentūrus?

<sup>4</sup> *that*, in a noun clause with a negative expression of doubt. See page 359, 119.

<sup>5</sup> With plūrimum, are the strongest [people]; what is the literal translation?

<sup>6</sup> Translate inter . . . dant, *they gave a pledge and [swore] an oath to one another*; literally, *they give faith and an oath among themselves*.

<sup>7</sup> *through informers*; literally, *through information*. Compare the modern phrase, “through the underground.”

<sup>8</sup> *to plead his case*. Orgetorix was under arrest for treason.

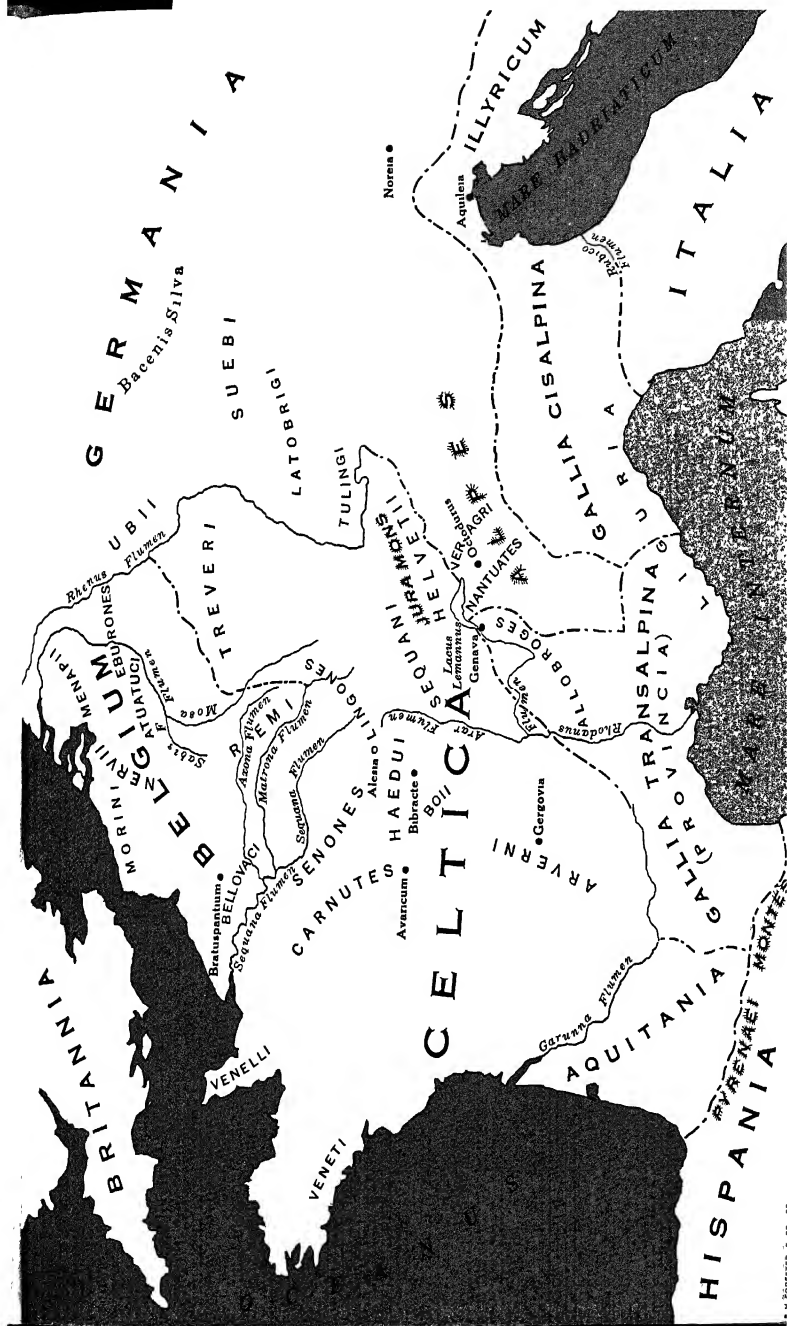
<sup>9</sup> *On the day set for the trial*.

<sup>10</sup> *about*, as elsewhere, with numerals

<sup>11</sup> Orgetorix had a large personal following: *familiam, personal retainers*; *clientēs, dependents*; *obaerātōs, debtors*, people who owed him money or service.

<sup>12</sup> The government intended to match force with force.

Roman soldiers



## LET US PASS

Post ejus mortem nihilō minus<sup>1</sup> Helvētiī ē finibus suis exīre cōnantur.

Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad<sup>2</sup> duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī  
 5 erant, cremant. Haec fēcērunt ut, domum reditiōnis (*of returning*) spē sublātā,<sup>3</sup> parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda<sup>4</sup> essent. Trium mēnsium<sup>5</sup> molita cibāria<sup>6</sup> sibi quemque domō efferre jubent.

Persuādēt Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimīs, ut, oppidis suis vicisque incēnsis, ūnā cum<sup>7</sup> eis proficiscantur. Boiōs, quī trāns  
 10 Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnābant, sociōs recipiunt.

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus<sup>8</sup> domō exīre possent; ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur<sup>9</sup>; mōns autem  
 15 altissimus impendēbat ut facile perpaucī prohibēre<sup>10</sup> possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius<sup>11</sup> atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs<sup>12</sup> locis vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns  
 20 ad Helvētiōs pertinet.

Cōnsilium erat Helvētiōrum vel persuādēre Allobrogibus, quī nūper pācātī erant et nōndum bonō animō<sup>13</sup> in populum Rōmānum vidēbantur, vel vī cōgere ut per suōs finēs iter darent. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī  
 25 omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v Kal. Apr.<sup>14</sup> L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.

<sup>1</sup> nevertheless; literally, *less by nothing*. Compare English *none the less*.

<sup>2</sup> Compare English *about twelve in number* (*to the number of twelve*).

<sup>3</sup> *by destroying the hope of returning*; ablative absolute. What are the principal places of tollō?

<sup>4</sup> Gerundive of *subeō*.

<sup>5</sup> *for three months*; i.e., to last three months. Where do *quemque* and *sibi* place the responsibility?

<sup>6</sup> *ground food, meal*.

<sup>7</sup> *along with*; *ūnā* is an adverb.

<sup>8</sup> Omit in translating.

<sup>9</sup> *could be drawn*.

<sup>10</sup> Supply *eōs* as object.

<sup>11</sup> *much easier*; literally, *easier by much*.

<sup>12</sup> *several*; literally, *not none*.

<sup>13</sup> *kindly disposed*; ablative of description in the predicate with *vidēbantur*.

<sup>14</sup> For *ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprilēs*, *five days before the Kalends* [first] of April, i.e., March 28. See page 272. The Helvetians laid their plans in 61 B.C. and spent two years in preparation for the migration.



Caesar<sup>1</sup> cum id nūntiātum esset eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe<sup>2</sup> proficisci et quam maximīs potest itineribus<sup>3</sup> in Galliam Ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit.

Prōvinciae tōtī<sup>4</sup> quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat<sup>5</sup> (erat omninō in Gallia Ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem quī erat ad 5 Genavam jubet rescindī (*to be broken down*).

Ubi dē ejus adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis. Hī dixerunt Helvētiōs habēre in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāvērunt ut ejus voluntāte id sibi facere 10 licēret.<sup>6</sup>

Caesar memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum<sup>7</sup> exercitum-que ejus ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub jugum missum; concēdendum<sup>8</sup> igitur nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō temperātūrōs (*would refrain*) ab injūriā et maleficiō existimābat. 13

Tamen, quod milītēs quōs imperāverat nōndum convēnerant, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrū<sup>9</sup>; sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr.<sup>10</sup> reverterentur.

<sup>1</sup> Caesar is the newly appointed governor of Transalpine Gaul, the Province.

<sup>2</sup> Rome.

<sup>3</sup> by the longest possible journeys.

<sup>4</sup> On the entire province, dative with imperat.

<sup>5</sup> he levied.

<sup>6</sup> that they be allowed; see page 354, 105.

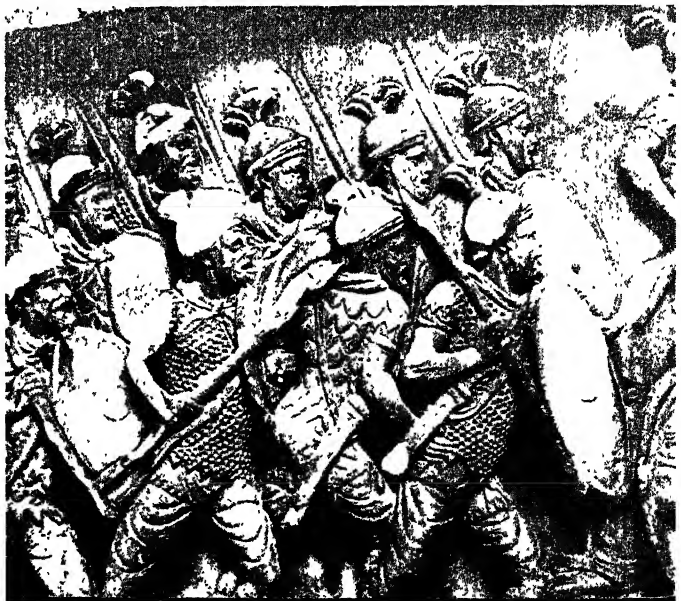
<sup>7</sup> Find the perfect passive infinitives in this sentence and notice that esse is omitted with all of them.

<sup>8</sup> it (the privilege) should be granted.

<sup>9</sup> Supply esse, would take time for deliberating, or to deliberate.

<sup>10</sup> at the Ides of April, i.e., by April 13 See page 272.

Roman soldiers  
advancing on  
the enemy



## YOU SHALL NOT PASS

Intereā ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram, milia passuum xix, mūrum<sup>1</sup> in altitudinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit (*he distributed*), castella mūnit, quō<sup>2</sup> facilius, sī sē invitō trānsire cōnārentur, prohibēre posset.

5 Ubi lēgātī ad eum diē cōstitutō revertērunt, negat<sup>3</sup> sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum<sup>4</sup> ostendit.

Helvētiī eā spē dējectī<sup>5</sup> nōn numquam<sup>6</sup> interdiū, saepius noctū, perrumpere<sup>7</sup> cōnātī sunt. Eōrum aliī nāvēs jūnxerant ratēsque (*and* 10 *rafts*) complūrēs fēceraut; aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitudō flūminis erat, trānsire cōnābantur.

Sed operis mūnitiōne<sup>8</sup> et militum concursū (*the attack*) et tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Ūna per Sēquanōs via relinquebātur, quā Sēquanīs invitīs<sup>9</sup> propter 15 angustias<sup>10</sup> ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum<sup>11</sup> suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt ut eō dēprecātōre<sup>12</sup> ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne<sup>13</sup> apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amicus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorīgis filiam in 20 mātirimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditatē rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus<sup>14</sup> studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās<sup>15</sup> volēbat.

Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat<sup>16</sup> ut per finēs suōs Hel-

<sup>1</sup> Not a stone wall, but an earthwork made in great part by cutting down the top of the river bank so as to leave a steep front.

<sup>2</sup> Used instead of *ut* to introduce a clause of purpose containing a comparative.

<sup>3</sup> The usual Latin for *say . . . not*. In translating, it is best to take the negative with *posse*.

<sup>4</sup> The full expression would be *sē eōs prohibitūrum esse*.

<sup>5</sup> *disappointed in that hope*. Notice that *spē* is ablative of separation, as is also *cōnātū*, line 13.

<sup>6</sup> With *nōn*, *sometimes*; what is the literal translation? Compare *nōnnūllī* (*not none*), *some*.

<sup>7</sup> *to force a passage*.

<sup>8</sup> *by the strength of the fortification*; what is the literal translation?

<sup>9</sup> *against the wish of the Sequanians*; ablative absolute. What is the literal translation?

<sup>10</sup> The narrow passage along the bank of the Rhône, described on page 222, lines 13-15.

<sup>11</sup> *Since*.

<sup>12</sup> *through his intercession*; literally, *he [being] the supporter* (or *spokesman*).

<sup>13</sup> *Because of his popularity and liberality*.

<sup>14</sup> *revolution*; dative with *studēbat*. What is the literal translation?

<sup>15</sup> *bound [to him]*.

<sup>16</sup> *prevailed on the Sequanians*. The object of *impetrat* is the noun clause *ut . . . patiantur, to allow*, etc.

vētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit<sup>1</sup>—Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiū, ut sine maleficiō et injūriā trāseant.

Caesari nūntiātur Helvētiōs habēre in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere; hī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae<sup>2</sup> civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret,<sup>3</sup> hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimīci, partī prōvinciae patentī (*lying open*) maximēque frūmentāriae<sup>4</sup> finitimī futūrī erant.<sup>5</sup>

Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī<sup>6</sup> quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit. Ipse in Ītaliā magnīs itineribus<sup>7</sup> contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et proximō itinere in Ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturigēs, locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.

Complūribus<sup>8</sup> hīs proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citioris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs<sup>9</sup> exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

## HELP FOR THE INVADED

Helvētiī jam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur.<sup>10</sup>

Haeduī, cum sē suaque<sup>11</sup> ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt quī auxilium rogent.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> brought it about that they exchanged hostages. Through favors to neighboring chieftains Dumnorix is building up a strong personal, political, and war machine.

<sup>2</sup> The antecedent of quae is civitās.

<sup>3</sup> If this should be done.

<sup>4</sup> open territory and [country] especially fruitful in grain. Capture of this region would be a threat to the food supply of the Province.

<sup>5</sup> would be.

<sup>6</sup> Dative with the compound praeficit, which has Labiēnum as direct object.

<sup>7</sup> forced marches. Caesar relied greatly on the elements of speed and surprise.

<sup>8</sup> With proeliis, while his and pulsīs together form an ablative absolute.

<sup>9</sup> Caesar has now led an armed force into foreign territory without an order of the Senate.

<sup>10</sup> While Caesar was marching to Aquileia and back, the Helvetians, though they had kept their pledge to the Sequanians (l. 2, above), invaded the country of the Haeduans, the homeland of Dumnorix, and began devastating it.

<sup>11</sup> themselves and their possessions. Why did they have so many possessions? Compare the pioneers in our country.

<sup>12</sup> to ask for help; subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

"Ita nōs," inquit, "omni tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritū sumus<sup>1</sup> ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs vestrī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint."

Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessārii et cōsanguineī Haeduōrum, 5 Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātis agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quibus<sup>2</sup> trāns Rhodanum vīcī possessiōnēsque erant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt<sup>3</sup> et dēmōnstrant sē praeter agrī solum (*soil*) nihil habēre reliquum.

Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectāre statuit dum, om- 10 nibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōsūmptīs, in Santonīs Helvētiī pervē-  
rent.<sup>4</sup>

Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum fluit incrēdibilī lēnitāte (*slowness*) ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat<sup>5</sup> iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus 15 jūctīs trānsībant, trēsque jam partēs cōpiārum trādūxērunt.

Caesar dē tertiā vigiliā<sup>6</sup> cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs im-  
peditōs et inopināntēs aggressus<sup>7</sup> magnam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās<sup>8</sup> abdidērunt

20 Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs divīsa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum mīserat.<sup>9</sup>

Ita sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae pars<sup>10</sup> civitātis 25 Helvētiaē insignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat,<sup>11</sup> ea princeps poenās persolvit.<sup>12</sup>

Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum pūblicās, sed etiam privātās injūriās ultus est<sup>13</sup>; nam Tigurini interfēcerant L. Pisōnem lēgātum, avum L. Pisōnis, socerī (*father-in-law*) Caesaris, eōdem proeliō quō Cassium.

<sup>1</sup> Translate with *Ita nōs*, etc. *We have always so deserved of the Roman people*

<sup>2</sup> Dative of possession. See page 203.

<sup>3</sup> The phrase *fugā sē recipiunt* is equivalent to *fugiunt*.

<sup>4</sup> *should come*; an anticipatory subjunctive with *dum*, *until*. See page 213.

<sup>5</sup> *in what direction it flows*; an indirect question; *ut . . . possit*, a result clause

<sup>6</sup> *in the third watch*, just past midnight.

<sup>7</sup> *attacking them impeded and off guard*. The Helvetians did not know that the Roman army was in the neighborhood.

<sup>8</sup> The accusative is used because of the motion implied in *abdidērunt*.

<sup>9</sup> This refers to the disaster inflicted nearly fifty years earlier, mentioned on page 223, lines 12-13.

<sup>10</sup> Translate as if *ea pars quae*.

<sup>11</sup> With such a word as *calamitās* or *injūria* as object, this word means *inflict . . . on*. Why is *populō* dative?

<sup>12</sup> *first paid the penalty*.

<sup>13</sup> From *ulciscor*. Caesar claims to derive great satisfaction from wiping out this old insult to his wife's family.



*The Roman army marching out of camp*

Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequi posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūravit<sup>1</sup> atque ita exercitum trādūxit. Helvētiū repentinō ejus adventū commōtī sunt; ille enim ūnō diē flūmen trānsierat, id quod<sup>2</sup> ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfecerant. Lēgātōs igitur ad eum misērunt, qui pācem peterent. Hujus lēgātīōnis Dīvicō princeps fuit, qui bellō Cassiānō<sup>3</sup> dux Helvētiōrum fuerat 5

Caesar lēgātīs respondit, "Ego memoriā teneō insignem calamitātem quam Helvētiū populō Rōmānō in bellō Cassiānō intulērunt. Ipse autem dēpōnere nōn possum memoriā recentium injūriarū, quod<sup>4</sup> vōs Helvētiū mē invitō iter per Prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod 10 Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāvistis.<sup>5</sup> Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs mihi dabitis, et sī Haeduīs sociisque eōrum, item sī Allobrogibus dē injūriis satisfaciētis,<sup>6</sup> vōbiscum pācem faciam."

Dīvicō, princeps lēgātīōnis, respondit, "Ita Helvētiū ā majōribus suis īstitutī sunt<sup>7</sup> ut obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint<sup>8</sup>; ejus 15 rei populus Rōmānus est testis."

Hōc respōnsō datō, discessit.

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prō-

<sup>1</sup> he arranged for a bridge to be built

<sup>2</sup> a task which.

<sup>3</sup> Referred to on page 223, lines 12-13.

<sup>4</sup> the fact that. Caesar sums up his reasons for refusing Dīvicō's request.

<sup>5</sup> Referred to on pages 225-226.

<sup>6</sup> make reparation to.

<sup>7</sup> have been taught.

<sup>8</sup> are accustomed, cōnsuērint is a contracted form of cōnsuēverint. The perfect of cōnsuēscō is translated as present

vinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs<sup>1</sup> coāctum habēbat,<sup>2</sup> praemittit quī videant<sup>3</sup> quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant.<sup>4</sup> Quī,<sup>5</sup> cupidius<sup>6</sup> novissimum agmen īsecūtī, aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt, et paucī dē nostris cadunt.

- 5 Quō proeliō sublātī<sup>7</sup> Helvētīi, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere (*to stand their ground*) nōn numquam et novissimō agmine<sup>8</sup> proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt.

Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in praesentiā  
10 hostem rapīnīs populātiōnibusque prohibēre.<sup>9</sup>

Ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum<sup>10</sup> nōn amplius quīnīs (*five*) aut sēnīs (*six*) mīlibus passuum interesset.<sup>11</sup>

## AN ARMY TRAVELS ON ITS STOMACH

I<sup>n</sup>terim cotīdiē Caesar frūmentum<sup>12</sup> quod Haeduī essent pūblicē pollicitī flāgitābat.

Nam propter frīgora (*cold*), quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat.<sup>13</sup> Eō autem frūmentō<sup>14</sup> quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat (*he had conveyed*), propterea<sup>15</sup> ūti  
20 minus<sup>16</sup> poterat quod iter ab Ararī Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat.

Diem ex diē dūcunt Haeduī<sup>17</sup>; cōferri, comportārī, adesse<sup>18</sup> dicunt.

Ubi sē diūtius<sup>19</sup> dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīrī oportēret, convocāvit eōrum prīncipēs, quōrum  
25 magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat.

<sup>1</sup> Caesar has now joined forces with the Gallic tribes which were threatened by the Helvetians. Caesar's soldiers were mainly infantry.

<sup>2</sup> *had collected*. The participle *coāctum* agrees with *quem* in line 19, page 227.

<sup>3</sup> A clause of purpose. What is the antecedent of *quī*?

<sup>4</sup> An indirect question.

<sup>5</sup> *These*. When a form of *quī* begins a sentence, it may be translated as though it were a form of *is*, *ea*, *id*.

<sup>6</sup> *too eagerly*.

<sup>7</sup> *elated by this battle*.

<sup>8</sup> *from their rear line*.

<sup>9</sup> With *satis habēbat*, *regarded it as sufficient for the present to prevent the*

*enemy from plundering and pillaging*.

<sup>10</sup> Supply *agmen*.

<sup>11</sup> *there was a distance of not more than five or six miles*.

<sup>12</sup> Caesar is caught without supplies of food, for the reasons given in the next paragraph.

<sup>13</sup> *was available*.

<sup>14</sup> Ablative with deponent infinitive *ūti*. See page 203.

<sup>15</sup> Take with *quod*, line 23.

<sup>16</sup> Equivalent to *nōn*.

<sup>17</sup> *The Haeduans put |him| off day after day*.

<sup>18</sup> Supply *frūmentum* as subject of these infinitives.

<sup>19</sup> *too long*.

In his erant Diviciacus et Liscus, qui summō magistratū praeerat, quem vergobretum<sup>1</sup> appellant Haeduī, qui creātur annuus (*annually*) et vitae necisque in suos<sup>2</sup> habet potestatem.

Tum Caesar graviter eos accūsāt, quod, cum frumentum neque emī neque ex agris sūmī possit, hostibus tam propinquis,<sup>3</sup> ab eis nōn sublevētur, praesertim cum, magnā ex parte<sup>4</sup> eōrum precibus adductus, bellum suscepit.

Tum dēmum Liscus, orātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod<sup>5</sup> antea tacuerat prōponit, "Sunt nōnnūllī quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plurimum valeat,<sup>6</sup> qui prīvātīm (*as private citizens*) plūs possint<sup>7</sup> 10 quam ipsī magistrātūs.

"Propter hōrum sēdiōsam (*seditionous*) atque improbam (*disloyal*) orātiōnem multitūdō frumentum nōn cōferunt quod dēbent.

"Praestat,"<sup>8</sup> inquit,<sup>9</sup> "sī jam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possumus, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; sī Helvē- 15 tiōs superāverint Rōmānī, unā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs<sup>10</sup> libertātem sine dubiō ēripiēnt."

"Ab eisdem tua cōsilia quaeque in castris geruntur hostibus ēnūntiantur; hōs coercēre (*restrain*) nōn possum. Quin etiam<sup>11</sup> intellegō quantō cum periculō hanc necessariam rem tibi ēnūntiāverim, et 20 ob eam causam quam diū potui tacui."

<sup>1</sup> *vergobret*, title of the chief magistrate of the Haeduans

<sup>2</sup> *over his fellow citizens.*

<sup>3</sup> *with the enemy so near.*

<sup>4</sup> *to a great extent.*

<sup>5</sup> *For id quod.*

<sup>6</sup> *is very great* Subjunctive in a descriptive clause. See page 358, 115 (a).

<sup>7</sup> *have more influence.* Also subjunctive in a descriptive clause.

<sup>8</sup> The subject is the infinitive *perferre*; translate, *It is better to endure*, etc.

<sup>9</sup> The subject is *they*, referring to the troublemakers of the preceding lines.

<sup>10</sup> *from the Haeduans.*

<sup>11</sup> *More than that.*



*A Gallic chief*



*Nervi*



*Morini*



*Ambiani*



*Viromandui*



*A coin of  
Dumnorix*

*Gallic coins*

## TWO BROTHERS

Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciāci frātre[m], dēsīgnārī (was meant) sentiēbat, sed quod plūribus praesentibus<sup>1</sup> eās rēs jactārī (discussed) nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō<sup>2</sup> ea quae in conventū dixerat. Liscus dicit liberior<sup>3</sup> atque audācius.

Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit, quī ita respondērunt, “Ipse est Dumnorix, summā audāciā,<sup>4</sup> magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātē grātiā,<sup>5</sup> cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria<sup>6</sup> reliquaue omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia<sup>7</sup> parvō pretiō redēpta (bought up) habet, proptereā quod, illō licente,<sup>8</sup> contrā licērī audet nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiārem<sup>9</sup> auxit et facultātēs ad largiendū<sup>7</sup> magnās comparāvit.

“Magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū<sup>8</sup> semper alit et circum sē habet; neque solum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs plurimum potest, atque hujus potentiae causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō in mātrimonium dedit.

“Ipse ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habet, sorōrem ex mātre<sup>9</sup> et propinquās suās in aliās civitatēs in mātrimonium dedit. Favet Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātē (relationship); ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ejus dēmnūta (lessened) et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātie atque honoris est restitūtus. Rōmānīs superātis, summam spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī habet; imperiō<sup>10</sup> populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā grātiā quam habet dēspērat.”

<sup>1</sup> in the presence of so many, ablative absolute.

<sup>2</sup> In translating, supply eō.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of description.

<sup>4</sup> *imposts*, taxes on imports and exports, *vectīgālia*, general taxes and revenues. Instead of collecting taxes directly from the taxpayers, the government accepted bids from wealthy men or corporations who paid a lump sum to the treasury and then collected as much as they could squeeze out of the people

Presumably the bidding for the taxes was open, but Dumnorix was so powerful that no one dared bid against him, and he secured the right for a small price

<sup>5</sup> Present participle of the deponent *liceor*, *bid*

<sup>6</sup> *private property*.

<sup>7</sup> *resources for bribery*.

<sup>8</sup> *at his own expense*

<sup>9</sup> *half sister (sister on his mother's side)*

<sup>10</sup> *under the rule*



Initium fugae equitātūs paucīs ante diēbus, ut Caesar in quaerendō repperit, factum erat ā Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus (nam equitātūi quem auxiliō Caesarī<sup>1</sup> Haeduī miserant Dumnorix praerat); eōrum fugā reliquus equitātus erat perterritus.

Ad hās suspiciōnēs<sup>2</sup> certissimae rēs<sup>3</sup> accēdebant, quod Dumnorix per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxerat, quod obsidēs inter eōs<sup>4</sup> dandōs cūrāverat,<sup>5</sup> quod ea omnia nōn modo injussū<sup>6</sup> Caesaris et cīvitatīs, sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcerat, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsābātur. His rēbus cognitīs, Caesar statuit aut in Dumnorigem animadvertere<sup>7</sup> aut cīvitatē in eum animadvertere<sup>10</sup> jubere. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat,<sup>8</sup> quod Dīviciāī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, jūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē ejus suppliciō animum Dīviciāī offenderet<sup>9</sup> verēbātur. Itaque

#### DATIVE OF PURPOSE

Sometimes a noun in the dative is used to denote the purpose which something serves or is intended to serve.

**Equitātum auxiliō miserant, *They had sent the cavalry as aid***  
(lit., *for aid*).

The dative of purpose is sometimes employed where English usage would require a predicate nominative.

**Haec fāma auxiliō erit, *This reputation will be a help.***

#### DATIVE OF REFERENCE

The dative is sometimes used to denote the person or thing with reference to whom or to which an act is done or a situation exists.

**Equitātum auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī miserant, *The Haeduans had sent the cavalry as aid*** (lit., *for aid*) to (or for) Caesar.

<sup>1</sup> *to aid Caesar.* Here auxiliō is dative of purpose; Caesarī, dative of reference. These are explained on this page.

<sup>2</sup> Concerning Dumnorix' treachery, cited on this and the facing page.

<sup>3</sup> *most clearly proved facts*; explained in detail in the quod clauses.

<sup>4</sup> It will help you to understand this paragraph if you know to whom or what each pronoun refers. Ask yourself who or

what is meant by each form of ipse, is, and sē.

<sup>5</sup> *he had arranged for an exchange of hostages.*

<sup>6</sup> *without the order.*

<sup>7</sup> *punish*; in translating, omit in.

<sup>8</sup> *was opposed*; ūnum is explained by the quod clause.

<sup>9</sup> Subjunctive in a noun clause, object of verēbātur.

priusquam quicquam cōnārētur,<sup>1</sup> Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī jubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat,<sup>2</sup> cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit (*re-*  
 5 *minded*) quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātum quisque dē eō apud sē<sup>3</sup> dixerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine ejus offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cognitā, statuāt, vel cīvitatē statuere jubeat.

Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus (*embracing*)  
 10 ōrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret.<sup>4</sup>

“Sciō,” inquit, “illa esse vēra, neque quisquam<sup>5</sup> ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris<sup>6</sup> capit, propterea quod, cum ego ipse<sup>7</sup> grātiā plūrimum possem domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille<sup>8</sup> minimum propter adulēscentiam poterat.<sup>9</sup> Per mē frāter meus crēvit (*grew powerful*); nunc  
 15 opibus ac nervīs<sup>10</sup> nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā meam, sed paene ad perniciem (*ruin*) meam ūtitur. Commoveor tamen et amōre frāternō et opīniōne vulgī. Quod sī quid eī ā tē gravius acciderit, cum ego ipse eum locum amicitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō existimābit nōn meā voluntāte factum esse; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animī ā mē  
 20 āvertentur.”

Cum haec plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prehendit; cōnsolātus rogat ut finem ōrandī faciat. Caesar tantī ejus apud sē grātiā esse<sup>11</sup> ostendit ut et rei pūblīcae injūriam et suum dolōrem ejus voluntātī ac precibus<sup>12</sup> condōnet (*pardons*). Dumnorīgē  
 25 ad sē vocat, frātre adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat (*blames*) ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvītās querātur prōpōnit. Monet ut in reliquum tempus<sup>13</sup> omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet; praeterita<sup>14</sup> sē Dīviciācō frātrī<sup>15</sup> condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

<sup>1</sup> An anticipatory subjunctive. See page 357, 113 (a).

<sup>2</sup> *in whom he had the highest confidence in all matters.*

<sup>3</sup> *to himself* (Caesar).

<sup>4</sup> *would not take too severe action against his brother; what is the literal translation?*

<sup>5</sup> *and no one; what is the literal translation?*

<sup>6</sup> With plūs.

<sup>7</sup> Diviciacus.

<sup>8</sup> Dumnorix.

<sup>9</sup> Observe the strong contrast here between plūrimum possem and minimum poterat.

<sup>10</sup> *wealth and resources; ablative with ūtitur. Name some other verbs that take the ablative.*

<sup>11</sup> Translate tantī . . . esse, *was worth so much to him.*

<sup>12</sup> *out of regard for his wish and prayers.*

<sup>13</sup> *for the future.*

<sup>14</sup> Neuter plural as noun, *the past.*

<sup>15</sup> *for the sake of his brother.*

## AN OFFICER'S ERROR

Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus<sup>1</sup> hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, quālis (*what*) esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus quī cognōscerent<sup>2</sup> mīsīt. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre,<sup>3</sup> cum duābus legiōnibus et eis ducibus quī iter 5 cognōverant summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit<sup>4</sup> ostendit.

Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris<sup>5</sup> peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea 10 in<sup>6</sup> M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

Primā lūce summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur. Ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mille et quīngentīs passibus<sup>7</sup> aberat, neque,<sup>8</sup> ut postea ex captivīs comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus erat.

Tum Cōnsidius, equō admissō,<sup>9</sup> ad eum accurrit atque dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit et aciem instruit.

Labiēnus monte occupātō, nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinē- 20 bat; Caesar enim eum adventum suum expectāre iusserat ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret.

Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum<sup>10</sup> quod<sup>11</sup> nōn vīdisset prō vīsō<sup>12</sup> sibi renūntiāsse.

Eō diē quō cōnsuērat<sup>13</sup> intervāllō<sup>14</sup> hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

<sup>1</sup> Remember that this phrase takes indirect discourse.

<sup>2</sup> A relative clause of purpose. The verb has as its object the indirect question quālis esset, etc. Supply explōrātōrēs as antecedent of quī.

<sup>3</sup> with *praetorian rank*. Labienus had been assigned to Caesar's staff with the honorary designation prō praetōre, as if he had held the office of praetor.

<sup>4</sup> *what his plan was*; what is the literal translation?

<sup>5</sup> in *military affairs*. The genitive is dependent on the adjective peritissimus.

<sup>6</sup> Supply exercitū.

<sup>7</sup> How many paces made a mile?

<sup>8</sup> With aut . . . aut, and neither . . . nor.

<sup>9</sup> with his horse at a gallop.

<sup>10</sup> *thoroughly frightened*; what is the literal translation?

<sup>11</sup> For id quod.

<sup>12</sup> as seen. It seems strange that an experienced officer should mistake Roman insignia for enemy standards and in his fright make a completely false report.

<sup>13</sup> Contracted form of cōnsuēverat.

<sup>14</sup> at the customary interval; i.e., five or six miles.

Postridiē ejus diēi,<sup>1</sup> quod omnīnō bīdūi frūmentum<sup>2</sup> supererat, rei frūmentāriae<sup>3</sup> prōspiciendum exīstimāns, iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit, ac Bibracte, oppidum Haeduōrum, ire contendit. Nam hoc oppidum longē maximum et cōpiōsissimum (*best supplied*) erat atque nōn  
 5 ampliūs mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs (*run-away slaves*) L. Aemiliū, decuriōnis<sup>4</sup> equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine<sup>5</sup> insequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

## BATTLE AND VICTORY

Postquam id animum advertit,<sup>6</sup> cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsīt.

Ipse interim in colle mediō<sup>7</sup> triplicem aciem<sup>8</sup> instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō jugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā Citeriōre proximē cōscripserat et omnia auxilia collocāvit; impedī-  
 15 menta sarcināsque<sup>9</sup> in ūnum locum cōferri et eum<sup>10</sup> ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōstitērant mūniri jussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carris secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, cōnfertissimā aciē, rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange<sup>11</sup> factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

20 Caesar primum suum<sup>12</sup> deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōvit equōs ut, aequātō omnium periculō, spem fugae tolleret. Cohortātus inde suōs proelium commīsīt. Milītēs, ē locō superiōre pilīs missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt (*broke up*). Eā disiectā,<sup>13</sup> gladiīs dēstrictīs (*drawn*), in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

25 Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō<sup>14</sup> quod plūra<sup>15</sup> eōrum

<sup>1</sup> In translating, omit ejus diēi. This idiom gives somewhat the effect of our "the very next day."

<sup>2</sup> a two days' supply of grain.

<sup>3</sup> Dative with prōspiciendum [esse], he must look out for.

<sup>4</sup> decurion, commander of a group of ten horsemen.

<sup>5</sup> on the rear line. The Helvetians were now following Caesar.

<sup>6</sup> The phrase animum advertit is equivalent to animadvertit, and takes id as a direct object.

<sup>7</sup> halfway up the hill. See diagram.

<sup>8</sup> Each of the lines consisted of about eight ranks.

<sup>9</sup> baggage and packs. See page 227.

<sup>10</sup> Supply locum.

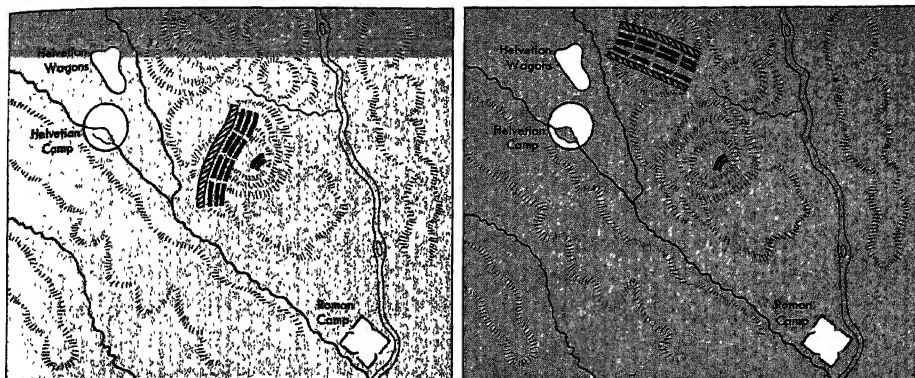
<sup>11</sup> A close formation of infantry, in which the men of each rank were protected by the shields of the men in front of them as well as by their own shields.

<sup>12</sup> Supply equum.

<sup>13</sup> When that was dispersed.

<sup>14</sup> The Gauls were greatly hindered in the battle for the reason that, literally, It was a great hindrance to the Gauls in battle that. The subject of erat is the noun clause quod . . . erant, etc.

<sup>15</sup> in many cases. In the phalanx formation shields were overlapped, so that it was possible for a javelin to pierce at one time two of the wicker or wooden shields which the Gauls carried.



*Plan of the battle The solid black lines represent Romans; the shaded lines, Gauls*

scūta ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfixa et colligāta (*fastened together*) erant; nam cum ferrum sē inflexisset,<sup>1</sup> neque id ēvellere (*pull out*) neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant. Multi igitur, diū jactātō brachchiō,<sup>2</sup> praeoptāverunt (*preferred*) scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore<sup>3</sup> pugnāre.

5

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat (*was close by*) circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō<sup>4</sup> sē recipere coepērunt.

Captō<sup>5</sup> monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Boi et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimis<sup>10</sup> praesidiō<sup>6</sup> erant, ex itinere<sup>7</sup> nostrōs ab<sup>8</sup> latere apertō aggressi circumveniēbant. Id cōspicātī Helvētī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre (*to renew*) coepērunt. Rōmānī signa bipertitō intulērunt<sup>9</sup>; prīma et secunda aciēs ut victis ac summōtis<sup>10</sup> resisteret; tertia, ut veniētēs sustinēret.

15

Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est.<sup>11</sup> Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī<sup>12</sup> sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt; alterī<sup>12</sup> ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē

<sup>1</sup> when the iron head had bent (*itself*)  
After several shields had been pierced by one javelin, the pulling and tugging of those who carried the shields would bend the long iron tip

<sup>2</sup> after their arms had been jerked about

<sup>3</sup> with unprotected bodies.

<sup>4</sup> An adverb.

<sup>5</sup> The verb here means *reach* or *gain*

<sup>6</sup> as a rear guard, *praesidiō*, dative of purpose, *novissimis*, dative of reference

<sup>7</sup> forthwith, at once. literally, from their

march, i.e., without waiting for the usual battle formation.

<sup>8</sup> on.

<sup>9</sup> advanced in two divisions,

<sup>10</sup> Referring to the Helvetians, while *veniētēs* refers to the Boi and the Tulingi.

<sup>11</sup> they fought a long and stubborn double battle, literally, it was fought long and stubbornly in a two-headed battle

<sup>12</sup> The words *alterī . . . alterī* may be translated *one party* (the Helvetians) . . . *the other* (the Boi and the Tulingi).

contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum<sup>1</sup> ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem<sup>2</sup> vidēre nēmō potuit.

Ad multam noctem<sup>3</sup> etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est,<sup>4</sup> propterea quod prō vāllō carrōs objecerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs  
5 venientēs tēla conjiciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs trāgulās subjiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant.

Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte  
10 continenter iērunt. In finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum<sup>5</sup> nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent.

Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve<sup>6</sup> aliā rē juvārent<sup>7</sup>; aliter sē eōs eōdem locō quō<sup>8</sup> Helvētiōs habitūrum.<sup>9</sup> Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.  
15

## DEFEAT AND SURRENDER

Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditione ad eum misērunt. Quī cum<sup>10</sup> eum in itinere convēnissent,<sup>11</sup> sē ad pedēs prōjēcērunt suppliciterque (*and humbly*) locūtī flentēs pācem petivērunt. Caesar eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum  
20 expectāre iussit. Eō<sup>12</sup> postquam pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit.

Dum ea<sup>13</sup> conquīruntur<sup>14</sup> et cōferuntur, circiter hominum milia vi ejus pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur primā nocte<sup>15</sup> ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Quod<sup>16</sup> ubi Caesar rescīit (*discovered*), quōruū per finēs ierant, hīs<sup>17</sup> ut conquīrerent et redūcerent,<sup>18</sup> sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent,<sup>19</sup> impe-

<sup>1</sup> *although.*

<sup>2</sup> *an enemy in flight, or an enemy's back.*

<sup>3</sup> *Until late at night.*

<sup>4</sup> *they fought or the battle raged.*

<sup>5</sup> *of the dead*

<sup>6</sup> *Here translated or.*

<sup>7</sup> *not to assist*, a noun clause (introduced by *nē*) depending on the idea of command in litterās nūntiōsque mīsit.

<sup>8</sup> *in the same position as.*

<sup>9</sup> *Indirect discourse.*

<sup>10</sup> *Translate as if Cum ei.*

<sup>11</sup> *Usually intransitive, but transitive here with eum as direct object.*

<sup>12</sup> *An adverb.*

<sup>13</sup> *Neuter because its antecedents are of different gender.*

<sup>14</sup> *While these were being hunted up.*

<sup>15</sup> *at nightfall.*

<sup>16</sup> *this; object of rescīit.*

<sup>17</sup> *Translate in the order imperāvit hīs per finēs quōrum.*

<sup>18</sup> *Supply eōs as object.*

<sup>19</sup> *if they wished to be free of guilt before him.*

rāvit; reductōs<sup>1</sup> in hostium numerō habuit<sup>2</sup>; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditionem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis,<sup>3</sup> domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent (*might withstand*), Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent. Ipsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incendarant restituere iussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne<sup>4</sup> fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre nē<sup>5</sup> propter bonitātem (*fertility*) agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimī Galliae, prōvinciae, Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs in finibus Haeduōrum collocāvit; id enim petēbant Haeduī, quī Boiōs ēgregiā virtūte<sup>6</sup> esse cognōverant; posteā eōs in parem jūris libertātisque condiciōnem atque<sup>7</sup> ipsī erant recēpērunt.

In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae<sup>8</sup> repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs<sup>9</sup> cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātīm ratiō<sup>10</sup> cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset<sup>11</sup> eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot (*how many*) puerī, senēs, mulierēsque.

Quārum omnium ratiōnum summa erat capitum<sup>12</sup> Helvētiōrum milium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum milium XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex his, quī arma ferre possent, ad milia nōnāgintā (*ninety*) duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII.

Eōrum quī domum rediērunt<sup>13</sup> cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus milium C et X.

<sup>1</sup> Agreeing with eōs (to be supplied).

<sup>2</sup> *treated them as enemies*; i.e., he put them to death or sold them as slaves.

<sup>3</sup> *all the crops having been lost*. They had burned all the grain except what they took with them. See page 222, lines 4-5.

<sup>4</sup> *for this reason*; explained by the noun clause quod nōluit, etc., *that he did not wish*, etc.

<sup>5</sup> *for fear that*.

<sup>6</sup> Ablative of description.

<sup>7</sup> With *parem*, *the same as*. With words meaning *like* or *unlike*, atque (ac) may mean *as* or *than*.

<sup>8</sup> *lists*.

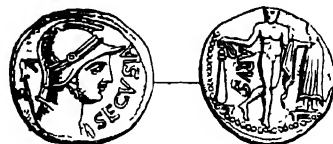
<sup>9</sup> *in the Greek alphabet*. The Gauls had no alphabet of their own, but they had learned the Greek letters from traders. The language of the records was Gallic.

<sup>10</sup> *detailed record*; what is the literal translation?

<sup>11</sup> The indirect question introduced by quī depends on ratiō; quī takes its gender from its antecedent numerus.

<sup>12</sup> *of persons*. The word may be omitted in translation. Compare our use of "head" in speaking of cattle.

*A Gallic coin*



## LATIN AND ENGLISH VERBS AND LATIN NOUNS MADE FROM VERBS

You have already met pairs of related Latin nouns and verbs. In some cases, the verb came from the noun.

**arma, armo      custos, -odis, custodio      hiems, hiemo      jus, juris, juro**

Some Latin verbs are compounds of a noun and a verb.

**animus + adverto, turn = animadverto, turn the mind to, observe**  
**bellum + gero = belligero, wage war**  
**fumus + ago = fumigo, make smoke, fumigate**

What verb was made from **navis** + **ago**? What does it mean?

Latin nouns also came from verbs. The perfect participle of some verbs became a noun, ending in **-um** (second declension) or **-us** (fourth declension), and showing a close connection in meaning between the noun and verb.

**respondeo, responsum      exeo, exitus**

Some Latin nouns denoting means or result were also made from verbs. They may end in **-culum**, **-men**, **-mentum**, or **-trum**.

**miror, miraculum      instruo, instrumentum**  
**specio, specimen      moneo, monstrum**

Some Latin nouns showing action came from verbs and end in **-io**. The corresponding English word usually ends in **-ion**.

**ago, actus, actio, action      agito, agitatus, agitatio, agitation**

With what Latin verb is each of the following nouns connected? What does the noun mean?

**aditus      conspectus      dictio      oratio      spectaculum**

The perfect participle of some first-conjugation verbs made from nouns gave us English verbs ending in **-ate**.

**donatum (donum), donate      nominatum (nomen), nominate**

From the perfect participial stem of some verbs of other conjugations there also came an English verb.

**affligo, afflicto, afflict      inficio, infectum, infect**

Give the English verb from the perfect participle of each verb.

**ago      hiberno      rejicio      sentio      simulo**



## REVIEW OF UNIT XIII

---

I. Change the following quotations to indirect discourse.

1. Caesar pollicitus est, "Mihi ea res cūrae erit."
2. Matrēs familiae ita dixerunt, "Nōn est fās Germānōs superāre."
3. Diviciācus respondet, "Fortūna Sēquanōrum est mīserior quam reliquōrum."

II. Find a participial phrase in each of the following sentences and translate it into an English subordinate clause.

1. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsīt.
2. Sēdēs habeō in Galliā ā Gallīs concessās.
3. Quibus rēbus commōtus, Caesar ad Ariovistum contendit.
4. Ipse, triplici aciē instrūctā, usque ad castra hostium accessit.
5. Caesar, hāc condiōne acceptā, salūtem suam tamen Gallōrum equitātūi committere nōn audēbat.

III. Complete each sentence with the correct word or words and give a reason for your choice.

1. Caesar (huic legiōnī, hāc legiōne, hanc legiōnem) cōnfidēbat.
2. Haec mihi sunt (cūrās, cūrae, cūra).
3. (Hiberna, Hibernōrum, Hibernis) Labiēnum praeposuit.
4. (Reliquīs, Reliquōs, Reliquī) fugae facultās datur.
5. Caesar mātūrandum esse (ā sē, sibi, suī) existimāvit.

IV. For each word or phrase give an English synonym related to a Latin word with the same meaning.

- |  |                             |   |
|--|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. a line from the center<br>to the circumference<br>of a circle | 9. gossip                   | 17. prisoner                            |
| 2. a quarrel   | 10. harshness in<br>speech  | 18. shortness                           |
| 3. chilly  | 11. height                  | 19. shouting                            |
| 4. decoration  | 12. hidden                  | 20. skin                                |
| 5. entrust   | 13. letter                  | 21. suggest a candi-<br>date for office |
| 6. epidemic sickness   | 14. locality                | 22. training                            |
| 7. finger  | 15. place of burial         | 23. without hope                        |
| 8. full  | 16. planner of<br>buildings | 24. worship                             |

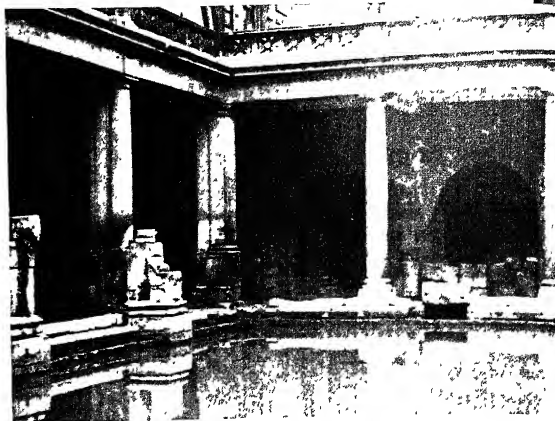
# ROMAN BRITAIN



*A Roman  
grave marker*



*A silver cup*



*The pool at Bath*



*Cinerary urns with faces*



*Part of a mosaic floor*



*Handle of a  
silver mirror*

The military operation which Caesar undertook in his expedition from Gaul to Britain was a major responsibility

for a commanding officer. Almost exactly two thousand years later, the invasion of Normandy offered a similar challenge to General Dwight D. Eisenhower, although the operation was, of course, on a far greater scale, and its results of much more vital importance to the world.

Many interesting comparisons can be made between Caesar's expedition to Britain and the invasion of Normandy. Both operations involved crossing the English Channel, a narrow but treacherous body of water, and both invading forces met strong resistance to the establishment of a beachhead.

Caesar knew practically nothing about the terrain in Britain or about the currents and tides or about the hostile inhabitants. Our forces had detailed maps of the various landing places in Normandy as well as all information possible about harbors, currents, and tides. They had photographs of the region, taken from airplanes. They had the Underground to help them after they landed.

The Roman general made the crossing late in August, an unfavorable time, especially since there was a full moon when tides are unusually high. The Allied Forces, acting on the day-to-day advice of expert meteorologists, made the crossing at a favorable time in June.

Caesar's transports carried no landing craft and drew so much water that they could not come close to shore. Moreover, his legion-

## CROSSING THE CHANNEL

*The Allies invade Europe*





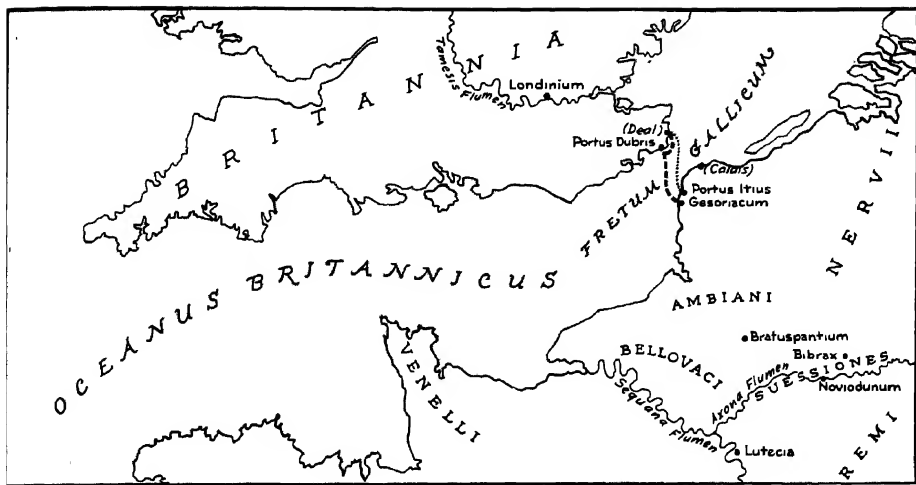
*Allied soldiers swarm ashore*

aries were not trained for landing operations or for action offshore. Our forces had men trained for action in landing. Specially constructed equipment and even artificial harbors had been provided.

The number of Caesar's ships, the size of his army, and the exact point at which he would land could not be concealed from the Britons. To know how many ships he had and where he would land, all they had to do was follow the Roman fleet along the coast. The Allied Forces, however, were able to keep secret the actual place of their main attack, so that the enemy had to keep large bodies of troops in a number of places in case the first landing should be merely a diversion.

The disadvantage of the attack was Caesar's, since the mobility of his foes enabled them to confront him wherever he tried to land. The Allied troops had to contend with elaborate defenses, but reports from the intelligence service gave them an idea of what to expect.

There are many questions about Caesar's expedition which we cannot answer. But we do know the answer to this one: Why did Caesar make such a dangerous expedition into a hostile, unknown country so late in the season? There was an important military reason—the Britons had sent aid to the Gauls, and if the Romans were to hold Gaul, they could not leave themselves exposed to possible attack from across the Channel. Caesar's expedition was in the nature of a reconnoitering trip; he wanted to learn what he could about the people and the country which must someday be conquered.



## Caesar Visits Britain

## UNIT XIV

After the Helvetian campaign, Caesar had to fight and conquer many tribes of Gaul. His greatest struggle was with the Belgians, who had organized a formidable league to drive the Romans out of Gaul. This league had the active support of Britons across the channel.

### PREPARATION FOR AN INVASION

Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā,<sup>1</sup> Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficiscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallcis bellis hostibus<sup>2</sup> nostris inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat; et, si tempus annī<sup>3</sup> ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore<sup>4</sup> 5 arbitrābātur si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incognita.<sup>5</sup> Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō<sup>6</sup> adit quisquam, neque his ipsis quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliam nōtum est.

10

<sup>1</sup> Ablative absolute, to be translated as a concessive clause coordinate with etsi... hiemēs—Although only a small part of the summer remained, . . . [and] in spite of the fact that the winters are early

<sup>2</sup> With subministrāta [esse], had been supplied to our enemies.

<sup>3</sup> It was customary for Roman soldiers

to go into winter quarters before cold weather set in.

<sup>4</sup> it would be (fore=futūrum esse) of great advantage to him.

<sup>5</sup> unknown. This statement is not quite accurate. The coastal tribes, at least, had some knowledge of Britain

<sup>6</sup> there; an adverb.

Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus,<sup>1</sup> neque quanta<sup>2</sup> esset insulae magnitūdō neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur neque quī essent ad majōrem nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs<sup>3</sup> reperire  
5 poterat.

Ad haec cognōscenda,<sup>4</sup> priusquam perīculum faceret,<sup>5</sup> idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum<sup>6</sup> cum nāve longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātis omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam primum revertātur.

Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat  
10 brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus (*passage*). Hūc<sup>7</sup> nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et quam<sup>8</sup> superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum<sup>9</sup> fēcerat classem jubet convenīre.

Interim, cōnsiliō ejus cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britan-  
nōs, ā complūribus insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quī  
15 polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre.<sup>10</sup>

Quibus audītis, liberāliter pollicitus<sup>11</sup> hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum eis ūnā Commium, quem ipse, Atrebātibus superātis, rēgem ibi<sup>12</sup> cōstituerat, cujus et virtūtem et cōnsilium<sup>13</sup> probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur,<sup>14</sup> cujus-  
20 que auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur,<sup>15</sup> mittit.

Huic imperat<sup>16</sup> quās possit adeat cīvitatēs<sup>17</sup> hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur,<sup>18</sup> sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus, perspectis regiōnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit<sup>19</sup> quī nāve ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn auderet, quīntō diē  
25 ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

<sup>1</sup> Translate the ablative absolute with *after*.

<sup>2</sup> The indirect questions depend on *reperire*, line 4. Before invading Britain, Caesar was trying to get information about the island from Gallic traders who had been there.

<sup>3</sup> With *quī*, *which harbors were suitable*. Possibly the traders knew a great deal about Britain, but were unwilling to help a foreigner who planned an invasion.

<sup>4</sup> To be taken with *praemittit*, line 7.

<sup>5</sup> *should incur any risk*.

<sup>6</sup> The clause is equivalent to C. Volusēnum, quem idōneum (*a suitable man*) esse arbitrābātur.

<sup>7</sup> This harbor was Gesoriacum (now Boulogne). See map, page 243.

<sup>8</sup> The antecedent is *classem*, line 12.

<sup>9</sup> This refers to a small revolt of some

coastal tribes of Gaul. For the location of the Veneti, see map, page 221.

<sup>10</sup> *to obey*. Why is this verb followed by a dative? See page 346, 64.

<sup>11</sup> *making liberal promises*.

<sup>12</sup> Meaning among the Atrebates.

<sup>13</sup> *discretion*.

<sup>14</sup> Caesar is giving his reasons for entrusting Commius with an important mission. Later Commius disappointed Caesar by heading a revolt (52 B.C.).

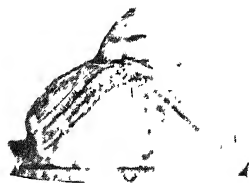
<sup>15</sup> *was highly regarded*. What is the literal translation?

<sup>16</sup> These orders are expressed by the subjunctives *adeat*, *hortētur*, *nūntiet*, in noun clauses.

<sup>17</sup> *to go to whatever states he could*.

<sup>18</sup> *put themselves under the protection*.

<sup>19</sup> *so far as opportunity could be given to one, equivalent to as much as a man could*.



*Side, front, and back views  
of a Roman helmet  
It probably had a plume*

Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō<sup>1</sup> excūsarent, quod<sup>2</sup> hominēs barbari<sup>3</sup> et nostrae cōsuētūdinis<sup>4</sup> imperitī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāset factūrōs pollicērentur.

5

Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupatiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās<sup>5</sup> iudicābat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis, eōs in fidem recipit.

10

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coactis, quot satis esse ad duās transportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat<sup>6</sup> quaestōrī, lēgātis praefectisque distribuit. Hūc accēdebant<sup>7</sup> XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā milibus passuum VIII<sup>8</sup> ventō tenēbantur quōminus<sup>9</sup> in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus tribuit.

15

Reliquum exercitum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vērunt dūcendum dedit. P. Sulpicium Rūfūm lēgātum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābatur portum tenēre iussit.

20

<sup>1</sup> for their attitude in the past.

<sup>2</sup> on the ground that.

<sup>3</sup> [being] uncivilized men . . . they, etc.

<sup>4</sup> The custom of sparing and protecting those who voluntarily surrendered to the Romans. Apparently the Morini had expected either death or slavery.

<sup>5</sup> that these unimportant matters ought not to interfere with (be placed ahead of) [the expedition to] Britain. Britanniae is dative, indirect object of a compound made with ante.

<sup>6</sup> the additional warships which he (Caesar) had. The noun nāvium is genitive of the whole, and the entire quod clause serves as an object of the verb distribuit.

<sup>7</sup> With Hūc, In addition to these, there were.

<sup>8</sup> Caesar sailed from Gesoriacum; the cavalry from Portus Itius, eight miles north of there. See map, page 243.

<sup>9</sup> With possent, so that they could not. The conjunction introduces a noun clause with tenēbantur. See page 359, 119 (2).

## OPERATION CHANNEL

**H**is cōstitūtis rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriorem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere et sē sequi iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum,<sup>1</sup> ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā<sup>2</sup> cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attingit atque ibi in omnibus collibus<sup>3</sup> expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cujus loci haec<sup>4</sup> erat nātūra, atque ita montibus mare continēbatur<sup>5</sup> uti ex locis superiōribus in litus tēlum adigi posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam (*in no way*) idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs<sup>6</sup> eō convenirent,<sup>7</sup> ad hōram nōnam in ancoris expectāvit.

Interim lēgātis tribūnisque mīlitum convocātis, et quae ex Volusēnō cognovisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit monuitque ut rei militāris ratiō maximēque ut maritimae rēs postulārent,<sup>8</sup> ut, cum celerem atque instabilem mōtum habērent,<sup>9</sup> ad nūtum (*at a nod*) et ad tempus<sup>10</sup> omnēs rēs ab eis administrārentur.<sup>11</sup>

Hīs dīmisis, et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter milia passuum VII ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac plānō (*level*) litore nāvēs cōstituit.

At barbari, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō<sup>12</sup> equitātū et essedāriīs (*charioteers*), quō plērumque genere<sup>13</sup> in proeliis ūti cōnsuerunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūti nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant.

Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō<sup>14</sup> cōstitui nōn poterant, militibus<sup>15</sup> autem ignōtis locis, impeditis manibus magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressis, simul

<sup>1</sup> When they had proceeded to carry out these orders, though a little too slowly; i.e., too slowly to take advantage of the favoring winds which carried Caesar to Britain. A change of wind kept the cavalry in port for three days.

<sup>2</sup> About 10 A.M.

<sup>3</sup> The cliffs at Dover, 28 miles across the Channel from Boulogne (Gesoriacum).

<sup>4</sup> Such.

<sup>5</sup> so narrow was the seashore below the cliffs.

<sup>6</sup> The cavalry transports.

<sup>7</sup> Anticipatory subjunctive. How then will **dum** be translated?

<sup>8</sup> With *ut rei*, as the rules of war and especially as naval operations demand.

<sup>9</sup> The *cum* clause beginning in line 13 means *inasmuch as they have [to do with] rapid and irregular movements*.

<sup>10</sup> on the instant.

<sup>11</sup> The noun clause *ut . . . administrārentur* is the object of *monuit*, line 12, that . . . all things be done

<sup>12</sup> Ablative absolute. Translate as a verb in the active voice.

<sup>13</sup> a kind [of troops] which.

<sup>14</sup> in deep water.

<sup>15</sup> Translate *militibus . . . dēsiliendum*, our soldiers, however, in unfamiliar places, with hands encumbered [by weapons] and weighed down by a great (heavy) weight of armor, had to leap down from the ships; *militibus* in line 23 is dative of agent with *dēsiliendum*.



et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōsistendum<sup>1</sup> et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi<sup>2</sup> aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi, omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimis locīs audācter tēla conjicerent et equōs insuēfactōs (*well-trained*) incitārent.

Quibus rēbus nostrī perterriti atque hujus omninō generis pugnae imperiti non eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūti proeliis cōsuērant ūtēbantur.

Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitiōr<sup>3</sup> et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior,<sup>4</sup> paulum removēri ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitāri et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitutis<sup>5</sup> atque inde fundīs, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prōpelli ac submovēri jussit<sup>6</sup>; quae rēs<sup>7</sup> magnō ūsui nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figurā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem retulērunt.

Atque nostrīs militibus cūctantibus (*delaying*), maximē propter altitudinem maris, qui<sup>8</sup> x legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus (*having called on*) deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēveniret, “Dēsilite,” inquit, “commilitōnēs” (*comrades*), nisi vultis<sup>10</sup> aquilam hostibus prōdere. Ego certē meum rei pūblīcae atque imperātōri officium praestiterō.<sup>11</sup>”

Hoc cum vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex nāve prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortāti inter sē<sup>12</sup> nē tantum dēdecus (*disgrace*) admitterētur, ūniversi ex nāve dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōspexissent,<sup>13</sup> subsecūti hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

<sup>1</sup> *had to get a foothold.*

<sup>2</sup> *while they* (the enemy).

<sup>3</sup> *less familiar.* The warships of the Romans had oars and differed in shape from the trading vessels that visited Britain. The Britons themselves used small wicker boats covered with the skins of animals.

<sup>4</sup> *which were more easily managed; literally, whose motion was freer for use.*

<sup>5</sup> *stationed near the unprotected flank of the enemy* (on the right side).

<sup>6</sup> Governs five infinitives with subjects in the accusative—the first three with nāvēs, and the last two with hostēs.

<sup>7</sup> *this maneuver.*

<sup>8</sup> *the man who.*

<sup>9</sup> From what Latin words is this derived?

<sup>10</sup> From volō. See page 163.

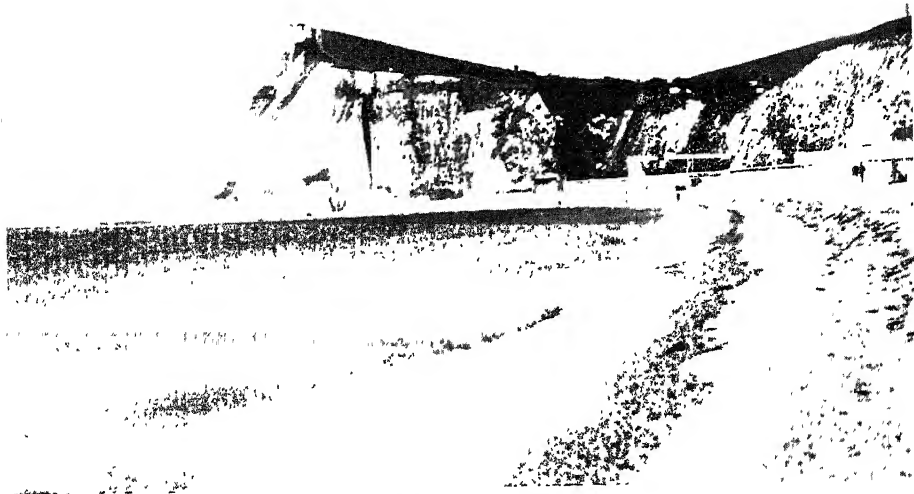
<sup>11</sup> *I shall have performed.*

<sup>12</sup> *encouraging one another.*

<sup>13</sup> *Also [the soldiers] from the nearest ships, when they had seen these.*



*A coin found in Britain*



*The beach at Dover today*

## WINNING A BEACHHEAD

Pugnātum est ab utrīque ācriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque  
 ōrdinēs servāre<sup>1</sup> neque firmiter insistere<sup>2</sup> neque signa subsequi  
 poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāve,<sup>3</sup> quibuscumque signis occurrerat  
 sē aggregābat,<sup>4</sup> magnopere perturbābantur.

5 Hostēs vērō, nōtis omnibus vadīs,<sup>5</sup> ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs  
 ex nāve ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equīs, impeditōs adoriē-  
 bantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant,<sup>6</sup> aliī ab latere apertō in ūni-  
 versōs<sup>7</sup> tēla conjiciēbant.

Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās<sup>8</sup> longārum nāvium,  
 10 item speculātōriā nāvigia<sup>9</sup> militibus complēri iussit<sup>10</sup> et, quōs<sup>11</sup> labōran-  
 tēs cōspexerat,<sup>10</sup> hīs subsidia submittēbat.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> to keep ranks.

<sup>2</sup> With firmiter, to stand firmly.

<sup>3</sup> men from different ships (one from one ship, another from another).

<sup>4</sup> gathered about whatever standards they happened on. In battle Roman soldiers were accustomed to fixed positions, shown by their standards.

<sup>5</sup> Ablative absolute denoting cause.

<sup>6</sup> large bands surrounded small groups.

<sup>7</sup> against the main body.

<sup>8</sup> skiffs, small messenger boats belonging to the warships.

<sup>9</sup> scouting boats, light, swift-sailing vessels used in reconnoitering. They were camouflaged with green paint, and the sailors wore green clothing. Both the scaphae and the speculātōriā nāvigia could be rowed into shallow water.

<sup>10</sup> Notice the change in tense. The perfect denotes a single act; the past perfect and imperfect denote repeated acts.

<sup>11</sup> The antecedent is his.

Nostri, simul<sup>1</sup> in āridō cōstitērunt, suis omnibus cōsecūtis, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque<sup>2</sup> longius<sup>3</sup> prōsequi potuerunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere<sup>4</sup> nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad pristinam fortunam Caesarī dēfuit.<sup>5</sup>

Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce misērunt; obsidēs sēsē datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt<sup>6</sup> factūrōs<sup>7</sup> polliciti sunt. 5

Ūnā cum hīs lēgātis Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum.

Hunc illi ē nāve ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō<sup>8</sup> Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjēcērant. Tum, proeliō factō, remisērunt et in petendā pāce ejus rei culpam in multitudinem<sup>9</sup> contulērunt et propter imprudentiam<sup>10</sup> ut ignōscerētur<sup>11</sup> petivērunt. 10

Caesar questus<sup>12</sup> quod, cum ultrō in continentem, lēgātis missis, pacem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere<sup>13</sup> imprudentiae dixit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dixērunt. 15

Intereā suōs in agrōs remigrāre (*to return*) jussērunt, principēsque undique convenire et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt. 20

## A 'TEMPORARY SETBACK

Hīs rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam<sup>14</sup> est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō 25

<sup>1</sup> Equivalent to *simul atque*.

<sup>2</sup> *but . . . not*.

<sup>3</sup> *very far*.

<sup>4</sup> *reach*.

<sup>5</sup> *In this [respect] alone did Caesar's usual good fortune fail him.*

<sup>6</sup> What is the uncontracted form?

<sup>7</sup> Supply *esse*.

<sup>8</sup> *as (in the character of) an ambassador*.

<sup>9</sup> Probably the leaders had been equally responsible.

<sup>10</sup> *ignorance* (of the rights of envoys).

<sup>11</sup> *that they be pardoned*. Verbs governing the dative are used impersonally in the passive.

<sup>12</sup> From *queror*.

<sup>13</sup> Supply *sē* as subject.

<sup>14</sup> Equivalent to *quārtō diē postquam*.

dējicerentur; quae tamen,<sup>1</sup> ancoris jactis, cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō (*necessarily*) adversā<sup>2</sup> nocte<sup>3</sup> in altum prōvectae (*having set out*) continentem petivērunt.

Eādem nocte<sup>4</sup> accidit ut esset lūna plēna (*full*), quī diēs maritimōs<sup>5</sup> aestūs<sup>6</sup> maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit<sup>6</sup>; nostrisque<sup>7</sup> id erat incognitum<sup>8</sup> (*unknown*). Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligatae, tempestās afflictabat,<sup>9</sup> neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī<sup>8</sup> aut auxiliandī (*of aiding*) dabātur.

10 Complūribus nāvibus frāctis; reliquae cum essent, fūnibus (*ropes*), ancoris, reliquisque armāmentis (*rigging*) āmissis, ad nāvigandum inūtilēs (*useless*), magna,<sup>9</sup> id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est.

Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae<sup>10</sup> quibus reportārī possent, et omnia<sup>10</sup> dēerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat<sup>11</sup> hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in his locis in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

*Dedication of a marker at the spot  
where Caesar landed*



<sup>1</sup> With ancoris jactis, which may be translated by a principal clause, *nevertheless* (in spite of the storm), *they cast anchor*, [but] *since the boats (quae) began to fill*, etc

<sup>2</sup> What English word do we get from adversā? From incognitum? From afflictabat?

<sup>3</sup> *in the face of the night*, literally, *with the night against them*.

<sup>4</sup> August 30.

<sup>5</sup> The tides rise to the height of nineteen feet at Dover and twenty-five feet at Boulogne. In the Mediterranean the tides are so slight as to be hardly noticeable.

<sup>6</sup> With quī diēs, *a time which always causes*

<sup>7</sup> Caesar could not have known this either. A more modest writer might have written Caesari instead of nostris.

<sup>8</sup> *of managing* (the ships).

<sup>9</sup> Modifying perturbātō.

<sup>10</sup> *For on the one hand there were no other ships*, etc. Translate et in line 14, *on the other hand*, and et in line 15, *then*, too.

<sup>11</sup> *it was evident to all* The subject of cōnstābat is the infinitive oportēre.

Quibus rēbus cognitis, principēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūti, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs dēesse<sup>1</sup> intellegerent et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte (*the smallness*) cognōscerent,<sup>2</sup> quae hōc<sup>3</sup> erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū<sup>4</sup> esse dūxerunt,<sup>5</sup> rebellione factā, frūmentō commēatūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod, hīs superātis aut<sup>6</sup> reditū interclūsīs, nēmīnem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant.

Itaque, rūrsus conjūrātiōne factā, paulatim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

### CAESAR PREPARES FOR ANYTHING

At Caesar, etsi nondum eōrum cōnsilia cognoverat, tamen et ex ēventū<sup>7</sup> nāvium suarum et ex eō, quod<sup>8</sup> obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id<sup>9</sup> quod accidit suspiciabatur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōferēbat et quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, earum<sup>10</sup> māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās utēbatur et quae<sup>11</sup> ad eas res erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī jubēbat.

Itaque, cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs<sup>12</sup> ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset effēcit.

Lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit<sup>14</sup> eōsque in continentem addūcī jussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctiī,<sup>15</sup> infirmis (*weakened*) nāvibus, hiemī nāvigātiōnem subjiciendam<sup>16</sup> nōn existimābat.

Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem

<sup>1</sup> *that the Romans lacked.*

<sup>2</sup> In translating, repeat the conjunction cum.

<sup>3</sup> *on this account*, an ablative of degree of difference

<sup>4</sup> *the best thing to do.*

<sup>5</sup> Equivalent to putāverunt.

<sup>6</sup> *or at least.*

<sup>7</sup> The word has here the rare meaning of accident, or disaster

<sup>8</sup> *from the fact that.*

<sup>9</sup> The words fore id are equivalent to id futurum esse.

<sup>10</sup> The words quae . . . nāvēs, earum are equivalent to earum nāvium quae.

<sup>11</sup> As antecedent supply ea, the subject of comparārī.

<sup>12</sup> Put ahead of its normal position for emphasis.

<sup>13</sup> *made it possible for the voyage to be made rather satisfactorily by the rest.*

<sup>14</sup> *demanded of them twice the number.*

<sup>15</sup> *as the time of the equinox was drawing near*

<sup>16</sup> *the voyage should be exposed to stormy weather.*



*Libation pan  
found in Britain*

nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt, sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquae,<sup>1</sup> capere nōn potuerunt et paulō infrā<sup>2</sup> dēlātae sunt.

Caesar in Belgis omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omninō civitatēs ex Britannia obsidēs misērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt.<sup>3</sup> His rēbus gestīs, ex litteris Caesaris diērum xx supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Supply *cēpērunt*.

<sup>2</sup> *to the south* (of Boulogne); what is the literal translation?

<sup>3</sup> Supply *hoc facere*.

<sup>4</sup> This thanksgiving, in spite of the op-

position of Caesar's enemies at Rome, was even longer than the previous one. The length of the celebration shows the importance which the Romans attached to these campaigns and the influence of Caesar's political supporters

## LATIN ADVERBS AND ADJECTIVES

In English many adverbs are formed by adding *-ly* to adjectives: *slow, slowly; careful, carefully*. In Latin, also, most adverbs are formed from adjectives.

Many adverbs are formed from first- and second-declension adjectives by the addition of *-ē* to the base: *lātus, wide; lātē, widely*. What is the adverb from *cārus*? From *longus*?

Adverbs are also made from third-declension adjectives by the addition of *-ter* or *-iter* to the base (*-er* if base ends in *-nt*): *ācer, ācriter*.

From what adjectives do these adverbs come?

*fortiter*

*graviter*

*sapienter*

The neuter accusative of an adjective is sometimes used as an adverb.

*facile, easily*

*multum, much*

The adverb corresponding to *magnus* is *magnopere*, to *bonus* is *bene*. Some adverbs do not have a corresponding adjective: *saepe, often, numquam, never*, and many others.

The ablative case of some nouns and adjectives is used adverbially.

*dextra* (supply *manu*)

*forte*

*noctu*

*sponte*

# REVIEW OF UNIT XIV

---

I. From the list below, select the proper translation for each italicized word.

1. The men *called* by their leader *brought* the ship to land.
2. *As soon as* he laid down his *burden*, he undertook a *similar* task.
3. *Finally* he could *hardly* see; *nevertheless*, his great *strength* sustained him.

appellāti	onus	simile	tamen	vīs
appellēbant	opus	simul atque	tandem	vix

II. In each group below, find two words that do not belong there and give the reason.

A		B	
decem	quīnque	decimus	quārtus
duo	trēs	diūtius	quintus
novus	ūnus	nōnnūllus	secundus
quattuor	vigilia	primus	tertius

III. Find in group B the ordinal numeral that corresponds to each cardinal numeral in group A.

IV. For each of the adjectives in the A list below, find the related adverb in the B list and tell what it means.

A		B	
ācer	fortis	minimē	audācter
audāx	lātus	facillimē	benignē
benignus	longus	lātē	longē
bonus	minimus	optimē	fortiter
celer	optimus	ācriter	timidē
certus	potentissimus	potentissimē	bene
facillimus	timidus	celeriter	certē

v. By adding prefixes to the verbs below, make as many compound Latin verbs as you can.

capiō	faciō	ferō	mittō	veniō
-------	-------	------	-------	-------

VI. Give a Latin verb connected with each noun.

amor	factor	nāvis	sacrificium
dux	imperātor	pugna	terror



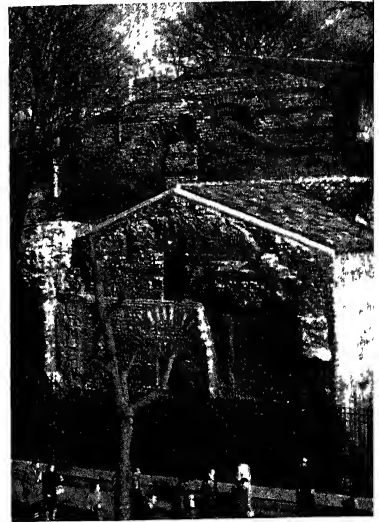
*Roman relief showing a wedding*

## THE ROMANS IN GAUL

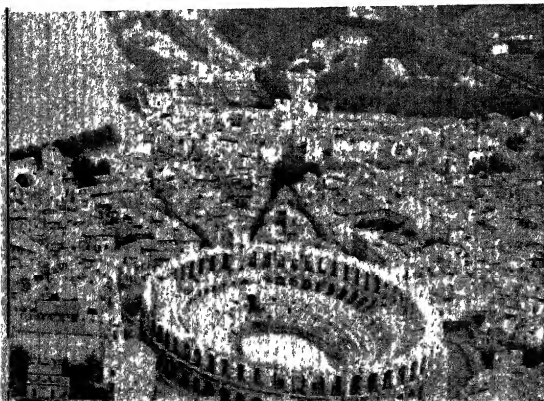
*A child of  
Roman Gaul*



*A Gallic-Roman  
pottery bowl*



*An ancient Roman theater  
in modern Paris*



*In Arles, France,  
once a Roman  
town, this ancient  
amphitheater is  
still in use today*



*A Traveler's Report*

*In most of the Commentaries it is Caesar, the general, who is making a record of his military expeditions. Here it is Caesar, the man, who is giving his observations of the strange customs of the people he encountered during the trips.*

TWO WAYS OF LIFE—PRIESTHOOD  
AND KNIGHTHOOD

**I**n omni Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt numerō<sup>1</sup> atque honore genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō,<sup>2</sup> quae nihil audet per sē, nūllī adhibētur cōsiliō.

Plērique, cum aut aere aliēnō aut magnitūdine tribūtōrum aut injuriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant<sup>3</sup> nōbilibus; <sup>5</sup> quibus<sup>4</sup> in hōs eadem omnia sunt jūra quae dominīs in servōs.

Sed dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum.<sup>5</sup> Illi rēbus divinis intersunt,<sup>6</sup> sacrificia pūblica ac privāta cūrant, religiōnēs<sup>7</sup> interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causā concurrat, magnōque hī<sup>8</sup> sunt apud eōs<sup>9</sup> honore. <sup>10</sup> Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversis pūblicis privātisque cōstituunt; et, si quod est facinus admissum, si caedēs facta, si dē hērēditātē,<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> are of any account, or importance.

<sup>2</sup> are regarded almost as slaves, what is the literal translation?

<sup>3</sup> Not from dicō.

<sup>4</sup> Dative of possession.

<sup>5</sup> knights, the aristocrats of the Gauls

<sup>6</sup> have charge of sacred rites. The Druid

priests wore a distinguishing robe of white. They held the oak tree and the mistletoe in the greatest reverence, and performed their sacrifices in oak groves

<sup>7</sup> religious matters

<sup>8</sup> The Druids

<sup>9</sup> The Gauls.

<sup>10</sup> inheritance

*Druids of  
ancient  
Gaul*



dē finibus contrōversia est, eidem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit,<sup>1</sup> sacrificiīs interdicunt.<sup>2</sup>

Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum,<sup>3</sup>  
5 hī numerō impiōrum (*of the wicked*) ac scelerātōrum habentur; hīs omnēs dēcēdunt,<sup>4</sup> aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt nē quid ex contāgiōne (*contact*) incommodi accipiant, neque eīs petentibus jūs redditur neque honōs ūllus communicātur.

His autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter  
10 eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut, sī quī<sup>5</sup> ex reliquīs excellit dignitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam armīs dē principātū contendunt.

Hi certō annī tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media<sup>6</sup> habētur, cōsīdunt<sup>7</sup> in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs  
15 undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs (*decisions*) jūdicīisq̄e pārent.

Disciplīna<sup>8</sup> in Britanniā<sup>9</sup> reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse<sup>10</sup> exīstimātur, et nunc<sup>11</sup> quī dīligentius eam rem cognōscere volunt plērumque illō<sup>12</sup> discendī causā proficiscuntur.

20 Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte<sup>13</sup> multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus<sup>14</sup> propinquisque mittuntur.

Magnum ibi numerum versuum<sup>15</sup> ēdiscere (*to memorize*) dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnūllī xx in disciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse  
25 exīstimant ea<sup>16</sup> litterīs mandāre, cum<sup>17</sup> in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātisque ratiōnibus,<sup>18</sup> Graecīs litterīs utantur. Id mihi<sup>18</sup> duābus dē causīs instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam

<sup>1</sup> *does not abide by their decision.*

<sup>2</sup> *they exclude.* Supply dative of reference (eī); interdicunt also takes an ablative of separation (sacrificiīs).

<sup>3</sup> *Who are excluded from the sacrifices; literally, To whom it is thus forbidden.*

<sup>4</sup> *avoid.* What is the connection in thought with contāgiōne, line 7?

<sup>5</sup> Translate sī quī, *whoever*.

<sup>6</sup> *the center (of).*

<sup>7</sup> *hold their meetings.*

<sup>8</sup> *The system.* Notice how the meaning of disciplīna differs from that of discipline.

<sup>9</sup> It is more probable that the Britons had originally received the Druidical system from the Continent, but little is

positively known about Druidism. Stones forming "Druid circles" are still standing in England.

<sup>10</sup> *to have been carried over.*

<sup>11</sup> *and so even now.*

<sup>12</sup> *there;* an adverb; equivalent to in Britanniam.

<sup>13</sup> Observe the contrast in suā sponte and ā parentibus.

<sup>14</sup> *of verses,* lines of poetry containing the substance of the Druidical teaching.

<sup>15</sup> Meaning quae discunt.

<sup>16</sup> *although.*

<sup>17</sup> *accounts.*

<sup>18</sup> Caesar rarely used the first person in his writings.



*A Gallic feast*

efferrī velint, neque eōs quī discant litterīs cōnfisōs<sup>1</sup> minus memoriae studēre<sup>2</sup>; quod ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō<sup>3</sup> litterārū dīligentiam in discendō ac memoriā remittant.

Imprimis hoc volunt persuādēre,<sup>4</sup> nōn interīre animās (*souls*), sed ab aliis post mortem trānsire ad aliōs<sup>5</sup>; atque hōc maximē ad virtutem excitārī<sup>6</sup> putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē stellis atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārū<sup>7</sup> magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortāliū vī ac potestāte disputant (*they discuss*) et iuvenibus trādunt.<sup>8</sup>

Alterum genus est equitū. Hī, cum est ūsus<sup>9</sup> atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod<sup>10</sup> ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī injūriās inferrent aut illātās repellerent<sup>11</sup>), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque<sup>12</sup> est genere cōpiisq̄ue amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs (*dependents*) clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

<sup>1</sup> relying on writing

<sup>2</sup> pay less attention to the memory.

<sup>3</sup> Equivalent to *auxiliō*; translate, by depending on. Is this statement logical?

<sup>4</sup> to convince [men].

<sup>5</sup> pass from one body to another. Belief in the transmigration of souls, common among the ancients, still appears in some oriental religions.

<sup>6</sup> that [men] are incited.

<sup>7</sup> the universe and the earth.

<sup>8</sup> Equivalent to doctent.

<sup>9</sup> need

<sup>10</sup> Explained by the utī clause.

<sup>11</sup> inflict wrongs on others, or defend themselves against injustices from others.

<sup>12</sup> Translate ut quisque, etc., the more distinguished a man is, the more, etc.

## THE GODS MUST BE APPEASED

Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita<sup>1</sup> religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbis (*with diseases*) quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur aut prō victimis hominēs<sup>2</sup> immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque (*and* <sup>5</sup> *as assistants*) ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vitā<sup>3</sup> hominis nisi hominis vita reddātur, nōn posse deōs immortalēs plācārī arbitrantur; publicēque<sup>4</sup> ejusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia.

Alii ingentī magnitudīne simulācra<sup>5</sup> habent, quōrum contexta vīmīnibus<sup>6</sup> membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus incēnsis, circumventi flammā exanimantur hominēs. <sup>10</sup>

Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō (*theft*) aut in latrōciniō (*robbery*) aut in aliquā<sup>7</sup> noxiā (*crime*) sint comprehēnsi grātiōra<sup>8</sup> dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum ejus generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium<sup>9</sup> supplicia dēscendunt.

<sup>15</sup> Deōrum<sup>10</sup> maximē Mercurium colunt; hujus sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt<sup>11</sup>; hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem; hunc ad quaestūs<sup>12</sup> pecūniae mercātūrāsque (*and trade*) habēre vim maximam arbitrantur.

Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Jovem et Minervam. Dē hīs <sup>20</sup> eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opīniōnem: Apollinem mor-

*A Gallic chief*



<sup>1</sup> given over, or devoted

<sup>2</sup> Object of immolant and immolātūrōs.

<sup>3</sup> Primitive tribes often sacrificed animals—and even human beings—in connection with funeral rites or ceremonies designed to cure diseases

<sup>4</sup> also on behalf of the state.

<sup>5</sup> images Supply hominum.

<sup>6</sup> woven of willow shoots.

<sup>7</sup> Here equivalent to aliā aliquā.

<sup>8</sup> especially pleasing.

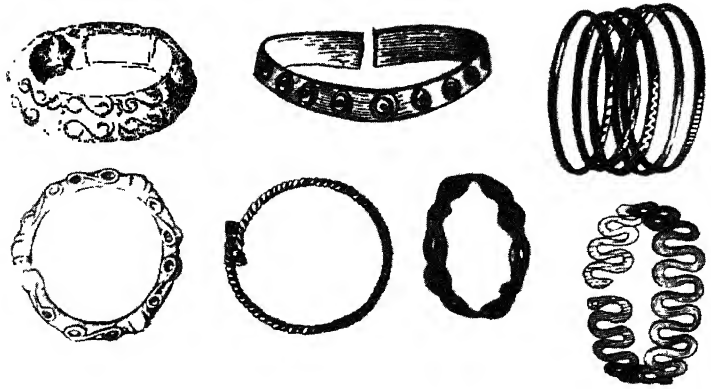
<sup>9</sup> of the innocent.

<sup>10</sup> Equivalent to E deis; with maximē. Caesar gives the names of Roman gods to Gallic gods who resembled them. He identifies Mercury with the Gallic god Woden.

<sup>11</sup> they call.

<sup>12</sup> acquisition. The plural indicates the different kinds of moneymaking and business.

Bracelets of metal  
were worn  
by Gauls, both men  
and women



bōs dēpellere,<sup>1</sup> Minervam operum<sup>2</sup> atque artificiōrum<sup>3</sup> initia trādere,<sup>4</sup> Jovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtē bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmīcāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvoent.<sup>5</sup> Cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōferunt.

5

Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum extrūctōs cumulōs (*mounds*) locis cōsecrātis cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quisquam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita<sup>6</sup> tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

10

## STRANGE GALLIC CUSTOMS

Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte<sup>7</sup> patre<sup>8</sup> prōgnātōs<sup>9</sup> praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium<sup>10</sup> finiunt<sup>11</sup>; diēs nātālēs (*birthdays*) et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur.

15

In reliquīs vītae īstitutīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs,<sup>12</sup> nisi cum adolēvērunt ut<sup>13</sup> mūnus militiae (*of military service*) sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur; filiumque puerili aetate<sup>14</sup> in pūblicō in cōspectū patris assistere<sup>15</sup> turpe dūcunt.

<sup>1</sup> drives away diseases.

<sup>2</sup> of handicrafts.

<sup>3</sup> of trades.

<sup>4</sup> teaches.

<sup>5</sup> they vow [that they will sacrifice], ea quae is explained by animālia and reliquās rēs.

<sup>6</sup> Supply in cumulīs. Explain the meaning here of capta and posita.

<sup>7</sup> Pluto. The name Dis is sometimes used for the god of the underworld.

<sup>8</sup> as a father; predicate.

<sup>9</sup> sprang from, or descended. They asserted that they were aborigines, i.e., that they were not descendants of immigrants from any other region.

<sup>10</sup> The English "fortnight" (fourteen nights) is a survival of the practice of reckoning time by nights instead of days.

<sup>11</sup> mark off, or measure.

<sup>12</sup> Subject of adire.

<sup>13</sup> so that

<sup>14</sup> of youthful age.

<sup>15</sup> to appear at his father's side.

Virī,<sup>1</sup> quantās pecūniās<sup>2</sup> ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonīs, aestimātiōne factā, cum dōtibus<sup>2</sup> commūnicant. Hujus omnis pecūnae conjūctim ratiō habētur,<sup>3</sup> fructūsque<sup>4</sup> servantur. Uter eōrum vitā superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum  
5 fructibus superiōrum temporum pervenit.

Virī in uxōrēs,<sup>5</sup> sicuti in liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriore locō nātus dēcessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit,<sup>6</sup> dē uxōribus<sup>7</sup> in servilem modum quaestiōnem<sup>8</sup> habent et, sī compertum est,<sup>9</sup> igne  
10 atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās (*tortured*) interficiunt.

Fūnera (*funerals*) sunt prō cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordi fuisse (*to have been dear*) arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia; ac paulō suprà hanc memoriā<sup>10</sup> servi et clientēs quōs ab eis dilēctōs esse (*to have been beloved*) cōn-  
15 stābat, jūstis fūnebris<sup>11</sup> cōfectis, unā cremābantur.<sup>12</sup>

Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem publicā administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānctum,<sup>13</sup> sī quis quid dē rē publicā ā finitimis rūmōre<sup>14</sup> ac fāmā<sup>15</sup> accēperit, uti ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs  
20 falsis rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summis rēbus cōnsilium capere cognitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt<sup>16</sup> occultant, quae esse ex ūsū jūdicāvērunt multitudīni prōdunt. Dē rē publicā nisi per concilium loqui nōn concēditur.

<sup>1</sup> *Husbands.*

<sup>2</sup> Plural, on account of the plural Viri.

<sup>3</sup> *An account is kept jointly.* The husband must match the wife's dowry and keep both funds separate from other property.

<sup>4</sup> *proceeds or income.* Much of this property was livestock or other salable things. The survivor inherited the joint property.

<sup>5</sup> According to Roman law the head of the family had such power over his children, but not over his wife

<sup>6</sup> Meaning if the circumstances of his death were such as to bring his wife under suspicion.

<sup>7</sup> This indicates that polygamy was practiced among the Gauls, though probably only by the nobility.

<sup>8</sup> *an inquiry after the slave manner.* At Rome, only in the case of slaves was torture used to force a confession.

<sup>9</sup> *if proof of guilt is discovered*

<sup>10</sup> *before our time*

<sup>11</sup> *with proper funeral rites.*

<sup>12</sup> Cremation was not the universal practice. Many Gallic skeletons have been found in France.

<sup>13</sup> *have a legal enactment.*

<sup>14</sup> *by gossip, or hearsay.*

<sup>15</sup> *by current report, which may be true.*

<sup>16</sup> *what seems best.*



*A Gallic goddess*

Life in  
a German  
village



## THE GERMANS WERE DIFFERENT

Germāni multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt; nam neque druidēs<sup>1</sup> habent quī rēbus dīvinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student.<sup>2</sup> Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcant quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē (*obviously*) opibus juvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam. Reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt.<sup>3</sup>

Vita omnis in venātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōsistit. Ā parvis<sup>4</sup> labōri ac dūritiae (*hardship*) student.

Agricultūrae nōn student, majorque pars eōrum victūs (*food*) in lacte (*milk*), cāsēō (*cheese*), carne cōsistit.

Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; <sup>10</sup> sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cognātiōnibusque hominum<sup>5</sup> quīque<sup>6</sup> unā coiērunt (*have united*) quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī<sup>7</sup> attribuunt, atque annō post aliō<sup>8</sup> trānsire cōgunt.

Ejus rei multās afferunt causās<sup>9</sup>: nē assiduā cōsuētūdine capti studium bellī gerendī agricultūrā<sup>10</sup> commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre <sup>15</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Germans had no exclusive priestly class as the Gauls had, but they had priests and priestesses who offered sacrifices and interpreted omens.

<sup>2</sup> The meaning is *lay stress on*, or *attach importance to*.

<sup>3</sup> *have not even heard of*.

<sup>4</sup> *From childhood*.

<sup>5</sup> *to families and relatives*.

<sup>6</sup> Individuals and small groups of men

who did not belong to the same stock united themselves for this purpose.

<sup>7</sup> Genitive with *quantum*; translate, as *much land as*.

<sup>8</sup> *to another place*; an adverb equivalent to *alium in locum*.

<sup>9</sup> For this annual change in location, four reasons are each introduced by *nē*, and a fifth by *ut*.

<sup>10</sup> *for agriculture*.

studeant potentiōrēs<sup>1</sup> atque humiliōrēs<sup>2</sup> possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius<sup>3</sup> ad frīgora<sup>4</sup> atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animi aequitāte<sup>5</sup> plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimis aequārī videat.

Cīvitātibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē, vāstātis finibus, sōlitudinēs habēre. Hoc<sup>6</sup> propriū<sup>7</sup> virtūtis exīstimaunt, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere. Simul hōc<sup>8</sup> sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentinae in-  
10 cursiōnis (*raid*) timōre sublātō.

Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs qui eī bellō praesint<sup>9</sup> et vitāe necisque habeant<sup>9</sup> potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiō-  
num atque pāgōrum inter suōs jūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.<sup>10</sup>

15 Latrōcinia (*robberies*) nūllam habent infāmiā quae extrā finēs cuiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea juventūtis (*the youths*) exercendae ac dēsidiāe (*idleness*) minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequi velint profiteantur,<sup>11</sup> cōsurgunt (*rise up*) eī quī et causam et hominem  
20 probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitudīne laudantur maximē; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum (*of traitors*) numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur.<sup>12</sup>

Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī<sup>13</sup> quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab injuriā prohibent sāctōsque habent; hīsque omnium  
25 domūs patent, cibusque communicātur.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Subject of studeant.

<sup>2</sup> Object of expellant.

<sup>3</sup> with more care.

<sup>4</sup> cold

<sup>5</sup> in a contented frame of mind—viewed as the means by which the common people are kept in order.

<sup>6</sup> Explained by expulsōs . . . cōsistere.

<sup>7</sup> characteristic.

<sup>8</sup> Explained by timōre sublātō.

<sup>9</sup> Subjunctive in a purpose clause.

<sup>10</sup> settle.

<sup>11</sup> let them volunteer. The subjunctive represents a command in direct discourse. Its subject is [ei] quī sequi velint.

<sup>12</sup> all confidence is taken away.

<sup>13</sup> those who.

<sup>14</sup> Supply cum his.



Germans  
forging tools



## LATIN WORDS WITH MANY ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

Some Latin words are interesting to us because of the large number of English derivatives they yield. Such a word is *laboro*, from which we get several English words.

*labor*, noun or verb, *work*

*laborer*, noun made with suffix, *one who works*

*laborious*, adjective made with suffix, *requiring work*

*laboratory*, noun made with suffix, *place where work is done*

*elaborate*, adjective made with prefix and suffix, *worked out with care*

*elaborately*, adverb made with suffix, *in an elaborate way*

From *curro*, *run*, we have several English words.

*current*, adjective from present participle, *running, passing*

*currency*, noun from present participle, *money* (that which passes from one to another)

*concur*, verb made with prefix, *agree*, (run with)

*excursion*, noun made with prefix, *trip* (a running out)

Explain the derivation of the following words.

*cursor*

*incur*

*precursor*

*discourse*

*occur*

*recur*

Give several English words from each of the following Latin verbs and explain the derivation and meaning of each word.

*cado, casurus*

*nascor, natus*

*sequor, secutus*

*loquor, locutus*

*patior, passus*

*video, visus*

Many Latin nouns also have English derivatives. Give the meaning of each word.

*terra*

*navis*

*poeta*

*terrace*

*naval*

*poet*

*terrain*

*navigate*

*poetical*

*terrestrial*

*navigation*

*poetically*

*terrier*

*navy*

*poetry*

*territory*

What English words can you think of that are connected with each of the following Latin nouns?

*arma*

*caput, -itis*

*tempus, -oris*

*ignis*

*salus, -utis*

*voluntas, -atis*

# REVIEW OF UNIT XV

I. In the list below the sentences, find the Latin which translates each italicized phrase.

1. In Gaul there were *two classes of men* besides slaves.
2. One class was that of the druids; *the other, that of the knights*.
3. The druids *were in charge of religious rites*.
4. The druids judged disputes and *decreed punishments*.
5. *The most severe punishment* was excommunication.
6. *The other class* were the knights.
7. All the knights *were engaged in war*.

alterum equitum	poena gravissima
alterum genus	poenās cōstituerant
disciplinae causā	rēbus divīnis intererant
hominum genera duo	religiōnēs interpretābantur
in bellō versābantur	reliquae gentēs

II. Make five true statements by combining three phrases—one from each group.

- |                 |                           |                                      |
|-----------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Druidēs      | (i) ab hāc cōnsuetūdine   | (a) cūrant                           |
| 2. Galli        | (ii) est                  | (b) multum differunt                 |
| 3. Galliae virī | (iii) Graecīs litterīs    | (c) nūllus commūnis magistrātus      |
| 4. Germānī      | (iv) in uxōrēs et liberōs | (d) ūtantur                          |
| 5. In pāce      | (v) sacrificia pūblica    | (e) vītae necisque potestātem habent |

III. Which groups in the list below contain words of similar meanings? Of opposite meanings?

2. What was the relationship between *hospes* and *advena*?
3. In the group under *facinus*, which word represents the least serious offense? Which was the most serious?
4. In the group under *fās est*, which expression shows the most important obligation?

<b>advena, -ae</b>	<b>facinus, facinoris</b>	<b>licet</b>	<b>cēlō, -āre</b>
<b>amicus, -ī</b>	<b>fraus, fraudis</b>	<b>permissum est</b>	<b>occultō, -āre</b>
<b>hospes, -itis</b>	<b>malefīcium, -ī</b>	<b>exanimō, -āre</b>	<b>commūtō, -āre</b>
<b>ōrātiō, -ōnis</b>	<b>scelus, sceleris</b>	<b>interficiō, -ficere</b>	<b>permaneō, -ēre</b>
<b>sermō, -ōnis</b>	<b>fās est</b>	<b>necō, -āre</b>	
	<b>necesse est</b>		
<b>poena, -ae</b>	<b>oportet</b>	<b>tribuō, -ere</b>	<b>extrā</b>
<b>praemium, -ī</b>		<b>attribuō</b>	<b>intrā</b>

*An Intrepid Leader in Gaul*

After trying for six years to win back the independence they had lost through Caesar's conquests, the Gallic states, with a few exceptions, united their forces and elected Vercingetorix commander in chief. Serious disturbances at Rome and a revolt of the Haeduans against Roman authority encouraged the Gauls in an attempt to throw off the Roman yoke.

## THE FIRES OF REVOLT BLAZE UP

Dēfectiōne (revolt) Haeduōrum cognitā, bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum<sup>1</sup> grātiā, auctoritātē, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās civitatēs nituntur (they strive). Nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum supplicio dubitantēs terrent. Petunt ā Vercingetorige Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque belli gerendi commūnicet. Rē impetrātā, contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperiī trādātur; et rē in contrōversiam dēductā, tōtius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur.

Conveniunt undique frequentēs (in great numbers). Multitudinis suffragiis<sup>2</sup> rēs permittitur; ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorigem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illi,<sup>3</sup> quod amicitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānis premēbantur, quae fuit causa quārē tōtō absēsent bellō et neutris auxilia mitterent. Magnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dējectōs principātū. Queruntur fortunāe commutātiōnem et Caesaris indulgentiam in sē requirunt (miss), neque tamen, susceptō bellō, suum cōsiliū ab reliquīs sēparāre audent.

<sup>1</sup> Translate with *valent*, so far as they can do so.

<sup>2</sup> to the votes

<sup>3</sup> The Remi and the Lingones.

*Barbarian cavalry*





*Vercingetorix—a modern statue  
on the site of Alesia*

Invīti summae speī<sup>1</sup> adulēscētēs, Epō-  
rēdorix et Virindomārus, Vercingetorigi  
pārent.

Ille<sup>2</sup> imperat reliquīs cīvitatibus obsidēs,  
5 diemque eī rei cōstituit. Omnēs equitēs,  
quindecim milia numerō, celeriter con-  
venire jubet. Peditātū<sup>3</sup> quem antea ha-  
buerit sē fore contentum dicit neque  
fortūnam temptātūrum aut aciē dimi-  
10 cātūrum. Sed, quoniam abundet<sup>4</sup> equi-  
tātū, perfacile esse Rōmānōs dēterrere  
nē pābulentur; aequō modo animō sua ipsi  
frūmenta corrumpant<sup>5</sup> aedificiaque incen-  
dant, quā rei familiāris jactūrā per-  
15 petuum imperium libertātemque sē cōse-  
quī videant.

Hīs cōstitūtis rēbus, Haeduīs Segusiā-  
visque, quī sunt finitimī prōvinciae, decem  
milia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs  
20 DCCC. Hīs praeficit frātre Eporēdorigis  
bellumque inferre Allobrogibus jubet.

Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs,  
item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad finēs Volcārū Arecomicōrum dēpopu-  
landōs mittit. Nihilō minūs clandestinīs (*secret*) nūntiis lēgā-  
25 tiōnibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab supe-  
riore bellō resēdisse (*had settled down*) spērābat. Hōrum principibus  
pecūniās, cīvitatī autem imperium tōtius prōvinciae pollicētur.

<sup>1</sup> most promising.

<sup>2</sup> Vercingetorix.

<sup>3</sup> From its derivation, what is the meaning of this word?

<sup>4</sup> he was well supplied.

<sup>5</sup> they must not hesitate to destroy their own crops. You will remember that the Helvetians did this several years before.



*Two coins of Caesar showing Vercingetorix—on the left, with hands bound;  
on the right, after six years of imprisonment*

## HIGH HOPES PROVE VAIN

Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs<sup>1</sup> prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīginti, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab L. Caesare<sup>2</sup> lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur.<sup>3</sup>

Helvii, suā sponte cum finitimīs proeliō congressi, pelluntur; et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī filiō, principi civitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectis, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs, crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis, magnā cūrā et diligentīā suōs finēs tuentur.

Caesar, quod hostēs equitatū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et, interclūsis omnibus itineribus, nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās civitātēs quās superiōribus annis pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs<sup>4</sup> quī inter eōs pugnāre cōsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneis equis ūtēbantur, ā tribūnis militum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānis atque ēvocātis (*veterans*) equōs sūmit Germānisque distribuit.

Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveniunt. Magnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter milia passuum decem ab Rōmānis trīnis<sup>5</sup> castris Vercingetorix cōnsidit; convocātisque ad cōsiliū praefectis equitum, vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs

*A Roman cavalryman*



<sup>1</sup> to meet all these dangers.

<sup>2</sup> A distant relative of the commander.

<sup>3</sup> were opposed [to the enemy].

<sup>4</sup> light infantry.

<sup>5</sup> With nouns that are plural in form but singular in meaning, such as *castra*, the distributive numerals are used instead of the cardinals (here *trīnis*, *three*, instead of *tribus*).

Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertātem satis esse; ad reliquū temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōfici; majōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs, reversūrōs<sup>1</sup> neque finem bellandi factūrōs.<sup>1</sup>

Proinde in agmine impedītōs adoriantur.<sup>2</sup> Si peditēs suīs auxilium  
5 ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futurum cōfidat, relictīs impedimentīs, suae salutī cōsulant, et ūsū rērum necessariārum et dignitāte spoliātum irī<sup>3</sup>; nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo<sup>4</sup> extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbere dubitare. Id quō majore faciant animō,  
10 cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōri hostibus futurum.

Conclāmant equitēs sānctissimō jūre jūrando cōfirmārī oportēre nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad liberōs, ad parentēs, ad uxōrem aditum habeat quī nōn bis per agmen hostium perequitārit.<sup>5</sup>

Probātā rē atque omnibus ad jūs jūrandum adāctīs,<sup>6</sup> posterō diē  
15 in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū, duae sē aciēs ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt; ūna ā primō agmine iter impedire coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripertitō (*into three parts*) divīsum contrā hostem ire jubet. Pugnātūr ūnā<sup>7</sup> omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit agmen; impedimenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur.

20 Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō

<sup>1</sup> The subject refers to the Romans.

<sup>2</sup> For a subjunctive expressing an exhortation in the direct form ("let us attack").

<sup>3</sup> The infrequently used future passive infinitive—they would lose both their property and their prestige.

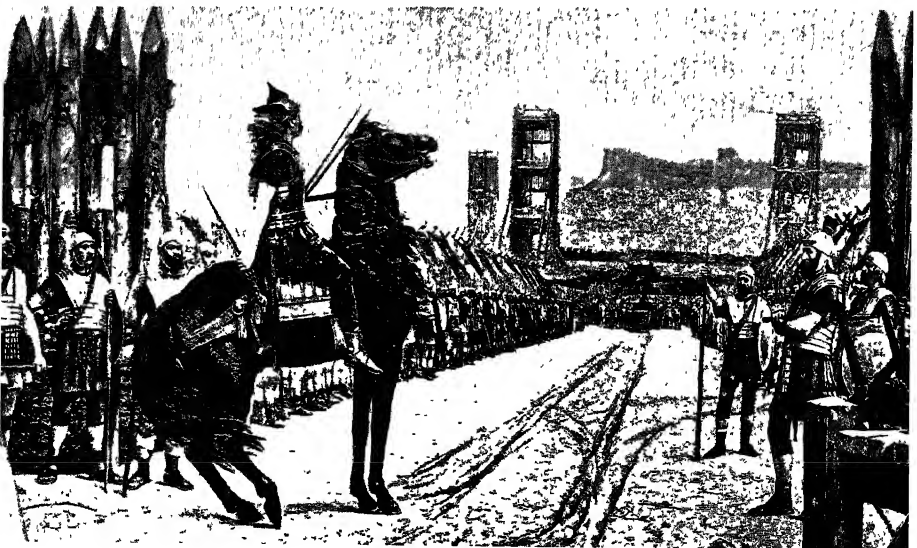
<sup>4</sup> Adverb

<sup>5</sup> *had not ridden*, instead of *perequitāverit*, a perfect subjunctive.

<sup>6</sup> *bound by oath*

<sup>7</sup> Equivalent to *inō tempore*.

### *Surrender of Vercingetorix*





*Roman soldiers have captured two of the enemy and wounded a third man*

signa inferri Caesar aciemque converti jubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad insequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxilii cōfirmābat.

Tandem Germānī<sup>1</sup> ab dextrō latere summum jugum nacti hostēs locō dēpellunt; fugientēs usque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus<sup>2</sup> cōpiis cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā, reliquī, nē circumvenirentur veriti, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedēs.

Trēs nōbilissimī Haeduī capti ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitāve proximis comitiis<sup>3</sup> habuerat, et Cavanillus, quī post dēfectionem (*revolt*) Lita-<sup>10</sup> vicci pedestribus cōpiis praefuerat, et Eporēdorix, quō duce, ante adventum Caesaris Haeduī cum Sēquanis bellō contenderant.

Fugātō omni equitātū, Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut prō castris collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod<sup>4</sup> est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedimenta ex castris ēdūci<sup>15</sup> et sē subsequi jussit.

Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostēs quantum diēi tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū hostibusque per-<sup>20</sup> terntis, quod equitātū, quā maximē parti exercitūs cōnfidēbant, erant pulsī, hortātus ad labōrem miltēs Alesiam circumvāllāre<sup>4</sup> instituit.

<sup>1</sup> Auxiliaries in the Roman army.

<sup>2</sup> in the last elections.

<sup>3</sup> Here the relative agrees in gender with a predicate noun (*oppidum*), instead of with its antecedent.

<sup>4</sup> to surround with a wall. Caesar's

circumvallation actually consisted of two walls, more or less parallel to each other, which completely surrounded the town. The inner wall was a defense against the Gauls inside the city; the outer protected the Romans from the Gallic reinforcements summoned by Vercingetorix.

# REVIEW OF UNIT XVI

---

## I. Discuss these questions.

1. Where did Caesar get cavalry? Why not from the Province?
2. How did Vercingetorix rouse the Gauls?
3. How did Caesar outmaneuver the Gallic cavalry?
4. Why did Vercingetorix march to Alesia?
5. How did Caesar prepare for a siege?
6. After a long siege the Romans starved out the Gauls. Are you sympathetic with Caesar or Vercingetorix?
7. Was there justification for Caesar's treatment of the Gauls throughout the story?
8. Did Caesar really conquer Britain?
9. In the parts of the *Commentaries* you have read, does Caesar appear as a great general? Cite instances.

## II. What is the meaning of each of these idioms?

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. ad diem             | 11. paucīs post annīs  |
| 2. ad sōlis occāsum    | 12. post multōs annōs  |
| 3. aequō animō         | 13. post paucōs diēs   |
| 4. dē quārtā vigiliā   | 14. posterō diē        |
| 5. fās est             | 15. postridiē ejus diē |
| 6. multō diē           | 16. primā lūce         |
| 7. nihilō minus        | 17. quā dē causā       |
| 8. novissimum agmen    | 18. suā sponte         |
| 9. paucīs ante annīs   | 19. sōlis occāsū       |
| 10. paucīs ante diēbus | 20. sub vesperum       |

*Hunting lions  
in North Africa.  
Mosaic from  
Leptis Magna*





# THE ROMAN CALENDAR

Our calendar comes from the one introduced in 45 B.C. by Julius Caesar. This Julian calendar was corrected in 1582 by Pope Gregory XIII, but in some countries it was not displaced by the Gregorian calendar until the twentieth century.

Before Caesar's changes, the Roman calendar was based on the lunar month—the interval between one new moon and the next. But no lunar calendar fits the solar year exactly, because twelve lunar months make only about 355 days, while the solar year has about  $365\frac{1}{4}$  days. To make up this difference the Romans added days after the twenty-third of February in some years. Caesar established a year of 365 days with an extra day every fourth year.

In Caesar's time the Roman months were *Januarius*, *Februarius*, *Martius*, *Aprilis*, *Maius*, *Junius*, *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, *October*, *November*, and *December*. Later *Quintilis* was changed to *Julius* in honor of Julius Caesar, and *Sextilis* was changed to *Augustus*.

In giving dates, the Romans counted the days backward from three points in each month: *Kalendae* (the Kalends), *Nonae* (the Nones), and *Idus* (the Ides).

The first day of each month was the Kalends; the first of January was thus *Kalendae Januariae*. The Ides were the thirteenth day of each month except March, May, July, and October, when they were the fifteenth. The Nones were nine days before the Ides. Since the Romans counted both the first and last days, the Nones were the eighth day by our method of reckoning. Therefore, in those months in which the Ides were the thirteenth, the Nones were the fifth; when the Ides were the fifteenth, the Nones were the seventh.

The day before each date-point was designated as *pridie*. So, for instance, March 6 was *pr. Non. Mar.*, in its abbreviated form.

In Roman times the daylight was divided into hours, each hour being one twelfth of the time between sunrise and sunset. In June, when days are longest, the Roman hour was seventy-five minutes long. In December the hour was only about forty-five minutes long.

The Romans divided the night into four watches, varying in length according to the season of the year.

You can find the English hour by adding six to the Roman hour; e.g., the fourth hour by Roman time would be the tenth hour with us.

# THE SPAN OF LATIN

For nearly fifteen centuries after the great political organization that was the Roman Empire declined in vigor and faded in the West, Latin remained the language of the humanities, science, law, philosophy, and religion. Since all literate men could read Latin, it became the international tongue.

Not until the eighteenth century did Latin cease to be the language of serious communication among educated people. The vernacular languages, such as French and English, had begun to develop their literatures much earlier, but the substitution of national languages for international Latin was far from absolute. The noun vocabulary of Latin remained—the bricks of meaning, as it were, with new mortar—so that today the English nouns used in serious discussion in many fields of human thought and action are almost all derived from Latin.

Unit XVII of *College Latin* is made up of representative selections carrying on the tradition of western thought from classical times to the present. They include examples of some of the important ideas, disciplines, and sciences that characterize western civilization—together with the actual words of honored men who virtually thought in Latin.

Had the authors of the selections in this unit each written in the vernacular of his country, Einhard would have expressed his ideas in German; Bishop Isidore in Spanish; Copernicus in Polish; Erasmus and Spinoza in Dutch; Descartes in French; Pope Leo in Italian; Bacon, Harvey, and Newton in English. But all could understand what was written in Latin, which had survived as the “language of western thought.”

*Latin has spread over the whole world*



# THE CREATION OF THE WORLD

After St. Jerome (340-420 A.D.), a scholarly father of the Church, had spent many years studying Hebrew and Greek, he translated the Bible into Latin. His translation—known as the Vulgate—remained the official version for centuries.

In principio (*beginning*) creavit Deus caelum et terram.

Terra autem erat inanis (*void*) et vacua, et tenebrae (*darkness*) erant super faciem abyssi; et spiritus Dei ferebatur super aquas.

Dixitque Deus, "Fiat<sup>1</sup> lux." Et facta est lux.

Et vidit Deus lucem quod<sup>2</sup> esset bona; et divisit lucem a tenebris. 5

Appellavitque lucem diem, et tenebras noctem; factumque est vespere et mane dies unus.<sup>3</sup>

Dixit quoque Deus, "Fiat<sup>1</sup> firmamentum in medio aquarum; et dividat<sup>1</sup> aquas ab aquis."

Et fecit Deus firmamentum, divisitque aquas quae erant sub firmamento ab his quae erant super firmamentum. Et factum est ita. 10

Vocavitque Deus firmamentum, caelum; et factum est vespere et mane dies secundus.

Dixit vero Deus, "Congregentur<sup>4</sup> aquae quae sub caelo sunt in locum unum; et appareat (*let appear*) arida." Et factum est ita. 15

Et vocavit Deus aridam, terram; congregationesque (*gathering together*) aquarum appellavit maria. Et vidit Deus quod esset bonum.

Et ait (*He said*), "Germinet<sup>5</sup> terra herbam virentem (*green*) et facientem semen (*seed*), et lignum<sup>6</sup> pomiferum<sup>7</sup> faciens fructum juxta (*according to*) genus suum, cujus semen in semetipso (*itself*) sit super 20 terram." Et factum est ita.

Et protulit terra herbam virentem et facientem semen juxta genus suum, lignumque<sup>6</sup> faciens fructum, et habens unumquodque (*each one*) sementem secundum (*according to*) speciem suam. Et vidit Deus quod esset bonum.

Et factum est vespere et mane dies tertius.

<sup>1</sup> Volitive subjunctive; see page 355, 106.

<sup>2</sup> After classical times quod was used instead of ut to introduce noun clauses.

<sup>3</sup> Literally, *were made one day*. Vespere and mane are nouns.

<sup>4</sup> Let . . . be gathered together.

<sup>5</sup> Let . . . bring forth

<sup>6</sup> Here equivalent to arbor, tree

<sup>7</sup> fruit-bearing; pomum + fero.

St. Jerome  
at his desk



## CONFESSIONS OF A SAINT

**S**t. Augustine (354-430 A.D.) was one of the greatest of the early Church fathers. His writings made him well known in his time, and his fame as a religious and a philosopher has continued to this day. His chief works are *The City of God* and *Confessions*, from which this brief extract is taken. St. Augustine's Latin is that of an educated man of his day. Although there had been many changes in usage from classical forms, his writing is not difficult to read.

**I**n hoc principio, Deus, fecisti caelum et terram<sup>1</sup>; in verbo tuo, in filio tuo, in virtute tua, in sapientia tua, in veritate tua, miro modo dicens, et miro modo faciens. Quis comprehendet? Quis enarrabit? Quid est illud quod interlucet<sup>2</sup> mihi, et percutit cor (*heart*) meum sine  
 5 lesione (*injury*), et inhorresco et inardesco<sup>3</sup>? Inhorresco in quantum dissimilis ei sum; inardesco in quantum similis ei sum. Sapientia, sapientia ipsa est, quae interlucet mihi, discindens nubilum meum,<sup>4</sup> quod me rursus coöperit deficientem<sup>5</sup> ab ea caligine<sup>6</sup> atque aggere poenarum mearum.

10 Quoniam sic infirmatus est in egestate (*need*) vigor meus, ut non sufferam bonum meum, donec (*till*) tu, Domine, qui propitius factus es omnibus iniquitatibus meis, etiam sanes omnes languores meos,<sup>7</sup> quia et redimes de corruptione vitam meam et coronabis me in miseratione et misericordia,<sup>8</sup> et satiabis in bonis desiderium meum, quoniam  
 15 renovabitur juvenus mea sicut aquilae. Spe enim salvi facti sumus, et promissa tua per patientiam expectamus.

Audiat<sup>9</sup> te intus (*inwardly*) sermocinantem (*discoursing*) qui potest. Ego fidenter ex oraculo tuo clamabo, "Quam magnificata sunt opera tua, Domine, omnia in sapientia fecisti, et illa<sup>10</sup> principium, et in eo  
 20 principio fecisti caelum et terram."



<sup>1</sup> Compare page 273, line 1.

<sup>2</sup> shines through.

<sup>3</sup> I shudder and begin to glow

<sup>4</sup> parting the cloud.

<sup>5</sup> which again envelops me as I faint.

<sup>6</sup> murky gloom.

<sup>7</sup> shall heal all my diseases.

<sup>8</sup> with loving kindness and tender mercies.

<sup>9</sup> Volitive subjunctive; see page 355, 106.

<sup>10</sup> Supply sapientia est.

St. Augustine

## A HYMN OF PRAISE

**T**he authorship of the Te Deum is attributed to Bishop Nicetas, who lived in Dacia (modern Rumania) about 400 A.D. It is one of the most famous hymns ever written, and its popularity is shown by its continued use to the present day.

Te Deum laudamus, te Dominum confitemur.<sup>1</sup>

Te aeternum Patrem omnis terra veneratur.<sup>2</sup>

Tibi omnes angeli, tibi caeli<sup>3</sup> et universae potestates,

Tibi cherubim et seraphim<sup>4</sup> incessabili (*incessant*) voce proclamant.

Sanctus, sanctus, sanctus, Dominus Deus Sabaoth.<sup>5</sup>

5

Pleni sunt caeli<sup>3</sup> et terra majestatis gloriae tuae.

Te gloriosus apostolorum chorus,<sup>6</sup>

Te prophetarum laudabilis numerus,

Te martyrum candidatus<sup>7</sup> laudat exercitus.

Te per orbem terrarum sancta confitetur ecclesia (*the Church*),

10

Patrem immensae (*infinite*) majestatis,

Venerandum<sup>8</sup> tuum verum et unicum (*only*) Filium,

Sanctum quoque Paraclitum Spiritum (*the Holy Ghost*).

Tu rex gloriae, Christe,

Tu Patris sempiternus (*everlasting*) es Filius. 15

Tu ad liberandum suscepturus hominem

Non horruisti virginis uterum.<sup>9</sup>

Tu, devicto mortis aculeo,<sup>10</sup>

Aperuisti credentibus regna caelorum.

Tu ad dextram Dei sedes in gloria Patris. 20

Judex crederis<sup>11</sup> esse venturus.

*The Te Deum is illustrated  
in the façade of Rockefeller  
Memorial Chapel at the  
University of Chicago,  
with its statues of angels,  
saints, apostles,  
and martyrs*

<sup>1</sup> From *confiteor*, -eri, *acknowledge* [as].

<sup>2</sup> From *veneror*, -ari, *worship, adore*.

<sup>3</sup> *the heavens*; *caeli* as masculine plural is common in church Latin.

<sup>4</sup> Hebrew plurals; English uses the same words.

<sup>5</sup> A Hebrew word: of [the heavenly] hosts.

<sup>6</sup> *The . . . company of apostles*; i.e., the followers of Jesus.

<sup>7</sup> *clothed in white*.

<sup>8</sup> *who must be adored*.

<sup>9</sup> *Tu . . . uterum*, *When you were about to undertake the liberation of mankind, you did not fear to be born of a virgin*.

<sup>10</sup> *when you had overcome the sharpness of death*.

<sup>11</sup> Equivalent to *credimus te*.



## CIVIL LAW

**J**ustinian (483-565)—titular head of the Eastern Empire—conquered and ruled also a great part of the Empire of the West. His most lasting accomplishment was *Corpus Juris Civilis*, the codification of Roman law which was done under his direction by a lawyer named Tribonianus. The influence of Justinian has been felt in all legal work since his time.

**J**ustitia est constans et perpetua voluntas jus suum cuique tribuens. Juris prudentia est divinarum atque humanarum rerum notitia (*knowledge*), justi atque injusti scientia. . . .

Juris praecepta sunt haec: honeste vivere, alterum non laedere  
5 (to injure), suum cuique tribuere. Hujus studii duae sunt positiones (branches), publicum<sup>1</sup> et privatum. Publicum jus est quod ad statum<sup>2</sup> rei Romanae spectat, privatum, quod ad singulorum utilitatem (*advantage*) pertinet. . . .

Jus naturale est quod natura omnia animalia docuit. Nam jus  
10 istud non humani generis proprium est, sed omnium animalium, quae in caelo, quae in terra, quae in mari nascuntur. Hinc descendit maris atque feminae<sup>3</sup> conjugatio,<sup>4</sup> quam nos matrimonium appellamus, hinc liberorum procreatio et educatio; videmus etenim (*for*) cetera quoque animalia istius juris peritia<sup>5</sup> censi.

15 Jus autem civile vel gentium<sup>6</sup> ita dividitur: omnes populi, qui legibus aut moribus reguntur, partim suo proprio, partim communi omnium hominum jure utuntur; nam quod quisque populus ipse sibi jus constituit, id ipsius proprium<sup>1</sup> civitatis est vocaturque jus civile, quasi jus proprium ipsius civitatis; quod vero naturalis ratio inter  
20 omnes homines constituit, id apud omnes populos peraeque (*alike*) custoditur vocaturque jus gentium, quasi quo jure omnes gentes utuntur, et populus itaque Romanus partim suo proprio, partim communi omnium hominum jure utitur . . .

Quaedam enim naturali jure communia sunt omnium, quaedam  
25 publica, quaedam universitatis,<sup>7</sup> quaedam nullius, pleraque singulorum, quae variis ex causis cuique acquiruntur, sicut ex subjectis<sup>8</sup> apparebit.

Et quidem naturali jure communia sunt omnium haec: aer et aqua

<sup>1</sup> Supply jus.

<sup>2</sup> welfare.

<sup>3</sup> male and female; maris is genitive singular of mas.

<sup>4</sup> Here used for conjugium, union.

<sup>5</sup> by knowledge of this law.

<sup>6</sup> international law; literally, the law of nations.

<sup>7</sup> community.

<sup>8</sup> from what follows.

profluens et mare et per hoc litora maris. Nemo igitur ad litus maris accedere prohibetur, dum<sup>1</sup> tamen villis et monumentis et aedificiis absterneat, quia non sunt juris gentium, sicut et mare. Flumina autem omnia et portus publica sunt; ideoque<sup>2</sup> jus piscandi (*of fishing*) omnibus commune est in portibus fluminibusque. Est autem litus maris, <sup>5</sup> quatenus hibernus fluctus maximus excurrit<sup>3</sup>. . . .

Litorum quoque usus publicus juris gentium est, sicut ipsius maris; et ob id quibuslibet<sup>4</sup> liberum est casam ibi imponere, in qua se recipiat, sicut retia siccare<sup>5</sup> et ex mari deducere. Proprietas (*property*) autem eorum potest intellegi nullius esse, sed ejusdem juris esse, cujus et <sup>10</sup> mare et quae subjacent mari, terra vel arena. Universitatis sunt, non singulorum veluti (*as*) quae in civitatibus sunt, ut theatra, stadia et similia et si quae alia sunt communia civitatum. . . .

Ferae igitur bestiae et volucres et pisces (*fish*), id est omnia animalia, quae in terra, mari, caelo nascuntur, simul atque ab aliquo capta <sup>15</sup> fuerint, jure gentium statim illius esse incipiunt. Quod enim ante nullius est, id naturali ratione occupanti conceditur. Nec interest, feras bestias et volucres utrum in suo fundo (*farm*) quisque capiat, an in alieno; plane qui in alienum fundum ingreditur venandi aut aucupandi gratia,<sup>6</sup> potest a domino, si is providerit, prohiberi ne <sup>20</sup> ingrediat. Quidquid autem eorum ceperis, eo usque tuum esse intellegitur, donec<sup>7</sup> tua custodia coercetur; cum vero evaserit custodiam tuam et in naturalem libertatem se receperit, tuum esse desinit (*ceases*) et rursus occupantis fit. Naturalem autem libertatem recipere intellegitur, cum vel oculos tuos effugerit vel ita si in conspectu tuo, <sup>25</sup> ut difficilis sit ejus persecutio. . . .

Gallarum (*of hens*) et anserum (*of geese*) non est fera natura idque ex eo possumus intellegere, quod aliae sunt gallinae, quas feras vocamus, item alii anseres, quos feros appellamus. Ideoque<sup>8</sup> si anseres tui aut gallinae tuae aliquo casu turbati turbataeve<sup>8</sup> evolaverunt, licet <sup>30</sup> (*granted that*) conspectum tuum effugerint, quocumque tamen loco sint, tui tuaeve esse intelleguntur; et qui lucrandi (*of making a profit*) animo ea animalia retinet, furtum (*theft*) committere intellegitur.

<sup>1</sup> *provided*; see page 357, 114.

<sup>2</sup> *and therefore*.

<sup>3</sup> *as far as the highest tide reaches in winter*.

<sup>4</sup> *to anybody*.

<sup>5</sup> *to dry his nets*.

<sup>6</sup> *for the purpose of hunting or fowling*.

<sup>7</sup> *as long as*.

<sup>8</sup> The enclitic *-ve* is a short form of *vel*, *or*.

## DAY AND NIGHT

*In 636 Isidore, Bishop of Seville, made an encyclopedia of knowledge—Origines (Etymologies)—which became a textbook. But the ambitious bishop's knowledge was fragmentary and his guesses about the history of word meanings were often fantastic.*

**D**ies est praesentia solis, sive sol supra terras, sicut nox sol sub terris. Ut enim dies aut nox sit causa est aut supra terram sol, aut sub terris. Dies legitimus (*proper*) viginti quattuor horarum, usque dum dies et nox spatia sui cursus ab oriente usque ad alium  
5 orientalem solem caeli volubilitate concludat.

Abusive<sup>1</sup> autem dies unus spatium ab oriente sole usque ad occidentem. Sunt autem diei spatia duo, interdianum<sup>2</sup> atque nocturnum; et est dies quidem horarum viginti quattuor, spatium autem horarum duodecim. Vocatus autem dies a parte meliore.<sup>3</sup> Unde et in usu est ut  
10 sine commemoratione noctis numerum dicamus<sup>4</sup> dierum, sicut et in lege divina scriptum est: "Factum est vespere et mane dies unus."<sup>5</sup>

Dies secundum<sup>6</sup> Aegyptios incohat (*begins*) ab occasu solis; secundum Persas ab ortu solis; secundum Athenienses a sexta hora diei<sup>7</sup>; secundum Romanos a media nocte. . . .

15 Dies dicti a deis,<sup>8</sup> quorum nomina Romani quibusdam sideribus (*stars*) sacraverunt. Primum enim diem a Sole appellaverunt, qui princeps est omnium siderum, sicut et idem dies caput est cunctorum (*all*) dierum. Secundum a Luna, quae Soli et splendore (*brilliance*) et magnitudine proxima est, et ex eo mutuatur (*borrow*s) lumen. Tertium  
20 ab stella (*planet*) Martis, quae Vesper (*evening star*) vocatur. Quartum ab stella Mercurii, quam quidem candidum (*bright*) circulum dicunt. Quintum ab stella Jovis, quam Phaëthontem ajunt.<sup>9</sup> Sextum a Veneris stella, quam Luciferum asserunt,<sup>9</sup> quae inter omnia sidera plus lucis habet. Septimus ab stella Saturni, quae sexto caelo locata,  
25 triginta annis fertur (*is said*) explere cursum suum. . . .

Partes diei tres sunt: mane, meridies, et suprema. Mane lux matura et plena, nec jam crepusculum<sup>10</sup>. . . Meridies dicta quasi<sup>11</sup> medidies, hoc est medius dies. . . . Suprema est postrema pars diei, quando (*when*) sol cursum suum in occasum vertit; dicta quod superest ad

<sup>1</sup> *incorrectly.*

<sup>2</sup> *daytime.*

<sup>3</sup> *from the better half.*

<sup>4</sup> *speak of.*

<sup>5</sup> Genesis I, 5; see page 273, line 6.

<sup>6</sup> Preposition; *according to.*

<sup>7</sup> Roman time. See page 271.

<sup>8</sup> Actually, the days were named for stars (planets), not for gods.

<sup>9</sup> Translate freely, *they call.*

<sup>10</sup> *twilight.*

<sup>11</sup> *as though.*



partem ultimam diei. . . . Hodie quasi hoc die; et quotidie, non cotidie, ut sit quot diebus. Cras quod est postea. Hesternum (*yesterday*) est pridie; et dictum hesternum ab eo quod jam dies ipse sit a nobis extraneus<sup>1</sup> et praetereundo<sup>2</sup> alienus. Pridie autem quasi priori die. . . . Nox a nocendo<sup>3</sup> dicta, eo quod oculis<sup>4</sup> noceat.

5

## PORTRAIT OF A KING

*In the ninth century A.D. Charlemagne ruled over a large part of Europe. The life of the Emperor, written by Einhard, his secretary, is an example of medieval biography.*

Corpore<sup>5</sup> [Carolus Magnus] fuit amplo atque robusto (*strong*), statura eminenti, quae tamen justam non excederet (nam septem suorum pedum<sup>6</sup> proceritatem (*height*) ejus constat habuisse mensuram), apice capitis rotundo, oculis praegrandibus ac vegetis,<sup>7</sup> naso (*nose*) paululum mediocritatem (*moderate size*) excedenti, canitiae (*gray hair*)<sup>10</sup> pulchra, facie (*expression*) laeta et hilari. Unde formae auctoritas ac dignitas tam stanti quam sedenti plurima acquirebatur. . . . Incessu (*gait*) firmo totaque corporis habitudine virile, voce clara quidem, sed quae minus corporis formae conveniret<sup>8</sup>. . . .

Exercebatur assidue (*incessantly*) equitando ac venando,<sup>9</sup> quod illi<sup>15</sup> gentilicium (*natural*) erat; vix ulla in terris natio invenitur quae in hac arte Francis<sup>10</sup> possit aequari. Delectabatur<sup>11</sup> etiam vaporibus aquarum naturaliter calentium (*warm*), frequenti natatu<sup>12</sup> corpus exercens; cuius adeo peritus fuit ut nullus ei juste<sup>20</sup> valeat anteferri. . . .

<sup>1</sup> Equals *externus*, *outside*.

<sup>2</sup> because it has passed, literally, by passing, a gerund.

<sup>3</sup> *noxious*; literally, *injuring*.

<sup>4</sup> Dative with *noceat*. Many of the author's derivations are fanciful.

<sup>5</sup> Ablative of description; see page 351, 90.

<sup>6</sup> seven times the length of his foot.

<sup>7</sup> with very large, quick eyes.

<sup>8</sup> not in keeping with the size of his body

<sup>9</sup> by riding and hunting.

<sup>10</sup> Before becoming Emperor of Rome, Charlemagne was king of a Germanic people called Franks.

<sup>11</sup> he was pleased.

<sup>12</sup> by frequent swimming.

Charlemagne



In cibo et potu (*drink*) temperans<sup>1</sup>. . . . Inter cenandum (*while dining*) aut aliquod acroama<sup>2</sup> aut lectorem (*reader*) audiebat. Legebantur ei historiae et antiquorum res gestae. Delectabatur et libris Sancti Augustini praecipueque his qui *De Civitate Dei* praetitulati  
5 sunt. . . .

Erat eloquentia copiosus<sup>3</sup> et exuberans poteratque quicquid (*whatever*) vellet apertissime exprimere.<sup>4</sup> Nec patrio (*native*) tantum sermone contentus, etiam peregrinis (*foreign*) linguis discendis operam impendit.<sup>5</sup> In quibus Latinam ita didicit<sup>6</sup> ut aequae illa ac<sup>7</sup> patria  
10 lingua orare sit solitus; Graecam vero melius intellegere quam pronuntiare poterat.

## THE GREAT CHARTER

One of the earliest documents in history which recognized the rights of the individual was Magna Charta, given by King John of England to the barons, at Runnymede, in 1215. Since it defines the demands the king could make on the barons and the rights he guaranteed them, Magna Charta has become a symbol of freedom based on law.

Nullus liber homo capiatur,<sup>8</sup> vel imprisonetur (*imprisoned*); . . . nec super eum mittemus<sup>9</sup> nisi per legale (*legal*) iudicium parium suorum, vel per legem terrae. Nulli vendemus, nulli negabimus,  
15 aut differimus<sup>10</sup> rectum (*right*) aut justitiam. Omnes mercatores habeant<sup>8</sup> saluum et securum exire<sup>11</sup> ab Anglia, et venire in Angliam, morari et ire per Angliam, tam per terram quam per aquam, ad emendum et vendendum. . . . Quare volumus et firmiter (*strongly*) praecipimus . . . quod homines in regno nostro habeant et teneant  
20 omnes . . . libertates, jura et concessionem, bene et in pace, libere et quiete, plene et integre, sibi et haeredibus (*heirs*) suis . . . in omnibus rebus et locis, in perpetuum. . . . Juratum est autem, tam ex parte nostra, quam ex parte baronum (*of the barons*), quod haec omnia . . . bona fide et sine malo ingenio servabuntur. . . . Data per manum  
25 nostram, in prato (*meadow*) quod vocatur Runnymede . . . quinto decimo die Junii, anno regni nostro septimo decimo.

<sup>1</sup> [*he was*] *temperate*.

<sup>2</sup> *entertainment*; *acroama*, a Greek neuter, is accusative singular.

<sup>3</sup> With *eloquentia*, a *fluent speaker*.

<sup>4</sup> *to express*.

<sup>5</sup> *undertook the task*.

<sup>6</sup> From *disco*.

<sup>7</sup> With *aeque*, *as well as*.

<sup>8</sup> For the subjunctive see page 355, 106.

<sup>9</sup> *we shall not pass sentence on him*.

<sup>10</sup> *nor delay [granting to anyone]*.

<sup>11</sup> Used as a noun, modified by *saluum* and *securum*; *venire*, *morari*, and *ire* (ll. 16-17) are also used as nouns.

## SCIENTIFIC INVENTIONS TO COME

*In his writings the English scientist and philosopher Roger Bacon (1214?-1294) predicted many devices that have actually been made in modern times.*

Narrabo igitur nunc primo opera artis et naturae miranda, ut postea causas et modum eorum assignem<sup>1</sup>; in quibus nihil magicum est, ut videatur quod omnis magica potestas sit inferior his operibus et indigna (*worthless*).

Et primo per figuram et rationem<sup>2</sup> solius (*alone*) artis. Nam instrumenta navigandi possunt fieri sine hominibus remigantibus (*rowing*) ut naves maximae, fluviales et marinae, ferantur unico (*only one*) homine regente, majori velocitate quam si plenae essent hominibus.<sup>3</sup>

Item currus possunt fieri ut sine animali moveantur cum impetu inaestimabili, ut aestimamus currus falcati<sup>4</sup> fuisse, quibus antiquitus pugnabatur. Item possunt fieri instrumenta volandi ut homo sedeat in medio instrumenti revolvens aliquod ingenium (*device*) per quod alae artificialiter (*cleverly*) compositae aëra verberent (*beat*) ad modum avis volantis.

Item instrumentum, parvum in quantitate (*size*) ad elevandum et deprimendum<sup>5</sup> pondera quasi infinita, quo nihil utilius est in casu. Nam per instrumentum altitudinis trium digitorum et latitudinis eorundem et minoris quantitatis, posset homo se ipsum et socios suos ab omni periculo carceris eripere et elevare et descendere. . . .

Possunt etiam instrumenta fieri ambulandi in mari vel fluminibus usque ad fundum<sup>6</sup> absque (*without*) periculo corporali. Nam Alexander Magnus<sup>7</sup> his usus est ut secreta maris videret, secundum (*afterwards*) quod Ethicus<sup>8</sup> narrat astronomus. Haec autem facta sunt antiquitus et nostris temporibus facta sunt, ut certum est; nisi sit instrumentum volandi, quod non vidi nec hominem qui vidisset cognovi; sed sapientem qui hoc artificium excogitavit explere cognosco. Et infinita quasi talia fieri possunt; ut pontes ultra flumina sine columna vel aliquo sustentaculo (*support*), et machinationes et ingenia inaudita.

<sup>1</sup> *I may designate.*

<sup>2</sup> *through the shaping and planning.*

<sup>3</sup> *I.e., had large crews.*

<sup>4</sup> *Better, falcatos, equipped with scythes*

<sup>5</sup> *for raising and lowering.*

<sup>6</sup> *all the way to the bottom.*

<sup>7</sup> According to medieval legend, Alexander the Great attempted to have the depth of the sea measured.

<sup>8</sup> Ethicus Ister, supposed author of a description of the world.

## RELIGION AND THE CLASSICS

**D**esiderius Erasmus (1466?-1536), a Dutch priest who devoted his life to study and writing, has been called the greatest man of the Renaissance. This selection is from his *Colloquia*, a series of dialogues on current topics—comparable to a modern panel discussion

EUSEBIUS. Sacris quidem litteris ubique prima debetur auctoritas, sed tamen ego non numquam offendo (*find*) quaedam vel dicta a veteribus (*the ancients*) vel scripta ab ethnicis (*pagans*) etiam poetis, tam caste (*chastely*), tam sancte, tam divinitus (*divinely*) ut mihi non  
5 possim persuadere, quin pectus illorum, cum illa scriberent, numen aliquod bonum agitaverit. Et fortasse (*perhaps*) latius se fundit Spiritus Christi, quam nos interpretamur. Et multi sunt in consortio sanctorum,<sup>1</sup> qui non sunt apud nos in catalogo. Fateor affectum meum<sup>2</sup> apud amicos; non possum legere librum Ciceronis<sup>3</sup> quin  
10 aliquoties exosculer codicem<sup>4</sup> ac venerer (*revering*) sanctum illud pectus, afflatum (*inspired*) caelesti numine.

Contra, cum hos quosdam recentiores lego, de republica, oeconomica, aut ethica praecipientes, Deum immortalem! Quam frigent<sup>5</sup> prae illis. Immo quam (*More than that*) non videntur sentire quod scribunt,  
15 ut ego citius patiar<sup>6</sup> perire totum Scotum,<sup>7</sup> cum aliquot (*several*) sui similibus, quam libros unius Ciceronis aut Plutarchi. Non quod illos (*the former*) in totum damnem, sed quod ex his (*the latter*) sentiam me reddi meliorem; cum ex illorum lectione surgam,<sup>8</sup> nescio quomodo (*somehow*) frigidius (*more coldly*) affectus erga (*toward*) veram virtutem,  
20 sed irritatior ad contentionem. Quare ne vereri,<sup>9</sup> quicquid (*whatever*) istuc (*it*) est, proponere.

CHRISTIANUS. Cum plerique libri M. Tulli, quos scripsit de philosophia, divinitatis quiddam spirare (*breathe*) videntur, tum ille quem senex scripsit de Senectute, plane (*clearly*) mihi videtur cygneus



<sup>1</sup> in the communion of saints.

<sup>2</sup> I acknowledge my point of view.

<sup>3</sup> I.e., Cicero's *Old Age*, *Friendship*, *Moral Duties*, and *Tusculan Disputations*.

<sup>4</sup> without frequently kissing the book.

<sup>5</sup> How cold they are!

<sup>6</sup> so that I should rather permit.

<sup>7</sup> John Duns Scotus, an Irish or Scottish theologian of the thirteenth century.

<sup>8</sup> I rise from reading the former.

<sup>9</sup> don't fear; here *ne* = *nolite*.

Erasmus

cantus, quemadmodum Graecis est in proverbio.<sup>1</sup> Eum hodie relegi, atque haec verba, quoniam prae ceteris arridebant<sup>2</sup> edidici.<sup>3</sup>

“Si quis deus mihi largiatur ut ex hac aetate repuerascam et in cunis vagiam,<sup>4</sup> valde (*vehemently*) recusem; nec vero velim (*would I wish*), quasi decurso spatio,<sup>5</sup> ad carceres a calce (*the goal*) revocari. <sup>5</sup> Quid enim habet vita commodi? Quid non potius laboris? Sed non habeat sane,<sup>6</sup> habet certe tamen aut satietatem aut modum (*restriction*). Non libet (*it is not pleasing*) enim mihi deplorare vitam, quod multi et hi docti saepe fecerunt. Nec me vixisse paenitet,<sup>7</sup> quoniam ita vixi, ut frustra me natum<sup>8</sup> non existimem; et ex vita ista discedo <sup>10</sup> tamquam ex hospitio (*inn*) non tamquam e domo. Commorandi enim natura deversorium nobis, non habitandi,<sup>9</sup> dedit. O praeclarum diem, cum in illud animorum concilium coetumque (*meeting-place*) proficiscar et cum ex hac turba et colluvione<sup>10</sup> discedam!”<sup>11</sup> . . .

NEPHALIUS. Non minus elegans est quod apud Platonem loquitur <sup>15</sup> Socrates: “Animum humanum in hoc corpore, velut (*just as*) in praesidio, positum esse, unde fas non sit discedere injussu imperatoris, nec diutius in eo immorari (*to linger*) quam visum sit (*seems best*) ei qui collocaverit.”

CHRISTIANUS. Quam felices sunt qui tali animo mortem expectant!<sup>20</sup> Proinde mihi nihil umquam legisse videor apud ethnicos, quod aptius quadret<sup>12</sup> in hominem vere Christianum. Quam quod Socrates, paulo post bibiturus<sup>13</sup> cicutam (*the hemlock*), dixit Critoni. “An opera,” inquit, “nostra sit probaturus deus nescio; certe sedulo (*assiduously*) conati sumus ut illi placeremus. Est mihi tamen bona spes quod <sup>25</sup> ille conatus nostros boni sit consulturus.<sup>14</sup>” . . .

NEPHALIUS. Profecto (*indeed*) mirandus animus in eo qui Christum et Sacras Litteras<sup>15</sup> non noverat! Proinde, cum hujus modi quaedam lego de talibus viris, vix mihi tempero (*I restrain*) quin dicam, “Sancte Socrates, ora pro nobis.” 30

<sup>1</sup> a swan song, as the Greeks have it in their proverb. According to legend, swans are mute until they are at the point of death.

<sup>2</sup> they pleased me.

<sup>3</sup> I learned by heart.

<sup>4</sup> should permit me to become a child again and cry in my cradle.

<sup>5</sup> having run my race.

<sup>6</sup> Really, if it has not [pain].

<sup>7</sup> I don't regret having lived.

<sup>8</sup> Supply esse.

<sup>9</sup> Contrast *deversorium* *commorandi*, a temporary lodging, with *deversorium habitandi*, a residence.

<sup>10</sup> from this disorder and defilement.

<sup>11</sup> Cicero, *De Senectute* XXIII, 83-84.

<sup>12</sup> is more perfectly suitable to; literally, squares more conveniently to.

<sup>13</sup> just before drinking; literally, about to drink a little later.

<sup>14</sup> will consider. The subject is ille (God), the object conatus.

<sup>15</sup> Sacred Writings, Scriptures.

## THE UNIVERSE IN MOTION

**N**ikolaus Copernicus (1473-1543) was a Polish astronomer who was strongly opposed to the current idea that the earth was the center of the universe. In *De Revolutionibus Orbium Caelestium*, from which this extract comes, he develops the theory that the earth and other heavenly bodies revolve around the sun.

**J**am quidem demonstratum est terram quoque globi formam habere; videndum<sup>1</sup> arbitror, an etiam formam ejus sequatur<sup>2</sup> motus (*motion*) et quem locum universitatis (*universe*) obtineat, sine quibus non est<sup>3</sup> invenire certam apparentium in caelo rationem.<sup>4</sup> Quamquam in medio mundi (*of the universe*) terram quiescere inter auctores plerumque convenit,<sup>5</sup> ut inopinabile (*inconceivable*) putent sive etiam ridiculum contrarium sentire (*to think*), si tamen attentius rem consideremus, videbitur haec quaestio nondum absoluta (*resolved*) et idcirco (*for that reason*) minime contemnenda. Omnis enim quae videtur secundum locum<sup>6</sup> mutatio, aut est propter spectatae rei motum, aut videntis, aut certe disparem utriusque mutationem.

Nam inter mota aequaliter ad eadem non percipitur motus,<sup>7</sup> inter visum dico et videns. Terra autem est unde caelestis ille circuitus aspicitur et visui reproducitur (*is represented*) nostro. Si igitur motus aliquis terrae deputetur (*is attributed*) ipse in universis quae extrinsecus (*outside itself*) sunt, idem apparebit, sed ad partem oppositam, tamquam praetereuntia (*things passing by*), qualis est revolutio quotidiana (*daily*) imprimis.<sup>8</sup> Haec enim totum mundum videtur rapere, praeterquam (*except*) terram quaeque circa ipsam sunt.<sup>9</sup>

Atqui (*but now*) si caelum nihil de hoc motu habere concesseris, terram vero ab occasu in ortum volvi,<sup>10</sup> quantum<sup>11</sup> ad apparentem in sole et luna et stellis ortum et occasum,<sup>12</sup> si quis serio (*seriously*) animadvertat, inveniet haec sic se habere. Cumque (*since, however*)

<sup>1</sup> we must examine.

<sup>2</sup> results from.

<sup>3</sup> Supply possible.

<sup>4</sup> a fixed system of phenomena in the sky.

<sup>5</sup> most authorities seem to agree.

<sup>6</sup> in regard to position.

<sup>7</sup> a motion [seen] among equal motions in the same direction is not perceived; a moving railway car seen from another moving railway car is a good example.

<sup>8</sup> Si . . . imprimis may be translated

freely: If then some motion is attributed to the earth, the same motion will be apparent in the universe outside of the earth, as though things are passing by at the same rate, but in the opposite direction, of which the daily revolution of the earth is a prime example.

<sup>9</sup> terram . . . sunt, the earth and the objects surrounding it.

<sup>10</sup> Present passive infinitive.

<sup>11</sup> Object of animadvertat; how much is due to.

<sup>12</sup> Supply solis.

caelum sit, quod continet et caelat<sup>1</sup> omnia, communis universorum locus, non statim apparet, cur non magis contento quam continenti, locato quam locanti motus attribuat<sup>2</sup>.

## CIRCULATION OF THE BLOOD

For hundreds of years physicians and anatomists accepted Galen's theories about the circulation of the blood. In the seventeenth century William Harvey wrote *Exercitatio Anatomica de Motu Cordis et Sanguinis in Animalibus* (1628), a correct explanation, with scientific proofs, of how the blood circulates.

Duo sunt quasi eodem tempore motus, unus auricularum, alter ventriculorum.<sup>3</sup> Nec enim simul omnino fiunt; sed praecedit motus auricularum, et subsequitur (*follows*) cordis,<sup>4</sup> et motus ab auriculis incipere, et in ventriculos progredi visus est. Cum jam languidiora omnia emoriente corde,<sup>5</sup> et in piscibus (*fishes*), et in frigidioribus sanguineis (*cold-blooded*) animalibus inter hos duos motus, tempus aliquod quietis intercedit, ut cor quasi suscitatum<sup>6</sup> motui respondere videtur, aliquando (*sometimes*) tardius, et tandem ad mortem inclinans (*sinking*) cessat motu suo respondere, et quasi capite dumtaxat leviter annuit,<sup>7</sup> et obscure (*imperceptibly*) adeo movetur, ut potius motus signum praebere pulsanti auriculae videatur.

Sic prius<sup>8</sup> desinit (*ceases*) cor pulsare, quam auriculae, ut auriculae supervivere (*to outlive*) dicantur, et primus omnium desinit pulsare sinister ventriculus, deinde ejus auricula, demum dexter ventriculus, ultimo (quod etiam non ait Galen<sup>9</sup>) reliquis omnibus cessantibus et mortuis, pulsatur usque<sup>10</sup> dextra auricula, ut ultimo (*longest*) in dextra auricula vita remanere videatur. Et dum sensim emoritur<sup>11</sup> cor videre licet, post duas vel tres pulsationes auricularum liquando (*by dissolution*) quasi expergefatum (*aroused*) correspondere,<sup>12</sup> et unum pulsum lente (*slowly*) et aegre peragere,<sup>13</sup> et moliri (*struggle*).

<sup>1</sup> Of Greek origin; *hides* (*holds in a hollow*).

<sup>2</sup> *cur . . . attribuat<sup>2</sup>*, why motion should not be attributed more to the contents than to the container, to the thing located than to its location.

<sup>3</sup> one of the auricles, another of the ventricles.

<sup>4</sup> From *cor*, *cordis*, *n.*, heart; supply motus.

<sup>5</sup> *Cum . . . corde*, When in a dying heart all things are becoming languid.

<sup>6</sup> as if aroused

<sup>7</sup> only nods its head slightly, as it were.

<sup>8</sup> Translate with *quam*.

<sup>9</sup> Galen's writings on medicine had great influence in the classical and medieval periods.

<sup>10</sup> without interruption.

<sup>11</sup> while it is gradually dying.

<sup>12</sup> to respond.

<sup>13</sup> to carry through with an effort.

## PROOF OF MAN'S EXISTENCE

Modern philosophy is said to begin with René Descartes (1596-1650). In order to discover the basic elements of truth, he decided to doubt all beliefs and opinions and seek something that could be proved. In the end he decided that the one certain fact is that man is conscious that he thinks. In his *Opera Philosophica*, from which we have an excerpt, he sums this up in *Cogito; ergo sum*.

Enitar<sup>1</sup> tamen, removendo illud omne quod vel minimum dubitationis admittit, nihilo secius quam si<sup>2</sup> omnino falsum esse comperissem, pergamque porro donec<sup>3</sup> aliquid certi, vel si nihil aliud, saltem (*at least*) hoc ipsum pro certo, nihil esse certi, cognoscam. Nihil nisi punctum petebat Archimedes,<sup>4</sup> quod esset firmum et immobile, ut integram terram loco dimoveret; magna quoque speranda sunt,<sup>5</sup> si vel minimum quid invenero quod certum sit et inconcussum (*incontrovertible*).

Suppono igitur omnia quae video falsa esse; credo nihil umquam extitisse<sup>6</sup> eorum quae mendax<sup>7</sup> memoria repraesentat. Nullos plane (*simply*) habeo sensus; corpus, figura, extensio, motus, locusque sunt chimerae.<sup>8</sup> Quid igitur erit verum? Fortassis (*perhaps*) hoc unum, nihil esse certi.

Sed unde scio nihil esse diversum ab iis omnibus quae jamjam recensui,<sup>9</sup> de quo ne minima quidem occasio sit dubitandi? Numquid est<sup>10</sup> aliquis deus, vel quocumque nomine illum vocem (*I call*), qui mihi has ipsas cogitationes immittit<sup>11</sup>? Quare veri hoc putem, cum forsán ipsemet illarum auctor esse possim<sup>12</sup>? Numquid ergo (*therefore*) saltem ego aliquid sum? Sed jam negavi me habere ullos sensus, et ullum corpus; haereo (*I hesitate*) tamen; nam quid inde? Sumne ita corpori sensibusque alligatus (*bound*), ut sine illis esse non possim? Sed mihi persuasi, nihil plane esse in mundo (*in all the world*), nullum caelum, nullam terram, nullas mentes, nulla corpora. Nonne igitur etiam me non esse? Immo (*No*) certe ego eram si quid mihi persuasi;

<sup>1</sup> *I shall make an effort.*

<sup>2</sup> *nihi lo secius quam si, just as if.*

<sup>3</sup> *I shall proceed until.*

<sup>4</sup> Archimedes is supposed to have said that he could move the earth if he could find a point outside it to stand on.

<sup>5</sup> *we must also have high hopes.*

<sup>6</sup> From *existo*.

<sup>7</sup> *fallacious; compare mendacious (lying).*

<sup>8</sup> *impossible ideas.* The chimera was a legendary monster. (See picture on page 80.)

<sup>9</sup> *I have recently considered.*

<sup>10</sup> *Is there not?* Numquid is an interrogative adverb used with direct questions.

<sup>11</sup> *mihi . . . immittit, puts these thoughts into my mind.*

<sup>12</sup> *forsán . . . possim, perhaps I myself may be.*



sed est deceptor nescio quis, summe potens, summe callidus,<sup>1</sup> qui de industria (*with ingenuity*) me semper fallit. Haud dubie igitur ego etiam sum, si me fallit; et fallat quantum potest, numquam tamen efficiet, ut nihil sim quamdiu (*as long as*) me aliquid esse cogitabo,<sup>2</sup> adeo ut omnibus satis superque pensitatis<sup>3</sup> denique statuendum sit hoc pronuntiatum (*proposition*), *Ego sum, ego existo*, quoties<sup>4</sup> a me profertur, vel mente concipitur,<sup>5</sup> necessario esse verum.

## GOD, MAN, AND NATURE

*The Spanish Jew Benedict Spinoza (1632-1677), who lived in Amsterdam, published his treatise De Deo et Homine Ejusque Valetudine simultaneously in Dutch and Latin. Spinoza saw the universe as a single reality—at once nature and God, not nature presided over by God.*

Cum viderimus hominem, quippe (*certainly*) totius a qua pendet regiturque<sup>6</sup> naturae partem,<sup>7</sup> ex se ipso ad salutem valetudinemque suam nihil efficere posse; videamus jam quatenam (*what*) utilitates ex<sup>10</sup> hisce<sup>8</sup> propositionibus nobis profluant<sup>9</sup>; et hoc eo magis, quia<sup>10</sup> non dubitamus quin quibusdam non parum displiciturae sint.<sup>11</sup>

Primo, sequitur inde, quod ab illo quod perfectissimum est, ita pendeamus, ut tamquam totius, i.e., ejus<sup>12</sup> pars, nostrum etiam adhibeamus<sup>13</sup> ad efficienda tot bene ordinata (*ordered*) et perfecta opera<sup>15</sup> quae ab ea pendeant, inde—dico—sequitur nos vere famulos (*attendants*), immo (*even more*) servos Dei esse, maximamque nostram esse perfectionem hoc necessario esse.

Secundo, etiam haecce cognitio (*knowledge*) efficit, ut, praecipua (*excellent*) aliqua re peracta (*accomplished*), de ea non superbiamus<sup>20</sup> (*we take pride*) quae superbia causa est ut, aliquid magni nos reputantes (*ascribing to*) et quasi nihilo amplius egentes (*needing*), sistamus ubi

<sup>1</sup> summe potens = potentissimus; summe callidus = callidissimus.

<sup>2</sup> Descartes is famous for this theory—Cogito; ergo sum.

<sup>3</sup> With omnibus, if I think over everything.

<sup>4</sup> as often as.

<sup>5</sup> is conceived mentally.

<sup>6</sup> A telescoped expression; on which he depends and by which he is governed.

<sup>7</sup> In apposition with hominem, subject

of posse; being a part of the whole of nature.

<sup>8</sup> Hicce, haecce, hocce are emphatic forms of hic, haec, hoc.

<sup>9</sup> we may derive; literally, may flow forth to us.

<sup>10</sup> hoc . . . quia, more for the reason that.

<sup>11</sup> will be displeasing.

<sup>12</sup> of Him (God).

<sup>13</sup> we also contribute our share.

jam sumus<sup>1</sup>; quod directe pugnat cum<sup>2</sup> perfectione nostra, in eo consistente,<sup>3</sup> quod semper progredi conari debemus. Sed e contrario,<sup>4</sup> omnia quae agimus Deo contribuamus (*we attribute*), quippe qui prima solaque causa est omnium quae agimus efficimusque.

5 Tertio, cognitio haecce, praeter verum proximi amorem, quem in nobis excitat,<sup>5</sup> nos ita constituit, numquam ut eum odie habere<sup>6</sup> nec in eum irati esse possimus, cupiamus autem eum adjuvare et ad meliorem statum (*condition*) perducere, quae omnes talium hominum actiones sunt, magnam qui perfectionem essentiamve<sup>7</sup> habeant.

10 Quarto, haecce cognitio in rei publicae salutem tendit,<sup>8</sup> quippe qua iudex partibus unius prae alterius studere nequeat (*cannot*) et unum punire (*to punish*) coactus ut alterum premio afficiat,<sup>9</sup> intentione<sup>10</sup> illud faciat unum tantopere quam (*as much as*) alterum adjuvandi.

Quinto, cognitio haecce nos liberat a tristitia, desperatione, invidia,  
15 terrore, alisque malis passionibus, quae, ut postea dicemus,<sup>11</sup> Gehenna (*Hell*) ipsa sunt.

Sexto, cognitio haecce nos eo (*so far*) perducit, Deum ut non timeamus, ut alii Diabolum (*the Devil*),<sup>12</sup> ne quid mali iis faciat. Quomodo (*How*) enim Deum timere possimus qui ipsum summum bonum est,  
20 et a quo omnia quandam essentiam habentia sunt<sup>13</sup> id quod sunt, ut et (*also*) nos ipsi ab eo sumus, in eo viventes.

Septimo, cognitio haecce eo etiam perducit, ut Deo omnia attribuamus, eum solum amemus, quia augustissimus et perfectissimus est. Itaque ut ei nos sacrificemus; in proprie<sup>14</sup> et vera religio et aeterna  
25 nostra salus et beatitudo (*bliss*) consistunt, sola enim perfectio et ultimus servi finis instrumentique<sup>15</sup> hic est, ut officium illi mandatum (*entrusted*) bene perficiat; e.g., quando (*when*) faber in opere quodam fabricando (*doing*) securi (*hatchet*) sua se optime adjustum videt,<sup>16</sup> securis illa ad finem perfectionemque suam ita pervenit. Si vero

<sup>1</sup> quae superbia causa est ut . . . sistamus ubi jam sumus, *pride which causes us . . . to come to a standstill.*

<sup>2</sup> *it militates against.*

<sup>3</sup> *which consists in this.*

<sup>4</sup> *on the contrary.*

<sup>5</sup> *praeter . . . excitat, in addition to the fact that it inspires us with a real love for our neighbor.*

<sup>6</sup> *to hate; literally, to hold hatefully.*

<sup>7</sup> *or intrinsic character.*

<sup>8</sup> *in . . . tendit, promotes the greatest common good.*

<sup>9</sup> *in order to reward another; literally, to affect another with a reward.*

<sup>10</sup> *With adjuvandi, with a view to helping.*

<sup>11</sup> *as we shall presently say.*

<sup>12</sup> *Supply timeant.*

<sup>13</sup> *omnia . . . sunt, all things having a certain state of being. Occasionally the verbal aspect of a participle has force enough to take an object*

<sup>14</sup> *in proprie, exclusively.*

<sup>15</sup> *final end of a slave and a tool.*

<sup>16</sup> *sees that he has been well served.*

cogitare sibi vellet, "Securis haecce mihi admodum bene serviit"; itaque jam quiescere eam sineret,<sup>1</sup> nec quemdam amplius usum ab ea postularet; securis illa tunc (*then*) a fine sua removeretur, nec securis amplius esset. Ita est homo, quamdiu (*so long as*) pars naturae est, leges naturae sequi debet, quod Dei servitium, i.e. religio, est et 5 quamdiu hoc facit sua valetudine gaudet. Si vero Deus, ut ita dicam, vellet homines non amplius ei servituros esse,<sup>2</sup> aequè hoc valeret ac si<sup>3</sup> eos valetudine privaret (*depriving*) eosque destrueret (*annihilating*) quia omne quod sunt in eo consistit, Deo ut serviant.

## TIDES

*The English scientist and mathematical genius Sir Isaac Newton (1642-1727) made many contributions to the field of physics, one of which was the formulation of the law of gravity. His greatest work is Principia Mathematica, from which this selection comes. A comparison of Newton's writings with those of Copernicus (p. 284), shows the great advance in science that had been made in two centuries. This progress was accelerated by the fact that all the material was published in Latin, so that it could be read immediately by scholars in different lands.*

**M**are singulis diebus tam lunaribus quam solaribus<sup>4</sup> bis intumescere 10 (*to rise*) debere<sup>5</sup> ac bis defluere (*to fall*) patet, in maribus profundis et liberis, appulsum luminarium<sup>6</sup> ad meridianum<sup>7</sup> loci minori quam sex horarum spatio<sup>8</sup> sequi, ut fit in maris Atlantici et Aethiopici tractu toto orientali inter Galliam (*France*) et Promontorium Bonae Spei ut<sup>9</sup> et in maris Pacifici litore Chilensi et Peruviano; in 15 quibus omnibus litoribus aestus in horam circiter secundam, tertiam, vel quartam incidit, nisi ubi motus<sup>10</sup> ab oceano profundo (*deep*) per loca vadosa<sup>11</sup> propagatus (*generated*) usque ad horam quintam, sextam, septimam, aut ultra retardatur.

Horas numero (*I reckon*) ab appulsu luminaris utriusque ad me- 20

<sup>1</sup> *let it rest*; *sineret* is subjunctive in a conditional sentence.

<sup>2</sup> *to serve*.

<sup>3</sup> *that would be equivalent to*.

<sup>4</sup> *singulis . . . solaribus, every lunar and solar day*. A day is, of course, one complete revolution of the earth. The length of the solar day seems to vary with the seasons, but the mean solar day is 23 hours, 56 minutes. The lunar day is 24 hours, 50 minutes.

<sup>5</sup> *debere* depends on *patet* (*it is evident*),

and is followed by *intumescere, defluere, and sequi*.

<sup>6</sup> *the approach of the luminaries, i.e., the sun and moon*.

<sup>7</sup> *meridian*; not *south*, as in classical Latin.

<sup>8</sup> With *minori*, by an interval shorter.

<sup>9</sup> Omit in translation.

<sup>10</sup> Subject of *retardatur*.

<sup>11</sup> With *retardatur, per loca vadosa* = *locis vadosis*; *is retarded by the shallow channels*.

ridianum loci, tam infra horizontem quam supra, et per (*by*) horas diei lunaris intellego vigesimas quartas (*twenty-fourth*) partes temporis quo luna motu apparente diurno ad meridianum loci revertitur. Vis solis vel lunae ad mare elevandum maxima est in ipso appulsu luminaris  
 5 ad meridianum loci. Sed vis eo tempore in mare impressa manet aliquamdiu (*a little while*) et per vim novam subinde impressam<sup>1</sup> augetur, donec (*until*) mare ad altitudinem maximam ascenderit, id quod fiet spatio horae unius duarumve (*or two*) sed saepius ad litora spatio horarum trium circiter vel etiam plurium si mare sit vadosum.  
 10 Motus autem bini, quos luminaria duo excitant, non cernentur distincte, sed motum quendam mixtum efficient. In luminarium conjunctione<sup>2</sup> vel oppositione conjungentur eorum effectus (*forces*) et componetur fluxus et refluxus<sup>3</sup> maximus. . . . Haec ita sunt in mari aperto. Nam in ostiis fluviorum (*of rivers*) fluxus majores  
 15 ceteris paribus tardius ad apicem<sup>4</sup> venient.

## CAPITAL AND LABOR

*When Leo XIII became Pope in 1878, he found Europe in turmoil—politically, because of strong nationalistic feelings which were to culminate in two world wars; economically, because of the influence of Marxism and socialism. In Rerum Novarum (1891) the Pope, as head of the Roman Catholic Church, stated the opposition of the Church toward revolutionary socialism, and defined the relations of capital and labor. An extract from this encyclical is given.*

Rerum novarum semel (*once*) excitata cupidine, quae diu quidem commovet civitates, illud erat consecuturum ut commutationum studia a rationibus politicis in oeconomicarum cognatum genus aliquando defluerent.<sup>5</sup> Re vera nova industria incrementa (*developments*)  
 20 novisque euntes itineribus artes<sup>6</sup>; mutatae dominorum et mercenariorum rationes mutuae<sup>7</sup>; divitiarum in exiguo numero affluentia (*abundance*), in multitudine inopia; opificum (*of Labor*) cum de se confidentia major, tum inter se necessitudo conjunctor,<sup>8</sup> praeterea versi in deteriora mores,<sup>9</sup> effecerunt (*have brought it about*), ut certamen erumperet.

<sup>1</sup> still acting upon it.

<sup>2</sup> conjunction; the meeting or passing of two or more celestial bodies in the same degree of the zodiac. Opposition is the situation of a celestial body directly opposite to another, or separated from it by 180°.

<sup>3</sup> flood and ebb will be brought on.

<sup>4</sup> height.

<sup>5</sup> in . . . defluerent, should at some time pass into the related field of economics.

<sup>6</sup> new discoveries of science.

<sup>7</sup> relations of wage-earners.

<sup>8</sup> their closer connection.

<sup>9</sup> moral degeneration.

In quo quanta rerum momenta vertantur,<sup>1</sup> ex hoc apparet, quod animos habet acri expectatione suspensos (*tense*); denique ingenia exercet doctorum, concilia prudentum (*of practical men*), contiones (*assemblies*) populi, legumlatorum,<sup>2</sup> iudicium, consilia principum, ut jam causa nulla reperitur tanta, quae teneat hominum studia <sup>5</sup> (*interests*) vehementius.

Itaque, proposita nobis Ecclesiae (*of the Church*) causa et salute communi, quod alias consuevimus, venerabiles fratres, datis ad vos litteris de imperio politico, de libertate humana, de civitatum constitutione Christiana, aliisque non dissimili genere, quae ad refutandas <sup>10</sup> opinionum fallacias opportuna videbantur, idem nunc faciendum de conditione opificum (*of Labor*) isdem de causis duximus. Genus hoc argumenti non semel jam per occasionem attigimus; in his tamen litteris totam data opera<sup>3</sup> tractare (*to treat*) quaestionem apostolici muneris conscientia (*consciousness*) monet, ut principia emineant (*may* <sup>15</sup> *stand forth clearly*), quorum ope, ut veritas atque aequitas postulant, dimicatio dirimatur.<sup>4</sup>

Causa est ad expediendum difficilis, nec vacua (*free from*) periculo. Arduum<sup>5</sup> siquidem (*indeed*) metiri jura et officia, quibus locupletes (*the rich*) et proletarios (*the proletariat*) eos qui rem,<sup>6</sup> et eos qui operam <sup>20</sup> conferant,<sup>6</sup> inter se oportet contineri. Periculosa vero contentio,<sup>7</sup> quippe (*in fact*) quae ab hominibus turbulentis (*quarrelsome*) et callidis ad pervertendum iudicium veri concitandamque seditiose multitudinem passim detorquetur.<sup>8</sup> Utcumque (*however*) sit, plane (*clearly*) videmus, quod (*as*) consentiunt universi, infimae sortis hominibus<sup>9</sup> <sup>25</sup> celeriter esse atque opportune consulendum, cum pars maxima in misera calamitosaque (*and ruinous*) fortuna indigne (*undeservedly*) versentur.

Nam veteribus artificum collegiis<sup>10</sup> superiore saeculo (*century*) deletis, nulloque in eorum locum suffecto praesidio,<sup>11</sup> cum ipsa insti- <sup>30</sup> tuta legesque publicae avitam (*ancestral*) religionem exussent,<sup>12</sup> sensim (*gradually*) factum est ut opifices (*workers*) inhumanitati dominorum

<sup>1</sup> *such great changes hinge.*

<sup>2</sup> From *lex* + *latus* (*fero*); *of lawmakers.*

<sup>3</sup> *as opportunity is given.*

<sup>4</sup> *the controversy may be settled.*

<sup>5</sup> *It is difficult; supply est.*

<sup>6</sup> *those who contribute capital, i.e., locupletes; those who contribute labor, i.e., proletarios.*

<sup>7</sup> *It is a struggle; supply est.*

<sup>8</sup> *is constantly distorted.*

<sup>9</sup> *for men of the lowest economic level.*

<sup>10</sup> *the old guilds of the workmen; translate with deletis, as ablative absolute.*

<sup>11</sup> *nullo . . . praesidio, no protective organization having been supplied in their place.*

<sup>12</sup> *since they have destroyed.*

effrenataeque (*unbridled*) competitorum cupiditati solitarios atque indefensos (*defenseless*) tempus tradiderit. Malum auxit usura vorax,<sup>1</sup> quae non semel Ecclesiae iudicio damnata, tamen ab hominibus avidis et quaestuosis (*self-seeking*) per aliam speciem exercetur eadem; 5 huc accedunt et conductio operum<sup>2</sup> et rerum omnium commercia fere in paucorum redacta potestatem, ita ut opulenti ac praedivites<sup>3</sup> perpauci prope servile (*of slavery*) jugum infinitae proletariorum multitudini imposuerint.

## THE LANGUAGE OF FLOWERS

One of the continued uses of Latin is in botanical classifications. The scientific name of a plant and its description are put into Latin. Technical botanical terms—many borrowed from Greek—are treated as Latin words with appropriate endings. Most of these are easily understood from familiar Latin words. Two examples follow.

Nicotiana setchellii. Planta subarborescens perennis viscida; folia oblongo-oblancheolata lanceolata-ellipticave sessilia vel brevipetiolata petiolis alatis, basi subauriculata paulo decurrentia; inflorescentia paniculiformis pedicellis in fructu conspicue curvatis; flores magni corollarum apicibus in alabastris manifestis; corolla infundibularis paulo flexa, limbo faucibusque conjunctis campanulatis; 15 stylum et stamina inclusa ad partem inferiorem corollae accedentia.

Delphinium alatum. Caulibus ad 1 m. altis simplicibus vel paulo ramosis supra vel ad apicem minute puberulis, racemis pedunculatis obscure glandulosis; foliis praesertim ad medium caulis restrictis 4-5 partitis, segmentis plus minusve divisis; floribus intense caeruleis; 20 folliculis approximatis erectis obscure pubescentibus haud glandulosis; seminibus alatis.

<sup>1</sup> rapacious usury.

<sup>2</sup> contract labor.

<sup>3</sup> powerful and very rich men.

# A Comedy of Errors

**T**itus Maccius Plautus (c. 254-184 B.C.), the greatest author of Latin comedy, wrote the *Menaechmi*, the most important scenes of which are given here. This plot has been often used, notably in Shakespeare's *A Comedy of Errors* and in *The Boys from Syracuse*.

## MENAECHMI

<i>Peniculus</i> , parasitus (hanger-on)	<i>Ancilla</i> (maid-servant)
<i>Menaechmus I</i>	<i>Senex</i> , socer (father-in-law of
<i>Menaechmus II</i> (Sosicles)	<i>Menaechmus I</i> )
<i>Erotium</i> , meretrix (mistress)	<i>Medicus</i>
<i>Messenio</i> , servus	<i>Lorarii</i> (floggers)

THE PLAY TAKES PLACE ON A STREET IN EPIDAMNUS

## ACT I SCENE I

(MENAECHMUS I AND PENICULUS MEET IN FRONT OF THE HOUSE OF MEN I.)

*Menaechmus I.* Euax, jurgio<sup>1</sup> hercle<sup>2</sup> tandem uxorem abegi ab janua.

Ubi sunt amatores mariti<sup>3</sup>? Dona quid cessant<sup>4</sup> mihi

Conferre omnes congratulantes, quia (because) pugnavi fortiter?

Hanc modo uxori intus pallam surripui<sup>5</sup>; ad scortum (my mistress) fero.

Sic hoc decet, dari facete verba custodi catae.<sup>6</sup>

Hoc facinus pulchrumst,<sup>7</sup> hoc probumst, hoc lepidumst, hoc factumst fabre (cleverly);

Meo malo<sup>8</sup> a mala abstuli hoc, ad damnum<sup>9</sup> deferetur.

Averti praedam (loot) ab hostibus nostrum salute socium.<sup>10</sup>

*Peniculus.* Heus (hello), adulescens, ecqua (any) in istac<sup>11</sup> pars inest praeda mihi? <sup>10</sup>

*Men. I.* Perii, in insidias deveni (I have fallen). *Pen.* Immo<sup>12</sup> in praesidium; ne time (don't be afraid).

*Men. I.* Quis homost? *Pen.* Ego sum. *Men. I.* O mea commoditas, O mea opportunitas,<sup>13</sup>

Salve (greetings). *Pen.* Salve. *Men. I.* Quid agis? *Pen.* Teneo dextra <sup>15</sup> genium (guardian angel) meum.

<sup>1</sup> by outshouting her, lit., by argument.

<sup>2</sup> With Euax, By Jove, this is wonderful! Heracle, by Hercules, Pol or Edepol, by Pollux, are frequently used by Plautus.

<sup>3</sup> intriguing husbands.

<sup>4</sup> Why are . . . waiting?

<sup>5</sup> I stole this cloak from my wife inside there.

<sup>6</sup> Sic . . . catae, So it is fitting for my crafty ball-and-chain to be cheated.

<sup>7</sup> Plautus often adds -st (for est) or -s (for es) to a word; e.g., pulchrumst, is

*fine; probumst, is honorable; lepidumst, is agreeable.*

<sup>8</sup> at a loss to myself.

<sup>9</sup> Figuratively, my sweetheart; literally, damnation.

<sup>10</sup> nostrum . . . socium = nostrorum . . . sociorum, for the welfare of our allies.

<sup>11</sup> that; ablative with praeda. Iste and ille with c added are old colloquial forms.

<sup>12</sup> No, you haven't.

<sup>13</sup> My right-hand man, my Johnny on the spot.

*Men. I.* Non potuisti magis per tempus<sup>1</sup> mi<sup>2</sup> advenire quam advenis.

*Pen.* Ita ego soleo; commoditatis omnis articulos (*angles*) scio.

*Men. I.* Vin<sup>3</sup> tu facinus luculentum<sup>4</sup> inspicere? *Pen.* Quis id coxit coquus<sup>5</sup>?

Jam sciam, si quid titubatumst,<sup>6</sup> ubi reliquias<sup>7</sup> videro.

5 *Men. I.* Dic mi, enumquam (*ever*) tu vidisti tabulam pictam in pariete,<sup>8</sup>

Ubi aquila Catameitum raperet aut ubi Venus Adoneum—?

*Pen.* Saepe, sed quid (*how*) istae picturae ad me attinent (*concern*)? *Men. I.*

Age (*come*) me aspice.

Ecquid assimulo similiter<sup>9</sup>? (HE SPREADS THE CLOAK LIKE AN EAGLE'S WINGS.)

10 *Pen.* Qui istic est ornatus<sup>10</sup> tuus?

*Men. I.* Dic hominem lepidissimum esse me. *Pen.* Ubi essuri sumus<sup>11</sup>?

*Men. I.* Dic modo hoc quod ego te jubeo. *Pen.* Dico, "Homo lepidissime,<sup>12</sup>"

*Men. I.* Ecquid audes de tuo istuc addere<sup>13</sup>? *Pen.* Atque hilarissime.

*Men. I.* Perge porro.<sup>14</sup> *Pen.* Non pergo hercle, nisi scio qua gratia<sup>15</sup>

15 Litigium (*quarrel*) tibist cum uxore; eo mi abs te caveo cautius.<sup>16</sup>

*Men. I.* Clam uxoremst ubi pulchre habeamus<sup>17</sup>; hunc comburamus<sup>18</sup> diem.

*Pen.* Age sane igitur, quando aequum oras,<sup>19</sup> quam mox incendio rogum?

Dies quidem jam ad umbilicumst dimidiatus mortuus.<sup>20</sup>

*Men. I.* Te morare,<sup>21</sup> mihi cum obloquere.<sup>22</sup> *Pen.* Oculum ecfodito per solum

20 Mihi,<sup>23</sup> Menaechme, si ullum verbum faxo,<sup>24</sup> nisi quod jusseris.

*Men. I.* Concede (*come*) huc a foribus.<sup>25</sup> (HE MOVES AWAY) *Pen.* Fiat.

*Men. I.* Etiam concede huc. *Pen.* Licet.

*Men. I.* Etiam nunc concede audacter ab leonino cavo.<sup>26</sup>

*Pen.* Eu edepol ne tu, ut ego opinor, esses agitator probus.<sup>27</sup>

25 *Men. I.* Quidum (*how so*)? *Pen.* Ne te uxor sequatur, respectas identidem.<sup>28</sup>

*Men. I.* Sed quid ais<sup>29</sup>? *Pen.* Egone? Id enim quod tu vis, id ajo<sup>30</sup> atque id nego.

<sup>1</sup> more opportunely.

<sup>2</sup> mi = mihi.

<sup>3</sup> Vin = visne.

<sup>4</sup> Literally, a splendid thing. Menaechmus means the theft of the cloak. Peniculus thinks he means a grand feast.

<sup>5</sup> What cook cooked it?

<sup>6</sup> if there's been any slip.

<sup>7</sup> the left overs; the remnants of feasts were a reward of hangers-on.

<sup>8</sup> a picture painted on a wall.

<sup>9</sup> Do I make myself anything like them?

<sup>10</sup> A noun; decoration.

<sup>11</sup> When are we going to eat?

<sup>12</sup> very charming; vocative, modifying homo, as does also hilarissime, very funny.

<sup>13</sup> Do you dare to add anything further of your own?

<sup>14</sup> Go on.

<sup>15</sup> the reason why.

<sup>16</sup> more cautiously.

<sup>17</sup> There's a place my wife doesn't know about where it will be nice.

<sup>18</sup> We shall cremate; the metaphor refers to the death of a day. After the cremation on a funeral pyre (rogum), there will be a feast.

<sup>19</sup> Well, then, since what you say is fair enough.

<sup>20</sup> The day is already half-dead; lit., dead up to the navel.

<sup>21</sup> You're the one that's causing the delay.

<sup>22</sup> you interrupt.

<sup>23</sup> You can dig my eye out by the roots.

<sup>24</sup> faxo = faciam.

<sup>25</sup> From foris, door.

<sup>26</sup> the lion's den.

<sup>27</sup> Well, I think you would certainly make a fine charioteer. (Chariot drivers constantly looked back to see if others were gaining.)

<sup>28</sup> repeatedly.

<sup>29</sup> See page 343, 48.



*Men. I.* Tibi fuant<sup>1</sup> quaecumque me vis; ita edepol recte omnia  
Elocutu's (*you have spoken*). Nam ab uxore hanc pallam surripui mea;  
Nunc ad amicam deferetur hanc meretricem Erotium.

Mihi, tibi atque illi jubebo jam adparari prandium (*lunch*). *Pen.* Eu<sup>2</sup>!

*Men. I.* Inde usque ad diurnam stellam crastinam potabimus.<sup>3</sup>

*Pen.* Eu expedite fabulatu's.<sup>4</sup> Jam fores ferio<sup>5</sup>? *Men. I.* Feri.

Vel mane<sup>6</sup> etiam. *Pen.* Mille passuum commoratu's cantharum.<sup>7</sup>

*Men. I.* Placide pulta.<sup>8</sup> *Pen.* Metuis credo, ne fores Samiae<sup>9</sup> sint.

*Men. I.* Mane, mane, obsecro (*I beg you*) hercle. Eapse eccam<sup>10</sup> exit. O,  
solem vides<sup>11</sup>

Satin ut occaecatust<sup>12</sup> prae hujus corporis candoribus (*beauty*)?

(MEN. I AND PEN CROSS THE STREET.)

## SCENE II

(EROTIUM COMES OUT OF HER HOUSE)

*Erotium.* Anime mi, Menaechme, salve. *Pen.* Quid ego? *Er.* Extra numerum<sup>13</sup>  
es mihi.

*Men. I.* Sustine hoc,<sup>14</sup> Penicule; exuvias facere<sup>15</sup> quas vovi volo.

*Pen.* Cedo, sed obsecro (*I beg you*) hercle, salta (*dance*) sic cum palla postea. <sup>15</sup>

*Men. I.* Ego saltabo? Sanus hercle non es. *Pen.* Egone an tu magis?

Si non saltas, exue (*take it off*) igitur. *Men. I.* Nimio (*too much*) ego hanc  
periculo

Surripui hodie. *Pen.* Meo quidem animo ab Hippolyta subcingulum (*girdle*)

Hercules haud aequae magno umquam abstulit periculo. <sup>20</sup>

*Men. I.* Cape tibi hanc, quando una vivis meis morigera moribus.<sup>16</sup>

*Er.* Hoc animo decet animatos esse amatores probos.<sup>17</sup>

*Pen.* Qui quidem ad mendicitatem properent se detrudere.<sup>18</sup>

*Men. I.* Quattuor minis<sup>19</sup> ego emi istanc anno<sup>20</sup> uxori meae.

*Pen.* Quattuor minae perierunt plane (*clearly*), ut ratio redditur. <sup>25</sup>

*Men. I.* Scin<sup>21</sup> quid volo ego te accurare<sup>22</sup>? *Er.* Scio. Curabo quae voles.

*Men. I.* Jube igitur tribus nobis apud te<sup>23</sup> prandium accurarier.<sup>24</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Equivalent to sint; with Tibi, *May you have*.

<sup>2</sup> Good!

<sup>3</sup> We shall drink [from now] until morning; lit., until tomorrow's day star.

<sup>4</sup> You're right.

<sup>5</sup> Now shall I knock?

<sup>6</sup> From maneo.

<sup>7</sup> You've put the cup a mile away.

<sup>8</sup> Knock softly.

<sup>9</sup> of Samian pottery, common tableware.

<sup>10</sup> Look, she herself.

<sup>11</sup> Ah, see the sun!

<sup>12</sup> Isn't it positively dimmed?

<sup>13</sup> Supply amicorum, of my friends.

<sup>14</sup> Hold this thing (the cloak).

<sup>15</sup> to offer up the winnings, referring to the custom of offering part of a victor's winnings to the gods.

<sup>16</sup> since you alone are living according to my way of life.

<sup>17</sup> It is fitting that true lovers should be so disposed.

<sup>18</sup> Anyway, those who are eager to drive themselves to beggary.

<sup>19</sup> The mina was a Greek coin worth about \$18.00.

<sup>20</sup> a year ago.

<sup>21</sup> Scin = scisne.

<sup>22</sup> to prepare.

<sup>23</sup> at your house.

<sup>24</sup> Equivalent to accurari, to be prepared.

*Er.* Quando vis, veni; parata res erit. *Men. I.* Propera modo.  
 Sequere<sup>1</sup> tu. *Pen.* Ego hercle vero te et servabo et te sequar,  
 Neque hodie ut te perdam, meream deorum divitias mihi.<sup>2</sup>

(ALL GO OUT.)

## ACT II HALF AN HOUR LATER SCENE I

(MEN II, MESSENIO, AND PORTERS WITH LUGGAGE IN FRONT OF EROTIIUM'S HOUSE)

*Menaechmus II.* Voluptas nullast nautis, Messenio,

- <sup>5</sup> Major meo animo, quam cum ex alto procul  
 Terram conspiciunt. *Messenio.* Major,<sup>1</sup> non dicam dolo,<sup>4</sup>  
 Si adveniens terram videas, quae fuerit tua  
 Sed quaeso,<sup>3</sup> quam ob rem nunc Epidamnum venimus?  
 An quasi mare<sup>6</sup> omnes circumimus insulas?

<sup>10</sup> *Men. II.* Fratrem quaesitum<sup>7</sup> geminum germanum (*own*) meum.

*Messenio.* Nam quid modi futurumst illum quaerere<sup>8</sup>?

Hic annus sextust, postquam ei rei operam damus.<sup>9</sup>

Histros (*Istrians*), Hispanos, Massiliensis, Illyrios,

Mare superum<sup>10</sup> omne Graeciamque exoticam<sup>11</sup>

- <sup>15</sup> Orasque Italicas omnes, qua aggreditur mare,  
 Sumus circumvecti; si acum (*a needle*), credo, quaereres,  
 Acum invenisses, si appareret, jam diu.  
 Hominem inter vivos quaeritamus (*we are seeking*) mortuum;  
 Nam invenissemus jam diu, si viveret

<sup>20</sup> *Men. II.* Ergo istuc<sup>12</sup> quaero certum qui faciat mihi,

Qui sese dicat scire eum esse emortuum;

Operam praeterea numquam sumam quaerere.<sup>13</sup>

Verum (*truly*) aliter vivus numquam desistam exsequi;

Ego illum scio quam cordi (*heart*) sit carus meo.

<sup>25</sup> *Mes.* In scirpo nodum<sup>14</sup> quaeris. Quin<sup>15</sup> nos hinc domum

Redimus, nisi si historiam scripturi sumus?

*Men. II.* Dictum facessas; datum edas; caveas malo.<sup>16</sup>

Molestus ne sis, non tuo hoc fiet modo.<sup>17</sup> *Mes.* Em (*Look*),

Illo enim verbo esse me servum scio;

<sup>30</sup> Non potuit paucis plura plane (*clearly*) proloqui.

<sup>1</sup> Imperative, addressed to Peniculus.

<sup>2</sup> *I wouldn't lose you today for all the wealth of heaven.*

<sup>3</sup> Supply voluptas est.

<sup>4</sup> With non, frankly.

<sup>5</sup> Still, I ask [you].

<sup>6</sup> as if [we were] the sea.

<sup>7</sup> To seek; see page 365, 143.

<sup>8</sup> When shall we (will there be an end of trying to) find him? modi depends on quid, what end; quaerere = quaerendi and depends on modi.

<sup>9</sup> that we are giving attention.

<sup>10</sup> The Adriatic.

<sup>11</sup> Graeciam exoticam = Magnam Graeciam, i.e., southern Italy and Sicily.

<sup>12</sup> Therefore, with regard to that.

<sup>13</sup> After that I will never again undertake the task of trying to find him.

<sup>14</sup> a knot in a bulrush—something non-existent.

<sup>15</sup> Why don't we . . . ?

<sup>16</sup> Do what you're told, eat what you're given, look out for trouble.

<sup>17</sup> Don't be a nuisance; this isn't going to be done to suit you.

Verum tamen nequeo<sup>1</sup> contineri quin loquar.  
 Audin<sup>2</sup> Menaechme? Cum inspicio marsuppium,<sup>3</sup>  
 Viaticati hercle admodum aestive sumus.<sup>4</sup>  
 Ne (*surely*) tu hercle, opinor (*I think*), nisi domum reverteris,<sup>5</sup>  
 Ubi nil<sup>6</sup> habebis, geminum dum quaeres, gemes (*you will groan*). 5  
 Nam itast haec hominum natio; in Epidamnus  
 Voluptarii atque potatores<sup>7</sup> maximi;  
 Tum sycophantae et palpatores<sup>8</sup> plurimi  
 In urbe hac habitant; tum meretrices mulieres<sup>9</sup>  
 Nusquam perhibentur blandiores gentium.<sup>10</sup> 10  
 Propterea huic urbi nomen Epidamno inditumst,<sup>11</sup>  
 Quia nemo ferme (*almost*) huc sine damno (*harm*) devertitur.  
 Men. II. Ego istuc cavebo.<sup>12</sup> Cedo dum (*just hand over*) huc mihi marsuppium.  
 Mes. Quid eo vis? Men. II. Jam abs te metuo de verbis tuis.  
 Mes. Quid metuis? Men. II. Ne mihi damnum in Epidamno duis.<sup>13</sup> 15  
 Tu magnus amator mulierum es, Messenio,  
 Ego autem homo iracundus, animi perdit<sup>14</sup>;  
 Id utrumque,<sup>15</sup> argentum quando (*when*) habebo, caverò,  
 Ne tu delinquas<sup>16</sup> neve ego irascar<sup>17</sup> tibi.  
 Mes. Cape atque serva; me libente<sup>18</sup> feceris. 20

## SCENE II

(EROTIUM ENTERS)

Er. Sed ubi illest, quem coquus ante aedes esse ait<sup>19</sup>? Atque eccum (*him*)  
 video,  
 Qui mi est usui et plurimum prodest.  
 Item hinc ultro fit, ut meret, potissimus (*the most influential man*) nostrae  
 domi ut sit; 25  
 Nunc eum adibo; atque ultro adloquar.  
 Animule mi,<sup>20</sup> mihi mira videntur  
 Te hic stare foris (*out of doors*), fores cui pateant,  
 Magis quam domus tua domus cum haec tua sit.  
 Omne paratumst, ut jussisti 30  
 Atque ut voluisti, neque tibi

<sup>1</sup> Nequeo = non possum.

<sup>2</sup> Audin = audisne.

<sup>3</sup> Purse; compare marsupial.

<sup>4</sup> We are prepared for our journey in a summerish fashion; i.e., lightly, as summer clothes are light.

<sup>5</sup> Future perfect active.

<sup>6</sup> nil = nihil.

<sup>7</sup> Supply sunt; There are lovers of luxury and heavy drinkers.

<sup>8</sup> swindlers and spongers.

<sup>9</sup> courtesans.

<sup>10</sup> nowhere in the world are said to be more enticing.

<sup>11</sup> is given. The pun on Epidamno and damno is characteristic of Plautus.

<sup>12</sup> I'll be careful about that.

<sup>13</sup> duis = des.

<sup>14</sup> But I am an irascible man, with a hopelessly bad temper.

<sup>15</sup> both these dangers.

<sup>16</sup> that you don't do wrong.

<sup>17</sup> that I don't get angry at you.

<sup>18</sup> for all I care! Messenio is really aggrieved.

<sup>19</sup> the cook said was in front of the house. (Erotium is speaking from inside the door.)

<sup>20</sup> my darling.

Est ulla mora intus (*within*).

Prandium, ut iussisti, hic curatumst;

Ubi libet (*it is agreeable*), ire licet accubitum (*to the table*).

*Men. II.* Quicum haec mulier loquitur? *Er.* Equidem tecum. *Men. II.* Quid  
5       mecum tibi

Fuit umquam aut nunc est negoti<sup>1</sup>? *Er.* Quia pol te unum ex omnibus  
Venus me voluit magnificare (*to make much of*), neque id haud immerito tuo.<sup>2</sup>

Nam ecastor<sup>3</sup> solus benefactis tuis me florentem (*prosperous*) facis

*Men. II.* Certe haec mulier aut insana aut ebriast (*she is drunk*), Messenio,

10       Quaë hominem ignotum compellet (*addresses*) me tam familiariter.

*Mes* Dixin<sup>4</sup> ego istaec<sup>5</sup> hic solere fieri? Folia nunc cadunt,

Praeut,<sup>6</sup> si triduum hoc (*from now*) hic erimus; tum arbores in te cadent.

Nam ita sunt hic meretrices; omnes elecebrae argentariae<sup>7</sup>

Sed sine me dum<sup>8</sup> hanc compellare. Heus mulier, tibi dico *Er.* Quid est?

15       *Mes.* Ubi tu hunc hominem novisti? *Er.* Ibidem,<sup>9</sup> ubi hic me jam diu

In Epidamno. *Mes.* In Epidamno? Qui huc in hanc urbem pedem,<sup>10</sup>

Nisi hodie, numquam intro tetulit? *Er.* Heia, delicias facis.<sup>11</sup>

Mi Menaechme, quin, amabo, is intro?<sup>12</sup> Hic tibi erit rectius (*better*).

*Men. II.* Haec quidem edepol recte appellat meo me mulier nomine.

20       Nimis (*very much*) miror, quid hoc sit negoti. *Mes.* Oboluit (*she smells*)  
marsuppium

Huic istuc, quod habes. *Men. II.* Atque edepol tu me monuisti probe (*rightly*).

Accipe dum (*then*) hoc; jam scibo,<sup>13</sup> utrum haec me mage (*more*) amet an  
marsuppium.

25       *Er.* Eamus (*Let's go*) intro, ut prandeamus (*to lunch*) *Men. II.* Bene vocas;  
tam gratiast.<sup>14</sup>

*Er.* Cur igitur me tibi iussisti coquere (*to cook*) dudum<sup>15</sup> prandium?

*Men. II.* Egon<sup>16</sup> te jussi coquere? *Er.* Certe, tibi et parasito tuo

*Men. II.* Cui, malum,<sup>17</sup> parasito? Certe haec mulier non sanast satis.

30       *Er.* Peniculo. *Men. II.* Quis istest Peniculus? Qui extergentur baxeae<sup>18</sup>?

*Er.* Scilicet (*of course*) qui<sup>19</sup> dudum tecum venit, cum pallam mihi

Detulisti, quam ab uxore tua surripuisti. *Men. II.* Quid est?

<sup>1</sup> Partitive genitive with Quid; see page 345, 55. In Plautus' time the genitive singular of nouns ending in -ium or -ius was regularly -i instead of -ii.

<sup>2</sup> and not that you didn't have anything to do with that!

<sup>3</sup> The twin demi-gods Castor and Pollux were often called the Gemini. The English expression *By Jiminy!* may have come from *gemini*.

<sup>4</sup> Dixin = *nonne dixi*.

<sup>5</sup> such things.

<sup>6</sup> in comparison [with what would be likely to happen]

<sup>7</sup> gold-diggers, lit., silver-spongers.

<sup>8</sup> With imperative *sine*, then let me.

<sup>9</sup> The same place, compare *ibid*.

<sup>10</sup> With *intro tetulit*, set foot inside.

<sup>11</sup> Ha-ha! You're joking

<sup>12</sup> Why don't you go in, please?

<sup>13</sup> Scibo = *sciam*. In Plautus' time, third and fourth conjugation verbs often had future forms like first and second conjugation verbs.

<sup>14</sup> tam = *tamen*. No, thank you.

<sup>15</sup> a while ago.

<sup>16</sup> Egon = *ego + ne*.

<sup>17</sup> An oath; For what parasite?

<sup>18</sup> Lit., a little tail, a brush. Qui... *baxeae*, The one with which shoes are brushed?

<sup>19</sup> the one who.

Tibi pallam dedi, quam uxori meae surripui? Sanan<sup>1</sup> es?  
 Certe haec mulier cantherino ritu astans somniat.<sup>2</sup>  
*Er.* Qui (*Why*) libet ludibrio habere<sup>3</sup> me atque ire infitias<sup>4</sup> mihi  
 Facta quae sunt? *Men. II.* Dic quid est id quod negem, quod fecerim?  
*Er.* Pallam te hodie mihi dedisse uxoris. *Men. II.* Etiam nunc nego. 5  
 Ego quidem neque umquam uxorem habui neque habeo, neque huc  
 Umquam, postquam natus sum, intra portam penetravi (*have I set*) pedem.  
 Prandi (*I breakfasted*) in navi, inde huc sum egressus; te conveni. *Er.* Eccere<sup>5</sup>!  
 Perii misera, quam tu mihi nunc navem narras? *Men. II.* Ligneam,  
 Saepe tritam (*scraped*), saepe fixam (*pegged*), saepe excussam malleo.<sup>6</sup> 10  
 Quasi supellex pellionis, palus palo proximust.<sup>7</sup>  
*Er.* Jam amabo (*please*), desiste ludos facere<sup>8</sup> atque i hac (*this way*) mecum simul.  
*Men. II.* Nescio quem, mulier, alium hominem, non me quaeritas.  
*Er.* Non ego te novi, Menaechmum, Moscho prognatum (*born of*) patre,  
 Qui Syracusis perhibere<sup>9</sup> natus esse in Sicilia, 15  
 Ubi rex Agathocles<sup>10</sup> regnator fuit, et iterum Phintia,  
 Tertium Liparo, qui in morte regnum Hieroni tradidit,  
 Nunc Hierost? *Men. II.* Haud falsa, mulier, praedicas. *Mes.* Pro Iuppiter,  
 Num<sup>11</sup> istaec mulier illinc<sup>12</sup> venit, quae te novit tam cate<sup>13</sup>?  
*Men. II.* Hercle opinor, pernegari<sup>14</sup> non potest. *Mes.* Ne feceris. 20  
 Periisti, si intrassis intra limen.<sup>15</sup> *Men. II.* Quin tu tace modo;  
 Bene res geritur; assentabor,<sup>16</sup> quicquid (*whatever*) dicet, mulieri,  
 Si possum hospitium nancisci. Jam dudum, mulier, tibi  
 Non imprudens adversabar<sup>17</sup>; hunc metuebam, ne meae  
 Uxori renuntiaret de palla et de prandio. 25  
 Nunc, quando vis, eamus intro. *Er.* Etiam parasitum manes?  
*Men. II.* Neque ego illum maneo neque flocci facio,<sup>18</sup> neque si venerit,  
 Eum volo intromitti (*to be admitted*). *Er.* Ecastor haud invita fecero.  
 Sed scin quid te amabo ut facias<sup>19</sup>? *Men. II.* Impera quid vis modo.  
*Er.* Pallam illam quam dudum dederas, ad phrygionem (*embroiderer*) ut deferas, 30  
 Ut reconcinnetur<sup>20</sup> atque ut opera (*trimmings*) addantur quae volo.  
*Men. II.* Hercle qui (*how*) tu recte dicis; eadem opera ignorabitur,  
 Ne uxor cognoscat te habere, si in via conspexerit.  
*Er.* Ergo mox auferto tecum,<sup>21</sup> quando abibis. *Men. II.* Maxime.

<sup>1</sup> Equivalent to *Esne sana?*

<sup>2</sup> *is asleep standing up, horse fashion.*

<sup>3</sup> *do you want to make fun of.*

<sup>4</sup> *ire infitias = infitiri, to deny.*

<sup>5</sup> *Look!*

<sup>6</sup> *recalked; lit., beaten with a hammer.*

<sup>7</sup> *like a furrier's rack, peg close to peg.*

<sup>8</sup> *making jokes.*

<sup>9</sup> Second person passive; with *Qui*, *you*, *who are said*.

<sup>10</sup> Agathocles ruled Syracuse 317 to 289 B.C.; Hiero 265 to 215. Phintias and Liparo are unknown.

<sup>11</sup> *Implying a negative answer.*

<sup>12</sup> *from there.*

<sup>13</sup> *well.*

<sup>14</sup> *be denied any further.*

<sup>15</sup> *if you have crossed the threshold.*

<sup>16</sup> *I will agree with the woman (an aside to Messenio).*

<sup>17</sup> *I have knowingly opposed*

<sup>18</sup> *nor do I care a hair for him.*

<sup>19</sup> *do you know what I want you to do?*

<sup>20</sup> *to have it made over.*

<sup>21</sup> *Then, take it away with you soon.*

Er. Eamus intro. *Men. II.* Jam sequar te; hunc volo etiam colloqui.

Eho (*hey*), Messenio, accede huc. *Mes.* Quid negotist? *Men. II.* Suscipe.

*Mes.* Quid eo opust<sup>1</sup>? *Men. II.* Opus est. Scio ut me dices.<sup>2</sup> *Mes.* Tanto nequior.<sup>3</sup>

5 *Men. II.* Habeo praedam; tantum incepti operis.<sup>4</sup> I, quantum<sup>5</sup> potes.

Abduc istos in tabernam actutum deversoriam.<sup>6</sup>

Tu facito<sup>7</sup> ante solem occasum ut venias adversum<sup>8</sup> mihi.

(MEN. II AND ER. ENTER THE HOUSE MES. AND PORTERS GO OUT)

### ACT III SEVERAL HOURS LATER SCENE I

(MEN. II COMES OUT OF ER.'S HOUSE. PEN. JOINS HIM.)

*Men. II.* Quis hic est, qui adversus it mihi? *Pen.* Quid ais, homo

Levior quam pluma (*a feather*), pessime et nequissime,<sup>9</sup>

10 Flagitium hominis,<sup>10</sup> subdole<sup>11</sup> ac minimi preti?

Quid de te merui, qua me causa perderes (*did you lose me*)?

Ut (*How*) surripuisti te mihi dudum de foro;

Fecisti funus<sup>12</sup> me absente prandio?

Cur ausu's facere, cui ego aequae heres eram<sup>13</sup>?

15 *Men. II.* Adulescens, quaeso (*I ask you*), quid tibi mecumst rei,

Qui (*Why*) mihi male dicas<sup>14</sup> homini hic ignoto insciens?

An tibi malam rem<sup>15</sup> vis pro male dictis<sup>16</sup> dari?

*Pen.* Pol eam<sup>17</sup> quidem edepol te dedisse intellego.

*Men. II.* Responde, adulescens, quaeso, quid nomen tibist?

20 *Pen.* Etiam derides (*you mock*), quasi nomen non noveris?

*Men. II.* Non edepol ego te, quod sciam,<sup>18</sup> umquam ante hunc diem

Vidi neque novi; verum certe, quisquis (*whoever*) es,

Si aequum facias, mihi odiosus ne sis.

*Pen.* Menaechme, vigila. *Men. II.* Vigilo hercle equidem, quod sciam.

25 *Pen.* Non me novisti? *Men. II.* Non negem, si noverim.

*Pen.* Tuum parasitum non novisti? *Men. II.* Non tibi

Sanumst, adulescens, sinciput (*brain*) ut intellego.

*Pen.* Responde. Surripuistin uxori tuae

Pallam istanc hodie ac dedisti Erotio?

30 *Men. II.* Neque hercle ego uxorem habeo, neque ego Erotio

Dedi nec pallam surripui. Satin<sup>19</sup> sanus es?

<sup>1</sup> *What's the reason for it?*

<sup>2</sup> *what you will call me.*

<sup>3</sup> *So much the worse [for you]!*

<sup>4</sup> *I have begun so strong a fortification.*  
He means that he is sure of the booty (the cloak), because he has charmed the girl.

<sup>5</sup> *as fast as.*

<sup>6</sup> *Take those fellows (the sailors carrying the baggage) to an inn at once.*

<sup>7</sup> Equivalent to *fac*.

<sup>8</sup> *to meet.*

<sup>9</sup> Votive like *pessime*, modifying *homo*; *you good-for-nothing*.

<sup>10</sup> *a disgrace to mankind.*

<sup>11</sup> Supply *homo*; *you deceitful fellow*.

<sup>12</sup> *did you hold the funeral [of the food].*

<sup>13</sup> *[a feast] to which I had an equal right.*

<sup>14</sup> *you insult.*

<sup>15</sup> *a blow.*

<sup>16</sup> *for insults.*

<sup>17</sup> *eam* = *malam rem*.

<sup>18</sup> *so far as I know.*

<sup>19</sup> *Satin* (for *Satisne*) = *nonne*.

*Pen.* Numquam edepol quisquam me exorabit, quin tuae  
 Uxori rem omnem jam, ut sit gesta, eloquar.<sup>1</sup>  
 Omnes in te istaec recident<sup>2</sup> contumeliae.  
 Faxo<sup>3</sup> haud inultus prandium comederis.<sup>4</sup>

*Men. II.* Quid hoc est negoti? Satin, ut quemque conspikor,  
 Ita me ludificant<sup>5</sup>? Sed concrepuit (*creaked*) ostium.

5

(PEN GOES OUT.)

## SCENE II

(EROTIUM'S MAID COMES OUT OF THE HOUSE.)

*Ancilla.* Menaechme, amare ait te multum Erotium,<sup>6</sup>

Ut hoc una opera<sup>7</sup> sibi ad aurificem (*goldsmith*) deferas,

Atque huc ut addas auri pondo unciam (*ounce*)

Jubeasque spinter novum reconcinnarier.<sup>8</sup>

10

*Men. II.* Et istuc et aliud, si quid curari volet,

Me curaturum dicito,<sup>9</sup> quicquid volet.

*Anc.* Scin, quid hoc sit spinter? *Men. II.* Nescio, nisi aureum.

*Anc.* Hoc est, quod olim clanculum ex armario<sup>10</sup>

Te surripuisse ajebas uxori tuae.

15

*Men. II.* Numquam hercle factumst. *Anc.* Non meministi (*you remember*),  
 obsecro?

Redde igitur spinter, si non meministi. *Men. II.* Mane.

Immo (*yes*) equidem memini; nempe (*certainly*) hoc est quod illi dedi.

Istuc<sup>11</sup>; ubi illae armillae<sup>12</sup> sunt, quas una<sup>13</sup> dedi?

20

*Anc.* Numquam dedisti. *Men. II.* Nam (*but*) pol hoc una dedi.

*Anc.* Dicam curare<sup>14</sup>? *Men. II.* Dicito (*Say*), "Curabitur."

Et palla et spinter faxo referantur simul.

*Anc.* Amabo, mi Menaechme, inaures (*earrings*) da mihi

Faciendas pondo duum nummum, stalagmia,<sup>15</sup>

25

Ut te libenter videam, cum ad nos veneris.

*Men. II.* Fiat. Cedo (*Hand over*) aurum; ego manupretium<sup>16</sup> dabo.

*Anc.* Da sodes (*please*) abs te; poste<sup>17</sup> reddidero tibi.

*Men. II.* Immo (*No*), cedo abs te; ego post tibi reddam duplex.<sup>18</sup>

*Anc.* Non habeo. *Men. II.* At tu, quando habebis, tum dato.<sup>19</sup>

30

*Anc.* Numquid (*anything*) vis? (SHE GOES INTO THE HOUSE.)

<sup>1</sup> will persuade me not to tell . . .

<sup>2</sup> will fall back.

<sup>3</sup> I'll fix you!

<sup>4</sup> not with impunity you'll have consumed.

<sup>5</sup> Is everyone I see going to make a fool of me this way?

<sup>6</sup> Erotium earnestly begs you.

<sup>7</sup> at the same time (as the robe).

<sup>8</sup> the bracelet cleaned and mended; lit., made over new.

<sup>9</sup> Equivalent to dic, say.

<sup>10</sup> secretly from the treasure-chest.

<sup>11</sup> That's the one.

<sup>12</sup> bracelets, in the form of a serpent, worn high on the arm; the spinter was of elastic metal mesh, worn on the left arm.

<sup>13</sup> An adverb; at the same time.

<sup>14</sup> Elliptical; Shall I say you will take care of it?

<sup>15</sup> drops of four drachmas' weight; duum and nummum are old genitives.

<sup>16</sup> the price of making them.

<sup>17</sup> poste = postea.

<sup>18</sup> Menaechmus is teasing, as if he wanted to borrow money.

<sup>19</sup> dato = da.

*Men. II.* Haec me curaturum dicito<sup>1</sup>—

Ut, quantum possint quique liceant, veneant.<sup>2</sup>

Jamne abiit intro? Abiit, operuit (*she has shut*) fores.

Di me quidem omnes adjuvant, augent,<sup>3</sup> amant.

5 Sed quid ego cesso (*wait for*) dum datur mi occasio

Tempusque, abire ab his locis lenoniis (*vile*)?

Propera, Menaechme; fer pedem, profer gradum.<sup>4</sup>

Demam hanc coronam<sup>5</sup> atque abjiciam ad laevam<sup>6</sup> manum,

Ut, si quis sequatur, hac (*from here*) me abuisse censeant.

10 Ibo et conveniam servum, si potero, meum,

Ut haec quae bona dant di mihi, ex me sciat.

(THEY ALL GO OUT)

#### ACT IV SCENE I

(MEN. I AND PEN ENTER)

*Men. I.* Di illum omnes perdant (*confound*); ita mihi

Hunc hodie corrumpit (*he has wasted*) diem;

Meque adeo,<sup>7</sup> qui hodie forum

15 Umquam oculis inspexi meis.

Diem corrupti optimum.

Jussi adparari prandium,

Amica exspectat me, scio.

Ubi primumst licitum, ilico (*there*)

20 Properavi abire de foro.

Iratust credo nunc mihi;

Placabit palla quam dedi,

Quam hodie uxori abstuli atque detuli huic Erotio.

*Pen.* Quid ais? . . . Properato<sup>8</sup> absente me comesse prandium;

25 Post<sup>9</sup> ante aedes cum corona me derideto ebrius.<sup>10</sup>

*Men. I.* Neque edepol ego prandi neque hodie huc intro tetuli pedem.

*Pen.* Tun negas? *Men. I.* Nego hercle vero. *Pen.* Nihil hoc homine audacius.

Non ego te modo hic ante aedes cum corona florea<sup>11</sup>

Vidi astare, cum negabas mihi esse sanum sinciput

30 Et negabas me novisse, peregrinum (*foreigner*) aibas<sup>12</sup> esse te?

*Men. I.* Quin ut dudum diverti<sup>13</sup> abs te, redeo nunc demum domum.

*Pen.* Novi ego te. Non mihi censebas esse, qui<sup>14</sup> te ulciscerer;

Omnia hercle uxori dixi. *Men. I.* Quid dixisti? *Pen.* Nescio.

Eam ipse roga.

<sup>1</sup> say that I'll see that they—

<sup>2</sup> are sold as soon as possible at any price they will bring.

<sup>3</sup> increase my fortune.

<sup>4</sup> Lift up your feet! Be quick!

<sup>5</sup> I shall remove this garland.

<sup>6</sup> to the left. (By tradition, an exit to the left led to the town or forum; to the right, to the sea or out of town.)

<sup>7</sup> And me, too; supply di perdant.

<sup>8</sup> With comesse, Hurry and eat lunch (an aside).

<sup>9</sup> Post=postea.

<sup>10</sup> laugh at drunkenly.

<sup>11</sup> of flowers.

<sup>12</sup> aibas = ajebas; see page 343, 48

<sup>13</sup> Why, since I slipped away a little while ago.

<sup>14</sup> Ablative; qui=qua re or qua ratione.



*Men. I.* Male mi<sup>1</sup> uxor sese fecisse censet, cum exclusit foras,<sup>2</sup>  
 Quasi non habeam, quo intromittar, alium meliorem locum.  
 Si tibi displiceo (*I offend*), patiundum,<sup>3</sup> at placuero huic Erotio,  
 Quae me non excludet ab se, sed apud se occludet (*shuts me in*) domi.  
 Nunc ibo, orabo ut mihi pallam reddat, quam dudum dedi.  
 Aliam illi redimam meliorem Heus ecquis hic est janitor?  
 Aperite atque Erotium aliquis<sup>4</sup> evocate ante ostium (PENICULUS GOES OUT)

## SCENE II

(EROTIUM COMES OUT OF HER HOUSE)

*Er.* Quis hic me quaerit? *Men. I.* Sibi inimicus magis quam aetati tuae.<sup>6</sup>  
*Er.* Mi Menaechme, cur ante aedes astas? Sequere intro. *Men. I.* Mane.  
 Scin quid est, quod ego ad te venio? *Er.* Scio, ut tibi ex me sit volup.<sup>7</sup> 10  
*Men. I.* Immo edepol pallam illam, amabo te (*please*), quam tibi dudum dedi,  
 Mihi eam redde; uxor rescivit<sup>8</sup> rem omnem, ut factumst, ordine.  
 Ego tibi redimam bis tanto pluris pallam, quam voles.<sup>9</sup>  
*Er.* Tibi dedi equidem illam, ad phrygionem ut ferres, paulo prius  
 Et illud spinter, ut ad aurificem ferres, ut fieret novum. 15  
*Men. I.* Mihi tu ut dederis pallam et spinter? Numquam factum reperies.  
 Nam ego quidem postquam illam dudum tibi dedi atque abii ad forum,  
 Nunc redeo, nunc te postillac<sup>10</sup> video. *Er.* Video, quam rem agis;  
 Quia commisi (*I was trusting*), ut me defraudes, ad eam rem affectas viam.<sup>11</sup> 20  
*Men. I.* Neque edepol te defraudandi causa posco; quin (*but*) tibi  
 Dico uxorem rescivisse. *Er.* Nec te ultro oravi ut dares;  
 Tute<sup>12</sup> ultro ad me detulisti, dedisti eam dono mihi;  
 Eandem nunc reposcis; patiar. Tibi habe, aufer, utere (*use it*),  
 Vel tu, vel tua uxor, vel etiam in loculos compingite.<sup>13</sup> 25  
 Tu huc post hunc diem pedem intro non feres, ne frustra sis.<sup>14</sup> 25  
 Quando tu me bene merentem tibi habes despiciatui,<sup>15</sup>  
 Nisi feres argentum, frustra me ductare non potes.<sup>16</sup>  
 Aliam posthac invenito,<sup>17</sup> quam habeas frustratui.<sup>18</sup> (SHE GOES OUT)

*Men. I.* Nimis iracunde<sup>19</sup> hercle tandem Heus tu, tibi dico, mane.  
 Redi. Etiamne astas? Etiam audes mea reverti gratia<sup>20</sup>? 30  
 Abiit intro, occlusit (*closed up*) aedes. Nunc ego sum exclusissimus<sup>21</sup>;  
 Neque domi neque apud amicam mihi jam quicquam creditur.  
 Ibo et consulam hanc rem amicos, quid faciendum censeant. (HE GOES OUT)

<sup>1</sup> an injustice to me.

<sup>2</sup> when she shut [me] out.

<sup>3</sup> it must be endured

<sup>4</sup> Hello, who is the doorman here? (He knocks on the door.)

<sup>5</sup> With Aperite, Open the door, somebody.

<sup>6</sup> aetati tuae = tibi.

<sup>7</sup> you'll have a pleasant time with me.

<sup>8</sup> has found out.

<sup>9</sup> I'll buy you a cloak worth twice as much, whichever one you want.

<sup>10</sup> for the first time since then.

<sup>11</sup> you are directing your efforts.

<sup>12</sup> You yourself.

<sup>13</sup> lock it up in a chest.

<sup>14</sup> don't fool yourself.

<sup>15</sup> to be despised.

<sup>16</sup> you can't cheat me.

<sup>17</sup> after this, find.

<sup>18</sup> you may cheat.

<sup>19</sup> [You speak] too hastily.

<sup>20</sup> Won't you please come back for my sake.

<sup>21</sup> really shut out. (Erotium has slammed the door.)

# ACT V SCENE I

(THE DOCTOR AND THE OLD MAN ENTER)

*Medicus.* Quid esse illi morbi (*illness*) dixeras? Narra, senex.

Num larvatus (*bewitched*) aut cerritus (*crazy*)? Fac sciam.

Num eum veternus (*lethargy*) aut aqua intercus (*dropsy*) tenet?

*Senex.* Quin ea te causa duco, ut id dicas mihi

5 Atque illum ut sanum (*well*) facias. *Med.* Perfacile id quidemst.

Sanum futurum,<sup>1</sup> mea ego id promitto fide.

*Sen.* Magna cum cura ego illum curari volo.

*Med.* Quin suspirabo plus sescenta in die<sup>2</sup>;

Ita ego eum cum cura magna curabo tibi.

10 *Sen.* Atque eccum (*see*) ipsum hominem. Observemus, quam rem agat.<sup>3</sup>

(THEY STEP BACK INTO THE NICHE PROVIDED ON THE STAGE FOR EAVESDROPPERS)

## SCENE II

(MEN. I ENTERS. BEFORE THE CLOSE OF HIS SPEECH SEN. AND MED. COME OUT)

*Men. I.* Edepol ne hic dies perversus atque adversus mi obtigit<sup>4</sup>;

Quae me clam ratus sum<sup>5</sup> facere, omnia ea fecit palam

Parasitus, qui me complevit flagiti et formidinis,<sup>6</sup>

Meus Ulixes,<sup>7</sup> suo qui regi tantum concivit mali<sup>8</sup>;

15 Quem ego hominem, siquidem<sup>9</sup> vivo, vita evolvam sua<sup>10</sup>—

Sed, ego stultus sum, qui illius esse dico, quae meast<sup>11</sup>;

Meo cibo et sumptu (*expense*) educatust. Anima privabo virum.<sup>12</sup>

Condigne<sup>13</sup> autem haec meretrix fecit, ut mos est meretricius;

Quia rogo, palla ut referatur rursum ad uxorem meam,

20 Mihi se ait dedisse. Eu edepol<sup>14</sup> ne (*indeed*) ego homo vivo miser.

*Sen.* Audin<sup>15</sup> quae loquitur? *Med.* Se miserum praedicat. *Sen.* Adeas velim.<sup>16</sup>

*Med.* Salvus sis, Menaechme. Quaeso, cur apertas (*do you bare*) brachium?

Non tu scis, quantum isti morbo nunc tuo facias mali?

*Men. I.* Quin tu (*Why don't you*) te suspendis? *Sen.* Ecquid (*What*) sentis?

25 *Med.* Quidni<sup>17</sup> sentiam?

Non potest haec res ellebori jugero obtinerier.<sup>18</sup>

Sed quid ais, Menaechme? *Men. I.* Quid vis? *Med.* Dic mihi hoc quod te rogo;

<sup>1</sup> that he will get well.

<sup>2</sup> my frequent visits will make me puff.

<sup>3</sup> what he's doing.

<sup>4</sup> Good gracious, this has been a perverse and troublesome day for me; lit., this . . . day has happened to me.

<sup>5</sup> I intended.

<sup>6</sup> with shame and fear.

<sup>7</sup> My clever fellow; Ulysses was crafty.

<sup>8</sup> who (like Ulysses) stirred up so much trouble for his king; i.e., for his patron.

<sup>9</sup> if indeed.

<sup>10</sup> I'll kill; lit., I'll roll him out of life.

<sup>11</sup> who say that that is his which is mine; he means the life of Peniculus.

<sup>12</sup> I'll exterminate the fellow; lit., I'll deprive the man of his life.

<sup>13</sup> very properly.

<sup>14</sup> Good gracious!

<sup>15</sup> Audin = Audisne (to the doctor).

<sup>16</sup> I want you to go to him.

<sup>17</sup> What do I think?—rhetorical question.

<sup>18</sup> This cure (res) cannot be effected with an acre of hellebore. In ancient times hellebore was used as medicine for insanity.

Album an atrum vinum potas<sup>1</sup>? *Men. I.* Quin tu is in malam crucem?<sup>2</sup>  
*Med.* Jam hercle ocepstat insanire primulum.<sup>3</sup> *Men. I.* Quin tu me interrogas,  
 Purpureum panem an puniceum soleam ego esse an luteum<sup>4</sup>?  
 Soleamne esse aves squamosas (*scaly*), piscis pennatos<sup>5</sup>? *Sen. Papae* (*How strange*)!  
 Audin tu, ut deliramenta (*nonsense*) loquitur? Quid cessas<sup>6</sup> dare  
 Potionis aliquid, priusquam percipit insania?  
*Med.* Mane modo; etiam percontabor (*I will ask*) alia. *Sen.* Occidis fabulans.<sup>7</sup>  
*Med.* Dic mihi hoc. Solent tibi umquam oculi duri fieri?  
*Men. I.* Quid? Tu me locustam<sup>8</sup> censes esse, homo ignavissime<sup>9</sup>? 10  
*Med.* Dic mihi, enumquam (*ever*) intestina tibi crepant (*rumble*), quod sentias?  
*Men. I.* Ubi satur<sup>10</sup> sum, nulla crepant; quando esurio,<sup>11</sup> tum crepant.  
*Med.* Hoc quidem edepol haud pro (*like*) insano verbum respondit mihi.  
 Perdormiscin<sup>12</sup> usque ad lucem? Facilen tu dormis cubans<sup>13</sup>?  
*Men. I.* Perdormisco, si resolvi (*I have paid*) argentum, cui debeo— 15  
 Qui te Juppiter dique omnes, percontator, perduint.<sup>14</sup>  
*Med.* Nunc homo insanire ocepstat; de illis verbis cave tibi.  
*Sen.* Immo Nestor<sup>15</sup> nunc quidemst de verbis, praetudum fuit<sup>16</sup>;  
 Nam dudum uxorem suam esse ajebat rabiosam (*mad*) canem.  
*Men. I.* Quid ego dixi? *Sen.* Insanu's, inquam (*I say*). *Men. I.* Egone? 20  
*Sen.* Tu istic, qui mihi  
 Etiam me junctis quadrigis minitatu's prosternere.<sup>17</sup>  
 Egomet (*I myself*) haec te vidi facere; egomet haec te arguo.<sup>18</sup>  
*Men. I.* At ego te sacram coronam surripuisse Jovis scio  
 Et ob eam rem in carcerem te esse compactum (*locked up*) scio; 25  
 Et postquam es emissus, caesum virgis sub furca scio<sup>19</sup>;  
 Tum patrem occidis et matrem vendidisse etiam scio.  
 Satin haec pro sano<sup>20</sup> male dicta male dictis respondeo?  
*Sen.* Obsecro hercle, medice, propere (*quickly*), quicquid facturum's, face.  
 Non vides hominem insanire? *Med.* Scin quid facias optimumst? 30  
 Ad me face ut deferatur. *Sen.* Itane censes? *Med.* Quippini<sup>21</sup>?  
 Ibi meo arbitratu<sup>22</sup> potero curare hominem. *Sen.* Age, ut libet.<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Do you drink white or red (lit., black) wine?

<sup>2</sup> Why don't you go to the devil?

<sup>3</sup> By George, he's beginning to rave a little already.

<sup>4</sup> whether I'm accustomed to eat purple, red, or yellow bread. Esse is from edo, not sum.

<sup>5</sup> feathered fish.

<sup>6</sup> Why do you hesitate?

<sup>7</sup> You're killing [me] with your chatter.

<sup>8</sup> locusta, a kind of shellfish (a pun).

<sup>9</sup> you fool.

<sup>10</sup> full of food.

<sup>11</sup> when I'm hungry.

<sup>12</sup> Do you sleep through?

<sup>13</sup> when you lie down.

<sup>14</sup> May Jupiter and all the gods condemn you, you inquisitive fellow.

<sup>15</sup> Nestor was the wise old adviser of the Greeks at Troy.

<sup>16</sup> compared with what he was before.

<sup>17</sup> Yes, you, who threatened that you'd throw me under your horses' feet.

<sup>18</sup> I make these charges against you.

<sup>19</sup> I know you've been flogged; lit., I know you've been beaten with rods under the fork (an instrument of torture).

<sup>20</sup> as a sane man.

<sup>21</sup> Why not?

<sup>22</sup> as I think best.

<sup>23</sup> Well, as you like.

*Med.* Elleborum potabis faxo<sup>1</sup> aliquos viginti dies.

*Men. I.* At ego te pendentem fodiam stimulis<sup>2</sup> trīginta dies.

*Med. I.* arcesse homines, qui illunc (*him*) ad me deferant. *Sen.* Quot sunt satis?

5 *Med.* Proinde ut insanire video,<sup>3</sup> quattuor, nihilo minus.

*Sen.* Jam hic erunt. Adserva tu istunc,<sup>4</sup> medice. *Med.* Immo ibo domum  
Ut parentur, quibus paratis opus est.<sup>5</sup> Tu servos jube.

Hunc ad me ferant. *Sen.* Jam ego illic faxo erit.<sup>6</sup> *Med.* Abeo. *Sen.* Vale.

*Men. I.* Abiit socerus,<sup>7</sup> abiit medicus; solus sum. Pro Juppiter,

10 Quid illuc est,<sup>8</sup> quod me hisce<sup>9</sup> homines insanire praedicant?

Nam equidem, postquam (*since*) natus sum, numquam aegrotavi<sup>10</sup> unum diem.

Neque ego insanio neque pugnas neque ego lites coepio<sup>11</sup>

Salvus salvos alios video, novi ego homines, adloquor.

An<sup>12</sup> illi perperam<sup>13</sup> insanire me ajunt, ipsi insaniunt?

15 Quid ego nunc faciam? Domum ire cupio; uxor non sinit,<sup>14</sup>

Huc autem nemo intromittit; nimis proventumst nequiter.<sup>15</sup>

Hic ero usque<sup>16</sup>; ad noctem saltem,<sup>17</sup> credo, intromittar domum.

(MED AND SEN GO OUT)

### SCENE III

(FOUR SLAVES ENTER AND SEIZE MEN I)

*Sen.* Per ego vobis deos atque homines dico, ut imperium meum

Sapienter habeatis curae, quae imperavi atque impero<sup>18</sup>

20 Facite illic homo jam in medicinam ablatu sublimen sit,<sup>19</sup>

Nisi quidem vos vestra crura (*legs*) aut latera nihili penditis.<sup>20</sup>

Cave quisquam, quod illic minitetur, vestrum flocci fecerit.<sup>21</sup>

Quid<sup>22</sup> statis? Quid dubitatis? Jam sublimen raptum oportuit.<sup>23</sup>

Ego ibo ad medicum; praesto ero illi,<sup>24</sup> cum venietis. *Men. I.* Occidi (*I'm*  
25 *dying*).

<sup>1</sup> You will drink hellebore, I promise you; i.e., a remedy for insanity.

<sup>2</sup> I'll prick you with goads as you hang.

<sup>3</sup> In proportion to his madness; lit., Accordingly, as I see him rave.

<sup>4</sup> Watch him.

<sup>5</sup> to make the necessary preparations; lit., to prepare what must be prepared.

<sup>6</sup> I'll see that he's there.

<sup>7</sup> socerus = socer, father-in-law.

<sup>8</sup> Why is it?

<sup>9</sup> hisce = hi.

<sup>10</sup> have I been sick.

<sup>11</sup> nor do I start fights or quarrels.

<sup>12</sup> Translate as or, joining the two questions.

<sup>13</sup> falsely.

<sup>14</sup> From sino, allow.

<sup>15</sup> things have turned out horribly; lit., it has turned out very badly.

<sup>16</sup> I'll stay right here

<sup>17</sup> at all events.

<sup>18</sup> ut . . . impero, that you wisely take good care to follow my orders. He sententiously addresses the lorarii, slave-floggers.

<sup>19</sup> have that man carried to the clinic on your shoulders (lit., aloft).

<sup>20</sup> you don't give a hang for.

<sup>21</sup> (Let each of you) beware of paying any attention to what he threatens.

<sup>22</sup> Why?

<sup>23</sup> he ought already to have been hoisted on your shoulders.

<sup>24</sup> I'll be there ahead of you.

Quid hoc est negoti? Quid illisce<sup>1</sup> homines ad me currunt, obsecro?  
 Quid vultis vos? Quid quaeritis?<sup>2</sup> Quid me circumstistis?  
 Quo rapitis me? Quo fertis me? Perii. Obsecro vestram fidem (*help*),  
 Epidamnienses, subvenite,<sup>3</sup> cives. Quin me mittitis<sup>4</sup>?

(MES ENTERS AND DRIVES OFF THE SLAVES.)

*Mes.* Pro di immortales, obsecro, quid ego oculis aspicio meis? 5

Erum meum indignissime nescio qui sublimen ferunt.<sup>5</sup>

*Men. I.* Ecquis suppétias mi audet ferre<sup>6</sup>? *Mes.* Ego, ere (*master*), audacissime.

O facinus indignum et malum, Epidamnii cives, erum

Meum hic in pacato oppido luci deripier<sup>7</sup> in via, 10

Qui liber ad vos venerit.

Mittite istunc.<sup>8</sup> *Men. I.* Obsecro te, quisquis es, operam mihi ut des,<sup>9</sup>

Neu sinas<sup>10</sup> in me insigne (*plainly*) fieri tantam injuriam.

*Mes.* Immo et operam dabo et defendam et subvenibo sedulo.<sup>11</sup>

Numquam te patiar perire, me perire aequius. 15

Eripe oculum istic,<sup>12</sup> ab umero qui tenet, ere, te obsecro.

Hisce ego jam sementem in ore faciam pgnosque obseram.<sup>13</sup>

Maximo hercle hodie malo vestro istunc fertis<sup>14</sup>; mittite.

*Men. I.* Teneo ego huic oculum. *Mes.* Face ut oculi locus<sup>15</sup> in capite appareat.

Vos scelesti (*rogues*), vos rapacis (*rascals*), vos praedones (*thieves*). *Lorarii.* 20  
 Perimus.

Obsecro hercle. *Mes.* Mittite ergo (*then*). *Men. I.* Quid me vobis tactiost<sup>16</sup>?

Pecte pugnis.<sup>17</sup> *Mes.* Agite, abite, fugite hinc in malam crucem.<sup>18</sup>

Em tibi<sup>19</sup> etiam (MEN. KICKS THE LAST ONE) quia postremus (*last*) cedis, hoc  
 praemi feres. 25

Nimis bene ora commetavi<sup>20</sup> atque ex mea sententia.

Edepol, ere, ne tibi suppetias temperi adveni modo.<sup>21</sup>

*Men. I.* At (*Now*) tibi di semper, adulescens, quisquis es, faciant bene;

Nam absque te esset,<sup>22</sup> hodie numquam ad solem occasum viverem.

*Mes.* Ergo (*Then*) edepol, si recte facias, ere, me emittas manu.<sup>23</sup> 30

<sup>1</sup> illisce = illi. The slaves are trying to rush him off his feet.

<sup>2</sup> are you looking for?

<sup>3</sup> come to my aid.

<sup>4</sup> Why don't you let me go?

<sup>5</sup> Some fellows—I don't know who—are carrying off my master on their shoulders. What a crime!

<sup>6</sup> Who's brave enough to help me?

<sup>7</sup> should be seized by daylight; the subject of the infinitive deripier is erum.

<sup>8</sup> Let him go.

<sup>9</sup> I beseech you, whoever you are, to give me help.

<sup>10</sup> and don't let.

<sup>11</sup> I will come to your aid eagerly.

<sup>12</sup> from that fellow.

<sup>13</sup> I'll now make a sowing in their faces and plant my fists.

<sup>14</sup> By Hercules, you're carrying him off today at very great loss to yourselves.

<sup>15</sup> eye-socket.

<sup>16</sup> Why do you touch me?

<sup>17</sup> Work them over with your fists.

<sup>18</sup> out of here to the devil.

<sup>19</sup> Take that! Lit., That for you!

<sup>20</sup> I have given their faces a good going-over.

<sup>21</sup> surely I came to your aid just in the nick of time.

<sup>22</sup> were it not for you.

<sup>23</sup> you will set me free.

*Men. I.* Liberem ego te? *Mes.* Verum (*yes*), quandoquidem <sup>1</sup> ere, te servavi.

*Men. I.* Quid est?

Adulescens, erras. *Mes.* Quid, erro? *Men. I.* Per Jovem adjuro patrem

Me erum tuum non esse. *Mes.* Non taces? *Men. I.* Non mentior<sup>2</sup>;

5 *Nec meus servus umquam tale fecit quale tu mihi.*<sup>3</sup>

*Mes.* Sic sine igitur, si tuum negas me esse, abire liberum.

*Men. I.* Mea quidem hercle causa liber esto<sup>4</sup> atque ito<sup>5</sup> quo voles.

*Mes.* Nemp' jubes<sup>6</sup>? *Men. I.* Jubeo hercle, si quid imperist in te mihi.<sup>7</sup>

*Mes.* Salve, mi patrone.<sup>8</sup>—"Cum tu liber es, Messenio,

10 Gaudeo."—Credo hercle vobis.—Sed, patrone, te obsecro,

Ne minus imperes mihi,<sup>9</sup> quam cum tuus servus fui.

Apud te habitabo et, quando ibis, una tecum ibo domum.

*Men. I.* Minime. *Mes.* Nunc ibo in tabernam, vasa (*baggage*) atque argentum tibi

15 Referam. Rectest obsignatum in vidulo marsuppium

Cum viatico<sup>10</sup>; id tibi jam huc afferam. *Men. I.* Affer strenue (*quickly*).

*Mes.* Salvum tibi ita, ut mihi dedisti, reddibo. Hic me mane.<sup>11</sup>

*Men. I.* Nimia mira mihi quidem hodie exorta sunt<sup>12</sup> miris modis.

Alii me negant eum esse qui sum atque excludunt foras,<sup>13</sup>

20 Etiam hic servum se meum esse aibat quem ego emisi manu.

Is ait se mihi allaturum cum argento marsuppium.

Id si attulerit, dicam ut a me abeat liber quo volet,

Ne tum, quando sanus factus sit, a me argentum petat.

Socer et medicus me insanire ajebant. Quid sit, mira sunt.<sup>14</sup>

25 Haec nihilo esse mihi videntur setius quam somnia.<sup>15</sup>

Nunc ibo intro ad hanc meretricem, quamquam suscenset mihi,<sup>16</sup>

Si possum exorare,<sup>17</sup> ut pallam reddat, quam referam domum.

(MEN. I GOES INTO EROTIIUM'S HOUSE. THE SLAVES RUN AWAY.)

#### SCENE IV

(MEN. II AND MES. ENTER.)

*Men. II.* Men<sup>18</sup> hodie usquam convenisse te, audax, audes dicere,

Postquam adversum mi imperavi ut huc venires? *Mes.* Quin modo<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *since.*

<sup>2</sup> *I'm not telling a lie.*

<sup>3</sup> *did for me what you have done.*

<sup>4</sup> *be; imperative.*

<sup>5</sup> *go; imperative.*

<sup>6</sup> *Is that an order?*

<sup>7</sup> *if I have any control over you.*

<sup>8</sup> *patron.* Since a manumitted slave did not have citizenship, he required the help and protection of a citizen. His former master usually became his patron.

<sup>9</sup> *give me orders as freely.*

<sup>10</sup> *The purse with your money is locked up tight in the trunk.*

<sup>11</sup> *Wait for me here.*

<sup>12</sup> *Too many strange things have happened to me today.*

<sup>13</sup> *shut the door in my face.*

<sup>14</sup> *mira sunt* = *mirum est.*

<sup>15</sup> *like a dream.*

<sup>16</sup> *she is angry with me.*

<sup>17</sup> *persuade her.*

<sup>18</sup> *men* = *me* + *ne*, sign of a question.

<sup>19</sup> *Not only that, but.*

Eripui homines qui ferebant te sublimen quattuor,  
 Apud hasce aedes.<sup>1</sup> Tu clamabas deum<sup>2</sup> fidem atque hominum omnium,  
 Cum ego accurro teque eripio vi pugnando ingratiis.<sup>3</sup>  
 Ob eam rem, quia te servavi, me amisisti<sup>4</sup> liberum.  
 Cum argentum dixi me petere et vasa, tu quantum potest  
 Praecucurristi obviam<sup>5</sup> ut, quae fecisti, infitias<sup>6</sup> eas.  
*Men. II.* Liberum ego te jussi abire? *Mes.* Certe. *Men. II.* Quin certissimumst  
 Mepte<sup>7</sup> potius fieri servum, quam te umquam emittam manu.  
 (MEN. II GOES OUT.)

## SCENE V

(MEN. I, MES., AND MEN. II ENTER. MEN. I SPEAKS ANGRILY TO ER.)

*Men. I.* Si vultis per oculos jurare, nihilo hercle ea causa magis  
 Facietis ut ego hinc hodie abstulerim pallam et spinter, pessimae.  
*Mes.* Pro di immortales, quid ego video? *Men. II.* Quid vides? *Mes.* Specu-  
 lum tuum.<sup>8</sup>  
*Men. II.* Quid negotist? *Mes.* Tuast imago; tam consimilest quam potest.  
*Men. II.* Pol profecto (*certainly*) haud est dissimilis, meam cum formam  
 noscito.<sup>9</sup>  
*Men. I.* O adulescens, salve, qui me servavisti, quisquis es.  
*Mes.* Adulescens, quaeso hercle, eloquere (*tell*) tuum mihi nomen, nisi piget.<sup>10</sup>  
*Men. I.* Non edepol ita promeruisti<sup>11</sup> de me, ut pigeat quae velis  
 Obsequi.<sup>12</sup> Mihist<sup>13</sup> Menaechmo<sup>14</sup> nomen. *Men. II.* Immo<sup>15</sup> edepol mihi.  
*Men. I.* Siculus (*Sicilian*) sum Syracusanus. *Men. II.* Eadem urbs et patriast  
 mihi.  
*Men. I.* Quid ego ex te audio? *Men. II.* Hoc quod res est. *Mes.* Novi  
 equidem hunc; erus est meus.  
 Ego quidem hujus servus sum; sed me esse hujus<sup>16</sup> credidi.  
 Ego hunc censebam te esse; huic etiam exhibui negotium.<sup>17</sup>  
 Quaeso ignoscas, si quid stulte dixi atque imprudens tibi.  
*Men. II.* Delirare mihi videre.<sup>18</sup> Non commemorinisti<sup>19</sup> simul  
 Te hodie mecum exire ex navi? *Mes.* Enim vero aequum postulas.<sup>20</sup>  
 Tu erus es; tu servum quaere. Tu salveto; tu vale.

<sup>1</sup> in front of this very house.

<sup>2</sup> Equivalent to *deorum*.

<sup>3</sup> against their wills.

<sup>4</sup> you have let me go.

<sup>5</sup> you ran ahead to meet me.

<sup>6</sup> you might deny.

<sup>7</sup> Equivalent to *me ipsum*.

<sup>8</sup> Your double; lit., your image (as in a mirror).

<sup>9</sup> I recognize.

<sup>10</sup> If it's not too much trouble; lit., If it isn't annoying.

<sup>11</sup> you have deserved.

<sup>12</sup> to do as a favor.

<sup>13</sup> Mihist = mihi + est.

<sup>14</sup> Dative in apposition with *Mihi*; My name is *Menaechmus*.

<sup>15</sup> No, it isn't!

<sup>16</sup> The first *hujus* indicates *Menaechmus I*, the second *hujus*, *Menaechmus II*.

<sup>17</sup> I caused him trouble.

<sup>18</sup> You seem to me to be raving mad.

<sup>19</sup> Don't you remember?

<sup>20</sup> Fair enough!

Hunc ego esse ajo Menaechmum. *Men. I.* At ego me.<sup>1</sup> *Men. II.* Quae haec fabulast?

Tu's Menaechmus?<sup>2</sup> *Men. I.* Me esse dico, Moscho progenerum patre.<sup>3</sup> *Men. II.* Tun<sup>4</sup> meo patre's progenerum? *Men. I.* Immo equidem, adulescens, meo.

Tuum tibi neque occupare neque praeripere postulo.<sup>5</sup>

*Mes.* Di immortales, spem insperatam date mihi, quam suspicor.

Nam nisi me animus fallit, hi sunt gemini germani<sup>6</sup> duo;

Nam et patrem et patriam commemorant pariter quae fuerint sibi.

10 Sevocabo eum.<sup>7</sup> Menaechme. *Men. I et II.* Quid vis? *Mes.* Non ambos volo, Sed uter vestrumst adfectus<sup>8</sup> mecum navi. *Men. I.* Non ego.

*Men. II.* At ego. *Mes.* Te volo igitur. Huc concede (*Come here*). *Men. II.* Concessi. Quid est?

*Mes.* Illic homo<sup>9</sup> aut sycophanta<sup>10</sup> aut geminus est frater tuus.

15 Nam ego hominem hominis<sup>11</sup> similiorem numquam vidi alterum, Neque aqua aquae nec lactis<sup>12</sup> est lactis, crede mi, usquam similis Quam hic tuist tuque hujus autem; post (*besides*) eandem patriam ac patrem Memorat. Melius nos adire atque hunc percontarier.<sup>13</sup>

*Men. II.* Hercle qui<sup>14</sup> tu me admonuisti<sup>15</sup> recte et habeo gratiam.

20 Perge operam dare,<sup>16</sup> obsecro hercle; liber esto, si invenis Hunc meum fratrem esse. *Mes.* Spero. *Men. II.* Et ego item spero fore.

*Mes.* Quid ais tu? Menaechmum, opinor, te vocari dixeras.

*Men. I.* Ita vero. *Mes.* Huic item Menaechmo nomen est. In Sicilia Te Syracusis natum esse dixisti; hic natust ibi.

25 Moschum tibi patrem fuisse dixisti<sup>17</sup>; huic itidem<sup>18</sup> fuit. Nunc operam<sup>19</sup> potestis ambo et mihi dare et vobis simul. *Men. I.* Promeruisti ut ne quid ores, quod velis quin impetres.<sup>20</sup> Tam quasi<sup>21</sup> me emeris argento, liber servibo<sup>22</sup> tibi.

*Mes.* Spes mihist vos inventuros<sup>23</sup> fratres germanos (*real*) duos

30 Geminos, una matre natos et patre uno uno die.

<sup>1</sup> But I say that I am.

<sup>2</sup> Tu's = tu es.

<sup>3</sup> the son of my father, Moschus.

<sup>4</sup> Tun = tu + ne, the sign of a question.

<sup>5</sup> I don't wish to claim your father, nor to take him away from you.

<sup>6</sup> brothers.

<sup>7</sup> I will call my master aside.

<sup>8</sup> the one of you who was transported.

<sup>9</sup> That fellow.

<sup>10</sup> a fraud.

<sup>11</sup> Plautus uses the genitive with *similis* and *dissimilis*, where we might expect the dative.

<sup>12</sup> milk.

<sup>13</sup> to interrogate; equivalent to *percontari* in classical Latin.

<sup>14</sup> With Hercle, By George, how.

<sup>15</sup> you have advised.

<sup>16</sup> Help me a little more; lit., continue to give help.

<sup>17</sup> dixti = dixisti.

<sup>18</sup> likewise.

<sup>19</sup> With dare, to help.

<sup>20</sup> You have earned the right to get what you want, anything you ask; lit., You have deserved not to ask for anything you want without getting it.

<sup>21</sup> Just as if.

<sup>22</sup> For serviam, I will serve.

<sup>23</sup> Supply *esse* for the future infinitive.



*Men. I.* Mira memoras. Utinam (*Oh that*) efficere, quod pollicitu's, possis.  
*Mes.* Possum. Sed nunc agite uterque id quod rogabo, dicite.  
*Men. I.* Ubi libet (*it pleases you*), roga; respondebo, nil reticebo<sup>1</sup> quod sciam.  
*Mes.* Est tibi nomen Menaechmo? *Men. I.* Fateor.<sup>2</sup> *Mes.* Est itidem tibi?  
*Men. II* Est *Mes* Patrem fuisse Moschum tibi ais? *Men. I* Ita vero 5  
*Men. II* Et mihi.  
*Mes.* Esne tu Syracusanus? *Men. I.* Certe. *Mes.* Quid tu? *Men. II.*  
 Quippini?  
*Mes.* Optime usque adhuc conveniunt signa. Porro (*Then*) operam date  
 Quid longissime meministi,<sup>3</sup> dic mihi, in patria tua? 10  
*Men. I* Cum patre ut abii Tarentum ad mercatum,<sup>4</sup> postea  
 Inter homines me deerrare<sup>5</sup> a patre atque inde avehi.<sup>6</sup>  
*Men. II.* Juppiter supreme, serva me. *Mes.* Quid clamas? Quin taces?  
 Quot eras annos natus cum te pater a patria avehit?  
*Men. I.* Septuennis<sup>7</sup>; nam tunc dentes mihi cadebant primulum.<sup>9</sup> 15  
 Neque patrem numquam postilla (*thereafter*) vidi. *Mes.* Quid? Vos tum  
 patri  
 Filii quot eratis? *Men. I.* Ut nunc maxime memini (*I remember*), duo.  
*Mes.* Uter eratis, tu an ille, major? *Men. I.* Aeque<sup>10</sup> ambo pares.  
*Mes.* Qui (*How*) id potest? *Men. I.* Gemini ambo eramus. *Men. II.* Di me 20  
 servatum volunt.<sup>11</sup>  
*Mes* Si interpellas,<sup>12</sup> ego tacebo. *Men. II.* Potius taceo. *Mes.* Dic mihi:  
 Uno nomine ambo eratis? *Men. I.* Minime; nam mihi hoc erat,  
 Quod nunc est, Menaechmo; illum tum vocabant Sosiclem.  
*Men. II.* Signa agnovi<sup>13</sup>; contineri quin complectar non queo.<sup>14</sup> 25  
 Mi germane<sup>15</sup> gemine frater, salve (*welcome*); ego sum Sosicles.  
*Men. I* Quo modo igitur post Menaechmo nomen est factum tibi?  
*Men. II* Postquam ad nos renuntiatumst te deerrasse<sup>16</sup> a patre  
 Et surruptum<sup>17</sup> ab homine ignoto et patrem esse mortuum,  
 Avus noster mutavit<sup>18</sup>; quod tibi nomen est, fecit mihi.<sup>19</sup> 30  
*Men. I.* Credo ita esse factum ut dicis. Sed mi hoc responde. *Men. II.* Roga.  
*Men. I.* Quid erat nomen nostrae matri? *Men. II.* Teuximarchae. *Men. I.*  
 Convenit (*It fits*).

<sup>1</sup> I will hold back nothing.

<sup>2</sup> I admit it.

<sup>3</sup> What is your earliest memory? Lit.,  
 What do you remember most distantly?

<sup>4</sup> on a business trip; lit., to the market  
 place

<sup>5</sup> From de+erro, that I wandered away.

<sup>6</sup> was carried off.

<sup>7</sup> Equivalent to septem+annos.

<sup>8</sup> then.

<sup>9</sup> With cadebant, were just beginning to  
 fall out.

<sup>10</sup> Omit in translation

<sup>11</sup> The gods are on my side! Lit., wish  
 me saved

<sup>12</sup> you interrupt.

<sup>13</sup> I recognize the proofs.

<sup>14</sup> I cannot refrain from embracing him.

<sup>15</sup> My very own

<sup>16</sup> For te deerravisse, you wandered away.

<sup>17</sup> Supply esse; you were picked up.

<sup>18</sup> Supply nomen as object.

<sup>19</sup> the name you had, he made mine.

O salve, insperate,<sup>1</sup> multis annis post quem conspikor.

*Men. II.* Frater, et tu, quem ego multis miseriis, laboribus

Usque adhuc quaesivi quemque ego esse inventum gaudeo.

*Mes.* Numquid me morare, quin ego liber, ut justi, sim?<sup>2</sup>

<sup>5</sup> *Men. I.* Optimum atque aequissimum orat, frater; fac causa mea.

*Men. II.* Liber esto. *Men. I.* Cum tu's liber, gaudeo, Messenio.

*Mes.* Sed meliorest opus auspicio,<sup>3</sup> ut liber perpetuo (*permanently*) sim.

*Men. II.* Quoniam haec evenerunt, frater, nostra ex sententia,<sup>4</sup>

In patriam redeamus ambo. *Men. I.* Frater, faciam ut tu voles.

<sup>10</sup> Auctionem hic faciam et vendam quidquid est. Nunc interim

Eamus intro, frater. *Men. II.* Fiat. *Mes.* Scitum quid ego vos rogo?

*Men. I.* Quid? *Mes.* Praeconium mi ut detis.<sup>5</sup> *Men. I.* Dabitur. *Mes.* Ergo nunc jam

Vis conclamari auctionem?<sup>6</sup> *Men. I.* Fore (*that it will be*) quidem die

<sup>15</sup> septimo.

*Mes.* Auctio fiet Menaechmi mane sane septimi.<sup>7</sup>

Venibunt<sup>8</sup> servi, supellex, fundi, aedes,<sup>9</sup> omnia.

Venibunt, quique licebunt, praesenti pecunia.<sup>10</sup>

Venibit uxor quoque etiam, si quis emptor (*buyer*) venerit.

<sup>20</sup> Vix credo auctione tota capiet quinquagesies.<sup>11</sup>

Nunc, spectatores, valet et nobis clare plaudite (*applaud*).

<sup>1</sup> Greetings! I'd given up hope [of finding you].

<sup>2</sup> *justi* = *jussisti*. You aren't putting off my being free, as you ordered, are you?

<sup>3</sup> But I need better auspices.

<sup>4</sup> to our way of thinking.

<sup>5</sup> that you let me be auctioneer.

<sup>6</sup> do you want the auction announced?

<sup>7</sup> the morning of the seventh day.

<sup>8</sup> There will come up for sale.

<sup>9</sup> household goods, real estate, buildings.

<sup>10</sup> for whatever they will bring, spot cash.

<sup>11</sup> \$125,000; i.e., an impossible amount—comic exaggeration.

Roman actors wearing comic masks



## INFLECTIONS

### NOUNS

#### FIRST AND

#### SECOND DECLENSIONS

##### 1 ā-stems

###### SINGULAR

*Nom.* rosa  
*Gen.* rosae  
*Dat.* rosae  
*Acc.* rosam  
*Abl.* rosā

###### PLURAL

*Nom.* rosae  
*Gen.* rosārum  
*Dat.* rosis  
*Acc.* rosās  
*Abl.* rosis

##### 2 o-stems

###### SINGULAR

amicus	puer	ager	vir	templum
amici	pueri	agri	virī	templi
amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
amicum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō

###### PLURAL

amici	pueri	agri	virī	templa
amicōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
amicis	pueris	agris	viris	templis
amicōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
amicis	pueris	agris	viris	templis

The vocative singular of -us nouns ends in -e: amice. The vocative singular (and sometimes the genitive singular) of filius and of proper nouns in -ius ends in i: fili.

All nouns ending in -um in the nominative singular are neuter.

The accusative singular of a neuter noun has the same form as the nominative singular, and the accusative plural has the same form as the nominative plural. The nominative and accusative plural always end in -a.

### THIRD DECLENSION

#### 3

#### MASCULINE AND FEMININE CONSONANT STEMS

##### SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i> lēx	mīles	frāter	homō
<i>Gen.</i> lēgis	mīlitis	frātris	hominis
<i>Dat.</i> lēgi	mīliti	frātri	homini
<i>Acc.</i> lēgem	mīlitem	frātre	hominem
<i>Abl.</i> lēge	mīlite	frātre	homine

##### PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i> lēgēs	mīlītēs	frātrēs	hominēs
<i>Gen.</i> lēgum	mīlitum	frātrum	hominum
<i>Dat.</i> lēgibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	hominibus
<i>Acc.</i> lēgēs	mīlītēs	frātrēs	hominēs
<i>Abl.</i> lēgibus	mīlitibus	frātribus	hominibus

Some masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension have the nominative ending -s. If the stem ends in -c or -g, the combination of the final -c or -g

of the stem with -s gives -x: *dux*, nominative from the stem *duc-*; *lēx*, nominative from the stem *lēg-*. If the stem ends in -d or -t, the final consonant is dropped before -s: *laus*, nominative from the stem *laud-*.

In words of more than one syllable, short e of the final syllable of the nominative regularly appears as i in the other cases: nominative *mīles*, genitive *mīlitis*; *prīnceps*, *prīncipis*.

Nouns with stems ending in -tr have the nominative ending in -ter: *frāter* from the stem *frātr-*; *māter* from the stem *mātr-*.

Nouns with stems ending in -din and -gin replace -in of the stem by -ō in the nominative: *virgō* from the stem *virgin-*; *multitūdō* from the stem *multitūdin-*. The nominative *homō* is also formed by replacing -in of the stem by -ō.

#### 4

#### NEUTER CONSONANT STEMS

SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i> flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
<i>Gen.</i> flūminis	capitis	corporis	itineris
<i>Dat.</i> flūminī	capiti	corporī	itinerī
<i>Acc.</i> flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
<i>Abl.</i> flūmine	capite	corpore	itinere

PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i> flūmina	capita	corpora	itinerā
<i>Gen.</i> flūminum	capitum	corporum	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i> flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i> flūmina	capita	corpora	itinerā
<i>Abl.</i> flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus

#### 5

#### I-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

SINGULAR					
MASCULINE AND FEMININE			NEUTER		
<i>Nom.</i> collis	nūbēs	nox	insigne	exemplar	animal
<i>Gen.</i> collis	nūbis	noctis	insignis	exemplāris	animālis
<i>Dat.</i> colli	nūbī	nocti	insigni	exemplārī	animālī
<i>Acc.</i> collem	nūbem	noctem	insigne	exemplar	animal
<i>Abl.</i> colle	nūbe	nocte	insigni	exemplārī	animālī

PLURAL					
<i>Nom.</i> collēs	nūbēs	noctēs	insignia	exemplāria	animālia
<i>Gen.</i> collium	nūbium	noctium	insignium	exemplārium	animālium
<i>Dat.</i> collibus	nūbibus	noctibus	insignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus
<i>Acc.</i> collēs,	nūbēs,	noctēs,	insignia	exemplāria	animālia
-is	-is	-is			
<i>Abl.</i> collibus	nūbibus	noctibus	insignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus

Masculine and feminine i-stems and mixed stems include two classes:

- (1) nouns having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative;
- (2) nouns having two consonants before the ending of the genitive singular. Exceptions are: *pater*, *māter*, *frāter*.

The ablative singular of *turris* and sometimes of *ignis* and a few other words ends in *-i* instead of *-e*. The accusative singular of *turris* is *turrim*.

Neuter *i*-stems end in *-e*, *-al*, or *-ar*.

## 6 FOURTH DECLENSION, *u*-stems      7. FIFTH DECLENSION, *ē*-stems

MASC. AND FEM.		NEUT.		MASC. AND FEM.			
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
<i>Nom.</i> exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i> exercitūs	exercituūm	cornūs	cornuum	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
<i>Dat.</i> exercituī, -ū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i> exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i> exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

## 8 IRREGULAR NOUNS

FEM.		MASC. AND FEM.		FEM.	
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> vīs	vīrēs	bōs	bovēs	<i>Nom.</i> domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i> —	virium	bovis	boum	<i>Gen.</i> domūs	domuum, domōrum
<i>Dat.</i> —	viribus	bovi	būbus, bōbus	<i>Dat.</i> domui, domō	domibus
<i>Acc.</i> vim	vīrēs, -īs	bovem	bovēs	<i>Acc.</i> domum	domōs, domūs
<i>Abl.</i> vī	viribus	bove	būbus, bōbus	<i>Abl.</i> domū, domō	domibus
				<i>Loc.</i> domī	

The noun *domus* has forms of both the second and the fourth declensions.

## ADJECTIVES

### 9 FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i> bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i> bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i> bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i> bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Nom.</i> miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
<i>Gen.</i> miserī	miseræ	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
<i>Dat.</i> miserō	miseræ	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
<i>Acc.</i> miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	misera
<i>Abl.</i> miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
<i>Nom.</i> pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
<i>Gen.</i> pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
<i>Dat.</i> pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
<i>Acc.</i> pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
<i>Abl.</i> pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

# THIRD DECLENSION

10

## THREE TERMINATIONS—I-STEMS

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i> ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i> ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i> ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Abl.</i> ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

11

## TWO TERMINATIONS—I-STEMS

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
<i>Gen.</i> omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i> omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i> omnem	omne	omnēs	omnia
<i>Abl.</i> omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

12

## ONE TERMINATION—I-STEMS

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> fēlix	fēlix	potēns	potēns
<i>Gen.</i> fēlicis	fēlicis	potētis	potētis
<i>Dat.</i> fēlicī	fēlicī	potētī	potētī
<i>Acc.</i> fēlicem	fēlix	potentem	potēns
<i>Abl.</i> fēlicī	fēlicī	potētī, -e	potētī, -e
PLURAL		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i> fēlicēs	fēlicia	potētēs	potentia
<i>Gen.</i> fēlicium	fēlicium	potētium	potentium
<i>Dat.</i> fēlicibus	fēlicibus	potētibus	potentibus
<i>Acc.</i> fēlicēs	fēlicia	potētēs	potentia
<i>Abl.</i> fēlicibus	fēlicibus	potētibus	potentibus

13

## ONE TERMINATION—CONSONANT STEM

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i> veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i> veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i> veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i> vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
<i>Gen.</i> portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
<i>Dat.</i> portanti	portanti	portantibus	portantibus
<i>Acc.</i> portantem	portāns	portantēs	portantia
<i>Abl.</i> portante, -ī	portante, -ī	portantibus	portantibus

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātus	lātor, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlix	fēlicior, fēlicius	fēlicissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	pejor, pejus	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	major, majus	maximus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> lātor	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
<i>Gen.</i> lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
<i>Dat.</i> lātiōri	lātiōri	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
<i>Acc.</i> lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
<i>Abl.</i> lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
<i>Nom.</i> —	plūs <sup>1</sup>	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i> —	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i> —	—	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i> —	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i> —	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

<sup>1</sup> Used in singular as noun only.

alius, -a, -ud  
 sōlus, -a, -um  
 ūllus, -a, -um  
 ūnus, -a, -um  
 tōtus, -a, -um

nūllus, -a, -um  
 alter, -era, -erum  
 neuter, -tra, -trum  
 uter, -tra, -trum

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	uter	utra	utrum
<i>Gen.</i>	sōlius	sōlius	sōlius	utrius	utrius	utrius
<i>Dat.</i>	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	utrī	utrī	utrī
<i>Acc.</i>	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	utrum	utram	utrum
<i>Abl.</i>	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	utrō	utrā	utrō

The plurals are like those of *bonus* and *pulcher*.

## ADVERBS

## 19 REGULAR COMPARISON

POS.	COMPAR.	SUPERL.
<i>lātē</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātissimē</i>
<i>fortiter</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortissimē</i>
<i>ācritēr</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
<i>facile</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>

## 20 IRREGULAR COMPARISON

POS.	COMPAR.	SUPERL.
<i>bene</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male</i>	<i>pejus</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>magnopere</i>	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
<i>multum</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
<i>parum</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>prope</i>	<i>propius</i>	<i>proximē</i>
<i>saepe</i>	<i>saepius</i>	<i>saepissimē</i>
<i>diū</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>

## NUMERALS

## 21

DECLENSION OF *DUO*, *TRĒS*, AND *MILIA*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria	milia
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	miliūm
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	milibus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria	milia
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	milibus

In the singular, *mille*, *thousand*, is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a neuter noun, and is modified by the genitive of the noun denoting the persons or things which are numbered.



## LIST OF NUMBERS

Cardinal numbers answer the question, "*How many?*" as *one, two, three, ūnus, duo, trēs*. Ordinal numbers answer the question, "*In what order?*" as *first, second, third; primus, secundus, tertius*. Distributive numbers answer the question, "*How many at a time?*" as *one at a time or singly, two by two, three by three, singuli, binī, ternī*.

ROMAN NUMERALS	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES
I	ūnus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a
II	duo, duae, duo	secundus, alter	binī
III	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī, trinī
IV	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V	quinque	quintus	quīnī
VI	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII	octō	octāvus	octōnī
IX	novem	nōnus	novēnī
X	decem	decimus	dēnī
XI	undecim	undecimus	undēnī
XII	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV	quindecim	quintus decimus	quīnī dēnī
XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus	duodēvicēnī
XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīmus	undēvicēnī
XX	vigintī	vicēsīmus	vicēnī
XXI	ūnus et vigintī, vigintī ūnus	vicēsīmus primus	vicēnī singulī
XXVIII	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsīmus	duodētrīcēnī
XXIX	vigintī octō		
	undētrīgintā	undētrīcēsīmus	undētrīcēnī
	vigintī novem		
XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsīmus	trīcēnī
XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēnī
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēnī
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēnī
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēnī
LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēnī
XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēnī
C	centum	centēsīmus	centēnī
CI	centum (et) ūnus	centēsīmus (et) primus	centēnī singulī
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus	ducēnī
CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsīmus	trecēnī
CCCC	quadrīngentī	quadrīngentēsīmus	quadrīngēnī
D	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus	quīngēnī
DC	sescentī	sescentēsīmus	sescēnī
DCC	septīngentī	septīngentēsīmus	septīngēnī
DCCC	octīngentī	octīngentēsīmus	octīngēnī
DCCCC	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	nōngēnī
M	mille	millēsīmus	singula milia
MM	duo milia	bis millēsīmus	binā milia

The ordinal numerals often end in *-ēsīmus* instead of *-ēsīmus*.

# PRONOUNS

23

## PERSONAL

FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i> ego	nōs	tū	vōs
<i>Gen.</i> mei	nostrum, nostrī	tuī	vestrum, vestrī
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs	tē	vōs
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually *is, he, ea, she, id, it*) or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by a reflexive pronoun.

24

## REFLEXIVE

FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON		THIRD PERSON	
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
<i>Gen.</i> mei	nostrī	tuī	vestrī	suī	suī
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē	sē, sēsē

25

For *idem, ipse, quī* (relative or interrogative), *quis, quisque, aliquis, quīdam*, and *quisquam*—all which may be used as either pronouns or adjectives—see pages 321-324.

26

## POSSESSIVES

### REFERRING TO SINGULAR ANTECEDENT

- 1st pers.* meus, -a, -um, *my*  
*2d pers.* tuus, -a, -um, *your* (of one person)  
*3d pers.* {suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its* (reflexive)  
           {ejus (gen. sing. of *is*), *his, her, its* (not reflexive)

### REFERRING TO PLURAL ANTECEDENT

- 1st pers.* noster, -tra, -trum, *our*  
*2d pers.* vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one person)  
*3d pers.* {suus, -a, -um, *their* (reflexive)  
           {eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. pl. of *is*), *their* (not reflexive)

The vocative singular masculine of *meus* is *mī*.

*Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester* are used as adjectives, agreeing with the thing possessed.

## WORDS USED AS PRONOUNS OR ADJECTIVES

27

## DEMONSTRATIVES

		SINGULAR		PLURAL	
		MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
<p>hic, haec, hoc      <u>this/these</u> (near in space, time or thought) he, she, it, they.</p>					
		NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hi	hae
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	his	his
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	his	his
<p><u>that those</u> (further in space, time or thought) <u>ille, illa, illud</u> he, she, it, they</p>					
		illud	illi	illae	illa
Nom.	ille	illud	illi	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	illum	illum	illos	illas	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illo	illis	illis
<p><u>that this these</u> <u>iste, ista, istud</u> he, she, it, they.</p>					
		istud	isti	istae	ista
Nom.	is	istud	isti	istae	ista
Gen.	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	ei	ei	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eum	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<p><u>that one</u> <u>iste, ista, istud</u> he, she, it, they.</p>					
		istud	isti	istae	ista
Nom.	iste	istud	isti	istae	ista
Gen.	istius	istius	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	isti	isti	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istum	istum	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs

28

very, the very  
THE INTENSIVE  
himself, herself, itself, themselves.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i> ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i> ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i> ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

## THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN-ADJECTIVE

*The same, the very one, identical, etc., etc.*

SINGULAR		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. <u>idem</u>	eadem	idem
Gen. ejusdem	ejusdem	ejusdem
Dat. eidem	eidem	eidem
Acc. eundem	eandem	idem
Abl. eodem	eadem	eodem
PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. eidem, idem	eadem	eadem
Gen. eorundem	eārundem	eorundem
Dat. eisdem, isdem	eisdem, isdem	eisdem, isdem
Acc. eosdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl. eisdem, isdem	eisdem, isdem	eisdem, isdem

The nominative plural of the masculine is sometimes spelled *idem*, and the dative and ablative plurals are sometimes spelled *iisdem*.

## THE RELATIVE

*who, which, what, this, that*

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. <u>qui</u>	<u>quae</u>	<u>quod</u>	quī	quae	quae
Gen. cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc. quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

*what? which? what kind?*

SINGULAR		PLURAL		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom. <u>quis</u>	<u>quid</u>	quī	quae	quae
Gen. cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat. cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc. quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl. quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> quī, quis	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cuius	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The interrogative adjective in the singular is the same as the relative pronoun (322, 30), except that the nominative masculine may be either quis or quī. The plural of the interrogative adjective is the same as that of the interrogative pronoun (322, 31).

PRONOUNS		ADJECTIVES		
<i>Each one</i> <i>every one</i>		<i>Each, each one</i> SINGULAR		
MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> quisque	quidque	quisque	quaeque	quodque
<i>Gen.</i> cuiusque	cujusque	cujusque	cujusque	cujusque
<i>Dat.</i> cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuique
<i>Acc.</i> quemque	quidque	quemque	quamque	quodque
<i>Abl.</i> quōque	quōque	quōque	quāque	quōque

The plural is seldom used.

<i>Someone, somebody, something, anyone, anything</i> SINGULAR				
<i>Nom.</i> aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliqua	aliquid
<i>Gen.</i> alicujus	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus
<i>Dat.</i> alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Acc.</i> aliquem	aliquid	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid
<i>Abl.</i> aliquō	aliquō	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
PLURAL				
<i>Nom.</i> aliqui	aliqua	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i> aliquōrum	aliquōrum	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i> aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i> aliquōs	aliqua	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i> aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

# INDEFINITES—continued

a certain, some, a kind of  
Someone, something

MASC.		SINGULAR FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Gen.</i>	cujusdam	cujusdam	cujusdam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Abl.</i>	quodam	quādam	quōdam
		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>Gen.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>Dat.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Acc.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Abl.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

The forms in parentheses are used as adjectives.

Anyone, anything, anything at all.

MASC. AND FEM.	SINGULAR	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quisquam	quicquam, quidquam
<i>Gen.</i>	cujusquam	cujusquam
<i>Dat.</i>	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Acc.</i>	quemquam	quicquam, quidquam
<i>Abl.</i>	quōquam	quōquam

The plural is not found.

# VERBS

## FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal parts: *portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum*

34

### ACTIVE

#### INDICATIVE

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

##### PRESENT

##### SINGULAR

*portō, I am carrying, I carry*  
*portās, you are carrying, you carry*  
*portat, he is carrying, he carries*

*portem*  
*portēs*  
*portet*

##### PLURAL

*portāmus, we are carrying, we carry*  
*portātis, you are carrying, you carry*  
*portant, they are carrying, they carry*

*portēmus*  
*portētis*  
*portent*

##### IMPERFECT

##### SINGULAR

*portābam, I was carrying*  
*portābās, you were carrying*  
*portābat, he was carrying*

*portārem*  
*portārēs*  
*portāret*

##### PLURAL

*portābāmus, we were carrying*  
*portābātis, you were carrying*  
*portābant, they were carrying*

*portārēmus*  
*portārētis*  
*portārent*

##### FUTURE

##### SINGULAR

*portābō, I shall carry*  
*portābis, you will carry*  
*portābit, he will carry*

(None )

##### PLURAL

*portābimus, we shall carry*  
*portābitis, you will carry*  
*portābunt, they will carry*

##### PERFECT

##### SINGULAR

*portāvī, I have carried, I carried*  
*portāvistī, you have carried, etc.*  
*portāvit, he has carried, etc.*

*portāverim*  
*portāveris*  
*portāverit*

##### PLURAL

*portāvimus, we have carried, etc.*  
*portāvistis, you have carried, etc.*  
*portāverunt, -ēre, they have carried, etc.*

*portāverimus*  
*portāveritis*  
*portāverint*

## FAST PERFECT

## SINGULAR

portāveram, *I had carried*  
 portāverās, *you had carried*  
 portāverat, *he had carried*

portāvissem  
 portāvissēs  
 portāvisset

## PLURAL

portāverāmus, *we had carried*  
 portāverātis, *you had carried*  
 portāverant, *they had carried*

portāvissēmus  
 portāvissētis  
 portāvissent

## FUTURE PERFECT

## SINGULAR

portāverō, *I shall have carried*  
 portāveris, *you will have carried*  
 portāverit, *he will have carried*

(None)

## PLURAL

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*  
 portāveritis, *you will have carried*  
 portāverint, *they will have carried*

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

Sing. portā, *carry*  
 Plu. portāte, *carry*

## FUTURE

Sing. 2. portātō, *you shall carry*  
 3. portātō, *he shall carry*  
 Plu. 2. portātōte, *you shall carry*  
 3. portantō, *they shall carry*

## INFINITIVE

Pres. portāre, *to carry*  
 Perf. portāvisse, *to have carried*  
 Fut. portātūrus esse, *to be going to carry*

## GERUND

Gen. portandī, *of carrying*  
 Dat. portandō, *to, for carrying*  
 Acc. portandum, *carrying*  
 Abl. portandō, *from, by carrying*

## PARTICIPLE

Pres. portāns, *carrying*  
 Fut. portātūrus, *going to carry*

## SUPINE

Acc. portātum, *to carry*  
 Abl. portātū, *to carry*



## INDICATIVE

PRESENT  
SINGULAR

portor, *I am being carried*  
 portāris, -re, *you are being carried*  
 portātur, *he is being carried*

## INDICATIVE

## PLURAL

portāmur, *we are being carried*  
 portāminī, *you are being carried*  
 portantur, *they are being carried*

IMPERFECT  
SINGULAR

portābar, *I was being carried*  
 portābāris, -re, *you were being carried*  
 portābātur, *he was being carried*

## PLURAL

portābāmur, *we were being carried*  
 portābāminī, *you were being carried*  
 portābantur, *they were being carried*

## FUTURE

## SINGULAR

portābor, *I shall be carried*  
 portāberis, -re, *he will be carried*  
 portābitur, *he will be carried*

## PLURAL

portābimur, *we shall be carried*  
 portābiminī, *you will be carried*  
 portābuntur, *they will be carried*

PERFECT  
SINGULAR

portātus sum, *I have been carried*  
 portātus es, *you have been carried*  
 portātus est, *he has been carried*

## PLURAL

portāti sumus, *we have been carried*  
 portāti estis, *you have been carried*  
 portāti sunt, *they have been carried*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*I might be carried*  
 portē  
 portēris, -re  
 portētur

## SUBJUNCTIVE

portēmur  
 portēminī  
 portentur

*I might be carried*

portārer  
 portārēris, -re  
 portārētur

portārēmur  
 portārēminī  
 portārentur

(None)

*I may have been carried*

portātus sim  
 portātus sis  
 portātus sit

*I might have been carried*  
 portāti simus  
 portāti sitis  
 portāti sint

## PAST PERFECT

## SINGULAR

portātus eram, *I had been carried*  
 portātus erās, *you had been carried*  
 portātus erat, *he had been carried*

portātus essem  
 portātus essēs  
 portātus esset

## PLURAL

portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*  
 portātī erātis, *you had been carried*  
 portātī erant, *they had been carried*

portātī essēmus  
 portātī essētis  
 portātī essent

## FUTURE PERFECT

## SINGULAR

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*  
 portātus eris, *you will have been carried*  
 portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

(None.)

## PLURAL

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*  
 portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*  
 portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

Sing. portāre, *be carried*  
 Plu. portāminī, *be carried*

## FUTURE

Sing. 2. portātor, *you shall be carried*  
       3. portātor, *he shall be carried*  
 Plu. 2. ———  
       3. portantor, *they shall be carried*

## INFINITIVE

Pres. portārī, *to be carried*  
 Perf. portātus esse, *to have been carried*  
 Fut. portātum irī, *to be about to be carried*

## PARTICIPLE

Perf. portātus, *having been carried*  
 Fut. portandus, *to be carried*

## SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

Principal parts: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**  
**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**  
**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum**  
**audiō, audire, audivi, auditum**

36

### ACTIVE

#### INDICATIVE

##### PRESENT

##### SINGULAR

moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
monēs	dūcis	capis	audis
monet	dūcit	capit	audit

##### PLURAL

monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audimus
monētis	dūcitis	capitis	auditis
monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

##### IMPERFECT

##### SINGULAR

monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat

##### PLURAL

monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
monēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

##### FUTURE

##### SINGULAR

monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
monēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet

##### PLURAL

monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
monēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
monēbunt	dūcent	capiant	audient

##### PERFECT

##### SINGULAR

monuī	dūxī	cēpī	audivī
monuistī	dūxistī	cēpistī	audivistī
monuit	dūxit	cēpit	audivit

##### PLURAL

monuimus	dūximus	cēpimus	audivimus
monuistis	dūxistis	cēpistis	audivistis
monuērunt, -ēre	dūxērunt, -ēre	cēpērunt, -ēre	audivērunt, -ēre

## PAST PERFECT

## SINGULAR

monueram	dūxeram	cēperam	audīveram
monuerās	dūxerās	cēperās	audīverās
monuerat	dūxerat	cēperat	audīverat

## PLURAL

monuerāmus	dūxerāmus	cēperāmus	audīverāmus
monuerātis	dūxerātis	cēperātis	audīverātis
monuerant	dūxerant	cēperant	audīverant

## FUTURE PERFECT

## SINGULAR

monuerō	dūxerō	cēperō	audīverō
monueris	dūxeris	cēperis	audīveris
monuerit	dūxerit	cēperit	audīverit

## PLURAL

monuerimus	dūxerimus	cēperimus	audīverimus
monueritis	dūxeritis	cēperitis	audīveritis
monuerint	dūxerint	cēperint	audīverint

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

## SINGULAR

moneam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
moneās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
moneat	dūcat	capiat	audiat

## PLURAL

moneāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
moneātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
moneant	dūcant	capiant	audiant

## IMPERFECT

## SINGULAR

monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
monēret	dūceret	caperet	audīret

## PLURAL

monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent

## PERFECT

monuerim, etc.	dūxerim, etc.	cēperim, etc.	audīverim, etc.
----------------	---------------	---------------	-----------------

## PAST PERFECT

monuisset, etc.	dūxisset, etc.	cēpisset, etc.	audīvissem, etc.
-----------------	----------------	----------------	------------------

# *IMPERATIVE*

## PRESENT SINGULAR

<i>monē</i>	<i>dūc</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>cape</i>	<i>audī</i>
-------------	-------------------------	-------------	-------------

## PLURAL

<i>monēte</i>	<i>dūcite</i>	<i>capite</i>	<i>audīte</i>
---------------	---------------	---------------	---------------

## FUTURE SINGULAR

2. <i>monētō</i>	<i>dūcitō</i>	<i>capitō</i>	<i>audītō</i>
3. <i>monētō</i>	<i>dūcitō</i>	<i>capitō</i>	<i>audītō</i>

## PLURAL

2. <i>monētōte</i>	<i>dūcitōte</i>	<i>capitōte</i>	<i>audītōte</i>
3. <i>monentō</i>	<i>dūcuntō</i>	<i>capiuntō</i>	<i>audiuntō</i>

# *PARTICIPLE*

## PRESENT

<i>monēns</i>	<i>dūcēns</i>	<i>capiēns</i>	<i>audiēns</i>
---------------	---------------	----------------	----------------

## FUTURE

<i>monitūrus</i>	<i>ductūrus</i>	<i>captūrus</i>	<i>auditūrus</i>
------------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------------

# *INFINITIVE*

## PRESENT

<i>monēre</i>	<i>dūcere</i>	<i>capere</i>	<i>audire</i>
---------------	---------------	---------------	---------------

## PERFECT

<i>monuisse</i>	<i>dūxisse</i>	<i>cēpisse</i>	<i>audivisse</i>
-----------------	----------------	----------------	------------------

## FUTURE

<i>monitūrus esse</i>	<i>ductūrus esse</i>	<i>captūrus esse</i>	<i>auditūrus esse</i>
-----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	-----------------------

# *GERUND*

<i>Gen. monendī</i>	<i>dūcendī</i>	<i>capiendī</i>	<i>audiendī</i>
<i>Dat. monendō</i>	<i>dūcendō</i>	<i>capiendō</i>	<i>audiendō</i>
<i>Acc. monendum</i>	<i>dūcendum</i>	<i>capiendum</i>	<i>audiendum</i>
<i>Abl. monendō</i>	<i>dūcendō</i>	<i>capiendō</i>	<i>audiendō</i>

# *SUPINE*

<i>Acc. monitum</i>	<i>ductum</i>	<i>captum</i>	<i>auditum</i>
<i>Abl. monitū</i>	<i>ductū</i>	<i>captū</i>	<i>auditū</i>

<sup>1</sup> This is an irregular form. The imperative forms of *mittō* are *mitte*, *mittite*, etc., which illustrate the regular formation in the third conjugation.

## PASSIVE

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

## SINGULAR

moneor  
monēris, -re  
monētur

dūcor  
dūceris, -re  
dūcitur

capior  
caperis, -re  
capitur

audior  
audiris, -re  
audītur

## PLURAL

monēmur  
monēminī  
monentur

dūcīmur  
dūcīminī  
dūcuntur

capīmur  
capīminī  
capīuntur

audīmur  
audīminī  
audiuntur

## IMPERFECT

## SINGULAR

monēbar  
monēbāris, -re  
monēbātur

dūcēbar  
dūcēbāris, -re  
dūcēbātur

capīēbar  
capīēbāris, -re  
capīēbātur

audiēbar  
audiēbāris, -re  
audiēbātur

## PLURAL

monēbāmur  
monēbāminī  
monēbantur

dūcēbāmur  
dūcēbāminī  
dūcēbantur

capīēbāmur  
capīēbāminī  
capīēbantur

audiēbāmur  
audiēbāminī  
audiēbantur

## FUTURE

## SINGULAR

monēbor  
monēberis, -re  
monēbitur

dūcar  
dūcēris, -re  
dūcētur

capiar  
capīeris, -re  
capīetur

audiar  
audiēris, -re  
audiētur

## PLURAL

monēbīmur  
monēbīminī  
monēbuntur

dūcēmur  
dūcēminī  
dūcentur

capīēmur  
capīēminī  
capientur

audiēmur  
audiēminī  
audientur

## PERFECT

## SINGULAR

monitus sum  
monitus es  
monitus est

ductus sum  
ductus es  
ductus est

captus sum  
captus es  
captus est

auditus sum  
auditus es  
auditus est

## PLURAL

monitī sumus  
monitī estis  
monitī sunt

ductī sumus  
ductī estis  
ductī sunt

captī sumus  
captī estis  
captī sunt

audītī sumus  
audītī estis  
audītī sunt

## PAST PERFECT

## SINGULAR

monitus eram  
monitus erās  
monitus erat

ductus eram  
ductus erās  
ductus erat

captus eram  
captus erās  
captus erat

auditus eram  
auditus erās  
auditus erat

## PLURAL

monitī erāmus  
monitī erātis  
monitī erant

ductī erāmus  
ductī erātis  
ductī erant

captī erāmus  
captī erātis  
captī erant

audītī erāmus  
audītī erātis  
audītī erant

# FUTURE PERFECT

## SINGULAR

monitus erō	ductus erō	captus erō	auditus erō
monitus eris	ductus eris	captus eris	auditus eris
monitus erit	ductus erit	captus erit	auditus erit

## PLURAL

monitī erimus	ductī erimus	captī erimus	audītī erimus
monitī eritis	ductī eritis	captī eritis	audītī eritis
monitī erunt	ductī erunt	captī erunt	audītī erunt

# SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

### SINGULAR

monear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
moneāris, -re	dūcāris, -re	capiāris, -re	audiāris, -re
moneātur	dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur

### PLURAL

moneāmur	dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
moneāminī	dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
moneantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

## IMPERFECT

### SINGULAR

monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
monērēris, -re	dūcerēris, -re	caperēris, -re	audīrēris, -re
monērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur

### PLURAL

monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
monērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

## PERFECT

### SINGULAR

monitus sim, etc.	ductus sim, etc.	captus sim, etc.	auditus sim, etc.
-------------------	------------------	------------------	-------------------

### PLURAL

monitī sīmus, etc.	ductī sīmus, etc.	captī sīmus, etc.	audītī sīmus, etc.
--------------------	-------------------	-------------------	--------------------

## PAST PERFECT

### SINGULAR

monitus essem, etc.	ductus essem, etc.	captus essem, etc.	auditus essem, etc.
------------------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	------------------------

### PLURAL

monitī essēmus, etc.	ductī essēmus, etc.	captī essēmus, etc.	audītī essēmus, etc.
-------------------------	------------------------	------------------------	-------------------------

## IMPERATIVE

PRESENT  
SINGULAR

monēre	dūcere	capere	audire
--------	--------	--------	--------

## PLURAL

monēminī	dūcimīnī	capimīnī	audimīnī
----------	----------	----------	----------

FUTURE  
SINGULAR

2. monētor	dūcitor	capitor	auditor
3. monētor	dūcitor	capitor	auditor

## PLURAL

2. _____	_____	_____	_____
3. monentor	dūcuntor	capiuntor	audiuntor

## PARTICIPLE

## PERFECT

monitus	ductus	captus	auditus
---------	--------	--------	---------

## FUTURE

monendus	dūcendus	capiendus	audiendus
----------	----------	-----------	-----------

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

monēri	dūcī	capī	audīri
--------	------	------	--------

## PERFECT

monitus esse	ductus esse	captus esse	auditus esse
--------------	-------------	-------------	--------------

## FUTURE

monitum iri	ductum iri	captum iri	auditum iri
-------------	------------	------------	-------------

## 38

## SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

A group of forms representing one person and number of a verb in all the tenses is called a synopsis. The synopsis of *portō* in the first person singular of the indicative and subjunctive, active and passive, is as follows:

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pres.	portō	portem	portor	porter
Imperf.	portābam	portārem	portābar	portārer
Fut.	portābō	_____	portābor	_____
Perf.	portāvī	portāverim	portātus sum	portātus sim
P. Pf.	portāveram	portāvissem	portātus eram	portātus essem
F. Pf.	portāverō	_____	portātus erō	_____



Principal parts: cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum  
 polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum  
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum  
 partior, partīrī, partītus sum

## INDICATIVE

I	II	III	IV
PRESENT SINGULAR			
cōnor cōnāris, -re cōnātur	polliceor pollicēris, -re pollicētur	sequor sequeris, -re sequitur	partior partīris, -re partītur
PLURAL			
cōnāmur cōnāminī cōnantur	pollicēmur pollicēminī pollicentur	sequimur sequiminī sequuntur	partimur partiminī partiuntur
IMPERFECT			
cōnābar, etc.	pollicēbar, etc.	sequēbar, etc.	partiēbar, etc.
FUTURE			
cōnābor, etc.	pollicēbor, etc.	sequar, etc.	partiar, etc.
PERFECT			
cōnātus sum, etc.	pollicitus sum, etc.	secūtus sum, etc.	partītus sum, etc.
PAST PERFECT			
cōnātus eram, etc.	pollicitus eram, etc.	secūtus eram, etc.	partītus eram, etc.
FUTURE PERFECT			
cōnātus erō, etc.	pollicitus erō, etc.	secūtus erō, etc.	partītus erō, etc.
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT			
cōner, etc.	pollicear, etc.	sequar, etc.	partiar, etc.
IMPERFECT			
cōnārer, etc.	pollicērer, etc.	sequerer, etc.	partīrer, etc.
PERFECT			
cōnātus sim, etc.	pollicitus sim, etc.	secūtus sim, etc.	partītus sim, etc.
PAST PERFECT			
cōnātus essem, etc.	pollicitus essem, etc.	secūtus essem, etc.	partītus essem, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

<i>cōnāre</i>	<i>pollicēre</i>	<i>sequere</i>	<i>partire</i>
---------------	------------------	----------------	----------------

## FUTURE

<i>cōnātor</i>	<i>pollicētor</i>	<i>sequitor</i>	<i>partitor</i>
----------------	-------------------	-----------------	-----------------

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

<i>cōnārī</i>	<i>pollicērī</i>	<i>sequī</i>	<i>partīrī</i>
---------------	------------------	--------------	----------------

## PERFECT

<i>cōnātus esse</i>	<i>pollicitus esse</i>	<i>secūtus esse</i>	<i>partitus esse</i>
---------------------	------------------------	---------------------	----------------------

## FUTURE

<i>cōnātūrus esse</i>	<i>pollicitūrus esse</i>	<i>secūtūrus esse</i>	<i>partitūrus esse</i>
-----------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------	------------------------

## PARTICIPLE

## PRESENT

<i>cōnāns</i>	<i>pollicēns</i>	<i>sequēns</i>	<i>partiēns</i>
---------------	------------------	----------------	-----------------

## PERFECT

<i>cōnātus</i>	<i>pollicitus</i>	<i>secūtus</i>	<i>partitus</i>
----------------	-------------------	----------------	-----------------

## FUTURE ACTIVE

<i>cōnātūrus</i>	<i>pollicitūrus</i>	<i>secūtūrus</i>	<i>partitūrus</i>
------------------	---------------------	------------------	-------------------

## FUTURE PASSIVE

<i>cōnandus</i>	<i>pollicendus</i>	<i>sequendus</i>	<i>partiendus</i>
-----------------	--------------------	------------------	-------------------

## GERUND

<i>cōnandī, etc.</i>	<i>pollicendī, etc.</i>	<i>sequendī, etc.</i>	<i>partiendī, etc.</i>
----------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------	------------------------

## SUPINE

<i>Acc. cōnātum</i>	<i>pollicitum</i>	<i>secūtum</i>	<i>partitum</i>
<i>Abl. cōnātū</i>	<i>pollicitū</i>	<i>secūtū</i>	<i>partitū</i>

## 40

## SEMIDEPONENT VERBS

The present system of semideponent verbs is active, and the perfect system passive.

Principal parts: *audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare*  
*gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice*  
*soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed*  
*fīdō, fidere, fīsus sum, trust*

## PRESENT SYSTEM

*Pres. audeō, I dare*  
*Imperf. audēbam, I was daring*  
*Fut. audēbō, I shall dare*

## PERFECT SYSTEM

*Perf. ausus sum, I have dared*  
*P.Pf. ausus eram, I had dared*  
*F. Pf. ausus erō, I shall have dared*

# IRREGULAR VERBS

## CONJUGATION OF SUM

Principal parts: *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*

### INDICATIVE

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>sum, I am</i>	<i>sumus, we are</i>	<i>eram, I was</i>	<i>erāmus, we were</i>
<i>es, you are</i>	<i>estis, you are</i>	<i>erās, you were</i>	<i>erātis, you were</i>
<i>est, he is</i>	<i>sunt, they are</i>	<i>erat, he was</i>	<i>erant, they were</i>

### FUTURE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>erō, I shall be</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be</i>
<i>eris, you will be</i>	<i>eritis, you will be</i>
<i>erit, he will be</i>	<i>erunt, they will be</i>

### PERFECT

<i>fui, I was, I have been</i>	<i>fuiamus, we were, we have been</i>
<i>fuisti, you were, you have been</i>	<i>fuistis, you were, you have been</i>
<i>fuit, he was, he has been</i>	<i>fuērunt, -ēre, they were, they have been</i>

### PAST PERFECT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>fueram, I had been</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been</i>
<i>fuerās, you had been</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been</i>
<i>fuerat, he had been</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been</i>

### FUTURE PERFECT

<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i>
<i>fueris, you will have been</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been</i>
<i>fuerit, he will have been</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been</i>

### SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT		IMPERFECT		PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
<i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>	<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerīmus</i>	<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>sis</i>	<i>sītis</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>	<i>fueris</i>	<i>fuerītis</i>	<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>	<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>	<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

### IMPERATIVE

PRESENT		FUTURE	
SING.	PL.	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>es, be</i>	<i>este, be</i>	2. <i>estō, be, you shall be</i>	<i>estōte, be, you shall be</i>
		3. <i>estō, let him be, he shall be</i>	<i>suntō, let them be, they shall be</i>

### PARTICIPLE

*Fut. futūrus, about to be*

### INFINITIVE

*Pres. esse, to be*  
*Perf. fuisse, to have been*  
*Fut. futūrus esse or fore, to be about to be*

## CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

Principal parts: possum, posse, potuī

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
		PRESENT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
possum	possumus	possim	possimus
potes	potestis	possis	possitis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
		IMPERFECT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
poterat	poterant	posset	possent
		FUTURE	
poterō, etc.	poterimus, etc.	(None )	
		PERFECT	
potuī, etc.	potuimus, etc.	potuerim, etc.	potuerimus, etc.
		PAST PERFECT	
potueram, etc.	potuerāmus, etc.	potuissem, etc.	potuissēmus, etc.
		FUTURE PERFECT	
potuerō, etc.	potuerimus, etc.	(None )	
INFINITIVE			
Pres. posse		Perf. potuisse	

## CONJUGATION OF PRŌSUM

Principal parts: prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
		PRESENT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
prōsum	prōsumus	prōsim	prōsimus
prōdes	prōdestis	prōsis	prōsitis
prōdest	prōsunt	prōsit	prōsint

The remaining forms of the present system are conjugated like *sum*, with the prefix *prōd-*. The perfect system is regularly formed with the stem *prōfu-*.

## CONJUGATION OF FERŌ

Principal parts: ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris, -re	ferimini
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

## IMPERFECT

ferēbam, etc.	ferēbāmus, etc.	ferēbar, etc.	ferēbāmur, etc.
---------------	-----------------	---------------	-----------------

## FUTURE

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
feram, etc.	ferēmus, etc.	ferar, etc.	ferēmur, etc.

## PERFECT

tulī, etc.	tulimus, etc.	lātus sum, etc.	lātī sumus, etc.
------------	---------------	-----------------	------------------

## PAST PERFECT

tuleram, etc.	tulerāmus, etc.	lātus eram, etc.	lātī erāmus, etc.
---------------	-----------------	------------------	-------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō, etc.	tulerimus, etc.	lātus erō, etc.	lātī erimus, etc.
--------------	-----------------	-----------------	-------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

feram, etc.	ferāmus, etc.	ferar, etc.	ferāmur, etc.
-------------	---------------	-------------	---------------

## IMPERFECT

ferrem, etc.	ferrēmus, etc.	ferrer, etc.	ferrēmur, etc.
--------------	----------------	--------------	----------------

## PERFECT

tulerim, etc.	tulerīmus, etc.	lātus sim, etc.	lātī sīmus, etc.
---------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------------

## PAST PERFECT

tulisses, etc.	tulissēmus, etc.	lātus essem, etc.	lātī essēmus, etc.
----------------	------------------	-------------------	--------------------

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
<i>Pres.</i> fer	ferte	<i>Pres.</i> ferre	ferimini
<i>Fut.</i> 2. fertō	fertōte	<i>Fut.</i> fertor	feruntor
3. fertō	feruntō	fertor	

## ACTIVE

*Pres.* ferre  
*Perf.* tulisse  
*Fut.* lātūrus esse

## PASSIVE

*ferri*  
*lātus esse*  
*lātum iri*

## PARTICIPLE

## ACTIVE

*Pres.* ferēns  
*Fut.* lātūrus

## PASSIVE

*Perf.* lātus  
*Fut.* ferendus

## GERUND

ferendī, etc.

## SUPINE

*Acc.* lātum

*Abl.* lātū

## 45

CONJUGATION OF *EŌ*

Principal parts: *eō, ire, iī (ivī), itum*

## INDICATIVE

## SINGULAR

*eō*  
*īs*  
*it*

## PLURAL

*īmus*  
*ītis*  
*eunt*

## PRESENT

## SINGULAR

*eam*  
*eās*  
*eat*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PLURAL

*eāmus*  
*eātis*  
*eant*

## IMPERFECT

*ībam*, etc.

*ībāmus*, etc.

*īrem*, etc.

*īrēmus*, etc.

## FUTURE

*ībō*, etc.

*ībimus*, etc.

(None)

## PERFECT

*iī, ivī*  
 etc.

*iīmus, ivimus*  
 etc.

*ierim, ieverim*  
 etc.

*ierīmus, ieverīmus*  
 etc.

## PAST PERFECT

*ieram, ieveram*  
 etc.

*ierāmus, ieverāmus*  
 etc.

*issem, ivissem*  
 etc.

*issēmus, ivissēmus*  
 etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT

*ierō, ieverō*  
 etc.

*ierimus, ieverimus*  
 etc.

## IMPERATIVE

*Pres.*   *i*       *īte*  
*Fut.* 2. *itō*   *itōte*  
       3. *itō*   *euntō*

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.* *ire*  
*Perf.* *isse, iisse*  
*Fut.* *itūrus esse*

## PARTICIPLE

*Pres.* *iēns (gen. euntis)*  
*Fut.* *itūrus*

## GERUND

*eundī*, etc.

CONJUGATION OF *FĪŌ*Principal parts: *fĭō, fierī, factus sum*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
		PRESENT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>fĭō</i>	—	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>
<i>fīs</i>	—	<i>fiās</i>	<i>fiātis</i>
<i>fīt</i>	<i>fiunt</i>	<i>fiat</i>	<i>fiant</i>
IMPERFECT			
<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fiēbāmus</i>	<i>fierem</i>	<i>fierēmus</i>
FUTURE			
<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiēmus</i>	(None)	
INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
		PERFECT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>factus sum, etc.</i>	<i>factī sumus, etc.</i>	<i>factus sim, etc.</i>	<i>factī simus, etc.</i>
PAST PERFECT			
<i>factus eram, etc.</i>	<i>factī erāmus, etc.</i>	<i>factus essem, etc.</i>	<i>factī essēmus, etc.</i>
FUTURE PERFECT			
<i>factus erō, etc.</i>	<i>factī erimus, etc.</i>	(None)	
IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres. fī</i>	<i>fite</i>	<i>Pres. fierī</i>	<i>Perf. factus</i>
		<i>Perf. factus esse</i>	<i>Fut. faciendus</i>
		<i>Fut. factum iri</i>	

CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ* AND ITS COMPOUNDSPrincipal parts: *volō, velle, voluī*      *nōlō, nōlle, nōlui*      *mālō, mālle, mālui*

INDICATIVE					
PRESENT					
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>volō</i>	<i>volumus</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>nōlumus</i>	<i>mālō</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
<i>vīs</i>	<i>vultis</i>	<i>nōn vīs</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>	<i>māvis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>
<i>vult</i>	<i>volunt</i>	<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>māvult</i>	<i>mālunt</i>

	IMPERFECT	
volēbam, etc.	nōlēbam, etc.	mālēbam, etc.
	FUTURE	
volam, etc.	nōlam, etc.	mālam, etc.
	PERFECT	
voluī, etc.	nōluī, etc.	māluī, etc.
	PAST PERFECT	
volueram, etc.	nōlueram, etc.	mālueram, etc.
	FUTURE PERFECT	
voluerō, etc.	nōluerō, etc.	māluerō, etc.
	SUBJUNCTIVE	
	PRESENT	
velim, etc.	nōlim, etc.	mālim, etc.
	IMPERFECT	
vellem, etc.	nōllem, etc.	māllem, etc.
	PERFECT	
voluerim, etc.	nōluerim, etc.	māluerim, etc.
	PAST PERFECT	
voluissem, etc.	nōluissem, etc.	māluissem, etc.
	IMPERATIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Pres.</i> nōlī		nōlite
<i>Fut.</i> 2. nōlitō		nōlitōte
3. nōlitō		nōluntō
	INFINITIVE	
<i>Pres.</i> velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i> voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse
	PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres.</i> volēns	nōlēns	



A few verbs are defective, that is, they lack some forms which are found in the conjugation of other verbs. The most important are *ajō*, *I say, I assent*; *inquam*, *I say*; *coepī*, *I began*; *meminī*, *I remember*; *ōdī*, *I hate*.

The forms of *ajō* most commonly used are found in the present indicative, and are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>ajō</i>	—
2. <i>ais</i>	—
3. <i>ait</i>	<i>ajunt</i>

A few other forms, including the whole of the imperfect indicative and the second and third persons singular of the present subjunctive, are sometimes found.

The only forms of *inquam* in common use are found in the present indicative. They are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>inquam</i>	—
2. <i>inquis</i>	—
3. <i>inquit</i>	<i>inquiunt</i>

The verbs *meminī* and *ōdī* have no present, imperfect, or future forms. The perfects are used with present meanings, the past perfects with imperfect meanings, and the future perfects with future meanings.

The present system of *coepī* is also wanting, but the tenses have their regular meanings (perfect, past perfect, and future perfect). The present, imperfect, and future are supplied by the forms of *incipiō*.

The passive forms of *coepī* are commonly used instead of the active when the dependent infinitive is passive (always so by Caesar and Cicero).

#### INDICATIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>coepī, I began</i>	<i>ōdī, I hate</i>	<i>meminī, I remember</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>coeperam, I had begun</i>	<i>ōderam, I hated</i>	<i>memineram, I remembered</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>coeperō, I shall have begun</i>	<i>ōderō, I shall hate</i>	<i>meminerō, I shall remember</i>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>coeperim</i>	<i>ōderim</i>	<i>meminerim</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>coepissem</i>	<i>ōdissem</i>	<i>meminissem</i>

#### IMPERATIVE

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>mementō, remember</i>
<i>Plu.</i>	<i>mementōte</i>

#### INFINITIVE

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>coepisse, to have begun</i>	<i>ōdisse, to hate</i>	<i>meminisse, to remember</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>coeptūrus esse, to be about to begin</i>	<i>ōsūrus esse, to be about to hate</i>	

#### PARTICIPLES

<i>Perf.</i>	<i>coeptus, begun</i>	<i>ōsus, hating or hated</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>coeptūrus, about to begin</i>	<i>ōsūrus, likely to hate</i>

## SYNTAX

The grammatical principles presented in the following pages are those which are especially important for the work of the second year. The mood and case uses treated include only those which are found in the reading or exercises of this book.

### AGREEMENT

#### 49 OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES

An adjective or a participle agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

*magna urbs, a great city*  
*magnae partis, of a great part*  
*magnis periculis, in great dangers*

#### 50 OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS

A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

*Homō quem vidēs amicus meus est, The man whom you see is my friend.*

#### 51 OF APPOSITIVES

A noun in apposition is in the same case as the noun which it explains.

*Agricola, vir benignus, puerōs laudat, The farmer, a kind man, praises the boys.*

#### 52 OF VERBS

A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

*Puer labōrat, The boy works.*  
*Puerī labōrant, The boys work.*

## NOUNS

#### 53 THE NOMINATIVE CASE

The nominative is the case of the subject or of the predicate noun used with a finite<sup>1</sup> verb.

*Puella canit, The girl sings.*  
*Frāter tuus est agricola, Your brother is a farmer.*

a) The predicate nominative is used with the verb *sum* and with the passive voice of verbs meaning *to name, call, appoint, choose*, and the like.

*Is rēx tyrannus appellātus est, This king was called a tyrant.*

<sup>1</sup> That is, any verb form which shows person and number.

## THE GENITIVE CASE

### 54 GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

The genitive is used to denote the possessor.

*Liber pueri repertus est, The boy's book has been found.*

### 55 GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to name the whole to which the part belongs.

*Trēs partēs cōpiarum jam trādūxerant, They had already led across three parts of their forces.*

a) This use often occurs with a neuter pronoun.

*Mihi mirum vidētur quid in meā Galliā Caesarī negōtīi sit, It seems strange to me what business Caesar has in my Gaul.*

b) The ablative with *dē* or *ex* is sometimes used in place of the genitive of the whole; regularly so with cardinal numerals and *quīdam*.

*duōs ē numerō, two of the number*

### 56 GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing.

*homō magnae virtūtis, a man of great courage*

a) The genitive is sometimes employed in this construction to denote measure.

*trīduī viam, a journey of three days*  
*spatium nōn amplius pedum DC, a space of not more than 600 feet*

### 57 OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

Nouns and adjectives which denote action sometimes take a genitive which shows the object of the action.

*spem salūtis, hope of safety*  
*amor libertātis, love of liberty*

### 58 SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

Nouns which denote action sometimes take a genitive to indicate the person who does the act.

*adventus Caesaris, the arrival of Caesar*

59 GENITIVE OF MATERIAL OR COMPOSITION

The genitive may be used to denote the material of which something is composed, or the persons or objects making up a collective noun.

*exercitus virōrum fortium, an army of brave men*

60 GENITIVE WITH VERBS

The verbs *meminī* and *reminīscor*, *remember*, and *oblīvīscor*, *forget*, frequently take a genitive as object.

*Virtūtis vestrae nōn oblīvīscor, I do not forget your courage.*

a) If the object of these verbs is a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used as a noun, it is always in the accusative.

*Rōmānī haec semper meminērunt, The Romans will always remember these things.*

61 GENITIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS

The impersonal verbs *interest* and *rēfert* may take a genitive to denote the person concerned.

*Menēnius ostendit omnium interesse concordiam habēre, Menenius pointed out that it was to the interest of all to have harmony.*

THE DATIVE CASE

62 DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT

The indirect object is in the dative.

*Fēmina puerō epistolam dat, The woman gives the boy a letter.*

63 DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

The dative is used in dependence on adjectives meaning *kind, friendly, dear, pleasing, hostile, near*, and some others.

*Filius tuus sorōribus benignus est, Your son is kind to (his) sisters.*

64 DATIVE WITH VERBS OF SPECIAL MEANING

The meaning of some Latin verbs requires a dative, though they are translated into English by verbs with a direct object. The following words are used frequently.

*cēdō, yield*  
*cōfidō, trust (give trust)*  
*crēdō, trust (give trust)*  
*faveō, favor (show favor)*  
*imperō, order (give orders)*  
*noceō, harm (do harm)*  
*parcō, spare (show mercy)*

*pāreō, obey (be obedient)*  
*placeō, please (be pleasing)*  
*resistō, resist*  
*studeō, desire (be favorable, be eager)*  
*suādeō, persuade (make pleasing)*

65 DATIVE OF POSSESSION

The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative, with the word denoting the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of *sum*.

*Puerō gladius est, The boy has a sword, The sword is the boy's.*  
*cui nōmen Proca erat, whose name was Proca.*

66 DATIVE OF PURPOSE

A noun in the dative is sometimes used to denote the purpose which something serves or is intended to serve.

*Hunc librum dōnō mīsī, I sent this book as a gift* (literally, *for a gift*).

67 DATIVE OF REFERENCE

The dative is sometimes used to denote the person with reference to whom an act is done or a situation exists. This use is especially common in expressions which contain a dative of purpose.

*Legiō equitātui auxiliō missa est, The legion was sent as aid*  
(literally, *for aid*) *to the cavalry.*

68 DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

Verbs compounded with *ante*, *ob*, *prae*, and *sub* frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative case. This construction is sometimes found also with compounds of *ad*, *circum*, *com-*, *in*, *inter*, *post*, *prō*, and *super*.

*Legiōni praeest, He is in command of the legion.*

a) If the simple verb from which the compound is formed is a transitive verb, the compound may take both the accusative and the dative.

*Labienum castris praefecit, He placed Labienus in charge of the camp.*

69 DATIVE OF AGENT

With the future passive participle, the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly denoted by the dative.

*Id Rōmānis faciendum erat, This had to be done by the Romans.*

a) With a verb which has a dependent dative of some other kind, the dative of agent is sometimes replaced by the ablative of agent (79) to avoid confusion in the meaning of the sentence.

*Tibi ā mē grātia referenda est, I must show you gratitude.*

## THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

### 70 ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT

The direct object of a verb is in the accusative.

*Silvā vidēmus, We see the forest.*

### 71 ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

The accusative without a preposition is used to tell how long an act or a situation continues.

*Multās hōrās in insulā mānsī, I remained many hours on the island.*

### 72 ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE

The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space.

*Puer quīque mīlia passuum ambulāvit, The boy walked five miles.*

### 73 ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

The accusative of *domus* and of names of cities, towns, and small islands is used without a preposition to denote place to which.

*Exercitus Rōmā redībit, The army will return to Rome.*

a) With other words in this construction, a preposition, *ad* or *in*, is used.

*Exercitus in urbem redībit, The army will return to the city.*

### 74 ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

Certain prepositions have their objects in the accusative case. Among the most important of these are *ad*, *ante*, *apud*, *circum*, *contrā*, *inter*, *ob*, *per*, *post*, *praeter*, *propter*, *trāns*. (See also 156-157.)

*Is poēta inter barbarōs diū habitāvit, This poet lived a long time among barbarians.*

### 75 ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE

The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.

*Explōrātor dixit urbem incēnsam esse, The scout said the city had been burned.*

Verbs of *naming, calling, appointing, thinking*, and the like may have, in addition to the direct object, a second accusative telling what the person or thing denoted by the object is named, called, appointed, etc.

*Frātre[m] tuu[m] praetōrem creāvimus, We have elected your brother praetor.*

Compounds of *trāns* sometimes take two objects, one governed by *trāns*, the other by the simple verb.

*Legiōnem flūmen trādūxī, I led the legion across the river.*

With the passive of such verbs the object governed by the preposition may be retained.

*Legiō flūmen trāducta est, The legion was led across the river.*

#### THE ABLATIVE CASE

Verbs meaning *to separate, remove, deprive of, be absent, be free from, desist*, and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with *ab* or *ex*.

*Hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt, They desisted from this attempt.*

The ablative of *domus* and of names of cities, towns, and small islands is used without a preposition to express the idea of place from which.

*Lēgātus Genavā profectus est, The envoy set out from Geneva.*

a) With other words in this construction a preposition, *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*, is used.

*Lēgātus ex oppidō profectus est, The lieutenant set out from the town.*

With passive verbs the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is in the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

*Explōrātor ā militibus captus est, The scout was captured by the soldiers.*

**81** ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

With the comparative form of an adjective (occasionally of an adverb), if **quam** is omitted, the noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made is in the ablative without a preposition.

*Nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, He was not more than eighteen miles away.*

a) If **quam** is used, the word denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made is in the same case as the thing compared.

*Puella est altior quam puer, The girl is taller than the boy.*

**82** ABLATIVE OF PLACE

The ablative with **in** denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. (But see also 94.)

*In eīs montibus multa animālia reperiuntur, Many animals are found in these mountains.*

**83** ABLATIVE OF TIME

The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

*Eō annō pater meus tēctum novum aedificāvit, My father built a new house that year.*

**84** ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act.

*Cum amīcō ambulō, I walk with a friend.*

a) The ablative of accompaniment also denotes the person with whom one is contending.

*Cum Germānis bellum gessērunt, They waged war with the Germans.*

b) The preposition **cum** may be omitted in military expressions, if the noun in the ablative is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

*Multis militibus flūmen trānsiī, I crossed the river with many soldiers.*

*Cum tribus legiōnibus flūmen trānsiī, I crossed the river with three legions.*

**85** ABLATIVE OF MANNER

The ablative, frequently with the preposition **cum**, is used to express manner.

*Magnā cum cūrā (or Magnā cūrā) omnia parāvimus, We have prepared everything with great care.*



a) Some common words have no preposition in this construction. Among these are *jūre*, *justly* (*with justice*), *injūriā*, *unjustly* (*with injustice*), *meritō*, *deservedly* (*with merit*), *cāsū*, *accidentally* (*by chance*).

**86** ABLATIVE OF MEANS

A word which denotes the means used to accomplish an act is in the ablative without a preposition.

*Galli gladiis pugnābant*, *The Gauls fought with swords.*

a) The route by which one goes may be denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

*Breviōre itinere rediimus*, *We returned by a shorter route.*

**87** ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

The ablative without a preposition is used to express the degree of difference between two things.

*Arbor decem pedibus altior mūrō* (*or quam mūrus*) *est*, *The tree is ten feet higher than the wall.*

*paucis post annis*, *a few years later*, literally, *after by a few years*

**88** ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to denote some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

*Duce captō, hostēs fūgerunt*, *The leader having been captured, the enemy fled.*

a) An ablative absolute is frequently translated by a clause introduced by *when*, *after*, *if*, *since*, *although*, or by a prepositional phrase. Thus, the ablative absolute in the preceding example may be translated, *When the leader had been captured* or *After the capture of the leader*.

**89** ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true.

*Helvētī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt*, *The Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in courage.*

**90** ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

*homō magnā virtūte*, *a man of great courage*

a) In many phrases, such as the example above, either the ablative or the genitive of description (56) may be used. But physical characteristics are usually expressed by the ablative, and measure always by the genitive.

91 ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

The ablative is sometimes used to express cause.

*Hostēs timōre fugere coepērunt, The enemy began to flee on account of fear.*

a) Sometimes a preposition (ab, dē, or ex) is used with the ablative of cause.

*Ex commutātiōne rērum dolent, They grieve because of the change of circumstances.*

b) Cause is often expressed by *propter* or *ob* with the accusative.

*propter timōrem, on account of fear*

92 ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENT VERBS

The deponents *ūtōr, use, fruor, enjoy, fungor, perform, potior, gain possession of, and vēscor, feed upon*, take their objects in the ablative.

*Trōjānī et Latīnī eōdem jūre atque nōmine ūsī sunt, The Trojans and Latins used the same law and name.*

a) Occasionally the genitive is used with *potior* instead of the ablative.

*Urbis potiri cupiunt, They wish to gain possession of the city.*

93 THE VOCATIVE CASE

The vocative denotes the person addressed.

*Ubi, Mārce, pater tuus est? Marcus, where is your father?*

a) The vocative regularly stands after one or more words of the sentence.

94 THE LOCATIVE CASE

With names of cities, towns, and small islands and with *domus*, place where is denoted by the locative case. The locative has the same form as the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions. In the singular of nouns of the third declension and in all plural nouns it has the same form as the ablative.

*Rōmae, at Rome*  
*Bibracte, at Bibracte*

*domī, at home*  
*Athēnis, at Athens*

## ADJECTIVES

### 95 ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

An adjective which is directly connected with the noun which it modifies is called an attributive adjective.

*vir fortis, a brave man*

*arbor alta, a tall tree*

### 96 PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

An adjective which is connected with its noun by some form of the verb meaning *to be* is called a predicate adjective.

*Vir fortis est, The man is brave.*

### 97 SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives and participles are sometimes used as substantives (nouns or pronouns). Words meaning *many, all, others, few*, and the like are especially common in this use.

*Multi tē laudant, Many praise you.*

*Omnia parāta sunt, All things are prepared.*

In military expressions *nostrī* is used to mean *our men* or *our soldiers*. Other possessives are sometimes used with a similar meaning, as *tui* or *vestrī*, *your men, your soldiers*.

### 98 ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART

Among the most common adjectives which tell what part of an object is meant instead of telling what kind, are *summus, medius, imus*, and *extrēmus*. Notice that the genitive is not used with these words; the English translation is a noun, followed by *of*.

*summus mōns, the highest part (top) of the mountain*

*medius collis, the middle of the hill*

*mediō colle, halfway up (on the middle of) the hill*

### 99 ADJECTIVES WITH ADVERBIAL FORCE

Sometimes an adjective modifying the subject or object is best translated by an adverb.

*Invitī vērērunt, They came unwillingly.*

### 100 TRANSLATION OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

The comparative and superlative forms of adjectives and adverbs are commonly translated by the corresponding English forms. But sometimes the comparative is translated by a positive form preceded by *too* or *rather*, and the superlative by a positive form preceded by *very*.

*altior, rather high*

*altissimus, very high*

## VERBS

### THE INDICATIVE MOOD

#### 101 INDICATIVE IN MAIN CLAUSES

The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply that the answer expected is a statement of fact.

*Caesar aciem instrūxit, Caesar drew up a line of battle.*

*Quid Cōsidius dixit? What did Cōsidius say?*

#### 102 INDICATIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS

The indicative is used in subordinate clauses after the conjunctions *quamquam, although, postquam, after, ubi, when, and some others.*

*Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit, When he noticed this, Caesar drew up his troops on the nearest hill.*

#### 103 RELATIVE CLAUSES

A clause introduced by a relative pronoun commonly takes its verb in the indicative, except in the special uses described later. (See especially 107 *a*, and 115.)

*Proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, They are nearest the Germans, who live across the Rhine.*

#### 104 NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES WITH QUOD

A clause introduced by *quod* meaning *that*, with its verb in the indicative, is sometimes used as the subject or object of a verb, or in apposition with a noun or pronoun.

*Haec quoque ratiō eōs dēduxit, quod Haeduōs appropinquāre cognōverant, This consideration also influenced them—[the fact] that they knew the Haeduans were approaching.*

*a)* Sometimes *quod* is translated *as to the fact that*, and the clause it introduces then serves as an adverbial modifier, loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

#### 105 IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with *it*, and occur only in the third person singular.

*Pluit, it rains*

*a)* The impersonal expressions *necesse est, it is necessary, mōs est, it is the custom, oportet, it is right (one ought), convenit, it is agreed, licet, it is permitted*, are commonly followed by the infinitive. With *licet* and *necesse est* a dative often occurs which becomes the subject in an English translation.

*Licet Helvētiīs id facere, The Helvetians are permitted to do this (literally, It is permitted to the Helvetians to do this).*

b) Certain intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in the passive, the subject in translation being suggested by the meaning of the verb.

*Diū et ācritēr pugnātum est, The fight was long and fierce (literally, It was fought long and fiercely).*

This use is particularly common with the Future Passive Participle. When the Dative of Agent occurs in this construction, it is translated into English as the subject.

*Caesari properandum est, Caesar must hasten (literally, It must be hastened by Caesar).*

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

#### 106 SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE (VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE)

The subjunctive is used to express an act as willed by some person.

*Cum volet, congregiātur, When he wishes, let him come on.*

a) The negative used with the volitive subjunctive is *nē*.

*Nē diūtius maneāmus, Let us not remain longer.*

#### 107 CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

A subordinate clause which expresses purpose has its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is commonly introduced by *ut* or (if negative) by *nē*.

*Dīmisit igitur nūntiōs ut causam itineris docērent, Therefore he sent out messengers to explain the reason for the journey.*

*Militēs missi sunt nē urbs caperētur, Soldiers were sent that the city might not be captured.*

a) Sometimes a purpose clause is introduced by a relative pronoun. This form of purpose clause is found chiefly after *mittō* and its compounds, and after *relinquō* and a few other verbs.

*Puerum mittam quī tē adjuvet, I will send a boy to help you (literally, who shall help you).*

b) The clause of purpose may be translated by a simple infinitive, by an infinitive with *in order*, or by a clause with *that* or *in order that*. The following translations are possible for the sentence *Vēnī ut tē vidērem*:

*I came to see you.*

*I came that I might see you.*

*I came in order to see you.*

*I came in order that I might see you.*

#### 108

A purpose clause which contains a comparative form of an adjective or adverb is usually introduced by *quō* instead of *ut*.

*Castella mūnit quō facilius eōs prohibēre posset nē trāseant, He fortified strongholds in order that (by which) he could more easily prevent them from crossing.*

A subordinate clause which expresses result has its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is introduced by *ut*, or occasionally by a relative pronoun. The negative is *nōn*.

*Columba tam celeriter volāvit ut incolumis ēvāderet, The dove flew so fast that it escaped unharmed.*

*Est nēmō tam sapiēns quī numquam erret, There is no one so wise that he never errs.*

*Tempestātēs tantae erant ut ex portū proficisci nōn audērēmus, The storms were so great that we did not dare to set out from the harbor.*

Verbs expressing an idea of desire, such as those meaning *to command, urge, persuade, request*, and the like, may take as object (or as subject in the passive) a clause introduced by *ut* or *nē* with its verb in the subjunctive.

*Nūntius Jāsonī persuāsīt ut rēgī auxilium ferret, The messenger persuaded Jason to bring the king help.*

*Militibus imperāvit nē saxa jacerent, He ordered the soldiers not to throw stones.*

a) These clauses are frequently translated by an infinitive with a subject, as in the examples above.

b) Such expressions as *jūs est, there is a law*, and *cōnsilium est, the plan is*, may be followed by a substantive clause telling what the law or plan is to which reference is made.

c) The verbs *jubeō, order*, and *vetō, forbid*, regularly take an infinitive with subject accusative, instead of a clause with the subjunctive. Verbs meaning *to wish* sometimes take the infinitive with subject accusative.

*Legiōnem flūmen trānsire jussit, He ordered the legion to cross the river.*

Verbs meaning *to accomplish* and impersonal verbs meaning *it happens, it results, it remains*, and the like, take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by *ut*. The negative is *nōn*.

*Itaque fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur, So it came about that they wandered less widely.*

a) Such expressions as *mōs est, the custom is*, may be followed by a substantive clause with *ut*, telling what the custom is to which reference is made.

Verbs and other expressions of fear may take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by *nē* translated *that* or *ut* translated *that . . . not*.

*Rēgulus timēbat nē cibus uxōrī ac liberīs dēesset, Regulus feared that food for his wife and children might be lacking.*

*Timeō ut sē fortiter dēfendat, I fear that he will not defend himself bravely.*

- a) Sometimes *nē . . . nōn* is used instead of *ut* with words of fear.

*Timeō nē sē nōn dēfendat, I fear that he will not defend himself.*

- b) Such expressions as *periculum est* may take the same construction as that used with words of fear.

*Periculum est nē cohors capiātur, There is danger that the cohort will be captured.*

- c) The present subjunctive in clauses depending on words of fear is often translated by the English future indicative.

The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to denote an act which is anticipated or expected.

*Vēnit ut tempus extraheret dum novae cōpiae ex Āfricā advenirent, He came that he might gain time until fresh troops might arrive from Africa.*

- a) The anticipatory subjunctive is used mainly after words meaning *until* or *before* (*dum, antequam, priusquam*). Occasionally this use is found after *cum* meaning *when*.

- b) Sometimes the indicative is used after words meaning *until* or *before*, to state a new fact which is of importance in the narrative or to represent an actual event as looked back upon.

The conjunctions *dum, modo, and dummodo*, when meaning *provided, provided that, or if only*, take the subjunctive.

*Urbs salva erit, dum tū exeās, The city will be safe, provided you withdraw.*

A relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive is sometimes used to describe the antecedent of the relative.

*Paucī erant quī arma ferre nōn possent, There were a few who could not bear arms.*

115—cont.

a) Such clauses are used when the antecedents are indefinite or negative and with expressions of existence and nonexistence, such as *sunt quī, there are those who, est nēmō quī, there is no one who.*

b) A clause of description which is parenthetical in character or which has a personal pronoun or a proper noun as antecedent takes the indicative.

116 CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

A subordinate clause introduced by *cum* meaning *since* has its verb in the subjunctive.

*Cum bovēs caudīs in antrum traherentur, putāvit Herculem hōs nōn inventūrum esse, Since the cattle were dragged into the cave by their tails, he thought Hercules would not find them.*

a) Sometimes a causal clause with its verb in the subjunctive is introduced by a relative pronoun.

*Fēlix es quī tot amīcōs habeās, You are fortunate, since you have (literally, who have) so many friends.*

117 CUM CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

A subordinate clause introduced by *cum* meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive.

*Cum bovēs cōspiceret, Cācum vix cernere potuit, Although he saw the cattle, he could hardly see Cacus.*

a) The principal clause with which a concessive clause is connected frequently, but not always, contains the adverb *tamen*.

*Herculēs, cum intellegeret periculum magnum esse, tamen negōtium suscēpit, Although Hercules knew that the danger was great, nevertheless he undertook the task.*

b) A concessive clause is sometimes introduced by a form of the relative pronoun.

*Tum Cethēgus, quī paulō ante aliquid respondisset, repente conticuit, Then Cethegus, although he (literally, who) had made some reply a little before, suddenly became silent.*

118 CUM DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

The imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is often used in a clause introduced by *cum* meaning *when*. Such a clause describes the situation at the time of the main act.

*Cum paulum sē ex timōre recēpisset, clāmāvit sē velle mōnstrum in Orcum reducī, When he had recovered a little from his terror, he cried that he wished that the monster would be led back to the underworld.*



a) If the clause with **cum** is used to make definite the time denoted by the adverb **tum** or any other word of time, it takes the indicative.

**Tum cum hostēs impetum faciēbant, auxilium nōn missum est,**  
*At the time when the enemy were making an attack, help was not sent.*

b) If the verb of the **cum** clause denotes repeated action, it is commonly in the indicative. In such clauses **cum** is sometimes translated *whenever*.

**Cum nāvem hostium viderant, ad eam properābant,** *Whenever they saw a ship of the enemy, they hurried toward it.*

c) The present or future indicative, and occasionally the perfect indicative, may be used with **cum** meaning *when*.

## 119 CLAUSES WITH EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT

1) Words and phrases of doubt, when accompanied by a negative, are followed by **quīn** and the subjunctive.

**Nōn dubitō quīn Belgae fortēs sint,** *I do not doubt that the Belgians are brave.*

**Nōn est dubium quīn hoc fecerit,** *There is no doubt that he did this.*

2) Verbs of hindrance, prevention, and check are followed by a subjunctive clause introduced by **quīn**, **quōminus**, or **nē**. **Quīn** is used only after a negative, **nē** only after an affirmative clause, and **quōminus** after either an affirmative or a negative clause.

**Hostēs impedivimus nē (or quōminus) trānsirent,** *We prevented the enemy from crossing.*

**Hostēs nōn impedivimus quīn (or quōminus) trānsirent,** *We did not prevent the enemy from crossing.*

**Rēx nōn dubitābat quīn Argonautae sibi auxilium ferrent,** *The king did not doubt that the Argonauts would bring him help.*

## 120 INDIRECT QUESTIONS

An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

**Jāsōn dēmōnstrāvit quam ob causam vēnisset,** *Jason explained why (for what reason) he had come.*

## 121 SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive.

**Columba tam celeriter per medium spatium volāvit ut priusquam rūpēs cōnflixerint incolumis ēvāderet,** *The dove flew through the space in the middle so fast that it escaped unharmed before the rocks came together.*

## 122 IMPLIED (OR INFORMAL) INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause to indicate that it is a quotation, although no main clause of indirect discourse stands in the context.

Servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit, *He demanded the slaves who had fled to them (who he said had fled to them).*

## 123 CAUSAL CLAUSES WITH QUOD, QUIA, AND QUONIAM

Clauses of reason introduced by *quod*, *quia*, and *quoniam* take the indicative to denote a reason given directly by the speaker or writer. Such clauses, however, take the subjunctive if the reason is given as a quotation from someone else or from the thought or utterance of the writer or speaker at another time.

Profectus est quod verēbātur, *He set out because he was afraid.*  
Grātiās cōsulī ēgērunt quod rem pūblicam servāvisset, *They thanked the consul because (as they said) he had saved the state.*

## 124 IMPERATIVE MOOD

The imperative mood is used to express commands.

Dēsilīte, commilitōnēs, *Jump down, comrades.*

a) While the English imperative is used only in the present tense and in the second person, the Latin imperative has a future as well as a present. The future has the second and third persons; the present has only the second person.

## 125 NEGATIVE COMMANDS

Negative commands (prohibitions) in the second person are commonly expressed by the imperative of *nōlō* (*nōlī*, *nōlīte*) with the infinitive of the verb denoting the act forbidden.

Nōlī hīc manēre, *Do not remain here.*

a) Sometimes the perfect subjunctive with *nē* is used to express a negative command.

Nē hīc mānserīs, *Do not remain here.*

## INFINITIVE

### 126 COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

An infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb. When thus used, it denotes another action of the same subject as that of the verb on which it depends.

Omnēs redīre volunt, *All wish to return.*

## 127 INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

An infinitive, with or without accusative subject, may be used as the subject of many impersonal verbs and also of *est* with a predicate adjective or noun.

*Eum manēre oportet, He ought to stay.*  
*Mē ire necesse est, I must go.*

a) The subjunctive is sometimes used with *necesse est* and with a few verbs which commonly take the infinitive.

## 128 INFINITIVE WITH ACCUSATIVE SUBJECT

1) An infinitive with accusative subject is used with words of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing*, and the like (Indirect Discourse).

*Caesar dicit Belgās omnium Gallōrum fortissimōs esse, Caesar says the Belgians are the bravest of all the Gauls.*

2) An infinitive with accusative subject is regularly used with *jubeō, order, vetō, forbid*, and sometimes with *patior, permit, cōgō, compel, volō, wish, nōlō, be unwilling, mālō, prefer*.

*Dux militēs impetum facere jussit, The leader ordered the soldiers to make an attack.*

## 129 HISTORICAL INFINITIVE

Occasionally an infinitive is used in narration as the equivalent of the imperfect indicative or of the perfect denoting a simple past act.

*Nostrī primō fortiter pugnāre, At first our men fought bravely.*

a) The subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative case.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

### 130 NONCOMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

A conditional sentence which does not imply that the condition is either true or false has both verbs in the indicative.

*Sī hostēs tūti effūgerunt, nostrī eōs capere nōn cōnātī sunt, If the enemy escaped safely (literally, safe), our men did not try to capture them.*

a) Sometimes an imperative or a subjunctive expressing *will* is used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of this type instead of an indicative.

*Sī pācem cupitis, arma trāдите, If you wish peace, surrender your arms.*

A future more vivid conditional sentence refers to future time and gives no indication as to the attitude of the speaker or writer toward the fulfillment of the condition. The verbs are in the future (or future perfect) tense.

*Sī auxilium mittētur, oppidum dēfendētur, If aid is (literally, shall be) sent, the town will be defended.*

a) The verb of the condition in a sentence of this type is commonly translated by the present indicative with future meaning, as in the example above. Sometimes the future with *shall* is used.

b) The future perfect may be used in either clause to represent an act as occurring before some expressed or implied future time.

c) The future more vivid conditional sentence is merely a non-committal conditional sentence in future time.

A future less vivid conditional sentence refers to future time, and implies doubt on the part of the writer or speaker as to the fulfillment of the condition. The conclusion refers to a future act or situation as conceivable or imaginable without asserting that it will take place or be realized. The verbs are in the present (or perfect) subjunctive.

*Sī milītes flūmen trāseant, multī interficiantur, If the soldiers should cross the river, many would be killed.*

a) The perfect may be used in either clause to show that an act, if occurring, would take place before some expressed or implied future time.

A conditional sentence which implies that the condition is not true has its verbs in the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive, the imperfect to refer to present time and the past perfect to refer to past time.

*Sī Haeduī majōrēs cōpiās habērent, oppida dēfenderent, If the Haeduans had larger forces, they would defend the towns.*

*Sī Haeduī majōrēs cōpiās habuissent, oppida dēfendissent, If the Haeduans had had larger forces, they would have defended the towns.*

Commonly the tense of the verbs in the two clauses is the same, but the imperfect may be used in one clause and the past perfect in the other, if the sense requires.

134 INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Indirect discourse is used with words of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing*, and the like. The use of moods is as follows:

- 1) A main clause expressing a statement has its verb in the infinitive with subject accusative.
- 2) A main clause expressing a command has its verb in the subjunctive.
- 3) All subordinate clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

*Prōmisit sē vellus trāditūrum esse sī Jāsōn labōrēs prius perfēcisset, He promised that he would give up the fleece if Jason would first do the tasks.*

135 PARTICIPLES

The Latin verb has four participles: present active, perfect passive, future active, and future passive.

a) Deponent verbs have the same number of participles as other verbs. The perfect participle of a deponent is usually active in meaning, but it is occasionally used as a passive.

136 PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The present active participle denotes an act taking place at the same time as the main verb. It is less frequently used than the English present participle. For declension see page 317, 14.

*Nostrī in hostēs advenientēs impetum fēcērunt, Our men made an attack on the enemy [as they were] coming up.*

a) The English present participle is often used with a form of *to be* to make the progressive form of the verb. Thus, *he is marching, we were standing*. The Latin present participle is never so used.

137 PERFECT PARTICIPLE

The perfect passive participle denotes an act which took place before the time of the main verb. It is declined like *bonus*, page 315, 9.

*Legiō ā Caesare praemissa castra mūniēbat, The legion, having been sent ahead by Caesar, was fortifying the camp.*

138 FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

The future active participle is used chiefly with forms of *sum* to denote an act which someone intends to do or is about to do. It is declined like *bonus*, page 315, 9.

*Bellum cum Gallis gestūrī erant, They intended to (or were about to) wage war with the Gauls.*

The future passive participle is used chiefly with forms of *sum* to denote an act which ought to be done or must be done by someone. It is declined like *bonus*.

*Id Rōmānīs faciendum erat, This had to be done by the Romans, or The Romans had to do this.*

a) The future passive participle of a deponent verb is passive in meaning.

The gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative of the singular number.

a) The genitive of the gerund is used chiefly as an objective genitive with an adjective or noun. With the ablative *causā* it expresses purpose.

*cupidus cēnandī, desirous of dining*  
*resistendī causā, for the purpose (sake) of resisting*

b) The dative of the gerund is rarely used.

c) The accusative of the gerund is frequently used as the object of the preposition *ad* to express purpose. It is never used as a direct object.

*ad proficiscendum, for setting out, to set out*

d) The ablative of the gerund is used to express means or cause, or as object of the prepositions *ab*, *dē*, *ex*, *in*.

*pugnandō, by fighting*                      *in quaerendō, on inquiring*

The infinitive is used to supply the place of the missing nominative of the gerund. The infinitive is also used instead of the gerund as an accusative of direct object.

The future passive participle is often used as a verbal adjective in a phrase which has the same meaning as a gerund with an object. Such a verbal adjective is called a gerundive.

*spēs urbis capiendae, hope of capturing the city*

a) The case uses of the gerundive are in general the same as those of the gerund.

*cupidus oppidī expugnandī, desirous of storming the town*  
*auxiliī ferendī causā, for the purpose (sake) of bringing aid*  
*ad eās rēs cōnficiendās, for accomplishing these things*  
*dē auxiliō mittendō, about (concerning) sending aid*  
*lapidibus portandīs, by carrying stones*

## 142 DISTINCTION BETWEEN GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

The following distinctions between the gerund and the gerundive are to be observed:

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
A noun	An adjective
Active in meaning	Passive in meaning
Neuter gender	All genders
Used only in the singular	Both numbers
No nominative	All cases

a) The genitive of the gerund, and also the ablative, when used without a preposition, sometimes take a direct object. But no form of the gerund standing as the object of a preposition can have a direct object. The gerundive must be used instead.

## 143 SUPINE

The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative. The accusative is used to express purpose in clauses in which the finite verb expresses motion.

*Lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, They sent envoys to ask aid.*

a) Only three words commonly occur in the ablative: *dictū*, *factū*, and *vīsū*. They are used as ablatives of respect with a few adjectives.

*mīrābile dictū, remarkable to say (believe it or not)*

*optimum factū, the best [thing] to do*

*horribile vīsū, horrible to see*

## 144 TENSES

The tenses of the Latin indicative are the present, imperfect, future, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. In the subjunctive only the present, imperfect, perfect, and past perfect are found.

## 145 PRESENT

The present tense, as in English, denotes present time.

a) In a narrative of past events the present indicative is sometimes used to present the situation more vividly to the reader or the hearer. This is called the historical present.

b) The present subjunctive is sometimes used with future force. This is especially common in clauses of fear.

## 146 A clause introduced by *dum* meaning *while* takes its verb in the present indicative.

*Dum haec geruntur, ex urbe profectus sum, While this was going on, I set out from the city.*

a) *Dum* meaning *as long as* may take any tense of the indicative which the sense requires.

**147 IMPERFECT**

The imperfect tense represents a past act in progress or a past situation continuing.

a) The imperfect indicative is sometimes used to denote a customary act or one of frequent occurrence in past time.

b) The imperfect indicative is often translated by the progressive form of the English past tense—*was praising, was warning*, etc., but sometimes the simple English past is used as its equivalent.

c) The imperfect subjunctive is sometimes used to express action which was at a past time thought of as future.

**148 FUTURE**

The future tense, as in English, denotes future time.

a) When used with conjunctions meaning *if* or *when*, the future tense is regularly translated by the English present.

**149 PERFECT**

The perfect tense has two uses.

1) It may be equivalent in meaning to an English present perfect (translated with the auxiliary verbs *have* or *has*).

2) It may be equivalent to the English past tense, referring to an indefinite past act.

a) In future less vivid conditional sentences the perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to refer to a future act which, if occurring, would take place before some expressed or implied future time.

**150 PAST PERFECT**

The past perfect is used to represent an act as having occurred before some expressed or implied past time.

a) The past perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to refer to an act which was thought of in the past as likely to occur before some expressed or implied future time.

b) The past perfect is sometimes used in subordinate clauses to denote repeated action.

**151 FUTURE PERFECT**

The future perfect is used to show that an act will occur before some expressed or implied future time.

a) The future perfect is used more frequently in Latin than in English.

**152 SEQUENCE OF TENSES**

The tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause usually bears a definite relation to the tense in the principal clause. This relation is called the sequence of tenses.



1) If the main verb is present, future, or future perfect, the dependent subjunctive is present or perfect.

2) If the main verb is imperfect, perfect, or past perfect, the dependent subjunctive is imperfect or past perfect.

A perfect indicative which is translated by an English present perfect may be followed by a present or perfect subjunctive.

**153** Exceptions to the rule for the sequence of tenses are sometimes found:

1) In a clause of result a perfect subjunctive is sometimes used where ordinary sequence of tenses would demand an imperfect.

2) The historical present may be followed either by the tenses which would follow a perfect or by the tenses which would follow a present.

3) Sometimes a strongly marked difference between the time ideas of the subordinate clause and the main clause leads to a seeming disregard of the sequence of tenses.

## PREPOSITIONS

**154** The following prepositions take their objects in the ablative case: *ā* (ab), *cum*, *dē*, *ē* (ex), *prae*, *prō*, *sine*.

*Cum* is attached to the end of the following words: *mē*, *tē*, *sē*, *nōbīs*, and *vōbīs*. This is called the enclitic use of *cum*. The word is also commonly used in this way with *quō*, *quā*, and *quibus*.

*mēcum*, with me    *tēcum*, with you    *quibuscum*, with whom

**155** The prepositions *in* and *sub* are used with the ablative in expressions denoting existence or continuance in a place; they are used with the accusative in expressions denoting motion toward a place.

*In urbe mānsī*, I remained in the city.

*In urbem vēnī*, I came into the city.

**156** All prepositions found in this book except those given above take their objects in the accusative.

**157** When the object of a monosyllabic preposition is a noun modified by an adjective, the preposition sometimes stands between the adjective and the noun.

*magnō cum periculō*, with great danger

# SUMMARY OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION

## SOUNDS OF VOWELS

LONG	SHORT
ā = <i>a</i> in <i>father</i>	a = first <i>a</i> in <i>aha</i>
ē = <i>e</i> in <i>they</i>	e = <i>e</i> in <i>net</i>
ī = <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i>	i = <i>i</i> in <i>this</i>
ō = <i>o</i> in <i>hole</i>	o = <i>o</i> in <i>domain</i>
ū = <i>u</i> in <i>rude</i>	u = <i>u</i> in <i>full</i>

## SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

ae = <i>i</i> in <i>like</i>
au = <i>ou</i> in <i>round</i>
oe = <i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i>
ei = <i>ei</i> in <i>vein</i>
eu = short <i>e</i> + <i>oo</i>
ui almost = <i>ui</i> in <i>ruin</i>

## CONSONANTS

The consonants are, in general like English. But note that:

c is always like <i>k</i>	p is always as in <i>spin</i>	t is always as in <i>stop</i>
g is always as in <i>go</i>	qu = <i>qu</i> in <i>quick</i>	x is always like <i>ks</i>
j = <i>y</i> as in <i>yes</i>	s is always as in <i>say</i>	bs = <i>ps</i> ; bt = <i>pt</i> ; v = <i>w</i>
ch = <i>c</i> in <i>can</i> ; ph = <i>p</i> in <i>put</i> ; th = <i>t</i> in <i>ten</i>		

## SYLLABLES

A syllable must always have a vowel or a diphthong.

1. A consonant between two vowels is taken with the vowel which follows it: pō-nō, ha-be-ō.
2. Two consonants between two vowels are divided, one going with the vowel which precedes and one with the vowel which follows: par-va, ter-ra.

EXCEPTIONS. (1) If the first of the two consonants is a stop consonant<sup>1</sup> and the second is *l* or *r*, both are taken with the vowel following: pa-trī. (2) In the division of a compound verb into syllables, the prepositional element is separated from the simple verb: ad-est.

3. When there are more than two consonants between two vowels, all but the first go with the following vowel: ob-scū-ra.

## ACCENT

1. All words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable: a'mō, lau'dant.
2. In a word of more than two syllables the accent falls on the penult (the syllable before the last) if the penult is long; that is, if it has a long vowel (mo-nē'mus) or a diphthong (a-moe'na) or if it ends in a consonant (in-ter'dum, pu-el'la).

EXCEPTION. If the first of two consonants is a stop consonant<sup>1</sup> (or *f*, *ph*, *th*, *ch*) and the second is *l* or *r*, they do not make the penult long.

3. If the penult is not long, the accent falls on the antepenult (the second syllable from the last): pe-cū'ni-a, a-gri'co-la, e-pis'tu-la.

<sup>1</sup>The stop consonants are *b*, *p*, *d*, *t*, *g*, *c*, *k*, *q*. The combinations *ch*, *ph*, *th* are treated as stop consonants.

# Latin-English Vocabulary

Since the meaning of many Latin words can readily be deduced from related Latin words or from English derivatives, such connections are often pointed out in this Vocabulary. For instance, *abdūcō* is followed by "(p. 84)," signifying that on page 84 the formation of compound verbs is discussed. In the same way, "*absēns* (p. 148)" means that the form and meaning of this adjective are explained there.

## A

*ā, ab* (also *abs* in some compounds), *prep. with abl.*, from, by, at; (*place*) away from; on, on the side of; (*time*) since, after; (*distance*) away, off

*abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum* (p. 180), put away, hide

*abdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum* (p. 84), lead or take away; carry off

*abeō, -ire, -iī, -itum* (p. 84), go away, retire

*abjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum* (p. 180), cast away, throw down; throw

*ablātus, -a, -um, see auferō*

*abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cisum*, cut or tear off or away

*absēns, gen. -sentis, adj.* (p. 148), absent, away

*absentia, -ae, f.* (p. 200), absence

*abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum* (p. 180), hold back, refrain, abstain

*absum, -esse, āfui, āfutūrus* (p. 84), be away, be distant, be absent; refrain from; be lacking

*abundō, -āre, -āvī, —, overflow;* abound

*ac, see atque*

*accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum* (p. 180), come near or to; be added, be in addition to

*accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum*, set fire to, light; inflame

*acceptus, -a, -um, adj.* (p. 148), acceptable, pleasing

*accidō, -cidere, -cidī, —* (p. 180), fall to or on, fall; happen, occur; happen to

*accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum* (p. 180), take, take in, receive, accept; hear; endure

*accurrō, -currere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum* (p. 180), run to, come up hurriedly

*accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*, accuse, blame

*ācer, ācris, ācre, adj.* (p. 124), sharp; spirited, bold, eager, fierce

*aciēs, -ēī, f.* (p. 124), tip, point, edge; battle line, battle array; encounter, battle; flash (*of the eye*)

*ācritēr, adv.* (p. 124), sharply, vigorously, fiercely, severely, bravely

*acūtus, -a, -um, adj.* (p. 64), sharp, pointed

*ad, prep. with acc.*, to, against, at, toward, according to, among; (*motion*) up to, toward, near to; (*position*) near, beside; (*purpose*) for; (*time*) up to, until, on; (*number*) about; *adv.*, about

*addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum* (p. 180), add, attach; give

*addūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum* (p. 84), lead or bring to, lead against, conduct, bring; draw to, draw tight; induce, influence

*adeō, -ire, -iī, -itum* (p. 84), go or come up to, approach; visit; face

*adeō, adv.*, to such an extent or degree, so, so much; in fact

*adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesūrus*, stick, adhere

*adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum* (p. 180), apply; summon, admit, invite; bring, supply

*adhūc, adv.*, until now, as yet; still

*adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum* (p. 180), drive (to), compel, urge; hurl, drive (in); ram in; haul, move

*aditus, -ūs, m.* (p. 238), way of approach, approach, entrance; access

## adjiciō—agmen

- adjiciō, -jicare, -jēcī, -jectum** (p. 180), hurl toward *or* on, throw; add, add to
- adjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūntum** (p. 84), join to, add; associate
- adjuvō, -āre, -jūvī, -jūtum** (p. 84), aid, help; support, sustain
- administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, manage, administer, attend to, do, direct, govern
- admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum** (p. 84), wonder, wonder at, be surprised; admire
- admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum** (p. 84), admit, receive; let go; commit; incur
- admodum, adv.**, to the limit; fully, very, very much
- adolēscō, -ere, adolēvī, adultum**, grow up
- adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum** (p. 84), rise against; attack
- adornō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (p. 84), adorn, decorate
- adōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (p. 84), worship, adore
- adsum, -esse, adfuī *or* affuī, -futūrus** (p. 180), be present, be here, be near, come
- adolēscēns, gen. -entis, adj.**, youthful, young; *m. and f. as noun*, young man *or* woman, a youth; the younger, junior
- adolēscēntia, -ae, f.** (p. 200), youth
- advena, -ae, m. and f.**, stranger
- adveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum** (p. 84), come to, come up, arrive
- adventus, -ūs, m.** (pp. 158, 238), approach, coming, arrival
- adversus, -a, -um, adj.** (p. 148), turned toward, facing, in front, opposite; unfavorable, hostile
- adversus, prep. with acc.**, against; opposite, facing
- advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum** (p. 84), turn to; proceed against; **animum advertere**, observe, notice
- aedificium, -ī, n.** (p. 200), building, house
- aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (p. 238), build, construct
- aeger, -gra, -grum, adj.**, sick, feeble
- aegrē, adv.**, painfully; with difficulty; with grief *or* resentment; **aegrē ferre**, be indignant, resent
- aëneus, -a, -um, adj.**, of copper, of bronze, brazen
- aequitās, -ātis, f.** (p. 200), fairness, evenness of temper
- aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, make even *or* equal; equal
- aequor, -oris, n.**, level surface; sea
- aequus, -a, -um, adj.**, even, level; equal; just, favorable; calm
- āēr, āēris, acc. āēra, m.**, air, sky
- aes, aeris, n.**, copper, bronze; money; **aes aliēnum**, debt
- aestās, -ātis, f.**, summer; **initā aestāte**, at the beginning of summer
- aestimātiō, -ōnis, f.**, valuation
- aestus, -ūs, m.**, a boiling; heat; tide
- aetās, -ātis, f.**, time of life, age; lifetime, generation
- afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum** (p. 180), bring *or* carry to; bring forward; report
- afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum** (p. 180), do to; affect, treat; visit with; afflict; **magnō dolōre afficere**, annoy very much
- afflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, damage greatly; afflict
- affligō, -fligere, -flixi, -flictum** (p. 238), strike, dash down; break, damage; afflict
- ager, agrī, m.**, field, land, farm; country, territory
- agger, -eris, m.**, mound, siege mound, rampart, earthwork; materials for a rampart; pile
- aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum** (p. 180), advance against, attack; approach
- agmen, -inis, n.** (p. 238), marching army, marching column; army; **agmen claudere**, bring up the rear; **novissimum agmen**, the rear, rear line *or* column

**agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum**, drive; bring up; do, act, perform, attend to; spend, pass; hold (*courts, assemblies*); discuss, confer; *grātiās agere*, give thanks, thank

**agricola, -ae, m.**, farmer

**agricultūra, -ae, f.**, agriculture

**ālā, -ae, f.**, wing; squadron (*of cavalry*)

**alacritās, -ātis, f.**, activity, energy, eagerness

**albus, -a, -um, adj.**, white

**aliās, adv.**, at another time; at another place, elsewhere

**aliēnus, -a, -um, adj.**, of another, another's, of others, others'; foreign, strange; unfavorable; *aes aliēnum* (another's money), debt

**aliō, adv.**, to another place

**aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, adj.**, some, any

**aliquis, aliquid, pron.**, someone, somebody, something; anyone, anything

**aliter, adv.**, otherwise, differently; on any other conditions; *aliter . . . ac*, otherwise than, differently from

**alius, -a, -ud, adj.**, another, other; different, else; *alius . . . alius*, one . . . another; *pl.*, some . . . others

**alloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum** (p. 180), speak to, address, greet

**almus, -a, -um, adj.**, nourishing, fostering

**alō, -ere, aluī, altum**, nourish, support; rear; sustain, increase

**alter, altera, alterum, adj.**, one of two, the other, a second, another; *alter . . . alter*, the one . . . the other; *diē alterō*, on the next day

**altitūdō, -inis, f.** (p. 200), altitude, height; depth

**altus, -a, -um, adj.**, nourished, well-grown; high, lofty; deep; *n. as noun*, the deep, the sea

**alumna, -ae, f.**, foster daughter

**alumnus, -ī, m.**, foster son, ward

**alveus, -ī, m.**, small boat

**amābilis, -e, adj.** (pp. 124, 148), worthy of love, friendly

**ambō, -ae, -ō, num. adj.**, both

**ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, walk

**amīcitia, -ae, f.** (p. 200), friendship

**amicus, -a, -um, adj.** (p. 124), friendly, loving, kind; *m. as noun*, friend

**amita, -ae, f.**, aunt

**āmittō, -mittere, -misī, -misum** (p. 84), lose; let slip, miss; send away

**amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, love, like

**amoenus, -a, -um, adj.**, pleasant

**amor, -ōris, m.** (p. 124), love

**āmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum** (p. 84), move away, remove

**amplius, -ī, n.**, more, greater amount

**amplius, compar. adv.**, more, in addition; more generously

**amplus, -a, -um, adj.**, large; great, noted; honorable, splendid, magnificent, generous

**an, conj.**, used in double questions, or, whether; *utrum . . . an*, whether . . . or; *used alone, introducing a question*, or is it that? can it be that?

**ancora, -ae, f.**, anchor; *ancoram tollere*, weigh anchor, set sail

**angelus, -ī, m.**, messenger; angel

**angustia, -ae, f.** (p. 200), narrowness; *usually pl.*, narrow place or pass; difficulties

**angustus, -a, -um, adj.**, narrow

**anima, -ae, f.**, soul, mind

**animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum** (p. 238), turn the mind to, observe, notice, perceive

**animal, animālis, n.**, (p. 21), living creature, animal

**animus, -ī, m.**, soul, mind, courage, spirit; feeling, heart, disposition, nature; high spirit, arrogance; *aequus animus*, calmness; *animum advertere*, observe, notice; *ex animō*, sincerely; *habere in animō*, intend

**annus, -ī, m.**, year

**ante, prep. with acc.**, before, in front of; *adv.*, before, formerly, previously, ago

**anteā, adv.**, formerly, previously, before, first

**antequam or ante quam, conj.**, before

## antīquitus—attribuō

antīquitus, *adv.*, in former times, long ago  
 antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, old, former, ancient; *m. pl. as noun*, the ancients  
 antrum, -ī, *n.*, cave, cavern  
 anxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, anxious, troubled  
 aper, apri, *m.*, wild boar  
 aperīō, -īre, aperuī, apertum, open, open up, make accessible; establish; reveal, make known  
 apertissimē, *adv.*, very openly; very frankly  
 apertus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), open, exposed, unprotected; plain, frank  
 appāritor, -ōris, *m.*, servant  
 appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call by name, address, salute; call on, appeal to; name, call  
 appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum (p. 180), drive or bring to; *with or without nāvem*, bring to land, bring up, land  
 appetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum (p. 180), strive after, seek; approach, be at hand  
 appōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, serve  
 appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, come near, approach  
 apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, near, before; among, in, with; to; in the vicinity of; in the possession of  
 aqua, -ae, *f.*, water; aqueduct  
 aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle; eagle (*of metal, as a Roman standard*)  
 āra, -ae, *f.*, altar  
 arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, judge, think, believe, consider  
 arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree  
 arca, -ae, *f.*, chest, box  
 arcessō, -ere, arcessivī, arcessitum, send for, summon, invite; seek  
 arcus, -ūs, *m.*, bow, arch  
 ārdēs, *gen.*, -entis, *adj.* (p. 148), burning, blazing  
 ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsurus, be on fire, blaze, burn up, be consumed; be inflamed (*with emotion*)  
 arēna, -ae, *f.*, sand; arena

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver  
 āridus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry, parched, arid; *n. as noun*, dry land  
 ariēs, -etis, *m.*, ram; battering ram  
 arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons, implements, equipment; tools  
 armātūra, -ae, *f.*, armor, equipment; *with levis*, light-armed  
 armātus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), armed, equipped, in arms; *m. pl. as noun*, armed men, troops  
 armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), arm, equip, fit out  
 arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, plow  
 arroganter, *adv.*, arrogantly  
 arrogantia, -ae, *f.*, arrogance, presumption, insolence  
 ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art; business, profession; craft, cunning; ars medica, medical skill  
 artificium, -ī, *n.*, handicraft; trick, device  
 arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress  
 ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, climb, mount, ascend; go aboard  
 ascēsus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), ascent, approach  
 aspectum, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), view, aspect  
 aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectum, look at, look on; examine  
 assiduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close at hand; continual  
 assimilis, -e, *adj.*, similar, like  
 at, *conj.* (*used to contradict or introduce objections*), but, yet, at least; but (you say)  
 atque (*before consonants ac*), *conj.*, and; and also, and even, and especially; *after words of likeness and unlikeness*, as, than, from; simul atque, as soon as  
 ātrium, -ī, *n.*, atrium, principal room of a Roman house  
 attineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, detain  
 attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum (p. 180), touch, reach; border on; arrive at  
 attribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum (p. 180), allot, assign, hand over

**auctor**, -ōris, *m.*, promoter, originator, leader; cause; supporter  
**auctōritās**, -ātis, *f.*, influence, authority, prestige, dignity  
**audācia**, -ae, *f.* (pp. 124, 200), daring, boldness; audacity, presumption  
**audācter**, *adv.* (p. 124), boldly, bravely, fiercely  
**audāx**, *gen.* -ācis, *adj.* (p. 124), daring, bold; presumptuous  
**audeō**, -ēre, *ausus sum*, *semideponenti* (p. 124), dare; be courageous  
**audiō**, -īre, -īvi, -itum, hear, listen to; learn  
**audītor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), hearer, auditor  
**auferō**, -ferre, *abstulī*, *ablātum* (p. 180), carry away, remove; destroy  
**augeō**, -ēre, *auxī*, *auctum*, enlarge, increase, add to  
**augurium**, -ī, *n.*, augury, prophecy, omen  
**augustus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, majestic, venerable  
**aura**, -ae, *f.*, breeze, wind  
**aureus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of gold, golden  
**aurīga**, -ae, *m.*, driver (*of a chariot*), charioteer  
**aurōra**, -ae, *f.*, dawn, morning  
**aurum**, -ī, *n.*, gold  
**aut**, *conj.*, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or  
**autem**, *conj.* (*never stands first in its clause*), but, on the other hand, however; furthermore, moreover  
**auxilium**, -ī, *n.* (p. 200), help, aid, support; resource, resort; *pl.*, auxiliary troops; reinforcements  
**avāritia**, -ae, *f.*, greed, avarice  
**āvehō**, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum (p. 84), carry off, take away, carry away  
**āvertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum (p. 84), turn away, turn aside, avert, divert  
**avidē**, *adv.*, greedily  
**avis**, *avis*, *f.*, bird  
**āvolō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus (p. 84), fly away; flee away, flee  
**avus**, -ī, *m.*, grandfather

B

**balteus**, -ī, *m.*, girdle, belt; sword belt  
**barbarus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign, barbarous, barbarian, savage, rude; *m. pl. as noun*, barbarians  
**beātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, happy, blessed, fortunate  
**bellicōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (pp. 124, 148), warlike  
**bellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (pp. 124, 238), carry on war, wage war  
**bellum**, -ī, *n.*, war; **bellum gerere**, wage war; **bellum inferre**, make war on  
**bēlua**, -ae, *f.*, wild beast  
**bene**, *adv.*, well, rightly, successfully; quite; *compar.*, **melius**, better; *superl.*, **optimē**, best  
**benedicō**, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, praise, bless  
**benedictiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), praise; benediction  
**beneficium**, -ī, *n.*, kindness, favor, benefit, kind deed, service; privilege, distinction, honor  
**benevolentia**, -ae, *f.*, kindness  
**benignē**, *adv.*, kindly, courteously  
**benignus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, kind, courteous, agreeable  
**bēstia**, -ae, *f.*, beast, animal  
**bibō**, -ere, *bibī*, —, drink  
**biduum**, -ī, *n.*, two days  
**biennium**, -ī, *n.*, two years  
**binī**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, by twos, two each, two at a time  
**bis**, *adv.*, twice, doubly, in two ways  
**bonus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, good; kind, kindly, well-disposed; *n. as noun*, good, blessing, boon, advantage; *n. pl.*, goods, estate, property; *compar.*, **melior**, **melius**, better; *superl.*, **optimus**, -a, -um, best, excellent  
**bōs**, *bovis*, *m. and f.* (*see* p. 315, 8), bull, ox, cow; *pl.*, cattle, oxen  
**bracchium**, -ī, *n.*, forearm, arm  
**brevis**, -e, *adj.*, short (*of space or time*), brief, small; **brevī** or **brevi tempore**, briefly; quickly, soon  
**breviter**, *adv.*, briefly

## C

cadāver, -eris, *n.*, corpse, dead body  
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall, happen; fall (dead), be slain, perish

caecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind; hidden; dark, obscure

caedēs, caedis, *f.* (p. 238), murder, slaughter, bloodshed

caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum, cut, cut down, kill; rout, strike

caelestis, -e, *adj.*, heavenly, celestial; divine; *m. pl. as noun*, gods, divinities

caelum, -i, *n.*, sky, heaven, air

caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, ceremony, rite

calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, disaster, calamity, loss

calceus, -i, *m.*, shoe

callidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, experienced, skillful; shrewd

campus, -i, *m.*, plain, field

canis, canis, *m. and f.*, dog, hound

cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sing; crow

capio, -ere, cēpi, captum, take, take possession of, capture, seize; receive, get; cōnsilium capere, form or adopt a plan; initium capere (ab), begin at

captivus, -a, -um, *adj.*, captive; *m. as noun*, prisoner, captive

caput, capitis, *n.*, head; top; source or mouth of a river; person, citizen, individual; citizenship; chief city, capital; capite dēmissō, with bowed head

carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison, dungeon; stall at the starting point on a race track, barrier

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be without, not have, lack

cāritās, -ātis, *f.*, love, charity

carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh, meat

carrus, -i, *m.*, cart

cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, precious; expensive

casa, -ae, *f.*, hut, cottage

castellum, -i, *n.*, fort, fortress, stronghold; redoubt

castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp, military encampment; castra facere, pitch camp; castra habēre, encamp; castra movēre, break camp; castra pōnere, pitch camp, encamp

cāsus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), a falling, fall; accident, chance, occurrence; emergency; condition; misfortune, disaster, fate; cāsū, by chance

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain, shackle

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason, grounds, excuse; a cause, interest; position, condition; causā, with preceding *gen.*, for the sake of, for the purpose of, on account of; quā dē causā or quam ob causam, why

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, beware of, beware, take care

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, go away, abandon; give up, withdraw

celeber, -bris, -bre, *adj.*, renowned, celebrated

celer, celeris, celere, *adj.*, swift, sudden

celeritās, -ātis, *f.* (p. 200), speed, swiftness

celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly, quickly

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, conceal, hide

cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner, feast

cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), dine, dine on, eat

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -um, assess; estimate, think; propose, vote

cēnsus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), census, an enumeration of people according to wealth for purposes of taxation and military service; census rating, wealth

centum, *indecl. num. adj.*, hundred

centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion, commander of a hundred men

cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, separate, distinguish; discern, see

certāmen, -inis, *n.*, struggle, battle; contest, trial

certē, *adv.* (p. 252), surely, at least, at all events

certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, definite, settled, certain, fixed; sure; (aliquem) certiorē facere, inform (someone); certior fierī, be informed



cervus, -i, *m.*, stag, deer

(cēterus), -a, -um, *adj.* (*masculine nom. sing. not in use, chiefly plural forms employed*), the other, the rest of, the remaining; *m. pl. as noun*, the rest, others, the remainder, all the rest

cibus, -i, *m.*, food

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, surround, encircle; gird on

circiter, *adv.*, about, nearly, approximately; *prep. with acc.*, about, near

circuitus, -ūs, *m.*, a going around; circumference; in circuitū, all around, on all sides

circum, *prep. with acc.*, around, about

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum (p. 84), place or put around; surround

circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), go around

circummittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum (p. 84), send around, put around

circumsistō, -sistere, -steti, — (p. 180), stand around, surround

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come around, surround, outflank; deceive

citerior, -ius, *compar. adj.*, on this side; nearer

civīlis, -e, *adj.* (p. 148), of citizens, civic, civil

cīvis, cīvis, *m.*, citizen, fellow citizen

civitas, -ātis, *f.*, citizenship; the state, a state, nation; city

clam, *adv.*, secretly, privately

clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, cry out, shout, call out

clāmor, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), loud cry, shout, clamor; shout of approval; clāmōrem tollere, set up a shout or cry

clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bright, clear; loud; famous

classis, classis, *f.*, division, class; fleet

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut, close, fasten; inclose; agmen claudere, close the line, bring up the rear

clāva, -ae, *f.*, club

clēmēns, *gen. -entis, adj.*, kind

clēmēntia, -ae, *f.* (p. 200), gentleness, mercy

cliēns, -entis, *m.*, dependent, follower

coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēemptum (p. 84), buy, buy up

coepī, coepisse, coeptum (*see* p. 343, 48), have begun, began, commenced

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, consider carefully, think over, reflect; plan, intend

cognōmen, -inis, *n.*, cognomen, last name, name

cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, become acquainted with, learn about, investigate, learn, find; *in perfect tenses*, know, be aware; be acquainted with; recognize

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum (p. 180), bring together, collect; compel, force

cohors, cohortis, *f.*, cohort, *tenth part of a Roman legion*; cohors praetōria, guard of honor

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 84), encourage, urge on

collis, collis, *m.*, hill, height

collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), station, arrange; establish; place

colloquium, -ī, *n.* (p. 200), conference, conversation, interview

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum (p. 84), talk with, converse, confer

collum, -ī, *n.*, neck

colō, -ere, colui, cultum, cultivate, till; live or dwell in; inhabit; honor, worship

colōnia, -ae, *f.*, colony, settlement

columna, -ae, *f.*, column, pillar

coma, -ae, *f.*, hair

comes, -itis, *m. and f.*, companion, comrade, associate, attendant

commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, communication; trip; supply train; provisions, supplies

commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, mention, relate, state

commendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intrust, commend; surrender

## committō—cōnfirmō

- committō**, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum (p. 84), send together, bring together; commit; intrust, trust to; **proelium committere**, begin battle, engage in battle
- commodē**, *adv.*, conveniently, easily, well; **satis commodē**, to much advantage, very easily
- commodus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, convenient, suitable; *n. as noun*, convenience
- commoror**, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 84), stop, stay, tarry
- commoveō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (p. 84), move or affect deeply, excite, arouse, stir up, disturb, alarm
- commūnicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make common; communicate, impart; share, divide
- commūniō**, -īre, -īvī, -itum (p. 84), fortify strongly, intrench
- commūnis**, -e, *adj.*, common, in common, general, public
- commūtātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), a change; interchange
- commūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), change; exchange
- comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, compare, match
- comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), prepare, prepare for, provide; secure
- compellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum (p. 84), drive together, collect; drive, force
- comperiō**, -perīre, -perī, -pertum, find out, discover, learn
- compleō**, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill, fill up
- complūrēs**, -plūra, or -plūria, *adj.*, several, a number of, many; a great many
- comportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), bring together, collect
- comprehendō**, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehensum (p. 84), seize, catch, grasp
- comprimō**, -primere, -pressī, -pressum (p. 180), press together, squeeze; hold back, restrain
- cōnātum**, -ī, *n.*, attempt, undertaking
- cōnātus**, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), attempt, undertaking, effort
- concēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), go away, yield; grant, permit
- concessiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), a granting, concession
- concidō**, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, cut down, cut to pieces, kill
- conciliō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bring together, reconcile; win, win over; bring about, establish
- concilium**, -ī, *n.* (p. 200), assembly, meeting, gathering, council
- concitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call, summon; excite, instigate
- conclāmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), cry out together, shout, exclaim
- concordia**, -ae, *f.*, harmony, agreement
- concurrō**, -currere, -curri or -cucurri, -cursum (p. 84), assemble hurriedly, come, run together
- concursum**, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), a running together; attack; collision
- condiciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement; terms; condition
- condō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), put together; conceal; found, establish
- condūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), bring together, collect; induce, lead, conduct
- cōnferō**, -ferre, contulī, collātum (p. 180), bring together, bring, collect, gather; compare; **sē cōnferre**, proceed, withdraw, go
- cōnfertus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, crowded, in close array, close
- cōnfestim**, *adv.*, at once, immediately
- cōnficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), make; finish, complete, accomplish; weaken, exhaust; (*of troops*) muster, raise; **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās**, to accomplish or complete this
- cōnfidō**, -fidere, -fīsus sum, be confident, have confidence (in), rely
- cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), strengthen, confirm; establish; encourage, reassure, assert

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, be on fire, burn

cōnfligō, -fligere, -flixi, -flictum, come together, collide; contend, fight

congregior, -gredi, -gressus sum (p. 180), come together, meet; engage in battle with, contend

congressus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), meeting, conference, interview

conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), throw together, put together; throw, hurl

conjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnctum (p. 84), fasten together, join, unite

conjūnx, conjugis, *m. and f.* (p. 238), husband, wife

conjūratiō, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), conspiracy; league, confederacy

conjūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), take oath, league together, plot

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt, plan

conquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum, hunt for, search out; collect, get together

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.*, related by blood; *m. pl. as noun*, kinsmen, relatives

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, climb; go aboard, embark on

cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum (p. 84), write; enroll, levy; patrēs cōscripti, senators

cōnsecrātus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), consecrated, holy

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, set apart, consecrate

cōnsēsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), agreement, consent

cōnsentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsus (p. 84), agree, combine

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (p. 84), follow up or after, follow, pursue; overtake; obtain, accomplish

cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), retain, maintain, preserve; protect, save

cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum (p. 180), sit down; halt; encamp, settle

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, deliberation; counsel, advice; judgment; plan, purpose; council; cōnsilium capere, form or adopt a plan; cōnsilium inire, make a plan

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, — (p. 84), take one's stand, halt, make a stand; consist

cōnsōbrina, -ae, *f.*, cousin

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, comfort, console

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), sight, view, presence

cōnspicio, -spicere, -spexī, -spectrum, catch sight of, look at, observe

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, catch sight of, observe, see, behold

cōnstanter, *adv.*, continually, constantly

cōnstipō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, crowd together

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, place, station; set up, build, establish; arrange; appoint; decide

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stāturus (p. 180), stand together, stand with; consist; agree; *impers.*, cōnstat, it is known, it is certain, it is agreed

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed; *perfect*, be accustomed, be in the habit of

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* (p. 200), custom, habit, way, policy; manner of living

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul

cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.*, consulship, office of consul

cōnsulō, -sulere, -sului, -sultum, deliberate, consult; look out for

cōnsultum, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), decree

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum (p. 84), consume, destroy; spend

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, scorn, despise

contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum (p. 84), attempt; contend, fight, struggle; hasten, hurry; insist

# contentus—cūr

contentus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 64), satisfied, contented  
 continēns, -entis, *f.*, mainland, continent  
 continenter, *adv.*, continuously, continually  
 contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum (p. 180), hold together; shut in, bound; contain, maintain, restrain  
 contingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum (p. 180), extend to, touch, adjoin; happen to  
 continuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, join; continue  
 continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 64), uninterrupted, successive, continuous  
 contrā, *adv.*, on the contrary, on the other hand; on the opposite side; *prep. with acc.*, against, opposite, facing; contrary to  
 contrādicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum (p. 180), speak against, contradict  
 contrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum (p. 84), gather, draw together, bring together  
 contrōversia, -ae, *f.*, dispute, quarrel, controversy  
 contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, insult, abuse  
 cōnūbium, -ī, *n.*, marriage  
 convallis, -vallis, *f.*, valley  
 conveniō, -venire, -veni, -ventum (p. 84), come together, come; meet, meet with, assemble; come to, arrive; *impers.*, *convenit*, an agreement is made, it is agreed  
 conventus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), meeting, assembly, court  
 conversō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, turn round; converse  
 convertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum (p. 84), turn about, turn; change, convert, wheel around  
 convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), call together, call, summon  
 coōrior, -oriri, -ortus sum (p. 84), come forth, arise  
 cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance, supply, plenty; amount, number; *pl.*, resources, supplies, provisions; forces, troops; *pedestrēs cōpiae*, infantry forces, infantry

cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing (*of an army*), flank  
 corōna, -ae, *f.*, crown  
 corpus, corporis, *n.*, body; dead body, corpse  
 corripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum (p. 180), seize, take hold of; attack  
 cotidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, daily; ordinary, usual  
 cotidiē, *adv.*, every day, daily  
 crās, *adv.*, tomorrow  
 creātor, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), maker, creator; *Creātor*, God  
 crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, numerous, frequent  
 crēdō, -ere, crēdidi, crēditum, trust, commit; believe, think, suppose  
 cremō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, burn  
 creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, create; elect, choose, appoint  
 crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētum, grow, thrive, increase  
 cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*, torture; cruelty  
 crudēlis, -e, *adj.*, cruel, unmerciful  
 crudēlitas, -ātis, *f.* (p. 200), cruelty  
 crux, crucis, *f.*, cross  
 culpa, -ae, *f.*, blame  
 culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), blame  
 cultūra, -ae, *f.*, cultivation  
 cultus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), cultivation, culture; civilization, refinement  
 cum (*sometimes attached to a word*), *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with, at the same time with  
 cum, *conj.*, when, since, although; (*time*) while, after, whenever; (*cause*) because; (*concessive or adversative*) though; cum . . . tum, both . . . and, not only . . . but also; cum primum, as soon as  
 cupiditas, -ātis, *f.* (p. 200), desire, eagerness  
 cupidō, -inis, *f.*, desire  
 cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 124), desirous, eager, fond  
 cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupitum, wish eagerly, desire, be eager, wish  
 cūr, *interrog. adv.*, why? for what reason?

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, attention; concern, task, help; anxiety

cūria, -ae, *f.*, curia, a division of the Roman people, ward; senate house

cūriōsitas, -ātis, *f.*, curiosity, inquisitiveness

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), care for, take care of, attend to; cause (to be done); care; cure

currō, -ere, cucurri, cursum, run

currus, -ūs, *m.*, wagon, chariot

cursus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), a running, race; pace, speed; course, way; journey

custōdia, -ae, *f.*, custody; garrison

custōdiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum (p. 238), watch, guard, defend, protect

custōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.*, guard

cuticula, -ae, *f.*, skin

## D

damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, condemn

dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, of, on, about, on account of, in accordance with; (*place*) down from, away from; (*time*) just after, during; (*respect*) concerning, in regard to; (*cause*) over, for

dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe; be under obligation to; ought, must, should

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), withdraw, retire; die

decem, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum (p. 84), decide, decree, resolve, vote

dēcērtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight out to the end; fight, contend

decimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, tenth

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum (p. 180), take in, deceive

dēclivis, -e, *adj.*, sloping downward, descending

decorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, adorn, decorate

decōrum, -ī, *n.*, propriety

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurri or -curri, -cursum (p. 84), run down; hurry along

dēditō, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), surrender

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), give up; devote; sē dēdere, surrender

dēdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum (p. 84), lead away or down, withdraw, remove; lead, take; conduct, settle; launch (*ships*); unfurl (*sails*)

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendi, dēfensum, keep or ward off, repel; defend

dēfēnsor, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), defender

dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum (p. 84), bring down or away, bring, carry; confer, take; report

dēfessus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tired out, exhausted, weary

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), fail, run out, be insufficient; be wanting or missing; abandon, desert; revolt

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, — (p. 84), flee from

deinceps, *adv.*, in succession, in turn

deinde, *adv.*, next, then; in the second place; afterwards

dējiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), throw or hurl down; drive away; drive down

dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, blot out, destroy, overthrow

dēligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bind down, fasten, tie, tie up, moor

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum (p. 180), choose, select

dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum (p. 84), send down; bow

dēmōnstrātor, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), one who points out or indicates, demonstrator

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), point out, show; state, explain, mention

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length

dēnique, *adv.*, at last, and then, finally; in short

dēns, dentis, *m.*, tooth

dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, thick

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), announce, proclaim; warn, threaten

dēpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum (p. 84), drive from or away

# dēpōnō—discēdō

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (p. 84), lay down, lay aside; give up; put, station

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 84), lay waste, plunder, ravage

dēripiō, -ere, -ripiuī, -reptum (p. 180), tear off or away, tear

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum, climb down, descend; resort

dēscēsus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), descent

dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, abandon, desert

dēsertor, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), deserter

dēsertus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 64), deserted, solitary

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, long for, wish, desire; demand, require; miss

dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultum, jump down, leap down

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum (p. 180), stop, cease; abandon

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), despair of, despair, lack confidence

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, look down on, scorn, disdain, despise

dēspondeō, -spondere, -spondī, -spōsum, pledge, promise; promise in marriage, betroth

dēstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, draw (*a sword*)

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (p. 84), be wanting, be lacking, fail

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (p. 84), prevent, hinder

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum (p. 84), draw off, strip off, take from

dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*, loss, injury, damage

deus, -ī (*nom. pl.*, dī; *dat. and abl. pl.*, deīs or dīs), *m.*, a god; Deus, God

dēvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum (p. 84), turn away or aside

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, devour

dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right, right-hand, on the right, on the right side

dextra, -ae, *f.*, right hand; ā dextrā, on the right

dī, *see* deus

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, proclaim; give over, give up

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say, tell, state, speak; mention, relate; administer; call; set, appoint; mirābile dictū, strange to say, "believe it or not"

dictātor, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), dictator  
dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), a speaking, a pleading

dictum, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), word

diēs, -ēī, *m. and f.*, day; time, period of time, interval; appointed time; ad diem, at the appointed time, punctually; diē alterō, on the next day; multō diē, late in the day; postridiē ejus diēi or posterō diē or proximō diē, on the following day, tomorrow; priore diē, yesterday

differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum (p. 180), carry apart, scatter; postpone, delay; differ, be different

difficilis, -e, *adj.*, difficult, hard, troublesome

difficultās, -ātis, *f.* (p. 200), difficulty, trouble

diffidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, lack confidence in

diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum (p. 180), spread

digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger; toe; inch, the sixteenth part of a Roman foot

dignitās, -ātis, *f.* (p. 200), merit; dignity, reputation

dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy, fit

diligenter, *adv.*, carefully, diligently; with exactness

diligentia, -ae, *f.*, diligence, care, faithfulness

dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight, contend, struggle

dīmīttō, -mittere, -misī, -missum lose; send out or away, dismiss

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripiuī, -reptum (p. 180), tear in pieces; plunder

dīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dreadful

dis- (dī-), inseparable prefix, apart; in different directions

dīs, *see* deus

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), go away, withdraw, leave

**discessus**, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), a going away, withdrawal, departure

**disciplīna**, -ae, *f.*, instruction, training, teaching, doctrine

**discō**, -ere, **didicī**, —, learn, be taught

**discrīmen**, -inis, *n.*, separation; difference, distinction; crisis

**disjiciō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), scatter; rout

**dispār**, *gen. disparis*, *adj.*, unequal

**dispergō**, -spergere, -spersī, -persum (p. 180), scatter

**dispōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (p. 84), place apart, station, place

**dissēnsiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, disagreement, dissension, discord

**dissimilis**, -e, *adj.*, not like, different

**distineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum (p. 180), hold or keep apart, divide

**distribuō**, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum (p. 180), assign, divide, distribute

**dītissimus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, richest

**diū**, *adv.*, long, a long time, for a long time; *compar.*, diūtius, longer, too long; *superl.*, diūtissimē, for the longest time

**dīversus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, opposite; diverse, different; separate

**dividō**, -ere, **divisī**, **divisum**, part, divide, separate; distribute, share

**dīvīnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, divine, sacred

**dīvītae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, riches, wealth

**dō**, dare, **dedī**, **datum**, give, concede, afford, grant, furnish; pay, suffer; in **mātrimōnium dare**, give in marriage; **poenās dare**, pay the penalty

**doceō**, -ēre, -uī, **doctum**, teach, inform, instruct; explain; *perf. part.*, learned

**doctor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 21), teacher, doctor

**doctrīna**, -ae, *f.*, instruction

**doleō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, grieve, suffer, be in pain; be sorry, be indignant

**dolor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), sorrow, pain, vexation; **dolōrem ferre**, be indignant; **magnō dolōre afficere**, annoy greatly

**dolus**, -ī, *m.*, trickery, deceit; trick

**domesticus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 64), of or belonging to the home, home; one's own, private, personal; civil, domestic

**dominus**, -ī, *m.*, master, lord

**domus**, -ūs (-ī), *f.* (see p. 315, 8), house, home; *loc.*, at home

**dōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), give

**dōnum**, -ī, *n.*, gift, present

**dormiō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum, sleep

**dōs**, **dōtis**, *f.*, marriage gift, dowry

**dracō**, -ōnis, *m.*, serpent, dragon

**druidēs**, -um, *m. pl.*, Druids, *ancient order of priests in Gaul and Britain*

**dubitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay

**dubius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful, uncertain, indecisive; *n. as noun*, doubt, uncertainty; **nōn est dubium quīn**, there is no doubt that

**ducentī**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, two hundred

**dūcō**, -ere, **dūxī**, **ductum**, lead, conduct; bring; assume; make; think, consider; postpone; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, marry

**dum**, *conj.*, while, as long as; till, until; provided

**duo**, **duae**, **duo**, *num. adj.*, two

**duodecim**, *indecl. num. adj.*, twelve

**duodēviginti**, *indecl. num. adj.*, eighteen

**duplex**, *gen. duplicis*, *adj.* (p. 21), double, twofold

**dūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make hard; endure, persevere

**dūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, harsh, unfeeling, severe; difficult

**dux**, **ducis**, *m.* (p. 238), leader, commander

## E

**ē**, *see ex*

**ēdicō**, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum (p. 84), declare, proclaim, decree, appoint

**ēdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), put forth, give out; disclose

**edō**, -ere, **ēdī**, **ēsum**, eat

## ēducō—exanimō

ēducō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bring up, rear, train

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum (p. 84), lead out; draw (*a sword*)

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum (p. 180), bring *or* carry out, carry, remove; make known

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), make, accomplish; perform, cause, effect

effluō, -fluere, -flūxi, -fluxum (p. 180), flow *or* run out, flow forth

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus (p. 180), flee from, flee, escape

ego, *gen. mei (nom. pl., nōs), pers. pron., I*

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum (p. 180), go out, come out; march out, leave, depart; disembark, land

ēgregiē, *adv.*, excellently

ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.*, remarkable, unusual; distinguished; excellent

ēminēns, *gen. -entis, adj.*, distinguished, eminent

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum (p. 84), send out *or* away, release, drop; open an outlet

emō, emere, ēmi, emptum, buy; *sometimes in compounds*, take

enim, *conj.*, for; really, in fact, indeed

ēnsis, ēnsis, *m.*, sword

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), assert; proclaim, reveal, disclose; report

eō, ire, ii (ivī), itum, go, advance, pass

eō, *adv.*, on that account, therefore, for that reason; to that place, there, thither

eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place, end, *or* purpose

epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, epistle

eques, equitis, *m.*, horseman, cavalryman; knight; *pl.*, horsemen, cavalry; the knights, *one of the three orders of Roman society*

equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.*, of a horseman, of the cavalry, equestrian, cavalry

equidem, *adv.*, truly, indeed

equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry, horsemen  
equus, equī, *m.*, horse

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum (p. 180), lift, lift up, raise

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripiui, -reptum (p. 180), snatch away *or* out; take away; rescue, free; sē ēripere, escape

errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wander; go astray, be mistaken, err

error, -ōris, *m.* (pp. 21, 200), wandering; error

ērudiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, train, teach, instruct, educate

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, burst *or* break forth

ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), a breaking out, sortie, sally

et, *conj.*, and; et . . . et, both . . . and, not only . . . but also; *adv.*, also, even, too

etiam, *adv.*, yet, even yet, still; also, too, besides, furthermore, likewise, even; etiam atque etiam, again and again, repeatedly; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also; nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also; quīn etiam, moreover, more than that

etsi, *conj.*, even if, and if, although; and yet

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsum (p. 84), go away, escape

ēveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum (p. 84), come out; result, happen

ēventus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), outcome, result; event, occurrence

ēvocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), call forth *or* out

ex (*before vowels and some consonants*), ē (*only before consonants*), *prep. with abl.*, from, according to, by, of; (*space*) out of; on the side of, on; (*time*) since, after; (*source*) out of; (*cause*) because of, in accordance with; (*partitive expressions*) of, from among

exaltō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, raise, exalt

exanimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, deprive of breath, exhaust, weaken; kill; *pass.*, die; *pf. part.*, breathless, exhausted; dead



**excēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), go out, withdraw, depart; exceed

**excellō**, -cellere, -celluī, -celsum, excel

**excelsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), high, lofty, distinguished

**excipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), take out, except; capture; meet, greet, receive

**excitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call out; arouse, incite; bring about; erect (*towers*), raise

**excōgitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), think out; invent, contrive

**excūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, excuse; give reason for

**exemplar**, *gen. exemplāris*, *n.*, example, copy; likeness

**exemplum**, -ī, *n.*, example; precedent

**exeō**, -īre, -ii, -itum (p. 84), go out or away, go forth, withdraw, leave

**exerceō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, engage busily, employ; train, drill, exercise; administer

**exercitātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), exercise, training, experience

**exercitus**, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), army

**exiguus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, limited, small, slight, short, poor

**exilium** (**exsilium**), -ī, *n.*, exile, banishment

**eximō**, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum (p. 180), take out, remove

**existimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, estimate; consider, judge, believe, think

**exitus**, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), a going out; exit; conclusion, end, result

**expectō** (**expectō**), -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), look forward to, await, wait for; expect, wait, hope for

**expediō**, -īre, -ivi, -itum, extricate, free; explain

**expeditus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), unimpeded, free, light-armed, in light array; open, easy

**expellō**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum (p. 84), drive from or out, drive, remove, banish

**experior**, -periri, -pertus sum, try; experience; prove, test

**expleō**, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, fill

**explōrātor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), scout

**explōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, investigate, examine; reconnoiter, explore

**expōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (p. 84), put or set forth; expose; abandon; set ashore, land; draw up; explain, relate

**expugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), assault, take by storm, capture

**exsistō**, -ere, -stitī, -stitum (p. 180), appear, come forth

**extruō**, -ere, -struxī, -strūctum, heap or pile up

**extrā**, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, outside, beyond

**extrahō**, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum (p. 84), drag out, draw out, draw forth, extract

**extrēmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, outermost, extreme, farthest, last; end or last part of; most remote

## F

**faber**, **fabri**, *m.*, workman, mechanic, smith, carpenter; engineer

**fābula**, -ae, *f.*, story, tale; fable

**facile**, *adv.*, easily, readily

**facilis**, -e, *adj.*, easy; agreeable, courteous

**facinus**, **facinoris**, *n.*, act, deed; misdeed, crime

**faciō**, -ere, **fēcī**, **factum**, make, do, form, construct, perform, commit; cause, bring about, accomplish; act; suppose; (**aliquem**) **certiorem facere**, inform (someone); **iter facere**, march, make a journey; **potestatem facere**, grant opportunity or permission, give a chance; **proelium facere**, engage in battle; **vim facere**, use violence or force

**factiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), faction, party

**factor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), maker, doer, performer

**factum**, -ī, *n.* (p. 124), deed, act, event; exploit

## facultās—fōrma

- facultās**, -ātis, *f.* (p. 200), ability; means, opportunity; supply; *pl.*, resources
- fallō**, -ere, *fefellī*, *falsum*, deceive; disappoint; escape
- falsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 21), false, misleading, pretended
- fāma**, -ae, *f.*, report, rumor; reputation, fame
- famēs**, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation
- familia**, -ae, *f.*, slaves in a household; household; family, race
- familiāris**, -e, *adj.* (p. 64), of a household, private, domestic; *m. as noun*, intimate friend or acquaintance; *rēs familiāris*, private property, estate
- fās**, *n.*, *indecl.*, divine sanction or law (as opposed to *jūs*, human law); the right or lawful thing; the will of Heaven; *fās est*, it is right or proper
- fātum**, -ī, *n.*, utterance; fate, doom, destiny
- faveō**, *favēre*, *fāvī*, *fautum*, favor
- fēlicitās**, -ātis, *f.*, good fortune
- fēliciter**, *adv.*, happily, fortunately, favorably
- fēlix**, *gen.* -icis, *adj.*, fruitful; successful, happy, fortunate
- fēmina**, -ae, *f.*, female; woman
- fenestra**, -ae, *f.*, window
- ferāx**, *gen.* -ācis, *adj.*, productive, fertile
- ferē**, *adv.*, usually, generally; nearly, almost, about; for the most part
- ferō**, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*, bear, carry, bring; endure, submit to, suffer; withstand; report, say; (*of laws*) propose, offer, carry, enact; *impers.*, *fertur*, it is said; *ferunt*, they say; *aegrē* (*molestē*) *ferre*, be indignant, resent; *signa ferre*, advance the standards, advance
- ferōx**, *gen.* -ōcis, *adj.*, fierce
- ferrum**, -ī, *n.*, iron; spearhead; spear, sword
- fertilitās**, -ātis, *f.*, fertility
- ferus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild; cruel, fierce; uncivilized
- fidēlis**, -e, *adj.*, faithful, loyal
- fidēs**, -ei, *f.*, faith, belief; loyalty, faithfulness, honor; alliance, trust; *fidem facere*, give a pledge, convince; in *fidem recipere*, take under one's protection
- fīdus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, faithful
- figūra**, -ae, *f.*, shape, form, figure
- filia**, -ae, *f.*, daughter
- filius**, -ī, *m.*, son
- figō**, -ere, *fīnxi*, *fictum*, mold, form, make up; invent; imagine; control
- fīniō**, -īre, *inivī*, -itum (p. 238), bound, define, limit, measure; end, finish
- fīnis**, *fīnis*, *m. and f.*, limit, boundary; end, close; *pl.*, borders, boundaries; territory, land, country
- fīnitimus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, bordering, neighboring; *m. pl. as noun*, neighbors
- fīō**, *fieri*, *factus sum*, be made, be done, become, happen, result; *certior fieri*, be informed
- fīrmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, make firm, strengthen
- fīrmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, vigorous, steadfast, firm, powerful
- flāgitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, demand
- flamma**, -ae, *f.*, blaze, fire, flame
- flectō**, -ere, *flexī*, *flexum*, bend, turn; incline, curve; change; direct
- fleo**, -ēre, *flēvī*, *flētum*, weep, cry, weep for, lament
- flō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, blow
- flōreō**, -ēre, -uī, —, bloom, flower
- flōs**, *flōris*, *m.*, blossom, flower
- flūctus**, -ūs, *m.*, wave, billow
- flūmen**, -inis, *n.* (p. 238), river, stream
- fluō**, -ere, *flūxi*, *fluxum*, flow, run
- foedus**, *foederis*, *n.*, agreement, stipulation; treaty, league, alliance
- folium**, -ī, *n.*, leaf
- fōns**, *fontis*, *m.*, spring, fountain
- fore** (= *futūrus esse*), *ful. inf. of sum*
- fōrma**, -ae, *f.*, form, figure; appearance; beauty

G

**forte**, *adv.*, by chance, by accident; perhaps

**fortis**, -e, *adj.*, strong, powerful; brave, courageous, bold, fearless

**fortiter**, *adv.* (p. 252), bravely, gallantly, boldly

**fortitūdō**, -inis, *f.* (p. 200), bravery, courage

**fortūna**, -ae, *f.*, fortune, fate, luck, good fortune; *pl.*, property, possessions

**forum**, -i, *n.*, open space; market place; forum

**fossa**, -ae, *f.*, ditch, trench

**frangō**, -ere, **frēgi**, **fractum**, break, wreck, shatter; weaken, wear out

**frāter**, **frātris**, *m.*, brother

**frāternus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, brotherly

**fraus**, **fraudis**, *f.*, deceit, deception, fraud, trickery

**fretum**, -i, *n.*, strait, channel; sea

**fructus**, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), crop; profit; fruit

**frūmentārius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or pertaining to grain, of provisions; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain supply, provisions

**frūmentum**, -i, *n.*, grain; *pl.*, growing crops, standing grain

**fruor**, **frui**, **fructus sum**, enjoy

**frūstrā**, *adv.*, vainly, in vain, without effect

**fuga**, -ae, *f.*, fleeing, flight; **fugae sē mandāre**, flee; in **fugam dare**, put to flight

**fugiō**, -ere, **fūgi**, **fugitūrus**, flee, run away; run away from, avoid

**fugitivus**, -i, *m.*, fugitive

**fugō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 124), rout, put to flight

**fūmus**, -i, *m.*, smoke

**funda**, -ae, *f.*, sling, slingshot

**funditor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), slinger

**fundō**, -ere, **fūdī**, **fūsum**, pour, pour out; rout, defeat; shed; diffuse

**furia**, -ae, *f.*, fury; curse

**furō**, -ere, -uī, —, rage

**furor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), rage, madness, fury, passion

**galea**, -ae, *f.*, helmet (of leather or metal)

**gaudeō**, -ēre, **gāvīsus sum**, rejoice, be glad, take pleasure

**gaudium**, -i, *n.*, joy, delight

**geminus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, twin-born; double, twofold; *m. pl. as noun*, twins

**gemma**, -ae, *f.*, jewel, gem

**gēns**, **gentis**, *f.*, tribe, race, people, nation; clan, house

**genus**, -eris, *n.*, birth, race, origin, family; sort, class, kind, character, nature

**gerō**, -ere, **gessī**, **gestum**, bear, wear, carry; wage, carry on; manage, administer; do, perform; *pass.*, often, go on, take place, be done; **bellum gerere**, wage war; **sē gerere**, conduct oneself, behave

**gigās**, -antis, *m.*, giant

**gignō**, -ere, **genuī**, **genitum**, beget, bear, give birth to, produce; spring

**gladiātor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), gladiator

**gladius**, -i, *m.*, sword

**glōria**, -ae, *f.*, glory, fame, renown, reputation

**glōrificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, glorify

**gradior**, **gradī**, **gressus sum**, step, walk, go

**gradus**, -ūs, *m.*, degree, rank

**grātia**, -ae, *f.* (p. 200), favor, regard, friendship; influence, good will; gratitude, thanks, requital; **grātiās agere**, express thanks, thank; **grā-tiam referre**, requite, make requital, repay

**grātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing, acceptable; agreeable; pleased, grateful; welcome

**gravis**, -e, *adj.*, heavy, weighty; hard to bear, oppressive; severe, serious, grave, important

**gravitās**, -ātis, *f.* (p. 200), heaviness, weight; dignity

**graviter**, *adv.*, heavily; deeply; severely, seriously; hard

## H

**habeō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have, hold, possess, own, keep, contain; consider, regard, think; *castra habēre*, encamp; *habēre in animō*, intend; *habēre in memoriā*, remember; *habēre orationem*, make or deliver a speech

**habitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, live, dwell, reside

**hasta**, -ae, *f.*, spear, lance, javelin, dart

**haud**, *adv.*, not at all, by no means, not

**hauriō**, -ire, *hausī*, *haustum*, draw (*water, etc.*)

**herba**, -ae, *f.*, grass, herb, plant

**hērōs**, *hērōis*, *m.*, hero

**heu**, alas!, oh me!

**hiberna**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, winter quarters, winter camp

**hibernō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), spend the winter, winter

**hic**, *haec*, *hoc*, *demonstr. adj.*, referring to what is near in space, time, or thought, this (*pl.* these), the present; the following; the last named, the latter; the first named, the former; *demonstr. pron.*, he, she, it (*pl.*, they)

**hic**, *adv.*, here, in this place; on this occasion; at this point

**hieme**, *adv.*, in winter

**hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), spend the winter, winter

**hiems**, *hiemis*, *f.*, winter; storm

**hinc**, *adv.*, hence

**hodiē**, *adv.*, today; now

**homō**, -inis, *m.*, human being, man, person; *pl.*, mankind, people

**honor** or **honōs**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 21), honor, esteem, reputation, distinction; office

**honōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), honor, respect

**honōrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, honorable

**hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour, time

**horribilis**, -e, *adj.*, dreadful, horrible, terrible

**hortor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, cheer, exhort, urge, advise

**hortus**, -i, *m.*, garden

**hospes**, *hospitis*, *m.*, host; guest, stranger, visitor

**hospitium**, -ī, *n.*, entertainment, hospitality

**hostis**, *hostis*, *m.*, enemy, public enemy, foe; *pl.*, the enemy

**hūc**, *adv.*, to this place, hither, here; besides, in addition

**hūmānitās**, -ātis, *f.* (p. 200), human nature or feeling; kindness; civilization, refinement

**hūmānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of man, human; kind; civilized

**humilis**, -e, *adj.*, low; humble, unknown; weak

## I

**ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place; then, thereupon

**ictus**, -ūs, *m.*, thrust, blow; wound

**idem**, *eadem*, *idem*, *demonstr. pron. and adj.*, same, the very one; also, too, besides, likewise

**idōneus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable, favorable, fit; capable, deserving

**igitur**, *adv.*, therefore, then, consequently, accordingly

**ignis**, *ignis*, *m.*, fire; signal fire

**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, not know, be unaware of, ignore

**ignōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum, overlook, pardon, forgive

**ignōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), unknown, unfamiliar, strange

**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, *demonstr. pron.*, that one; (*in contrast with another pronoun*) the other, the former; (*more rarely*) the latter; *pers. pron.*, he, she, it (*pl.*, they); *demonstr. adj.*, that (*pl.*, those), yonder; the well-known, the famous

**illic**, *adv.*, there, in that place

**illūstris**, -e, *adj.*, illustrious, distinguished

**illuviēs**, -ēī, *f.*, dirt, filth

**immittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 180), send in; let go  
**immolō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sacrifice, offer as a sacrifice  
**immortālis**, -e, *adj.*, immortal, undying, eternal  
**impatientia**, -ae, *f.*, impatience  
**impedimentum**, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), impediment, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage, heavy baggage (*of an army*), baggage train  
**impediō**, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, entangle, hinder, obstruct; prevent  
**impeditus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), entangled; encumbered, hindered; obstructed, at a disadvantage  
**impellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum (p. 180), drive *or* urge on, incite; impel  
**impendeō**, -pendēre, —, — (p. 180), impend, overhang  
**imperātor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 200), general, commander in chief, emperor  
**imperātum**, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), order, command; *imperāta facere*, obey orders  
**imperītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, inexperienced, unskilled; unacquainted with  
**imperium**, -ī, *n.* (p. 200), command, order; power, control, authority; supreme power *or* command; sovereignty, rule, government, empire; might, majesty, dominion  
**imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, order, command, direct; demand; levy; control, rule, govern; impose  
**impetrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, obtain (*by request*), obtain one's request, secure, effect  
**impetus**, -ūs, *m.*, attack, raid; force, violence; *facere impetum*, make an attack  
**impiger**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, energetic, quick; industrious  
**impleō**, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill up, fill  
**implorō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wail, beseech, entreat, beg  
**impōnō**, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (p. 180), place *or* set on, put on, impose; mount; put on board

**importō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 180), bring in  
**imprimis**, *adv.*, especially, chiefly  
**imprudentia**, -ae, *f.*, rashness, imprudence  
**in**, *prep.*, *with acc.*, into, toward, against, on; for, to, till; over; *with abl.*, in, in the midst of, on, upon, among, at, over; in the case of  
**in-**, *inseparable prefix*, not  
**inaestimābilis**, -e, *adj.*, inestimable, invaluable  
**inauditus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknown, strange  
**incēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, move in, on, *or* through  
**incendium**, -ī, *n.* (p. 200), fire, conflagration  
**incendō**, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum, set fire to, burn; inflame  
**incertus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, uncertain  
**incidō**, -cidere, -cidī, — (p. 180), fall into, fall on, fall; happen  
**incipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), begin  
**incitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, urge on, arouse, incite; propel  
**includō**, -cludere, -clūsī, -clūsum (p. 180), shut in, inclose  
**incola**, -ae, *m. and f.*, inhabitant, resident  
**incolō**, -colere, -coluī, — (p. 84), dwell in, inhabit; live  
**incolumis**, -e, *adj.*, unharmed, safe  
**incommodum**, -ī, *n.*, inconvenience; loss, disaster, misfortune  
**incrēdibilis**, -e, *adj.*, incredible, extraordinary  
**incūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, accuse, complain of; upbraid  
**inde**, *adv.*, then, thence, therefore; (*place*) from that place; (*time*) after that, next; (*cause*) in consequence; (*source*) from it, of it  
**indīcō**, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum (p. 84), proclaim, set, call for  
**indignātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 100), indignation, resentment

# indignitās—intāctus

**indignitās**, -ātis, *f.* (pp. 100, 200), unworthy treatment, indignity

**indignus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unworthy

**indūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), bring or lead in; draw on or over; induce, move

**indulgentia**, -ae, *f.*, indulgence

**induō**, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, put on (*clothing, etc.*); endow

**ineō**, -ire, -iī, -itum (p. 84), go into, enter; enter into or on, undertake; **cōsiliū inīre**, form or make a plan; **inīre grātiā**, gain favor; **inīre numerum**, enumerate, count

**inermis**, -e, *adj.*, unarmed, defenseless

**infāmia**, -ae, *f.*, disgrace

**infāns**, -fantis, *m. and f.*, child, infant

**infēlix**, *gen.* -fēlicis, *adj.*, unhappy, unfortunate

**inferior**, -ius (p. 21), *compar.* of **inferus**

**inferō**, -ferre, intulī, illātum (p. 180), bring or carry in; inflict; cast into; bring on; bring forward, cause; **bellum inferre**, wage war on; **sē inferre**, advance; **signa inferre**, advance (*to the attack*), charge

**inferus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, down, low, below; *m. pl. as noun*, those of the lower world, the dead; *compar.*, **inferior**, -ius, lower, lower down; inferior, weaker; *superl.*, **infimus**, -a, -um or **imus**, -a, -um, lowest; deepest

**inficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), dip (*something*) into, color; infect, poison

**infinītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, infinite

**infrā**, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, below, under, underneath, beneath

**ingenium**, -ī, *n.*, inborn quality or nature, character, disposition; talent, ability, genius

**ingēns**, *gen.* -entis, *adj.*, enormous, vast, huge, very large, great

**ingredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum (p. 180), go into, enter, advance; engage in, undertake

**inimīcus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unfriendly, hostile; *m. as noun*, (personal) enemy; rival

**inīquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, uneven, unequal; unfair, unjust; unfavorable, disadvantageous

**initium**, -ī, *n.* (p. 200), going in; beginning; **initium capere**, begin at; **initium transeundi facere**, take the initiative in crossing, be first to cross

**injiciō**, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), throw into or upon

**injūria**, -ae, *f.*, injustice, injury; *abl. used adverbially*, unjustly

(**injussus**, -ūs), *m.*, only *abl.*, **injussū**, without command, without order

**innō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, swim, float

**innocentia**, -ae, *f.*, innocence, integrity

**inopia**, -ae, *f.*, lack, want, scarcity; need, poverty

**inquā** (*see* p. 343, 48), *defective verb* (*always after one or more words of a quotation*), say; inquit, he says

**īnsciēns**, *gen.* -entis, *adj.*, not knowing, ignorant

**īnscriptiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, inscription

**īnsequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum (p. 84), follow up, follow, pursue

**īnserō**, -serere, -serui, -sertum, thrust in, insert

**īnsidiae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, treachery, ambush, plot

**īnsigne**, **īnsignis**, *n.*, mark, badge, signal; *pl.*, decorations, insignia

**īnsignis**, -e, *adj.*, marked, distinguished

**īnstituō**, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum (p. 180), set in place; draw up; arrange, provide; erect, build; establish, institute, begin, adopt

**īnstitūtum**, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), principle, custom, habit

**īnstō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stātūrus (p. 180), stand on; be near, approach, be at hand; press on, pursue

**īnstrūmentum**, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), tool, instrument

**īnstruō**, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum, build up, construct; provide, equip; draw up, arrange

**īnsula**, -ae, *f.*, island

**intāctus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, intact, unharmed

**integer**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched; unhurt; fresh, vigorous; whole  
**integrē**, *adv.*, without prejudice  
**intelligō**, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum (p. 180), understand, perceive, know; see, realize; learn  
**intelligentia**, -ae, *f.* (p. 21), understanding, intelligence  
**intendō**, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum (p. 84), stretch to; extend, direct, bend  
**intentus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 64), intent, attentive  
**inter**, *prep. with acc.*, between, among, within, through, during; **inter sē**, with or to each other; from one another; among themselves  
**intercēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), go or come between, be between, intervene  
**intercipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum (p. 180), intercept, catch up  
**interclūdō**, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum (p. 180), shut or cut off  
**interdiū**, *adv.*, during the day, by day  
**interdum**, *adv.*, sometimes, from time to time, occasionally  
**interea**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime  
**intereō**, -ire, -iī, -itum (p. 84), be lost, die, perish, be killed  
**interficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), kill, slay; **sē interficere**, commit suicide  
**interim**, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile  
**interior**, -ius, *compar. adj.*, inner, interior  
**intermittō**, -mittere, -misī, -misum (p. 84), leave off, cease; interrupt, suspend; let pass; neglect; intervene, separate  
**interpōnō**, -ere, -posuī, -positum (p. 84), put between, interpose  
**interpre**, -pretis, *m. and f.*, interpreter  
**interpretor**, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 238), interpret; imagine  
**interrogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), ask, inquire of, question

**intersum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (p. 84), be or lie between; be present at, take part in; *impers.*, **interest** (p. 21), it is to the interest or advantage; it concerns  
**intervallum**, -i, *n.*, intervening space, distance, interval (*of time or of space*)  
**interveniō**, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come between, intervene  
**intrā**, *prep. with acc.*, within, inside of; into, inside  
**intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, go into, enter  
**intrōdūcō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, lead into, introduce  
**introēō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, enter  
**inūsītātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unusual, strange, unfamiliar, extraordinary  
**invādō**, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum (p. 84), enter; *with in and the accusative*, invade  
**inveniō**, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find, discover, learn  
**inventor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 21), inventor, author  
**invictus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconquered, unconquerable  
**invidiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, jealous  
**invītō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, invite, summon, request, urge  
**invītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, against one's will, unwilling  
**ipse**, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, *pron.*, *intensive*, self, himself, herself, itself (*pl.*, themselves); he, she, it; *emphatic*, very, the very  
**ira**, -ae, *f.*, ire, anger, rage  
**irāscor**, **irāscī**, **irātus sum**, be angry  
**irātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 64), angry, irate  
**irrideō**, -ridēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, laugh, laugh at  
**irrupō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum (p. 180), break in or into, burst (into)  
**is**, *ea*, *id*, *demonstr. pron.*, that one, this (*pl.*, these), this one; *pers. pron.*, he, she, it (*pl.*, they); *demonstr. adj.*, that, this (*pl.*, these); such, of such a sort or kind

## iste—latus

**iste, ista, istud**, *demonstr. pron.*, that one; *pers. pron.*, he, she, it (*pl.*, they); *demonstr. adj.*, referring to that which is close to or belonging to the person addressed, that of yours, that (*pl.*, those)

**ita**, *adv.*, so, thus; yes; in this way, as follows; to such an extent, in such a way; accordingly, thus; on this condition; *ut . . . ita*, just as . . . so, while . . . yet; *ita est*, yes

**itaque**, *conj.*, and so, accordingly, therefore, and thus

**item**, *adv.*, also, likewise, too

**iter, itineris**, *n.*, a way, road; journey, march; right of way; route, line of march; *iter facere*, march, make a journey, make one's way; **magnum iter**, rapid or forced march

**iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time, once more

## J

**jaceō, -ēre, -uī, —**, lie, lie down; be prostrate or fallen, lie dead

**jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum**, throw, hurl, fling; scatter, sow; throw up, build; drop (*an anchor*)

**jactō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, toss about, shake

**jactūra, -ae, f.**, loss, sacrifice

**jaculum, -ī, n.**, javelin, dart

**jam**, *adv.*, already, now, by this time; soon, directly; at last; furthermore, besides; **jam dūdum**, long ago; **jam pridem**, long ago, this long time; **nōn jam**, no longer

**jānua, -ae, f.**, door

**jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum**, order, command

**jūdex, jūdicis, m.**, judge; juror

**jūdiціальis, -e, adj.** (p. 64), of justice, judicial

**jūdicium, -ī, n.** (p. 200), trial, legal trial; judgment, decision; opinion; **jūdicium facere**, express an opinion

**jūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (p. 238), decide, judge, consider

**jugum, -ī, n.**, yoke; ridge, summit

**jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūctum**, join, fasten together, unite, yoke

**jūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (p. 238), take oath, swear

**jūs, jūris, n.**, right, justice, law; authority; *abl.*, by right, justly

**jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, n.**, an oath

(**jussus, -ūs**), *m.*, only *abl.*, **jussū**, at the order or command

**jūstitia, -ae, f.** (p. 21), justice, uprightness

**jūstus, -a, -um, adj.**, in accordance with law; just; proper

**juvenis, gen.-is, adj.**, young, youthful; *m. and f. as noun*, young person, young man or woman (*esp. one less than forty years of age*), youth

**juvō, -āre, jūvi, jūtum**, aid, help, serve, benefit

## L

**labor, -ōris, m.**, labor, toil, exertion, hardship; distress, difficulty

**labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (p. 238), strive, labor; suffer, be in distress

**laccessō, -ere, -īvi, -ītum**, harass, provoke, attack

**lacrima, -ae, f.**, tear

**lacrimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (p. 238), weep

**lacus, -ūs, m.**, lake, pond

**laetitia, -ae, f.** (p. 200), joy

**laetus, -a, -um, adj.**, joyful, glad, happy

**lapis, -idis, m.**, stone

**lassitūdō, -inis, f.**, weariness

**lātē, adv.**, widely, far and wide

**lateō, -ēre, -uī, —**, lie hidden, be concealed; hide, seek shelter

**lātītūdō, -inis, f.** (p. 100), width, breadth

**latrō, -ōnis, m.**, robber, brigand

**lātus, -a, -um, adj.**, broad, wide, extensive

**latus, lateris, n.**, side; flank, wing (*of an army*)



laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), praise  
 laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, fame, glory;  
 merit, excellence  
 lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautum, wash, bathe  
 lēgālis, -e, *adj.* (p. 64), of or belong-  
 ing to the law, legal  
 lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, embassy, legation;  
 mission  
 lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, representative; staff  
 officer, lieutenant; envoy  
 legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion  
 legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the  
 legion, legionary  
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, gather, col-  
 lect; choose; read  
 lēnis, -e, *adj.*, smooth, gentle; kind  
 lēniter, *adv.*, slowly  
 leō, -ōnis, *m.*, lion  
 levis, -e, *adj.*, light, slight; easy  
 leviter, *adv.*, slightly, lightly  
 lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law, enactment; terms,  
 condition  
 libenter, *adv.*, willingly, gladly  
 liber, librī, *m.*, book  
 liber, libera, liberum, *adj.*, free, in-  
 dependent; permitted; open  
 liberalitās, -ātis, *f.* (p. 100), generosity,  
 liberality  
 liberaliter, *adv.*, generously, liberally  
 liberātor, -ōris, *m.* (p. 100), liberator,  
 deliverer  
 liberē, *adv.*, freely  
 liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the free members  
 of the household; children  
 liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, set free,  
 free, release  
 libertās, -ātis, *f.* (p. 100), liberty,  
 freedom; permission  
 licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est,  
*impers.*, it is allowed or permitted,  
 one may  
 lignum, -ī, *n.*, wood  
 līlium, -ī, *n.*, lily  
 limus, -ī, *m.*, mud  
 lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue; language,  
 speech  
 linter, -tris, *f.*, boat, skiff

littera, -ae, *f.*, letter (*of the alphabet*);  
*pl.*, letter, epistle, letters; litera-  
 ture, scholarship  
 litus, litoris, *n.*, shore, seashore, beach  
 locō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), place,  
 put; locate  
 locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl. usually n.*, loca,  
 -ōrum), place, spot, locality; ground;  
 situation; chance; rank; *abl.*, with  
 dependent *gen.*, in the place of, as  
 longē, *adv.*, far, long; (*space*) far  
 away, far off; at or to a distance;  
 (*degree*) by far, much; (*time*) for  
 a long time  
 longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, distant, far  
 off  
 longitūdō, -inis, *f.* (p. 100), length  
 longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long; long-  
 continued; distant; nāvis longa,  
 warship  
 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, say, speak,  
 talk  
 lōrica, -ae, *f.*, coat of mail; breast-  
 work, parapet  
 lōtus, -ī, *m.*, lotus  
 lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, (p. 238), play,  
 engage in sport  
 lūdus, -ī, *m.*, game, play, sport, public  
 game  
 lūmen, -inis, *n.*, light, lamp, torch  
 lūna, -ae, *f.*, moon  
 lupa, -ae, *f.*, she-wolf, wolf  
 lūstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, cleanse;  
 light up (*of the sun*); wander over  
 lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; ortā lūce  
 or primā lūce, at daybreak

M

maestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sad; gloomy  
 magicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, magical, magic  
 magis, *adv.*, more, in a greater degree,  
 rather  
 magister, -trī, *m.*, chief, master  
 magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, public office,  
 magistracy; magistrate, official  
 magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.*, splendid,  
 magnificent

## magnitūdō—mēns

- magnitūdō**, -inis, *f.* (p. 100), greatness, great amount; size, extent; **magnitūdō ventī**, violent wind
- magnopere** or **magnō opere**, *adv.*, greatly, very much, exceedingly, especially; earnestly; *compar.*, **magis**, more, more greatly, in a greater degree, rather; *superl.*, **maximē**, in the highest degree, most of all, exceedingly, chiefly, especially; **quam maximē**, as much as possible
- magnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large, much; loud; **magnum iter**, rapid or forced march; *compar.*, **major**, **majus**, greater, larger; *superl.*, **maximus**, -a, -um, greatest, largest
- major**, **majus**, *adj.*, greater, larger; **major nātū**, older, elder
- majōres**, -um, *m. pl.*, ancestors
- male**, *adv.*, badly, wickedly; *compar.*, **pejus**, worse; *superl.*, **pessimē**, worst, most unkindly
- maleficium**, -ī, *n.*, evil deed; injury
- mālō**, **mālle**, **mālui**, — (see pp. 341-342, 47), prefer, choose rather or instead of
- malum**, -ī, *n.*, evil, misfortune, harm; punishment
- malus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, evil, wicked; *compar.*, **pejor**, **pejus**, worse; *superl.*, **pessimus**, -a, -um, worst, most wicked
- mandātum**, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), command, order; mandate
- mandō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), hand over, give; commit; commission, command; **fugae sē mandāre**, flee
- māne**, *adv.*, in the morning
- maneō**, -ēre, **mānsī**, **mānsūm**, remain, stay; wait, wait for
- mānēs**, -ium, *m. pl.*, shades (of the dead), ghosts, spirits
- manuālis**, -e, *adj.* (p. 64), of or belonging to the hand, manual
- manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand; force; band, troop
- mare**, **maris**, *n.*, sea
- maritimus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the sea, maritime, on the sea
- māter**, **mātris**, *f.*, mother; **mātrēs familiae**, matrons
- māteria**, -ae, *acc.* -am, or **māteriēs**, *acc.* -em, *f.*, stuff, timber
- mātrimōnium**, -ī, *n.*, marriage; in **mātrimōnium dare**, give in marriage; in **mātrimōnium dūcere**, marry
- mātrōna**, -ae, *f.*, wife, matron
- mātūrē**, *adv.*, rapidly, soon; **quam mātūrrimē**, as soon as possible
- mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ripen, mature; hurry
- mātūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe, grown, of proper age; mature; early, speedy
- maximē**, *adv.*, in the highest degree, most of all, exceedingly, chiefly, especially; **quam maximē**, as much as possible
- maximus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, greatest, largest
- medicina**, -ae, *f.*, healing art; medicine
- medicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of healing, medical; **ars medica**, medical skill; *m. as noun*, physician, surgeon
- medidiēs**, see **meridiēs**
- medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, middle of, the midst of; *n. as noun*, the middle
- melior**, **melius**, *adj.*, better
- melius**, *adv.*, better
- membrum**, -ī, *n.*, limb, member
- memor**, *gen.* -oris, *adj.*, relentless
- memoria**, -ae, *f.* (p. 21), memory, recollection; faculty of remembering; time; in **memoriā habēre** or **tenēre**, remember; in **memoriam**, in memory of
- memorō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), recall, relate
- mendicus**, -ī, *m.*, beggar
- mēns**, **mentis**, *f.*, mind, understanding; purpose

- mēnsa**, -ae, *f.*, table; meal, course  
**mēnsis**, mēnsis, *m.*, month  
**mercātor**, -ōris, *m.*, trader, merchant  
**mercēs**, mercēdis, *f.*, fee, pay  
**mereō** -ēre, -uī, -itum, deserve; earn; acquire  
**mergō**, -ere, mersī, mersum, plunge, sink  
**merīdiēs**, -ēi, *m.*, midday, noon; south  
**meritum**, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), service  
**meritus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), meriting; merited, deserved, just  
**mētiōr**, -īri, mēnsus sum, measure; distribute  
**metuō**, -ere, -uī, — (p. 238), fear, be afraid of  
**metus**, -ūs, *m.*, fear  
**meus**, -a, -um, *poss. adj.*, my, mine, my own, of mine  
**migrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, move, migrate  
**mīles**, mīlitis, *m.*, soldier  
**mīlitāris**, -e, *adj.* (p. 64), of a soldier, military; rēs mīlitāris, warfare, art of war, military science  
**mīlitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), be a soldier, perform military service  
**mīlle**, *num. adj.*, a thousand; *n. pl. as noun*, mīlia, -ium, thousands; mīlle passūs or passuum, a thousand paces, mile  
**minae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, threats  
**minimē**, *adv.*, least; no, not at all; minimē saepe, very seldom  
**minimus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, smallest, least, very small; very seldom  
**ministerium**, -ī, *n.*, service; ministry; administration  
**minor**, minus, *adj.* (p. 21), smaller, less, of less importance  
**minuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, lessen, diminish  
**minus**, *adv.*, less; minus facile, less easily, not so easily; nihilō minus, none the less; nevertheless; sī . . . minus, if not  
**mīrābilis**, -e, *adj.* (p. 148), wonderful  
**mīrāculum**, -ī, *n.*, miracle, strange thing  
**mīror**, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, admire, be astonished  
**mīrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, wonderful, astonishing, strange  
**miser**, misera, miserum, *adj.*, wretched; unfortunate; unhappy  
**miserē**, *adv.*, miserably, desperately  
**mittō**, -ere, mīsī, missum, send; dismiss, release, let go; throw, hurl  
**mōbilis**, -e, *adj.* (p. 148), mobile  
**modestia**, -ae, *f.* (p. 21), modesty  
**modo**, *adv.*, only, merely; just now; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also  
**modus**, -ī, *m.*, measure, size; amount; way, mode, manner, kind; ejus modi, of such a sort; quem ad modum, in what way, how; as; tāli modō, of such a kind, in such a way  
**moenia**, -ium, *n. pl.*, city walls, fortifications  
**molō**, -ere, -uī, -itum, grind; *pf. part.*, ground; molita cibāria, meal, flour  
**moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, remind, advise, warn  
**monitor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 21), one who reminds, monitor  
**mōns**, montis, *m.*, mountain, range of mountains; hill  
**mōnstrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), show; point out  
**mōnstrum**, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), monster  
**mora**, -ae, *f.*, delay; hindrance  
**morior**, morī, mortuus sum, die  
**moror**, -ārī, -ātus sum (p. 238), delay, linger  
**mors**, mortis, *f.*, death  
**mortālis**, -e, *adj.* (p. 64), mortal  
**mortifer**, -era, -erum, *adj.*, deadly  
**mortuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), dead; *m. as noun*, dead person; *pl.*, the dead

## mōs—negō

**mōs**, **mōris**, *m.*, custom; **mōs est**, it is usual or customary

**mōtus**, **-ūs**, *m.* (p. 238), movement  
**moveō**, **-ēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, move, stir; **castra movēre**, break camp

**mox**, *adv.*, soon, presently, afterwards

**mulier**, **-eris**, *f.*, woman, female

**multiplīcō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, multiply

**multitūdō**, **-inis**, *f.* (p. 100), multitude, large number, crowd, throng; the common people, population

**multō**, *adv.*, by much, much, by far, far

**multum**, *adv.*, much, greatly; *compar.*, **plūs**, more; *superl.*, **plūrimum**, most, very, generally

**multus**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, many, many a; much, abundant, a great quantity of; extensive, great; **multō diē**, late in the day; *m. pl. as noun*, many, many persons; *n. as noun*, much; (*pl.*), many things

**mundus**, **-ī**, *m.*, world; universe

**mūniō**, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum**, wall in, fortify, guard, defend, protect; construct

**mūnitiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.* (p. 238), fortification, defenses, rampart

**mūnus**, **mūneris**, *n.*, service, office; duty; burden; gift

**mūrus**, **-ī**, *m.*, wall, city wall

**mūsica**, **-ae**, *f.*, music

**mūtō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, change; turn

## N

**nam**, *conj.*, for, inasmuch as

**namque**, *conj.*, for, for in fact

**nancīscor**, **nancīscī**, **nactus sum**, happen upon, meet with, find; get possession of

**nārrātor**, **-ōris**, *m.* (p. 100), narrator

**nārrō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, report, relate, tell

**nāscor**, **nāscī**, **nātus sum**, be born or produced; arise; *perf. part.*, often with a numeral, at the age of, old

**nātiō**, **-ōnis**, *f.* (p. 238), nation, tribe, people

**nātūra**, **-ae**, *f.*, nature, character, quality

**nātūrālis**, **-e**, *adj.* (p. 64), natural

**nātus**, **-ī**, *m.* (p. 238), son, child

(**nātus**, **-ūs**) *m.* (p. 238), only in *abl. sing.*, **nātū**, birth, age; major **nātū**, older, elder

**nauta**, **-ae**, *m.*, sailor

**nāvālis**, **-e**, *adj.* (p. 64), naval

**nāvicula**, **-ae**, *f.*, small boat

**nāvigō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum** (pp. 55, 238), set sail, sail

**nāvis**, **nāvis**, *f.*, ship, vessel, boat;

**nāvis longa**, warship, galley; **nāvis onerāria**, freight ship, transport; **nāvem appellere**, bring to land, come to land; **nāvem cōnscendere**, go aboard ship, embark; **ē nāve ēgredi**, disembark; **nāvem or nāvēs solvere**, set sail, weigh anchor, put to sea

**-ne**, *enclitic adv.*, a sign of direct questions that may be answered by "yes" or "no"; *conj.*, introducing indirect questions, whether

**nē**, *adv.*, not; **nē . . . quidem**, not . . . even, not . . . either; *conj.*, that . . . not, in order that . . . not, in order not to, for fear that; (*after verbs of fearing*) that, lest; **nē quis**, so that or in order that no one

**nec**, *see neque*

**necessāriō or necessāriē**, *adv.*, necessarily, unavoidably

**necessārius**, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, necessary; critical; *m. pl. as noun*, friends, kinsmen

**necesse**, *indecl. adj.*, necessary; inevitable

**necessitās**, **-ātis**, *f.* (p. 100), necessity, need

**necō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, put to death, kill

**neglegō**, **-legere**, **-lēxī**, **-lēctum**, disregard, neglect

**negō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, say no, say . . . not; deny, refuse

**negōtium**, -ī, *n.*, business; task; trouble; **negōtium dare**, employ

**nēmō**, *dat.* nēmīni; *acc.* nēminem; *no gen. or abl.; m. and f.*, no one, nobody; not a single one

**nemus**, -oris, *n.*, a wood, forest

**nepōs**, -ōtis, *m.*, grandson

**neque** or **nec**, *conj.*, and not, not; nor; **neque . . . neque** or **nec . . . nec**, neither . . . nor; **neque solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also

**nesciō**, -scīre, -scīvī, —, not know, be ignorant; **nesciō quis**, someone or other, somebody; **nesciō quid**, something or other, something; **nesciō cūr**, for some reason or other; I do not know why

**neuter**, -tra, -trum, *adj.* (p. 21), neither; *m. pl. as noun*, neither side or party

**nēve** or **neu**, *conj.*, and not, nor

**nex**, necis, *f.*, death, murder

**nihil**, *n.*, *indecl.*, nothing; *with gen.*, no, none (of); *adv.*, not at all; **nōn nihil**, something; *as adv.*, somewhat, to some extent

**nihilum**, -ī, *n.*, nothing at all, not a bit, nothing; *especially, in the abl. with a compar.*, e.g., **nihilō minus**, nevertheless, none the less

**nisi** or **nī**, *conj.*, if not, unless; *after a neg or an interrog.*, except, but; only

**nōbilis**, -e, *adj.*, highborn, noble; well-known, distinguished; *m. pl. as noun*, nobles, the nobility

**nōbilitās**, -ātis, *f.* (p. 100), fame; high rank, nobility; the nobles

**noceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, harm, injure

**noctū**, *adv.*, by night, at night

**nocturnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or by night, nightly, nocturnal

**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, — (see pp. 341-342, 47), not wish, be unwilling; *imperative*, do not

**nōmen**, -inis, *n.*, name; reputation, fame; account, sake; excuse

**nōminatim**, *adv.*, by name

**nōminō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), name

**nōn**, *adv.*, not, no; **nōn jam**, no longer; **nōn nihil**, something; **nōn numquam**, sometimes, a few times

**nōndum**, *adv.*, not yet

**nōnne**, *used to introduce a question and to imply the answer "yes"*

**nōnnūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, several

**nōnus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, ninth

**nōs**, *pers. pron.*, we

**nōscō**, -ere, **nōvī**, **nōtum**, become acquainted with, recognize; *perf.*, know

**noster**, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, our, ours, our own; *m. pl. as noun*, our men, troops, soldiers

**notō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, notice, observe

**nōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), known, familiar, well-known

**novem**, *indecl. num. adj.*, nine

**novus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, new; strange; **rēs novae**, revolution; *superl.*, **novissimus**, -a, -um, last, the end of, rear; *m. pl. as noun*, those at the rear, rear ranks or line; **novissimum agmen**, the rear

**nox**, *noctis*, *f.*, night; **ad multam noctem**, till late at night; **media nox**, midnight; **proxima nox**, tomorrow night

**nūdō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, uncover, make or lay bare; deprive of

**nūdus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, unprotected

**nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, no, not any, none; *m. pl. as noun*, none

**nūmen**, -inis, *n.*, divinity

**numerus**, -ī, *m.*, number; amount, quantity

**nummus**, -ī, *m.*, coin

**numquam**, *adv.*, never, not at all; **nōn numquam**, sometimes, a few times

**nunc**, *adv.*, now, at present

## nūntiō—opīniō

**nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (p. 238), announce, give news, report, narrate, carry a report  
**nūntius, -ī, m.**, messenger; news, message  
**nūper, adv.**, lately, recently  
**nusquam, adv.**, nowhere  
**nūtrix, -icis, f.**, nurse  
**nympha, -ae, f.**, nymph; *pl.*, the nymphs, female deities that inhabited the seas, fountains, woods, and mountains

## O

**ob, prep. with acc.**, toward, against; on account of, by reason of, because of; **ob eam rem**, for this reason, therefore; **quam ob causam**, for this reason, why; **quam ob rem**, therefore, why; why?  
**objiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum** (p. 180), put before, throw against  
**obscurus, -a, -um, adj.**, dark, obscure  
**observō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, observe  
**obses, obsidis, m. and f.**, hostage  
**obsideō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum** (p. 180), hem in, blockade, besiege  
**obsidiō, -ōnis, f.** (p. 238), siege, blockade  
**obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum**, stop up, barricade  
**obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum** (p. 180), hold, occupy, have; hold fast, obtain  
**occāsiō, -ōnis, f.** (p. 238), occasion, opportunity  
**occāsus, -ūs, m.** (p. 238), a falling, setting; **sōlis occāsus**, sunset, the west  
**occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum** (p. 180), fall down; die, be killed; set (*applied to the sun*)  
**occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum**, cut down; kill, slay  
**occultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, hide, conceal  
**occultus, -a, -um, adj.** (p. 148), hidden, secret; *n. as noun*, secret; **in occultō**, in secret

**occupātus, -a, -um, adj.** (p. 148), occupied, engaged, busy  
**occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, take possession of, occupy, seize  
**occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum** (p. 180), run against, run to meet, meet; fall in with  
**octō, indecl. num. adj.**, eight  
**octōgintā, indecl. num. adj.**, eighty  
**oculus, -ī, m.**, eye  
**ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, defective verb** (see p. 343, 48), hate, detest  
**odiōsus, -a, -um, adj.** (p. 148), hateful, odious  
**odium, -ī, n.** (p. 21), hatred  
**odor, -ōris, m.**, odor, scent  
**offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum**, strike against, harm; **animum offendere**, offend  
**offēnsiō, -ōnis, f.**, offense, displeasure  
**offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum** (p. 180), bring before, offer; expose; **sē offerre**, expose oneself to  
**officium, -ī, n.**, service, kindness; duty, official duty; sense of obligation  
**oleum, -ī, n.**, oil  
**ōlim, adv.**, once, formerly, once upon a time; some day  
**ōmen, -inis, n.** (p. 21), omen, sign  
**omittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum**, let go, neglect; cease, stop; omit  
**omnīnō, adv.**, altogether, entirely, in all, only; in general, by all means  
**omnis, -e, adj.**, all, every, whole; *n. pl. as noun*, everything  
**onerārius, -a, -um, adj.**, fitted or suitable for burdens; **nāvis onerāria**, freight ship, transport  
**onus, oneris, n.**, load, burden, weight; cargo; care, responsibility  
**opera, -ae, f.**, work, pains; effort, labor, toil; attention; aid, help  
**opīniō, -ōnis, f.**, opinion, belief, expectation; impression; **contrā opīniōnem omnium**, against the judgment of everyone, contrary to popular opinion

**oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *impers.***, it is necessary, it is proper *or* right; (one) must, (one) ought

**oppidānus, -a, -um, *adj.***, of *or* pertaining to a town; *m. pl. as noun*, townspeople, inhabitants of a town

**oppidum, -ī, *n.***, town, stronghold, city

**opportūnē, *adv.***, opportunely, at the right time, conveniently

**oppressor, -ōris, *m.*** (p. 21), crusher, destroyer

**opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum** (p. 180), press *or* weigh down, oppress, crush, overpower; put down; **somnō oppressus**, overcome by sleep, asleep

**oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*** (p. 238), taking by storm, attack, assault, siege

**oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (p. 180), attack, assault, try to storm, storm, besiege

(**ops**), **opis** (*no nom. or dat. sing.*), *f.*, aid; power; *pl.*, power, influence, resources, wealth

**optimē, *adv.***, best

**optimus, -a, -um, *adj.***, best, excellent

**opus, operis, *n.***, work, labor; task; deed; structure, siege work, fortification; want, necessity; **opus est**, there is need of, it is necessary; **magnō opere**, greatly, very much; **quantō opere**, how much? how greatly?

**ōra, -ae, *f.***, margin, shore, distant shore; **ōra maritima**, coast, seashore

**ōrāculum, -ī, *n.*** (p. 46), oracle; prophecy

**ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*** (p. 100), oration, speech, discourse; argument; **habēre ōrātiōnem**, deliver *or* make a speech

**ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*** (pp. 21, 100), orator, speaker

**orbis, orbis, *m.***, circle; **orbis terrārum**, the earth, the world

**ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.***, row, rank, line; order; class, rank

**origō, -inis, *f.***, origin, descent

**orior, -irī, ortus sum**, arise, rise; appear, begin; be descended, spring from; **oriēns sōl**, sunrise; the east; **ortā lūce**, at daybreak

**ōrnātus, -a, -um, *adj.***, furnished, fitted out; distinguished

**ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, speak; pray, plead; ask for

**ortus, -ūs, *m.***, rising; the east; **ortus sōlis**, sunrise

**ōs, ōris, *n.***, mouth; face; look, expression

**ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum** (p. 180), display, show, point out; make known; state

**ōstium, -ī, *n.***, door; mouth, entrance

**ōtium, -ī, *n.***, leisure, idleness, ease; peace, quiet

## P

**pābulator, -ārī, -ātus sum** (p. 238), forage, collect food

**pābulum, -ī, *n.***, food; fodder, pasture

**pācificus, -a, -um, *adj.***, peacemaking, pacific

**pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** (p. 238), make peaceful, pacify, subdue

**pactum, -ī, *n.***, agreement

**paene, *adv.***, nearly, almost

**paenitentia, -ae, *f.*** (p. 21), penitence, repentance

**pāgus, -ī, *m.***, district, canton

**palam, *adv.***, openly, in public

**pālus, -ī, *m.***, stake

**pālūs, -ūdis, *f.***, swamp, marsh

**pandō, -ere, pandī, pānsum *or* passum**, spread, stretch out; **passis manibus**, with outstretched hands

**pār, *gen. paris, adj.***, equal, like; suitable

**parātus, -a, -um, *adj.*** (p. 148), prepared, ready

**parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrus**, spare, show mercy to

**parēns, parentis, *m. and f.***, parent, father, mother; relative

**pāreō, -ēre, -uī, —**, obey, submit, be subject to

**pariō—perferō**

- pariō, -ere, peperī, partum**, obtain, bear, be at hand
- parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, prepare, make ready; get, acquire
- pars, partis, f.**, part, share, division; direction, quarter; in *omnēs partēs*, into every part; *omnibus in partibus*, in all directions, on all sides; *ūnā ex parte*, on one side
- participō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, share
- partim, adv.**, partly, in part
- partior, -īri, -ītus sum** (p. 238), share
- parum, adv.**, too little, little; *compar.*, minus, less; *superl.*, *minimē*, least; not at all; no
- parvus, -a, -um, adj.**, small, little; humble; *compar.*, minor, minus, smaller, less, of less importance; *superl.*, *minimus, -a, -um*, smallest, least, very small
- pāscor, -i, pāstus sum**, be fed, pasture
- passus, -ūs, m.**, step; *mille passūs or mille passuum*, a thousand paces, mile
- pāstor, -ōris, m.** (pp. 21, 100), shepherd
- patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum**, lay open, open; expose, reveal
- pateō, -ēre, -uī, —**, lie or be open, stretch out, extend
- pater, patris, m.**, father; *pl. often*, forefathers; senators; *pater familiae*, father or head of a family; *patrēs cōscripti*, senators
- pator, patī, passus sum**, suffer; allow, permit
- patria, -ae, f.**, native country or land
- patricius, -a, -um, adj.**, of the fathers, of the nobles, patrician
- patrius, -a, -um, adj.**, paternal, ancestral
- paucitās, -ātis, f.** (p. 100), small number
- paucus, -a, -um, adj.**, few; usually *pl.*, few, a few; *m. pl. as noun*, a few, few people; *n. pl. as noun*, a few things, a few words; *paucis ante annis*, a few years before
- paulātim, adv.**, little by little, gradually
- paulisper, adv.**, for a short time
- paulō, adv.**, (by) a little
- paulum, adv.**, a little
- pavor, -ōris, m.**, trembling, terror
- pāx, pācis, f.**, peace
- pectus, pectoris, n.**, breast; heart, mind, feelings
- pecūnia, -ae, f.**, wealth, money
- pecus, pecudis, f.**, beast, animal; sheep; *pl.*, cattle
- pedālis, -e, adj.** (p. 64), of the foot, pedal
- pedes, peditis, m.**, foot soldier, infantryman; *pl.*, infantry
- pedester, -tris, -tre, adj.**, on foot; pedestrian, of a foot soldier; on or by land; *pedestrēs cōpiae*, infantry forces, infantry
- peditātus, -ūs, m.**, infantry
- pejor, pejus, adj.**, worse
- pejus, adv.**, worse
- pellis, pellis, f.**, skin, pelt
- pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum**, beat; drive out or away; rout, defeat
- pendeō, -ēre, pependī, —**, hang, hang down
- pendō, -ere, pependī, pēsum**, weigh; pay; *with poenam*, pay, suffer
- pendulum, -i, n.**, pendulum
- per, prep. with acc.**, through, among, by, throughout; (*space*) over; (*time*) during, for; *per annum*, by the year, annually; *per sē*, of oneself
- percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum** (p. 180), seize, receive; learn; feel
- percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum**, thrust or pierce through; strike
- perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum** (p. 84), lead or bring through, bring, lead; construct; induce
- peregrīnus, -a, -um, adj.**, from abroad, strange, foreign
- pereō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus** (p. 84), go through; be lost; perish, die
- perfacilis, -e, adj.**, very easy
- perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum** (p. 84), bear through; convey; endure, submit to; report, relate



**perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum** (p. 180), accomplish, carry out, complete; cause

**perfidus, -a, -um, adj.**, treacherous

**perfuga, -ae, m.**, deserter

**perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —** (p. 84), flee for refuge, desert

**periculōsus, -a, -um, adj.** (p. 148), dangerous, perilous

**periculum, -ī, n.**, trial; danger, risk

**peritus, -a, -um, adj.**, experienced, skilled

**permanēō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum** (p. 84), continue, remain, last

**permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum** (p. 84), let go; intrust; permit, allow

**permovēō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum** (p. 84), move strongly or deeply, alarm; influence

**perpaucī, -ae, -a, adj.**, very few

**perpetuus, -a, -um, adj.**, continuous, perpetual, lasting; the whole of; in perpetuum, forever

**perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum** (p. 84), break through

**perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum** (p. 84), write in full; record

**persequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum** (p. 84), follow up; pursue

**perspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum**, see or look through, perceive clearly, view; inspect, learn; observe

**persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum** (p. 84), persuade, convince, induce

**perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum** (p. 84), frighten thoroughly, terrify

**pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum** (p. 180), extend; tend, lead; pertain

**perturbātiō, -ōnis, f.** (p. 100), disturbance, alarm

**perturbātus, -a, -um, adj.** (p. 148), disturbed

**perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** (p. 84), disturb greatly, throw into confusion, disturb; dismay

**pervenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum** (p. 84), come through or to, arrive, reach, come

**pēs, pedis, m.**, foot; (*as a measure*) a foot; **pedem referre**, retreat

**pessimē, adv.**, worst; most unkindly  
**pessimus, -a, -um, adj.**, worst, most wicked

**petō, -ere, petivī, petitum**, pursue, seek, make for; assail; go to; ask for, ask; beg, entreat; **fugā salutem petere**, flee, run away, run to a place of safety

**phalanx, -angis, f.**, phalanx, *military formation in close order*

**piger, -gra, -grum**, lazy

**pilum, -ī, n.**, pike, spear, javelin

**pīrāta, -ae, m.**, pirate

**placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum**, please, be pleasing; *impers.*, **placet**, it is resolved or decided

**placō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, soothe, appease, placate

**plānitīēs, -ēī, f.**, level ground, plain

**plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -eī or -ī, f.**, the common people, populace, plebs, plebeians

**plēnē, adv.**, completely

**plēnus, -a, -um, adj.**, full; whole

**plērumque, adv.**, for the most or greater part, very often, commonly, generally

**plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, adj.**, most; *pl.*, very many, most of

**pluit, impers.**, it rains

**plūrimum, adv.**, most, very, generally; **plūrimum posse**, be most powerful

**plūrimus, -a, -um, adj.**, most, very many, very large; *n. as noun*, very much

**plūs, plūris, n.** (*see* p. 317, 17), more; *pl. as adj.*, a number of, several; *m. pl. as noun*, more

**plūs, adv.**, more

**poena, -ae, f.**, punishment, penalty; **poenam or poenās dare**, pay the penalty

**poëta, -ae, m.**, poet

# polliceor—praesertim

polliceor, -ēri, -itus sum, promise  
 pōmum, -ī, *n.*, apple  
 pondus, ponderis, *n.*, a weight (*of a scale*); weight  
 pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, put, place, lay; deposit, store away; *pass.*, be situated; arma pōnere, lay down one's arms, surrender; castra pōnere, pitch camp, encamp  
 pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge  
 populor, -āri, -ātus sum, devastate, lay waste, ravage  
 populus, -ī, *m.*, a people, nation; the people, the citizens  
 porcus, -ī, *m.*, swine, hog  
 porta, -ae, *f.*, gate; door, portal  
 portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, convey, carry, bring  
 portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port  
 poscō, -ere, poposci, —, demand  
 possessiō, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 100), possession, property  
 possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, have possession of, possess, occupy; acquire  
 possum, posse, potuī, —, be able, can; have influence; plūrimum posse, be most powerful; minimum posse, have little *or* no power  
 post, *adv.*, behind, in the rear; after, afterwards, later; *prep. with acc.*, behind, back of; after  
 postea, *adv.*, afterwards, later, to come, subsequently  
 posteāquam, *see* postquam  
 posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, following, next; posterō diē, on the next day  
 postquam *or* posteāquam, *conj.*, after, as soon as, when  
 postridiē, *adv.*, next day, the following day; postridiē ejus diē, the next *or* following day  
 postulātum, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), demand  
 postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand, require, ask for  
 potēns, *gen. -entis, adj.* (p. 148), powerful, influential  
 potentia, -ae, *f.* (p. 200), power, political influence, authority

potestās, -ātis, *f.* (p. 200), power, authority; opportunity; control; potestātem facere, grant opportunity *or* permission, give a chance  
 potior, -īri, -itus sum, become master of, get control of; possess  
 potius, *compar. adv.*, rather  
 prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of, ahead of; in comparison with  
 praeacūtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sharp in front *or* at the end  
 praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, hold forth, present; display, show  
 praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), go before; surpass  
 praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), enjoin upon, direct, give directions to, order, advise, teach  
 praecipuē, *adv.*, especially  
 praecīlārē, *adv.*, admirably  
 praecīlārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, famous, distinguished  
 praecurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum (p. 84), run before, run forward  
 praeda, -ae, *f.*, booty, plunder  
 praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), proclaim, assert; boast  
 praedicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum (p. 84), foretell; advise, warn  
 praefectus, -ī, *m.* (p. 238), commander, officer, prefect  
 praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), place over *or* in charge of  
 praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (p. 84), send forward, send ahead; send  
 praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward, prize  
 praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (p. 84), place in charge of  
 praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum (p. 84), direct  
 praesēns, *gen. -entis, adj.* (p. 148), at hand, present; immediate, for the moment  
 praesentia, -ae, *f.* (pp. 21, 200), presence; in praesentiā, for the present  
 praesentō, -āre, —, -ātum, place before, show; present  
 praesertim, *adv.*, especially

**praesidium**, -ī, *n.*, defense, protection; garrison, guard; safety  
**praestāns**, *gen. -stantis, adj.*, surpassing, remarkable  
**praestō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stitum (p. 180), stand before; excel; show; praestat, *impers.*, it is better or preferable  
**praesum**, -esse, -fui, -futurus (p. 84), be ahead; be in command or in charge of, command, preside over  
**praeter**, *prep. with acc.*, past, by; besides, except  
**praetereā**, *adv.*, in addition, besides, besides this, beyond this, moreover  
**praetōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of a praetor, a *Roman magistrate*; praetōria cohors, guard of honor  
**prehendō**, -hendere, -hendī, -hēsum, grasp, seize  
**premō**, -ere, pressī, pressum, press, press hard  
**pretiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), valuable, precious  
**pretium**, -ī, *n.*, price  
**prex**, *precis, f.*, prayer, entreaty  
**pridem**, *adv.*, long ago; jam pridem, this long time; long ago  
**pridiē**, *adv.*, (on) the day before  
**primō**, *adv.*, at first, first  
**primum**, *adv.*, first, at first; quam primum, as soon as possible  
**primus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, first, foremost; first part of; principal, chief; *m. pl. as noun*, the leading men; in primis (imprimis), especially; primā luce, at daybreak  
**princeps**, *gen. principis, adj.*, first, foremost, chief; *m. as noun*, leader, chief, noble  
**principātus**, -ūs, *m.*, first place, leadership, authority  
**prior**, prius, *adj.*, former, preceding, first  
**prīstinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, former  
**prius**, *adv.*, before, previously, first  
**priusquam** or prius . . . quam, *conj.*, before, sooner than; until  
**privātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, private, personal; *m. as noun*, private citizen

**prō**, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; in behalf of, in defense of, for; in place of, in return for, instead of; in the character of, as; in accordance with, considering  
**probō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, test; show; approve  
**prōcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum (p. 84), go forward, advance, proceed; march  
**procul**, *adv.*, at a distance, afar  
**procus**, -ī, *m.*, suitor, lover  
**prōdō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), bring forth; reveal; hand down; surrender  
**prōducō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), lead or bring forth; draw up (*troops*); prolong  
**proelium**, -ī, *n.*, battle, engagement; proelium committere, begin battle; proelium facere, engage in battle  
**profectiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), a setting out, departure  
**prōferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (p. 84), bring forth or forward  
**prōficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), carry out, accomplish; make progress, assist; gain  
**proficiscor**, proficisci, profectus sum, set out or forth, start, go forward, march; migrate  
**profor**, -fārī, -fātus sum, speak out  
**profugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus (p. 84), flee from or before, escape  
**profugus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, fleeing; *m. as noun* (p. 238), fugitive, exile  
**prōgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum (p. 180), go on or forward, proceed, advance  
**prohibeō**, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum (p. 180), hold back; keep, keep out or away from; prevent, hinder from, protect  
**proinde**, *adv.*, therefore  
**prōjiciō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), hurl forward or down; throw, abandon; banish; sē prōjicere, jump down  
**prōmittō**, -mittere, -misi, -misum (p. 84), promise; datā fidē prōmittere, promise in good faith

## prōmoveō—quamquam

prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (p. 84), move forward, push onward

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), announce, report; say, speak

prope, *prep. with acc.*, near, nearby, near to; *adv.*, nearly, almost; *compar.*, propius, nearer; *superl.*, proximē, nearest, most recently

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum (p. 84), drive forward or forth; dislodge, drive off, repel, rout

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hasten, hurry, be in haste

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, near, neighboring; *m. and f. as noun*, relative, kinsman, kinswoman

propius, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, nearer

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum (p. 84), put or set forth, point out; report; offer

proprius, -a, -um, *adj.*, one's own, private, appropriate

propter, *prep. with acc.*, near; because of, on account of

propterea, *adv.*, for this or that reason, on account of this, therefore; propterea quod, for the reason that, because, inasmuch as

prōra, -ae, *f.*, prow

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum (p. 84), follow after, pursue

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus (p. 180), be of service; help, profit

prōtinus, *adv.*, next; immediately

prōveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum (p. 84), come forth

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum (p. 84), foresee; provide

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province

prōvocō, -vocāre, -vocāvī, -vocātum (p. 84), call forth, challenge

proximē, *adv.*, nearest; last, most recently

proximus, -a, -um, *adj.*, nearest, next; recent, last; proximō diē, on the next day, tomorrow; proxima nox, tomorrow night, the following night

prūdētia, -ae, *f.*, foresight, prudence  
pūblicē, *adv.*, in the name of the people or state; officially; for the state, at public expense

pūblicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, belonging to the people or state, public; *n. as noun*, public; rēs pūblica, *f.*, the state, government, public interests

pudor, -ōris, *m.*, shame, sense of shame

puella, -ae, *f.*, girl, maiden

puer, puerī, *m.*, boy, child

puerilis, -e, *adj.* (p. 148), boyish; puerile

pugna, -ae, *f.*, battle, fight

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), fight, engage in battle

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful

pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, beat, knock at

pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, cleanse, clean, clear; excuse

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, consider, think, believe, suppose

## Q

quā, *adv.*, where, by which or what way or road

quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty

quadringenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, four hundred

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, seek, look for; ask, inquire

quaestor, -ōris, *m.* (p. 21), quaestor, a Roman magistrate connected with state finances

quālis, -e, *adj.*, such as, as

quam, *adv.*, to what degree, how, how greatly; as; how? *with comparatives*, than; *with superlatives*, as . . . as possible; ante . . . quam, *conj.*, before; prius . . . quam, *conj.*, sooner than; quam celerrimē, as soon as possible; quam maximē, as much as possible; quam primum, as soon as possible; tam . . . quam, so much . . . as, both . . . and

quamquam, *conj.*, although, though; and yet

**quantum**, *adv.*, *rel.*, as much as, as far as, to such an extent as; *interrog.*, how much? how far? **tantum** . . . quantum, as much . . . as

**quantus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, *interrog.*, how great? how much? **quantō** opere, how much? how greatly? *rel.*, as great (*especially after tantus*); **tantus** . . . **quantus**, as (so) great . . . as, as large . . . as, as much . . . as; *n. as noun*, as much as

**quārē**, *adv.*, *rel.*, for which reason, wherefore, why; *interrog.*, why?

**quārtus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, fourth

**quasi**, *adv.*, as if, as though, almost

**quattuor**, *indecl. num. adj.*, four

**quattuordecim**, *indecl. num. adj.*, fourteen

-que, *enclitic conj.*, and

**queror**, **querī**, **questus sum**, complain; complain of; lament

**quī**, **quae** or **qua**, **quod**, *indef. adj.*, some, any

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, this, that; *rel. adj.*, which, what, whatever

**quī** or **quis**, **quae**, **quod**, *interrog. adj.*, what? which?

**quia**, *conj.*, because

**quicquam**, *see quisquam*

**quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, whichever, everyone who, everything that

**quid**, *interrog. adv.*, why? *with posse*, how?

**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quidam**, *adj.*, a certain, some; a kind of; *pron.*, a certain person, somebody, someone, something; *pl.*, some

**quidem**, *adv.*, indeed; at least, even; **nē** . . . **quidem**, not even, not . . . either

**quiēs**, -ētis, *f.*, quiet, repose, rest

**quiētē**, *adv.*, quietly

**quiētus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, quiet

**quīn**, *conj. and adv.*, so that not, but that; *as conj.*, after words of doubt, that, that not; after words of

hindering, from; *as adv.*, nay, indeed, moreover; **quīn etiam**, nay even, moreover, nay more, more than that

**quīndecim**, *indecl. num. adj.*, fifteen

**quīngentī**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, five hundred

**quīnque**, *indecl. num. adj.*, five

**quīntus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, fifth

**quis**, **quid**, *indef. pron.*, anybody, anyone, anything; **nē quis**, so that no one; **sī quis**, if anyone, whoever

**quis** or **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *interrog. adj.*, what? which? what kind or sort of?

**quis**, **quid**, *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? **nesciō quis**, someone or other, somebody; **nesciō quid**, something

**quisquam**, **quicquam** or **quidquam**, *indef. pron.*, anyone, anything, anyone or anything at all; *as adj.*, any

**quisque**, **quaque**, **quodque**, *indef. adj.*, each, each one

**quisque**, **quidque**, *indef. pron.*, each one, every one, each, every

**quō**, *adv.*, *interrog.*, whither? where? to what place? in what direction? *rel.*, to which place or point, whither; because

**quō**, *conj.*, whereby, in order that, that; **quō minus** or **quōminus**, so that . . . not, from, lest

**quoad**, *adv.*, as long as, until

**quod**, *conj.*, because; as to the fact that, whereas; **propterea quod**, for the reason that, because; inasmuch as; **quod sī**, but if, now if, and if

**quōminus**, *see quō (conj.)*

**quondam**, *adv.*, formerly, once

**quoniam**, *conj.*, since, because

**quoque**, *conj.*, also, too

**quot**, *adj.*, *indecl. interrog.*, how many? *rel.*, as many as

**quotannis**, *adv.*, every year, yearly

**quotiēns**, *adv.*, *rel.*, as often as; *interrog.*, how often?

## R

- rāmus**, -ī, *m.*, branch, bough  
**rāna**, -ae, *f.*, frog  
**rapiō**, -ere, **rapuī**, **raptum**, seize, carry off; lay waste  
**ratio**, -ōnis, *f.*, account, reckoning; way, manner, plan; system; reason; **aliā ratiōne**, otherwise, on other or any other terms; **quā ratiōne**, on what terms  
**ratis**, -is, *f.*, raft  
**re**-, *inseparable prefix*, again, back  
**rebelliō**, -ōnis, *f.*, revolt, rebellion  
**recēns**, *gen. -entis, adj.*, new, fresh, recent  
**recessus**, -ūs, *m.*, retreat  
**reciperō**, *see* **recuperō**  
**recipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum (p. 180), take, get or bring back; admit, receive; undertake; **in fidem recipere**, take under one's protection; **sē recipere**, withdraw, retreat  
**recitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, read aloud  
**recognōscō**, -ere, -cognōvī, -cognitum (p. 84), recognize  
**rēctus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, straight, direct  
**recuperō** or **reciperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, win or get back, recover  
**recūsō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refuse, decline  
**reddō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 84), give back, restore; give up; make  
**redeō**, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), go back, return; **ad sē redīre**, recover consciousness  
**redigō**, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (p. 180), drive back; bring under, reduce  
**redimō**, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum (p. 180), buy back, ransom; purchase  
**redintegrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew  
**reditus**, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), return  
**redūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), lead back, bring back  
**referō**, -ferre, **rettulī**, **relātum** (p. 180), carry or bring back; repay; reply; announce, report; refer; lay before; **pedem referre**, withdraw, retreat; **sē referre**, go back  
**reficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (p. 180), make over; renew; repair  
**refugiō**, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus (p. 84), flee back; flee  
**refugium**, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), recourse, taking refuge; refuge  
**rēgia**, -ae, *f.* (p. 124), palace  
**rēgina**, -ae, *f.* (p. 124), queen  
**regiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (pp. 124, 238), region, territory, country  
**rēgius**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 124), royal, regal  
**rēgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (pp. 124, 238), reign, rule  
**rēgnum**, -ī, *n.* (p. 124), royal authority or power; sovereignty, rule; kingdom  
**regō**, -ere, **rēxī**, **rēctum** (p. 124), guide, direct, control; rule  
**rejiciō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), throw or hurl back, repel  
**religiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, reverence; religion; scruple; religious observance  
**relinquō**, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum, leave behind, leave, abandon  
**reliquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, left, remaining, rest or remainder of; *m. as noun*, the other  
**remaneō**, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum (p. 84), remain  
**remedium**, -ī, *n.*, remedy  
**remittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum (p. 84), send back; give up, relax; remit  
**removeō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum (p. 84), move back or away; remove, withdraw  
**rēmus**, -ī, *m.*, oar  
**renovō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew  
**renūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 84), bring back word, report  
**repellō**, -ere, **reppulī**, **repulsum** (p. 84), drive back or away, repulse  
**repentīnō**, *adv.*, suddenly  
**repentīnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden  
**reperiō**, -īre, **repperī**, **repertum**, find, discover; find out  
**repleō**, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill; fill full

reportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), carry back; convey

rēs, rei, f., thing (*the exact meaning to be determined by the context*); matter, fact, affair, event; act, deed, exploit; circumstance, condition; action; reason; possession; ad eās rēs cōficiendās, to accomplish this; ob eam rem, therefore; hīs rēbus gestis, after these exploits or operations; quam ob rem, therefore; why; why? rē vērā, in fact; rēs divīna, religious matter; rēs familiāris, private property, estate; rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, provisions; rēs gesta, deed; rēs militāris, warfare, art of war, military science; rēs novae, revolution; rēs or rēs pūblica, the state, government, public interests

rescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum (p. 84), enroll; write again

resistō, -sistere, -stiti, — (p. 84), stand still, remain behind; resist

respicō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, look back, look back at, regard

respondeō, -spondere, -spondi, -spōnsum, answer, reply, respond

respōnsum, -i, n. (p. 238), reply, answer, response

rēs pūblica, see rēs

restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum (p. 180), put or place back, restore, rebuild

retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum (p. 180), hold or keep back; keep, maintain

reveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum (p. 84), come back

revertō, -vertere, -verti, — (p. 84), (*active regularly in perf. tenses only*), turn back, come back, return

revertor, -verti, -versus sum, turn back, return

revocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), recall

rēx, rēgis, m. (p. 124), king, ruler

ripa, -ae, f., bank (*of a stream*), shore

rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ask; ask for, request

rosa, -ae, f., rose

rōstrum, -i, n. (p. 21), beak, snout, bill; beak (*of a ship*); pl., Rostra, platform for speakers in the Forum, adorned with beaks of captured ships

ruīna, -ae, f., downfall, ruin, destruction, calamity; pl., ruins

rūmor, -ōris, m. (p. 21), rumor, report

ruō, -ere, rui, ruiturus, rush; fall

rūpēs, -is, f., rock, cliff

rūrsus or rūsum, adv., again

rūsticus, -a, -um, adj., of the country, rural

## S

saccus, -i, m., sack, bag

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., sacred, holy  
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f., priest, priestess

sacrificium, -i, n. (p. 200), sacrifice

sacrificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, sacrifice

sacrum, -i, n., sacred rite

saepe, adv., often, frequently; minimē saepe, very rarely

saepenumerō or saepe numerō, adv., time and again, often

saevus, -a, -um, adj., savage, cruel  
sagitta, -ae, f., arrow

sagittārius, -i, m., bowman, archer

salūs, -ūtis, f., health; safety; salūtem dicit, greets

salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), greet, hail

salvus, -a, -um, adj., safe

sāctus, -a, -um, adj., sacred, holy  
sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood; race

sānitās, -ātis, f., soundness; good sense; sanity

sapiēns, gen. -entis, adj., wise

sapientia, -ae, f. (p. 200), wisdom

satis, indecl. adj., enough, sufficient; as noun, enough; adv., enough, sufficiently, quite; satis commodē, to much advantage, very easily

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum (p. 238), do enough; give satisfaction, make reparation, apologize

saxum—sine

- saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, stone  
scaena, -ae, *f.*, scene; stage  
scālae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, scaling ladder  
scapha, -ae, *f.*, small boat, skiff  
scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wicked, infamous  
scelus, sceleris, *n.*, evil or wicked deed, crime  
schola, -ae, *f.*, school  
sciēns, *gen. -entis, adj.*, informed; skilled, expert; understanding  
scientia, -ae, *f.*, knowledge  
scindō, scindere, scidi, scissum, tear down, destroy  
sciō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, know, understand; know how  
scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, write  
scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield  
sēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go apart or away, withdraw  
sēcretō, *adv.*, secretly  
sēcretum, -ī, *n.*, secret, mystery  
sēcretus, -a, -um, *adj.*, set apart  
secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), following, second; favorable  
sed, *conj.*, but, on the contrary  
sēdecim, *indecl. num. adj.*, sixteen  
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit; settle  
sēdēs, -is, *f.*, seat; residence, home  
semper, *adv.*, always, ever  
senātor, -ōris, *m.* (p. 21), senator, one of a council of elders  
senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate, council or body of elders; ex senātus cōsultō, according to a decree of the senate  
senex, *gen. senis, adj.*, old, aged; *m. as noun*, old man, elder  
sententia, -ae, *f.*, thought, feeling, opinion, judgment; mūtātā sententiā, having changed (one's) mind  
sentio, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsū, perceive, feel, realize, know, sense  
sēparātīm, *adv.*, separately, privately  
sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, separate  
septem, *indecl. num. adj.*, seven  
septentrionēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the stars of the Big Dipper; the north  
septimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, seventh  
sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial; in sepultūram dare, bury  
sequor, sequi, secutus sum (p. 263), follow, pursue; maintain; agree with  
sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, talk, conversation, discourse; speech, interview  
serō, serere, sēvī, satum, sow  
serva, -ae, *f.*, female slave, maid  
servant  
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, observe, guard, keep; save  
servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, servant  
sescenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, six hundred  
sex, *indecl. num. adj.*, six  
sextus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, sixth  
sī, *conj.*, if, in case, in the event that; quam sī, as if; quod sī, but if, now if, even if; sī minus, if not; sī quis, if any, if anyone, whoever  
sic, *adv.*, thus, so, in this way or manner; so, to such an extent or degree; ut . . . sic, as . . . so, while . . . yet, though . . . still  
sicut or sicuti, *adv.*, just as, as if, as well as; as it were  
sidus, -eris, *n.*, heavenly body  
significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, announce; indicate, mean  
signum, -ī, *n.*, token, emblem, sign; signal; (*military*) standard, banner; signa ferre, advance the standards, advance; signa inferre, advance (*to the attack*), charge  
silentium, -ī, *n.* (p. 200), silence  
sileō, -ēre, -uī, —, be silent  
silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, wood, woods  
similis, -e, *adj.*, like, similar  
simul, *adv.*, at the same time, together; immediately; simul atque, as soon as  
simulatiō, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), simulation, deceit  
simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make like; pretend  
sīn, *conj.*, but if, if however  
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without



**singulāris**, -e, *adj.* (p. 64), single, alone; singular; one by one  
**singuli**, -ae, -a, *pl. num. adj.*, one at a time; one on a side; *m. as noun*, individuals  
**sinistra**, -ae, *f.*, the left hand; *ā sinistra*, on the left  
**sistō**, -ere, *stiti*, *statum*, plant, set  
**situs**, -ūs, *m.*, site, situation  
**sive** or **seu**, *conj.*, or, or if; *sive . . . sive*, whether . . . or  
**societās**, -ātis, *f.*, alliance  
**socius**, -ī, *m.*, associate, partner, ally, comrade, companion  
**sōl**, *sōlis*, *m.*, sun; sun god; *oriēns sōl*, east; *sōlis occāsus*, sunset, west; *ortū sōlis*, at or from sunrise  
**soleō**, -ēre, *solitus sum*, *semideponēt*, be accustomed; be in the habit of  
**sōlitūdō**, -inis, *f.* (p. 200), wilderness  
**solitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), accustomed, customary, usual  
**sollicitē**, *adv.*, carefully, anxiously, solicitously  
**sollicitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, agitate, incite, stir up, appeal to  
**solum**, *adv.*, only, merely, alone; *nōn solum . . . sed etiam*, not only . . . but also  
**solus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only  
**solvō**, -ere, *solvi*, *solūtum*, loosen, untie; release; absolve; cast out; pay; *with or without nāvem or nāvēs*, set sail, weigh anchor  
**somnus**, -ī, *m.*, sleep, drowsiness; *ē somnō excitātus*, roused from sleep  
**sonus**, -ī, *m.*, sound, noise  
**soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister  
**spargō**, -ere, *sparsi*, *sparsum*, scatter, sow, sprinkle  
**spatium**, -ī, *n.*, space, extent; interval, distance; space of time  
**speciēs**, -eī, *f.*, sight, spectacle; appearance; semblance; kind  
**spectāculum**, -ī, *n.* (pp. 46, 238), spectacle, show  
**spectātor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 21), spectator

**spectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, watch, see; consider; face, be situated; tend  
**spēlunca**, -ae, *f.*, cave, cavern  
**spernō**, -ere, *sprēvi*, *sprētum*, despise, spurn  
**spērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), hope, hope for  
**spēs**, *spei*, *f.*, hope, expectation  
**spīna**, -ae, *f.*, barrier; thorn  
**spoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, despoil, plunder  
*(spōns, spontis, f., only abl., sponte, with suā, meā, tuā, of one's own (my own, your own) accord, voluntarily)*  
**squālor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 21), filth  
**stabulum**, -ī, *n.*, stable, stall  
**statim**, *adv.*, at once, immediately  
**statiō**, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 238), standing, station  
**statua**, -ae, *f.*, statue  
**statuō**, -ere, *statui*, *statūtum*, stand, set up, make a stand; halt; station; determine, decide  
**statūra**, -ae, *f.*, stature, height, size  
**stella**, -ae, *f.*, star  
**stimulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 238), spur on, stimulate  
**stimulus**, -ī, *m.*, goad, spur  
**stipendium**, -ī, *n.*, tax, tribute; a soldier's pay  
**stō**, *stāre*, *steti*, *stātūrus*, stand; abide by  
**strepitus**, -ūs, *m.*, din, noise, uproar  
**studeō**, -ēre, -ui, —, desire, be eager or anxious; be devoted (to), give attention (to), study, lay stress on, attach importance to  
**studium**, -ī, *n.* (p. 200), zeal, enthusiasm; loyalty, devotion; study  
**stultus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, foolish, stupid  
**suādeō**, -ēre, *suāsi*, *suāsūm*, urge, recommend, persuade  
**sub**, *prep. with acc.*, under, toward; (*place*) beneath, into; up to, close to; (*time*) just before, during; *with abl.*, under, at; (*place*) at the foot of; in the shelter of; (*time*), in, within

subdūcō—suus

**subdūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 84), lead *or* draw up, beach (*ships*); withdraw

**subeō**, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), come up (*from below*), come up (to), advance; go under, take up; undergo

**subitō**, *adv.*, suddenly

**subiciō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), hurl beneath; place below *or* under; hurl from beneath; subject

**sublevō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, lift *or* hold up; assist

**subministrō**, -ministrāre, -ministrāvi, -ministrātum, furnish, supply

**submittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum (p. 84), lower; drop; send up *or* under, send as aid *or* reinforcement

**submoveō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum (p. 84), move from under, drive away

**subsequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum (p. 84), follow up *or* after, follow, follow closely

**subsidiū**, -i, *n.*, reserve aid, assistance, help, relief; *pl.*, reinforcements

**subtrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum (p. 84), withdraw; take away, subtract

**succēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum (p. 180), go under; come up to, advance; succeed

**successor**, -ōris, *m.* (p. 100), successor

**succidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, cut, cut down

**suffrāgium**, -i, *n.*, vote

**sui**, sibi, sē, sē, *third pers., sing. and pl., reflexive pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves; *acc. as subject of inf.*, him, her, it, them, *or* he, she, it, they; *reciprocal*, each other, one another

**sum**, esse, fui, futūrus, be, exist

**summa**, -ae, *f.*, top, summit; total

**summoveō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum (p. 180), move from under, send away, drive away, remove

**summus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, highest, top of; chief, greatest, supreme; *n. as noun*, top, summit; **summum imperium**, supreme command

**sūmō**, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take; assume

**sūmptuōsus**, -a, -um (p. 148), *adj.*, expensive, sumptuous

**super**, *adv.*, above, on top; *prep.*, above, on top of

**superbia**, -ae, *f.* (p. 200), pride, haughtiness

**superbus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, haughty, proud

**superior**, -ius, *adj.* (p. 21), upper, higher; superior; (*time*), earlier, former, previous

**superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, rise above *or* higher than; conquer, defeat; be superior to

**supersum**, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be left *or* over, survive, remain

**superus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, upper; *m. pl. as noun*, gods above, gods

**supplicatiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, public prayer, supplication; thanksgiving

**supplicium**, -i, *n.*, punishment

**supportō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 180), bring *or* carry up

**suprā**, *adv.*, above; before, earlier, formerly; *prep. with acc.*, above, on, over

**suscipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum (p. 180), take up; undertake, assume; begin

**suspendō**, -ere, -pendi, -pēsum (p. 180), hang up, hang, suspend

**suspiciō**, -ōnis, *f.* (p. 100), suspicion, distrust

**suspikor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, suspect

**sustineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum (p. 180), uphold, sustain; withstand, resist, endure, bear; hold out; restrain; sē sustinēre, hold oneself up, stand up

**suus**, -a, -um, *poss. adj., reflexive, third person*, his own, her own, its own, their own; his, her, hers, its, theirs; one's own, one's; *m. pl. as noun*, one's (his, their) own men, troops, friends, people, party; *n. pl. as noun*, one's (his, her, their) own possessions, his (her, their) possessions *or* property

## T

tabernāculum, -ī, *n.*, tent

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, be silent, keep silent about

tacitus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), silent; concealed, secret

taeda, -ae, *f.*, torch

tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, of such a kind

tam, *adv.*, thus, so, so much, to such an extent; tam . . . quam, so much . . . as; both . . . and

tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, still, yet, however

tamquam, *adv.*, as if, just as if

tandem, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch; border on; affect, influence

tantulus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so small, so little, so unimportant

tantum, *adv.*, so much, so greatly, to such an extent, so far; this much, only, alone, merely; tantum . . . quantum, as much . . . as

tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great, so large, of such a size, of such an extent; tantus . . . quantus, as (so) great . . . as, as large . . . as, as much . . . as; *n. as noun*, so much

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, make slow, retard

tardus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tardy, slow

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull

tēctum, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), roof; shelter, dwelling, house

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, cover, protect; conceal

tellūs, tellūris, *f.*, the earth; land, region

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, missile, weapon, javelin, dart

temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, imprudent

temerē, *adv.*, rashly, indiscreetly

temeritās, -ātis, *f.* (p. 100), rashness

temperantia, -ae, *f.*, prudence, self-control, temperance

tempestās, -ātis, *f.*, time, season; weather; storm, tempest

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple, shrine

temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, test, try; venture, attempt; tempt

tempus, temporis, *n.*, time; a time, period, season; opportunity; brevi tempore, quickly, soon; ex tempore, without preparation, offhand

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, stretch, aim, direct; make one's way, go; bend

teneō, -ēre, -uī, —, hold, possess; occupy; control; cursum tenēre, keep a course; sē tenēre, stay

tergum, -ī, *n.*, back; rear; post tergum, behind; tergum vertere, flee

terra, -ae, *f.*, earth, land; territory, region; orbis terrarum, the earth; the world

terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, earthen, of earth

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten, terrify, alarm

terribilis, -e, *adj.* (p. 148), frightful, terrible

terrītus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), frightened, terrified

terror, -ōris, *m.* (p. 21), terror, panic, fear, dread

tertius, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, third

testimōnium, -ī, *n.*, testimony, evidence

testis, -is, *m. and f.*, witness

testūdō, -inis, *f.*, tortoise; as a military term, testudo, a shed protecting besiegers, or a close formation of troops with overlapping shields

tigris, -idis; *nom. pl.* tigrēs, *m. or f.*, tiger

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, fear, be afraid of; be afraid

timidē, *adv.*, timidly

timidus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 21), timid, cowardly

timor, -ōris (p. 238), *m.*, fear, alarm; timidity

titulus, -ī, *m.*, title of honor

toga, -ae, *f.*, toga, outer garment worn by Roman men

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, lift, raise; take on board; exalt; remove; do away with; abolish

# tormentum—ultrā

tormentum, -ī, *n.*, torture; *also*, a military machine for hurling missiles; *hence, pl.*, artillery  
 tot, *indecl. num. adj.*, so many  
 totidem, *indecl. num. adj.*, the same number of, just as many  
 tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.*, whole, the whole (of), all, entire, wholly  
 tractō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, treat, handle, manage  
 trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (p. 180), give or hand over, deliver up, surrender; hand down, tell; teach  
 trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (p. 180), lead across or over, transfer, conduct  
 trāgula, -ae, *f.*, javelin, dart, *light Gallic javelin thrown by a strap*  
 trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, draw, drag, draw along or away  
 trājiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (p. 180), hurl across or through; pierce; take across; cross  
 tranquillus, -a, -um, *adj.*, calm, tranquil  
 trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, on the other side of, to the other side of  
 trānsēō, -īre, -iī, -itum (p. 84), cross, go over, go across or through, pass through; pass by; *initium trāns-eundī facere*, be first to cross  
 trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum (p. 84), carry or bring over; transfer; *sē trānsferre*, devote oneself  
 trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum (p. 84), transfix, pierce  
 trānsmitto, -mittere, -misi, -misum (p. 84), send across; transmit  
 trānsportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (p. 84), carry or take across, convey  
 trānsvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum (p. 84), carry across, convey  
 trecentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, three hundred  
 trēs, tria, *gen. trium, num. adj.*, three  
 tribūnus, -ī, *m.*, tribune, *tillē of a Roman official*  
 tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum, allot, assign, grant; pay; attribute

tribūtum, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), tribute, tax  
 triduum, -ī, *n.*, period of three days, three days  
 trigintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, thirty  
 triplex, *gen. -icis, adj.*, threefold, triple, in three divisions or lines  
 tristis, -e, *adj.*, sad  
 tristitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness  
 tū, *gen. tui; nom. pl., vōs; pers. pron., you*  
 tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, look or gaze at; watch, guard, protect  
 tum, *adv.*, then, at that time; thereupon, next; *cum . . . tum*, both . . . and, not only . . . but also  
 tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, uproar, confusion, tumult; rebellion  
 tumulus, -ī, *m.*, mound, small hill  
 tunica, -ae, *f.*, undergarment, tunic  
 turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, disturb; confuse  
 turpis, -e, *adj.*, ugly, shameful, dishonorable, base  
 turris, turris, *f.*, tower  
 tūtus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), protected, safe; *n. as noun*, safety, place of safety  
 tuus, -a, -um, *poss. adj.*, your, yours (*referring to one person*)

## U

ubi, *adv., rel.*, where, in which place; when, whenever; *interrog.*, where?  
 ubique, *adv.*, everywhere  
 ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, take vengeance on, avenge, punish  
 ūllus, -a, -um, *adj.*, any; *m. as noun*, anyone, anybody  
 ulterior, -ius, *compar. adj.*, farther, beyond, more distant, ulterior  
 ultimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, farthest; most distant; last; end of  
 ultrā, *adv.* (p. 21), on the other or far side, beyond, farther, in addition; *prep. with acc.*, on the other side of, beyond, past; *nē plūs ultrā*, nothing beyond, the height of excellence

- ultrō, *adv.*, beyond; voluntarily; without reason or cause, without provocation; ultrō citrōque, back and forth, backward and forward
- umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade, shadow; shading foliage
- umerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder
- umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever
- ūnā, *adv.*, at the same time, along with, together; ūnā ex parte, on one side
- unda, -ae, *f.*, wave
- unde, *adv.*, *rel.*, from which place, whence; from which cause, from which; *interrog.*, whence? from what place or direction? from what cause?
- ūndecimus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, eleventh
- ūndēvigintī, *indecl. num. adj.*, nineteen
- undique, *adv.*, from all sides or directions, on all sides, everywhere
- unguentum, -ī, *n.*, ointment
- ūniversitās, -ātis, *f.* (p. 100), whole world, universe; university
- ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, all together, all, universal
- ūnus, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, one, single; only, alone; the same, common; ad ūnum, to a man
- urbs, urbis, *f.*, city; especially, the City, i.e., Rome
- urna, -ae, *f.*, jar, pitcher
- ursa, -ae, *f.*, bear
- usquam, *adv.*, anywhere, in any place
- usque, *adv.*, all the way, even to, even, as far as; all the time; usque ad, up to, till
- ūsus, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), use, advantage; practice, experience, skill; ūsuī or ex ūsū, of advantage, of service; ūsus est, it is necessary
- ut or utī, *adv.*, as, when, since, as soon as; as, just as; since, inasmuch as, seeing that; though, although, even if, as if; how (*introducing indirect questions*); ut . . . ita, just as . . . so, while . . . yet; ut . . . sic, as . . . so, while . . . yet, though . . . still; *conj.*, with clauses of purpose, that, in order that, so that, in order to; with clauses of result, that, so that
- uter, -tra, -trum, *pron.*, *interrog.*, which (of the two)? which? *indef.*, whichever of the two, whichever
- uterque, utraque, utrumque, *adj.*, each (of two), both; *pl.*, of two parties, each side, both sides or parties, both
- ūtilis, -e, *adj.* (p. 148), useful, expedient
- ūtōr, ūtī, ūsus sum, use, make use of, employ, enjoy; take advantage of, adopt
- utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides
- utrum, *adv.* in double questions, whether; utrum . . . an, whether . . . or
- uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife

## V

- vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be empty or unoccupied
- vacuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, empty
- vādō, -ere, —, —, go, walk; hasten
- vadum, -ī, *n.*, shallow; ford
- vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, range, roam.
- valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be strong or powerful; valē, farewell
- valētūdō, -inis, *f.* (p. 200), health
- validus, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 64), well, strong
- vallēs, vallis, *f.*, valley
- vāllum, -ī, *n.*, intrenchment, rampart
- valor, -ōris, *m.* (p. 21), valor; strength
- varius, -a, -um, *adj.*, differing, different, various; changing
- vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay waste, ravage
- vehementer, *adv.*, violently; severely, strongly, very much, greatly
- vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry, convey, transport
- vel, *conj.*, or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or
- vellus, velleris, *n.*, fleece

## vēlōcitās—vinum

- vēlōcitās**, -ātis, *f.*, swiftness, speed  
**vēlum**, -ī, *n.*, covering, veil; sail; **vēla**  
*dare or facere*, set sail  
**vēnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, hunting, hunting  
 expedition  
**vēndō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, offer  
 for sale, sell, vend  
**venēnum**, -ī, *n.*, poison, venom  
**venia**, -ae, *f.*, pardon  
**veniō**, -īre, **vēnī**, ventum, come,  
 arrive, go; in **dēditiōnem venīre**,  
 surrender  
**venter**, -tris, *m.*, stomach, abdomen  
**ventus**, -ī, *m.*, wind  
**verbum**, -ī, *n.*, word, saying; *pl.*, con-  
 versation; **verba facere**, speak  
**vereor**, -ērī, -itus sum, reverence,  
 fear, dread  
**vergō**, -ere, —, —, lie toward, face;  
 be situated  
**vērō**, *adv.*, in fact, indeed; but  
**versō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, turn often,  
 turn  
**versor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, be engaged or  
 involved, be situated, be busy; live,  
 remain  
**vertō**, -ere, **vertī**, **versum**, turn, turn  
 around; change; **tergum vertere**,  
 flee, take to flight; *pass. as reflexive*,  
 turn (oneself), turn one's attention  
**vērus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, true, real; fair,  
 just; **rē vērā**, in fact, in truth; *n.*  
*as noun*, truth  
**vesper**, -erī (-eris), *m.* (p. 21), eve-  
 ning star, evening; **sub vesperum**,  
 toward evening; **vesperī**, in the  
 evening  
**vester**, -tra, -trum, *poss. adj.*, your,  
 yours (*of more than one person*)  
**vēstīgium**, -ī, *n.*, footprint, footstep,  
 track  
**vestis**, **vestis**, *f.*, covering; clothing;  
*pl.*, clothes, garments  
**veterānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, old, veteran  
**vetus**, *gen. veteris*, *adj.*, old, long-  
 standing, former  
**vexō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, plunder,  
 overrun  
**via**, -ae, *f.*, way, road, street; journey,  
 march  
**viātor**, -ōris, *m.*, traveler  
**vicīnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, neighboring,  
 near  
**victima**, -ae, *f.*, victim, animal for  
 sacrifice  
**victor**, -ōris, *m.* (pp. 21, 100), victor;  
*as adj.*, victorious  
**victōria**, -ae, *f.* (p. 21), victory  
**victus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (p. 148), de-  
 feated; *m. pl. as noun*, the van-  
 quished, the conquered  
**vicus**, -ī, *m.*, street, quarter; village  
**videō**, -ēre, **vidī**, **visum**, see, perceive;  
 understand; see to; take care; *pass.*,  
 be seen, be noticed; (*very frequently*)  
 seem, appear; (*sometimes*) seem  
 good or right  
**videor**, -ērī, **visus sum**, seem, seem  
 best or proper  
**vigil**, *gen. vigilis*, watchful; *m. as noun*,  
 sentinel, guard  
**vigilia**, -ae, *f.* (p. 200), being awake;  
 watching; guard, night watch; a  
 watch (*a fourth part of the night*);  
**dē quārtā vigiliā**, about the fourth  
 watch (*see* p. 271)  
**vigilō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), watch;  
 keep awake  
**vīgintī**, *indecl. num. adj.*, twenty  
**vilicus**, -ī, *m.*, steward, farm manager  
**villa**, -ae, *f.* (p. 21), farmhouse, villa;  
 country estate, farm  
**vinciō**, -īre, **vīnxi**, **vīnctum**, bind,  
 fetter; restrain  
**vincō**, -ere, **vīcī**, **victum**, conquer,  
 defeat, subdue; refute, convince;  
 be victorious, win  
**vinculum**, -ī, *n.* (p. 238), a fastening;  
 chain; bond  
**vīnea**, -ae, *f.*, vineyard; shed (*to pro-  
 tect besiegers*)  
**vīnum**, -ī, *n.*, wine

**viola**, -ae, *f.*, violet  
**violō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, violate, harm, injure, dishonor  
**vīpera**, -ae, *f.*, viper  
**vir**, virī, *m.*, man; husband  
**virgō**, -inis, *f.*, virgin, young girl  
**virtūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, manliness, courage, valor; virtue, worth; power  
**vīs**, *f.* (see p. 315, 8), force, violence, strength, power; *pl.*, strength; **vim facere**, use violence or force  
**vīsus**, -ūs, *m.* (p. 238), vision; prodigy  
**vīta**, -ae, *f.*, life; **ē vītā excēdere**, die; **vītā superāre**, survive  
**vītō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid, escape  
**vīvō**, -ere, vixī, vīctum, live  
**vīvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, alive, living  
**vix**, *adv.*, hardly, barely, scarcely, with difficulty  
**vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), call, summon, invite; name  
**volō**, -āre, -āvī, -āturus, fly, fly about  
**volō**, velle, voluī, — (see pp. 341-342, 47), will, wish, be willing, desire; intend

**volucer**, -cris, -cre, *adj.*, flying; *f.* as *noun*, bird  
**voluntās**, -ātis, *f.* (p. 200), will, wish; consent, approval; purpose  
**voluptās**, -ātis, *f.*, pleasure, enjoyment  
**volvō**, -ere, volvī, volūtum, roll, turn about, turn around  
**vōs**, *pers. pron.*, you (*pl.*)  
**voveō**, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, vow; wish  
**vōx**, vōcis, *f.*, voice, sound; word, utterance; **magnā vōce**, in a loud voice or tone  
**vulgō**, *adv.*, commonly; publicly, openly; everywhere  
**vulgus**, -ī, *n.*, the common people, common crowd, the public  
**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (p. 238), wound  
**vulnus**, vulneris, *n.*, wound, injury; **vulnera facere**, inflict wounds  
**vultur**, -uris, *m.*, vulture  
**vultus**, -ūs, *m.*, expression, countenance, features

# Proper Names

## PRONUNCIATION KEY

a hat	e let	i bit	o hot	u cup	ə takən
ā āge	ē ēqual	ī ice	ō lōw	ū ūse	ʰ then
ā cāre	è stērn		ô ôrder	ü rüle	zh measure
ä fāther					

**A.**, *abbr. for Aulus*, Aulus (ô'łas), *a Roman first name*

**Achillēs**, *nom.*; **Achillis**, *gen.*; **Achillem**, *acc.*; *m.*, Achilles (ə kil'ēz), *Greek hero in the Trojan War*

**Adōneus**, -ī, *m.*, Adonis (ə don'is) or (ə dō'nis), *handsome youth loved by Venus*

**Adriaticum Mare**, **Adriatici Maris**, *n.*, Adriatic (ā'dri at'ik) Sea (maps, pp. 161, 221)

**Aeētēs**, -ae, *m.*, Aeētes (ē ē'tēz), *king of Colchis*

**Aegaeum Mare**, **Aegaei Maris**, *n.*, Aegean (ē jē'an) Sea (map, p. 161)

**Aegyptii**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Egyptians (i jip'shənz)

**Aegyptus**, -ī, *m.*, Egypt (ē'jipt), *country in northeast Africa* (maps, pp. 142, 161)

**Aemilius**, L., -ī, *m.*, Lucius Aemilius (lū'shəs ē mil'is), *an officer of Gallic cavalry*

**Aenēās**, *nom.*; **Aenēae**, *gen. or dat.*; **Aenēam**, *acc.*; **Aenēā**, *abl.*; *m.*, Aeneas (ē nē'əs), *Trojan leader, hero of Vergil's Aeneid*

**Aeolus**, -ī, *m.*, Aeolus (ē'ō las), *god of the winds*

**Aequi**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Aequi (ē'kwī), *a warlike people of ancient Italy* (map, p. 203)

**Aesōn**, -onis, *m.*, Aeson (ē'sən), *father of Jason*

**Aethiopia**, -ae, *f.*, Ethiopia (ē'thi ō'pi ə), *country in Africa*

**Aethiopicus**, -a, -um, Ethiopian (ē'thi ō'pi ən)

**Aetna**, -ae, *f.*, Etna (et'nə), *volcano in Sicily* (maps, p. 161, inside front cover)

**Āfrica**, -ae, *f.*, Africa (af'rī kə) (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside back cover)

**Agamemnōn**, -onis, *m.*, Agamemnon (ag'ə mem'non), *Greek leader in the Trojan War*

**Alba Longa**, -ae, *f.*, Alba Longa (al'bə lōng'gə), *city built by Ascanius* (map, p. 203)

**Albānus**, -a, -um, Alban (ōl'bən), *of the people of Alba Longa; m. as noun, an Alban*

**Alesia**, -ae, *f.*, Alesia (ə lē'zhə), *a Gallic town, the scene of Vercingetorix' final stand against the Romans* (map, p. 221)

**Alexander Magnus**, **Alexandri Magni**, *m.*, Alexander (al'ig zan'dər) the Great, *king of Macedonia*

**Allēctō**, *nom.*, *f.*, Allecto (ə lek'tō), *one of the three Furies*

**Allobrogēs**, -um, *m. pl.*, the Allobroges (ə lob'rō jēz), *a Gallic tribe* (map, p. 221)



- Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, the Alps (map, p. 221)
- Amāta, -ae, *f.*, Amata (ə mā'tə), *queen of Latium*
- Ambarri, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ambarri (am bār'i), *a tribe of southern Gaul*
- Ambiāni, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ambiani (am'bi ā'nī), *a Gallic tribe* (map, p. 243)
- Amūlius, -i, *m.*, Amulius (ə mū'li əs), *king of Alba Longa*
- Anchisēs, *nom., m.*, Anchises (an kī'sēz), *father of Aeneas*
- Androclēs, *nom.; Androclēm, acc.; Androcle, abl.; m.*, Androcles (an'drō klēz), *Roman slave*
- Anglia, -ae, *f.*, England
- Aniō, Aniēnis, *m.*, the Anio (an'i ō), *a tributary of the Tiber* (map, p. 203)
- Anna, -ae, *f.*, Anna, *name of a girl or woman*
- Apollō, -inis, *m.*, Apollo (ə pol'ō), *god of the sun*
- Appius Claudius, Appii Claudiū, *m.*, Appius Claudius (ap'i əs klō'di əs), *patriotic Roman citizen famed for his public works*
- Aqua Appia, Aquae Appiae, *f.*, the Appian Aqueduct
- Aquileia, -ae, *f.*, Aquileia (ak'wə lē'yə), *a city of Cisalpine Gaul* (map, p. 221)
- Aquītānia, -ae, *f.*, Aquitania (ak'wə tā'ni ə), *the part of southwestern Gaul between the Garonne River and the Pyrenees* (map, p. 221)
- Aquītānus, -a, -um, Aquitanian (ak'wə tā'ni ən); *m. pl. as noun*, Aquitanians, *inhabitants of Aquitania*
- Arar, -aris, *m.*, the Arar (ār'rār), *river in Celtic Gaul, now called the Saône* (sōn) (map, p. 221)
- Archimēdes, -is, *m.*, Archimedes (ār'ki mē'dēz), *Greek scientist*
- Arecomici, *see Volcae*
- Argō, *nom., f.*, the Argo (ār'gō), *Jason's ship*
- Argolicus, -a, -um, Greek
- Argonautae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Argonauts (ār'gə nōtz), *the crew of Jason's ship, the Argo*
- Argus, -i, *m.*, Argus (ār'gəs), *builder of Jason's ship, the Argo*
- Ariadna, -ae, *f.*, Ariadne (ar'i ad'ni), *Cretan princess*
- Arīminum, -i, *n.*, Ariminum (ä rim'i num), *a city of northern Italy* (map, p. 142)
- Arvernī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Arverni (ār vēr'ni), *a tribe of Celtic Gaul* (map, p. 221)
- Ascanius, -i, *m.*, Ascanius (as kā'ni əs), *son of Aeneas*
- Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia (maps, pp. 142, 185, inside back cover)
- Athēna, -ae, *f.*, Athena (ə thē'nə), *goddess of wisdom*
- Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens (ath'inz), *a city of Greece* (maps, pp. 161, 185, inside back cover)
- Athēniēnsis, -is, *m.*, an Athenian (ə thē'ni ən)
- Atilius, M. Atilius Rēgulus, -i, *m.*, Marcus Atilius Regulus (mār'kəs ə til'i əs reg'yə ləs), *a consul in 256 B.C.*
- Atrebās, -ātis, *m.*, an Atrebatian (at'rə bā'shən), *one of the Atrebates* (at'rə bā'tēz), *a tribe of Belgic Gaul*
- Atuatuci, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Atuatuci (at'ū at'ū sī), *a Gallic tribe* (map, p. 221)

## Augustus—Capitōlium

**Augustus**, -ī, *m.*, Augustus (ô gus'təs), *the first Roman emperor (see Octāviānus)*

**Aulidem**, *acc., f.*, Aulis (ô'lis), *a Greek town*

**Aurōra**, -ae, *f.*, Aurora (ô rô'rə), *goddess of the dawn*

**Aurunculeius**, -ī, *m.*, L. Aurunculeius Cotta, Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta (lū'shəs ô rung'kū lē'yəs kot'ə), *one of Caesar's officers*

**Avaricum**, -ī, *n.*, Avaricum (ə vār'i kum), *a stronghold of the Bituriges, now Bourges (bürzh) (map, p. 221)*

**Axona**, -ae, *m.*, the Aisne (ān), *a river of Belgic Gaul (maps, pp. 221, 243)*

**Bacēnis**, -is, *f.*, Bacenis (bə sē'nis), *a forest in Germany (map, p. 221)*

**Belgae**, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Belgians (bel'jənz), *one of the three divisions of the Gallic people*

**Belgium**, -ī, *n.*, Belgium (bel'jəm), *the country of the Belgae (map, p. 221)*

**Bellovacī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Bellovaci (bə lov'ə sī), *a tribe of Belgic Gaul (map, p. 221)*

**Bibracte**, -is, *n.*, Bibracte (bī brak'tē), *chief town of the Haedui (map, p. 221)*

**Bibrax**, Bibractis, *f.*, Bibrax (bī'braks), *a town of the Remi (map, p. 243)*

**Biturigēs**, -um, *m. pl.*, the Bituriges (bit'ū rī'jēz), *a tribe of central Gaul*

**Boīi**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Boii (boi'yī), *a Gallic tribe (map, p. 221)*

**Bratuspantium**, -ī, *n.*, Bratuspantium (brat'əs pan'shi əm), *a town of the Bellovaci (map, p. 221)*

**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, Britain (maps, pp. 142, 221, 243, inside back cover)

**Britannus**, -ī, *m.*, a Briton

**Brundisium**, -ī, *n.*, Brundisium (brun diz'i əm), *an ancient seaport in southeastern Italy (map, p. 142)*

**C.**, *abbr. for Gāius*, Gaius (gā'yəs), *a Roman first name*

**Cabūrus**, C. Valerius, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Caburus (gā'yəs vələ'ri əs kə bū'rəs), *a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship*

**Cadūrcī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Cadurci (kə dər'sī), *a tribe of southwestern Gaul*

**Caesar**, -aris, C. Jūlius, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Julius Caesar (gā'yəs jül'yəs sē'zər), *Roman general and author; L. Caesar, Lucius Caesar, a distant relative of Julius Caesar, who served as his lieutenant in Gaul*

**Calais**, -is, *m.*, Calais (kal'ā is), *one of the Argonauts*

**Calchās**, *nom.*; Calcham, *acc.*; *m.*, Calchas (kal'kəs), *Greek prophet*

**Calēdōnia**, -ae, *f.*, Scotland (map, p. 142)

**Callistō**, *nom., f.*, Callisto (kə lis'tō), *Arcadian princess, changed to a bear*

**Camillus**, -ī, *m.*, Camillus (kə mil'əs), *Roman general*

**Campus Mārtius**, -ī, *m.*, Campus Martius (kam'pəs mār'shəs), *Field of Mars, an exercise and parade ground in Rome, dedicated to Mars (map, p. 205)*

**Capitōlinum**, -ī, *n.*, the Capitoline (kap'i tə līn), *one of the Seven Hills of Rome (map, p. 205)*

**Capitōlium**, -ī, *n.*, the Capitol (kap'i təl), *a temple of Jupiter in Rome; also the Capitoline, one of the Seven Hills of Rome*

- Capua, -ae, *f.*, Capua (kap'ū ə), *a city of Italy* (map, p. 142)
- Carnutēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Carnutes (kār'nū tēz), *a tribe of Celtic Gaul* (map, p. 221)
- Carolus Magnus, -ī, *m.*, Charlemagne (shār'lə măn)
- Carthāginiēnsis, -e, of Carthage (kar'thij), Carthaginian (kar'thə jin'i ən); *m. pl. as noun*, Carthaginians
- Carthāgō, -inis, *f.*, Carthage (kār'thij), *a city in North Africa* (maps, pp. 142, 161)
- Cassiānum, Bellum Cassiānum, -ī, *n.*, the Cassian (kash'ən) War, *a war in 107 B.C., in which L. Cassius was killed by the Helvetians*
- Cassius, L., -ī, *m.*, Lucius Cassius (lū'shəs kash'əs), *consul in 107 B.C.*
- Casticus, -ī, *m.*, Casticus (kas'ti kəs), *a Sequanian noble*
- Castor, -oris, *m.*, Castor (kas'tər), *one of the Argonauts*
- Catameitus, -ī, *m.*, Ganymede (gan'i mēd), *cupbearer to Jupiter*
- Caturigēs, -um, *m.*, the Caturiges (kat'ū rī'jēz), *a Gallic tribe of the Province*
- Celtae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Celts (seltz or keltz), *inhabitants of Celtic Gaul; the Gauls*
- Celtica, -ae, *f.*, Gaul (map, p. 221)
- Centaurus, -ī, *m.*, Centaur (sen'tōr), *legendary monster with the head, arms, and chest of a man, and the body and legs of a horse*
- Cerberus, -ī, *m.*, Cerberus (sēr'bər əs), *fierce three-headed watchdog of the lower world*
- Cerēs, Cereris, *f.*, Ceres (sēr'ēz), *goddess of agriculture*
- Ceutronēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Ceutrones (sū'trō nēz), *a Gallic tribe*
- Charōn, -ontis, *m.*, Charon (kār'on), *ferryman in the lower world*
- Chersonēsus, -ī, *f.*, Chersonese (kēr'sə nēz'), *a city and peninsula, on the Black Sea* (map, p. 142)
- Chilēnsis, -e, Chilean (chil'i ən)
- Christiānus, -ī, *m.*, Christian
- Cicerō, -ōnis, M. Tullius, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Tullius Cicero (mār'kəs tul'i əs sis'ə rō'), *Roman orator and writer*
- Circē (or Circa), -ae, *f.*, Circe (sēr'si), *an enchantress*
- Cisalpinā, *see* Gallia
- Citerior Gallia, *see* Gallia
- Clūsium, -ī, *n.*, Clusium (klū'si əm), *a city of Italy* (map, p. 142)
- Clytemnestra, -ae, *f.*, Clytemnestra (kli'təm nes'trə), *wife of Agamemnon*
- Colchī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Colchians (kol'ki ənz), people of Colchis (kol'kis)
- Colchis, -idis; Colchida, *acc.*; *f.*, Colchis (kol'kis), *a country of Asia* (maps, pp. 142, 185)
- Commius, -ī, *m.*, Commius (kom'i əs), *a chief of the Atrebates*
- Cōnsidius, P., -ī, *m.*, Publius Considius (pub'li əs kən sid'i əs), *an officer in Caesar's army*
- Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, Corinth (kōr'inth), *a famous city of Greece* (maps, pp. 161, 185)
- Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia (kōr nēl'yə), *name of a girl or woman*

## Cornēlius—Ēpīrus

Cornēlius, -ī, *m.*, Cornelius (kôr nēl'yəs), *name of a boy or man*

Corsica, -ae, *f.*, Corsica (kôr'si kə), *an island in the Mediterranean Sea* (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside front cover)

Cotta, *see* Aurunculeius

Crassus, M. Licinius, -ī, *m.*, Marcus Licinius Crassus (mär'kəs lī sin'i əs kras'əs), *triumvir with Caesar and Pompey; his son, Marcus Licinius Crassus, was one of Caesar's quaestors*

Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete (krēt), *an island in the Mediterranean Sea* (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside back cover)

Crīto, -ōnis, *m.*, Crito (krī'tō), *a disciple of Socrates*

Cūmae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Cumae (kū'mē), *city of Italy, site of the Sibyl's cave*

Cupīdō, Cupīdinis, *m.*, Cupid (kū'pid), *god of love*

Curēs, -ium, *m. and f. pl.*, Cures (kū'rēz), *chief town of the Sabines* (map, p. 203)

Cūriātius, -ī, *m.*, Curiatius (kū'ri ā'shi əs), *name of an Alban family*

Cyprus, -ī, *f.*, Cyprus (sī'prəs), *an island in the Mediterranean Sea* (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside back cover)

Daedalus, -ī, *m.*, Daedalus (ded'ə ləs), *character of Greek legend*

Dānuvius, -ī, *m.*, the Danube (dan'üb), *a river of central Europe* (map, p. 142)

Dēlos, -ī, *f.*, Delos (dē'los), *a small island in the Aegean Sea*

Delphī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Delphi (del'fi), *city in Greece, famous for the oracle of Apollo* (maps, pp. 161, 185)

Deucaliōn, -ōnis, *m.*, Deucalion (dū kā'li ən), *character of Greek legend*

Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana (dī an'ə), *goddess of the moon and of hunting*

Didō, *nom.*, *f.*, Dido (dī'dō), *queen of Carthage*

Dīs, Dītis, *m.*, Pluto (plū'tō), *god of the lower world*

Discordia, -ae, *f.*, Discordia (dis kôr'di ə), *goddess of discord*

Diviciācus, -ī, *m.*, Diviciacus (di vish'i ā'kəs), *Haeduan chief*

Divicō, -ōnis, *m.*, Divico (div'i kō), *Helvetian chief*

Domnotaurus, *see* Valerius

Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix (dum'nō riks), *a Haeduan chief, brother of Diviciacus*

Eburōnēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Eburones (eb'ū rō'nēz), *a German tribe living in northwest Gaul* (map, p. 221)

Ecphantus, -ī, *m.*, Ecphantus (ek fan'tus), *a Greek philosopher*

Epidamnīus, -a, -um, of Epidamnus, Epidamnian (ep'ə dam'ni ən)

Epidamnus, -ī, *f.*, Epidamnus (ep'ə dam'nəs), *a town of Illyria, later Dyrrachium, now Durazzo*

Epimētheus, -ī, *m.*, Epimetheus (ep'i mē'thūs), *character in Greek mythology; husband of Pandora*

Ēpīrus, -ī, *f.*, Epirus (ē pī'rəs), *a district of Greece* (map, p. 161)

- Erötium, -i, Erotium (ē rō'shəm), *a courtesan in Plautus' play Menaechmi*
- Etrūscī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Etruscans (i trus'kənz), *a people of Italy* (map, p. 203)
- Eumaeus, -i, *m.*, Eumaeus (ū mē'əs), *swineherd of Ulysses*
- Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*, Europe (map, p. 142)
- Eurydicē, *nom.*; Eurydicēs, *gen.*; Eurydicēn, *acc.*; *f.*, Eurydice (ū rid'i sē), *wife of Orpheus*
- Eurylochus, -i, *m.*, Eurylochus (ū ril'ə kəs), *a companion of Ulysses*
- Eusebius, -i, *m.*, Eusebius (ū sē'bi əs)
- Fābricius, C., -i, *m.*, Gaius Fabricius (gā'yəs fə brish'i əs), *prominent Roman of the third century B.C.*
- Fatum, -i, *n.*, Fate, Destiny
- Faustulus, -i, *m.*, Faustulus (fōs'tū ləs), *shepherd, foster father of Romulus and Remus*
- Fortūna, -ae, Fortuna (fōr tū'nə), *Roman goddess*
- Fretum Gallicum, -i, *n.*, the English Channel, *the strait between England and France* (map, p. 243)
- Fulvia, -ae, *f.*, Fulvia (fūl'vī ə), *name of a girl or woman*
- Furiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Furies (fūr'iz), *three goddesses of vengeance*
- Gabalī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Gabali (gab'ə lī), *a tribe of southwestern Gaul*
- Gabīnius, A., -i, *m.*, Aulus Gabinius (ō'ləs gə bin'i əs), *consul with Lucius Piso in 58 B.C.*
- Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba (gal'bə), *name of a man or boy*
- Galēnus, -i, *m.*, Galen (gā'lən), *Greek physician*
- Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul (gōl); Gallia Citerior, -ōris, *or Cisalpina*, Nearer Gaul, Cisalpine Gaul (sis al'pīn gōl); Gallia Ulterior, -ōris, Farther Gaul, Transalpine Gaul (trans al'pīn gōl) (maps, pp. 142, 221, inside back cover)
- Gallicus, -a, -um, of the Gauls, Gallic
- Gallus, -i, *m.*, a Gaul (gōl), *an inhabitant of Gaul*; *pl.*, the Gauls
- Garunna, -ae, *m.*, the Garonne (gä rōn'), *a river of Gaul* (map, p. 221)
- Genava, -ae, *f.*, Geneva (ji nē'və), *a Gallic city on Lake Geneva* (map, p. 221)
- Gergovia, -ae, *f.*, Gergovia (jēr gō'vi ə), *town of the Arverni* (map, p. 221)
- Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany, *land of the Germans* (maps, pp. 142, 221, inside back cover)
- Germānus, -a, -um, German; *m. pl. as noun*, Germans
- Gesoriacum, -i, *n.*, Gesoriacum (jes'ō rī'ə kəm), *the port eight Roman miles from Portus Itius, from which part of Caesar's fleet sailed* (map, p. 243)
- Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside back cover)
- Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; *m. as noun*, a Greek
- Graioceli, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Graioceli (grā yos'ə lī), *a Gallic tribe*

## Hadriaticum—Jūlius

Hadriaticum, *see* Adriaticum

Haeduus, -a, -um, Haeduan (hed'ū ən); *m. as noun*, a Haeduan; *pl.*, the Haedui (hed'ū ī), *a tribe of Celtic Gaul* (map, p. 221)

Hannō, -ōnis, *m.*, Hanno (han'ō), *a prominent Carthaginian*

Harpyia, -ae, *f.*, Harpy (här'pi), *mythical creature, half bird and half woman*

Hector, -oris, *m.*, Hector (hek'tər), *Trojan prince slain by Achilles*

Helena, -ae, *f.*, Helen (hel'ən), *queen of Sparta, called the most beautiful woman in the world*

Helenus, -ī, *m.*, Helenus (hel'ə nus), *Trojan prince and soothsayer*

Hellē, *nom.*, *f.*, Helle (hel'ē), *sister of Phrixus*

Helvētius, -a, -um, Helvetian (helvē'shən), *of the Helvetians; m. pl. as noun*, the Helvetians, *a tribe of Celtic Gaul* (map, p. 221)

Helvī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Helvii (hel'vi ī), *a Gallic tribe*

Hēraclīdēs, -ae, *m.*, Heraclides (hēr'ə klī'dēz), *a Greek philosopher*

Herculāneum, -ī, *n.*, Herculaneum (hēr'kū lā'ni əm), *a city in Italy*

Herculēs, -is, *m.*, Hercules (hēr'kū lēz), *a hero famous for great strength*

Hesperia, -ae, *f.*, Italy

Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland (map, p. 142)

Hippolyta, -ae, *f.*, Hippolyte (hi pol'i tə), *queen of the Amazons*

Hispania, -ae, *f.*, Spain (maps, pp. 142, 161, 221, inside back cover)

Hispanus, -a, -um, Spanish; *m. as noun*, a Spaniard

Histrus, -a, -um, Istrian (is'tri ən), *of Trieste* (map, inside front cover)

Homēricus, -a, -um, Homeric (hō mer'ik), *of Homer*

Homērus, -ī, *m.*, Homer (hō'mər), *blind Greek poet, author of two long poems, the Odyssey and the Iliad*

Horātius, -ī, *m.*, Horatius (hō rā'shəs), *a Roman family name*

Hostīlius, Hostius, -ī, *m.*, Hostius Hostilius (hos'ti əs hos til'i əs), *Roman commander in the time of Romulus*

Icarus, -ī, *m.*, Icarus (ik'ə rəs), *son of Daedalus*

Īda, -ae, *f.*, Ida (ī'də), *mountain near Troy*

Īlyricum, -ī, *n.*, Illyricum (i lir'i kəm), Illyria (i lir'i ə), *territory northeast of the Adriatic which formed part of Caesar's province* (map, p. 221)

Īlyrius, -a, -um, Illyrian (i lir'i ən)

Īphigenia, -ae, *f.*, Iphigenia (if'i ji nī'ə), *daughter of Agamemnon*

Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy (map, p. 221)

Ītalicus, -a, -um, Italian

Ithaca, -ae, *f.*, Ithaca (ith'ə kə), *an island, home of Ulysses* (map, p. 161)

Jāsōn, -onis, *m.*, Jason (jā'sən), *a Greek hero*

Jovem, *see* Jupiter

Jūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia, *name of a girl or woman*

Jūlius, -ī, *m.*, Julius (jūl'yəs), *name of a man or boy*

- Jūnius, -a, -um, Junian (jūn'yəs); *m. as noun*, June
- Jūnō, -ōnis, *f.*, Juno (jū'nō), *queen of the gods*
- Juppiter, Jovis, *m.*, Jupiter (jū'pi tər), *king of the gods*; Juppiter Stator, Jupiter the Stayer
- Jūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura (jūr'ə), *a chain of mountains between the Rhine and the Rhône* (map, p. 221)
- Jūstinianus, -ī, *m.*, Justinian (jus tin'i ən), *Roman emperor responsible for the Roman legal code, Corpus Jūris*
- Jūturna, -ae, *f.*, Juturna (jū tēr'nə), *nymph, sister of Turnus*
- L., abbr. for Lūcius*
- Labienus, T., -ī, *m.*, Titus Labienus (tī'təs lā'bi ē'nəs), *Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War*
- Labyrinthus, -ī, *m.*, Labyrinth, *a building with a maze of passages in Crete*
- Lacōnia, -ae, *f.*, Laconia (lə kō'ni ə), *a country of Greece, of which Sparta was the capital*
- Lacus Lemannus, -ī, *m.*, Lake Geneva (ji nē'və) (map, p. 221)
- Lāocoön, -ontis, *m.*, Laocoön (lā ok'ō on), *Trojan priest*
- Latinus, -a, -um, Latin; *m. pl. as noun*, Latins, *people of Latium*
- Latinus, -ī, *m.*, Latinus (lə tī'nəs), *king of Latium*
- Latium, -ī, *n.*, Latium (lā'shi əm), *part of Italy in which Rome was situated* (map, p. 203)
- Latobrigī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Latobrigi (lat'ō brī'jī), *a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine* (map, p. 221)
- Lātōna, -ae, *f.*, Latona (lə tō'nə), *mother of Apollo and Diana*
- Laurentum, -ī, *n.*, Laurentum (lā ren'təm), *a town in Latium* (map, p. 203)
- Lāvinia, -ae, *f.*, Lavinia (lə vin'i ə), *Latin princess, bride of Aeneas*
- Lāvinium, -ī, *n.*, Lavinium (lə vin'i əm), *city of Latium, founded by Aeneas in honor of his wife* (map, p. 203)
- Lāvinius, -a, -um, of Lavinium, Lavinian (lə vin'i ən)
- Libya, -ae, *f.*, Libya (lib'i ə), *a country of northern Africa*; Africa (map, p. 161)
- Liguria, -ae, *f.*, Liguria (li gūr'i ə), *a district of Cisalpine Gaul* (map, p. 221)
- Lingonēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Lingones (ling'gō nēz), *a people of Celtic Gaul* (map, p. 221)
- Liscus, -ī, *m.*, Liscus (lis'kəs), *a chief magistrate of the Haeduan*
- Londinium, -ī, *n.*, Londinium (lun din'i əm), *a city in Britain, now London* (map, p. 243)
- Lūcia, -ae, *f.*, Lucia (lū'shə), *name of a girl or woman*
- Lūcifer, Lūciferī, *m.*, Venus, *as morning star*
- Lūcius, -ī, *m.*, Lucius (lū'shəs), *a Roman first name*
- Lūcrētia, -ae, *f.*, Lucretia (lū krē'shə), *name of a girl or woman*
- Lūna, -ae, *f.*, Luna (lū'nə), *the moon goddess*
- Lutecia, -ae, *f.*, Lutecia (lū tē'shi ə), *a city in Gaul, now Paris* (map, p. 243)

## M.—Möns Sacer

**M.**, *abbr. for* Mārcus, Marcus (mār'kəs), *a Roman first name*

**Macedonia**, -ae, *f.*, Macedonia (mas'ī dō'ni ə) (map, p. 142)

**Magna Charta**, -ae, *f.*, Magna Charta, *the great charter*

**Mandubii**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Mandubii (man dū'bi ī), *a Gallic tribe*

**Mānlius**, -ī, *m.*, Manlius (man'li əs), *a Roman first name; Roman who saved the Capitol*

**Mārcus**, -ī, *m.*, Marcus (mār'kəs), *a Roman first name*

**Mare Adriaticum** (Hadriaticum), Maris Adriaticī, *n.*, the Adriatic (ā'dri at'ik) Sea, *an arm of the Mediterranean Sea* (map, p. 221)

**Mare Aegaeum**, Maris Aegaeī, *n.*, the Aegean (ē jē'ən) Sea (map, p. 161)

**Mare Caspium**, Maris Caspiī, *n.*, the Caspian (kas'pi ən) Sea (map, p. 142)

**Mare Internum**, Maris Internī, *n.*, the Mediterranean (med'ī tē rā'ni ən) Sea (maps, pp. 142, 185, 221)

**Mare Tyrrhenum**, Maris Tyrrhēnī, *n.*, the Tyrrhenian (tī rē'nī ən) Sea, *part of the Mediterranean Sea, southwest of Italy* (map, p. 203)

**Marius**, -ī, *m.*, Marius (mār'i əs), *Roman consul*

**Mārs**, Mārtis, *m.*, Mars (mārz), *god of war; Mārs Ultor*, Mars the Avenger

**Massiliensis**, -e, Massilian (ma sil'i ən)

**Matrona**, -ae, *f.*, the Marne (marn), *a river of Gaul* (map, p. 221)

**Maurētānia**, -ae, *f.*, Mauritania (mō'ri tā'ni ə), *a country of North Africa* (map, p. 142)

**Mēdēa**, -ae, *f.*, Medea (mi dē'ə), *princess of Colchis, an enchantress*

**Mediterrāneus**, -a, -um, Mediterranean (med'ī tē rā'ni ən); **Mare Mediterrāneum**, the Mediterranean Sea (maps, pp. 142, 161, 221, inside covers)

**Medūsa**, -ae, *f.*, Medusa (mi dū'sə), *a Gorgon, a creature with snakes for hair*

**Melita**, -ae, *f.*, Malta (mōl'tə), *an island in the Mediterranean*

**Menaechmus**, -ī, *m.*, Menaechmus (me nek'məs), *one of twin brothers, leading characters in Plautus' play Menaechmi*

**Menapii**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Menapii (mē nā'pi ī), *a tribe of Belgic Gaul* (map, p. 221)

**Menelāus**, -ī, *m.*, Menelaus (men'ə lā'əs), *king of Sparta*

**Mercurius**, -ī, *m.*, Mercury (mēr'kū ri), *messenger of the gods*

**Messāla**, -ae, *M.*, *m.*, Marcus Messala (mār'kəs mə sāl'ə), *a consul in 61 B.C.*

**Messāna**, -ae, *f.*, Messina (me sē'nə), *a city of Sicily* (map, inside front cover)

**Messēniō**, Messenio (me sē'ni ō), *slave of Menaechmus Sosicles*

**Mīdās**, *nom. m.*, Midas (mī'dəs), *mythical king who was granted the golden touch*

**Minerva**, -ae, *f.*, Minerva (mi nēr'və), *goddess of wisdom*

**Mīnōtaurus**, -ī, *m.*, Minotaur (mīn'ə tōr), *mythical monster with the head of a bull and the body of a man*

**Mīsēnum**, -ī, *n.*, Misenum (mī sē'nəm), *ancient Italian town*

**Mōns Albānus**, Montis Albānī, *m.*, the Alban (ōl'bən) Mount (map, p. 203)

**Mōns Sacer**, Montis Sacri, *m.*, the Sacred Mountain, *a hill near Rome* (map, p. 203)



- Morini**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Morini (mor'i nī), *a tribe of Belgic Gaul* (map, p. 221)
- Mosa**, -ae, *m.*, the river Meuse (mūz) (map, p. 221)
- Moschus**, -ī, *m.*, Moschus (mos'kəs), *father of the Menaechmi*
- Mysia**, -ae, *f.*, Mysia (mish'i ə), *a country in Asia Minor* (map, p. 185)
- Nantuātēs**, -um, *m. pl.*, the Nantuates (nan tū ā'tēz), *a Gallic tribe in the Alps* (map, p. 221)
- Nephālius**, -ī, *m.*, Nephalius (ne fāl'i əs)
- Neptūnus**, -ī, *m.*, Neptune (nep'tūn), *god of the sea*
- Nervii**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Nervii (ner'vī ī), *a tribe of Belgic Gaul* (maps, pp. 221, 243)
- Nicetus**, -ī, *m.*, Nicetus (nī sē'tus), *a name perhaps used in error for that of Aratus, a Greek poet*
- Nīlus**, -ī, *m.*, the Nile (nīl), *the great river of Egypt* (map, p. 142)
- Nōreia**, -ae, *f.*, Noreia (nō rē'yə), *town in Germany, now Neumarkt* (map, p. 221)
- Nōricus**, -a, -um, of Noricum, Norican (nō'ri kən), *belonging to a Germanic tribe living between the Danube and the Alps* (map, p. 142)
- Notus**, -ī, *m.*, Notus (nō'təs), *the south wind*
- Noviodūnum**, -ī, *n.*, Noviodunum (nō'vi ō dū'nəm), *the capital city of the Suessiones* (map, p. 243)
- Numidia**, -ae, *f.*, Numidia (nū mid'ī ə), *a country of North Africa* (map, p. 142)
- Numitor**, -ōris, *m.*, Numitor (nū'mi tōr), *king of Alba Longa*
- Ōceanus**, -ī, *m.*, the Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean (map, p. 221)
- Ōceanus Britannicus**, -ī, *m.*, English Channel, *that part of the Atlantic between Britain and France* (map, p. 243)
- Ocelum**, -ī, *n.*, Ocelum (os'ī ləm), *city of Cisalpine Gaul*
- Octāvia**, -ae, *f.*, Octavia (ok tā'vi ə), *name of a girl or woman*
- Octāviānus**, -ī, *m.*, Octavian (ok tā'vi ən), *a surname of the emperor Augustus, signifying that he was adopted from the Roman family called Octavius*
- Octodūrus**, -ī, *m.*, Octodurus (ok'tō dū'rəs), *a town of the Veragri, a Gallic tribe* (map, p. 221)
- Orcus**, -ī, *m.*, Orcus (ōr'kəs), *the lower world*
- Orgetorix**, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix (ōr jet'ō riks), *a Helvetian chieftain*
- Orpheus**, -ī, *m.*, Orpheus (ōr'fūs or ōr'fi əs), *a mythical singer*
- Ostia**, -ae, *f.*, Ostia (os'tī ə), *the ancient seaport of Rome, at the mouth of the Tiber River* (map, p. 203)
- P.**, *abbr. for Pūblius, Publius* (pub'li əs), *a Roman first name*
- Palātium**, -ī, *n.*, Palatine (pal'ə tīn), *one of the Seven Hills of Rome* (map, p. 205)
- Palestina**, -ae, *f.*, Palestine (pal'is tīn), *a country of Asia, on the Mediterranean Sea* (map, p. 142)

## Pandōra—Pūblius

**Pandōra**, -ae, f., Pandora (pan dō'rə), *mythical character*

**Paris**, nom.; **Paridis**, gen.; **Paridī**, dat.; **Paridem**, acc.; **Paride**, abl.; m., Paris (pār'is), *Trojan prince*

**Parthia**, -ae, f., Parthia (pār'thi ə), *an ancient country* (map, p. 142)

**Peliās**, -ae, m., Pelias (pē'li əs), *uncle of Jason*

**Penātēs**, -ium, m. pl., the Penates (pe nā'tēz), *ancient Italian household gods*

**Pēnelopa** (or **Pēnelopē**), -ae, f., Penelope (pi nel'ə pi), *wife of Ulysses*

**Pēniculus**, -ī, m., Peniculus (pē nik'u ləs), *hanger-on of Menæchmus of Epidamnus, in Plautus' play*

**Persae**, -ārum, m. pl., the Persians (pēr'zhənz)

**Peruviānus**, -a, -um, of Peru, Peruvian (pə rū'vi ən)

**Phaëthōn**, m., Phaëthon (fā'i thon), *son of Apollo*

**Phāsis**; **Phāsim**, acc.; m., the Phasis (fā'sis), *a river in Colchis* (map, p. 185)

**Phīneus**, -ī, m., Phineus (fin'i əs), *king of Salmydessus, in Thrace* (map, p. 185)

**Phoenicia**, -ae, f., Phoenicia (fi nish'ə), *a country in Asia Minor*

**Phrixus**, -ī, m., Phrixus (frik'səs), *legendary prince*

**Picus**, -ī, m., Picus (pī'kəs), *legendary king, changed to a woodpecker*

**Pisō**, -ōnis, M., m., Marcus Piso (mār'kəs pī'sō), *a consul in 61 B.C.*; **L. Pisō**, Lucius Piso, *a consul in 58 B.C.*; **L. Pisō**, Lucius Piso, *a Roman commander, grandfather of L. Piso the consul*

**Platō**, -ōnis, m., Plato (plā'tō), *a Greek philosopher*

**Plīnius**, -ī, m., Pliny (plin'i), *the Elder, Roman writer and military leader; the Younger, nephew of Pliny the Elder, also a writer*

**Plutarchus**, -ī, m., Plutarch (plū'tärk), *Greek biographer*

**Plūtō**, -ōnis, m., Pluto (plū'tō), *king of the lower world*

**Poenus**, -a, -um, Punic (pū'nik), *Carthaginian* (kär'thə jin'i ən); m. as noun, *a Carthaginian*

**Polydectēs**, -ae, m., Polydectes (pol'i dek'tēz), *a legendary king*

**Polydōrus**, -ī, m., Polydorus (pol'i dō'rəs), *Trojan prince*

**Polyphēmus**, -ī, m., Polyphemus (pol'i fē'məs), *legendary one-eyed giant*

**Pompeii**, -ōrum, m. pl., Pompeii (pom pā'ē), *a city*

**Pontus Euxīnus**, -ī, m., Black Sea (maps, pp. 142, 185, inside back cover)

**Portus Dubris**, m., Portus Dubris (pōr'təs dü'bris), *city near the point of Caesar's landing in Britain, now Deal* (map, p. 243)

**Portus Itius**, m., Portus Itius (pōr'təs ish'i əs), *a port of the Morini in Gaul, from which Caesar and most of his fleet sailed for Britain* (map, p. 243)

**Priamus**, -ī, m., Priam (prī'am), *king of Troy*

**Proca**, -ae, m., Proca (prō'kə), *king of Alba Longa*

**Prōmontōrium Bonae Spēi**, Cape of Good Hope

**Prōserpina**, -ae, f., Proserpina (prō sēr'pi nə), *wife of Pluto and queen of the lower world*

**Prōvincia**, -ae, f., the Province (prov'ins), *Transalpine Gaul, the Roman province governed by Caesar* (map, p. 221)

**Pūblius**, -ī, m., Publius (pūbli əs), *name of a boy or man*

- Pūnicus, -a, -um, Punic (pū'nik); Carthaginian (kār'thə jin'i ən)  
 Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, Pyrenean (pir'i nē'ən); Pŷrēnaei Montēs, Pyrenees (pir'i nēz) Mountains (map, p. 221)  
 Pyrrha, -ae, f., Pyrrha (pir'ə), *character of Greek legend*  
 Pyrrhus, -i, m., Pyrrhus (pir'əs), *king of Epirus, in Greece*  
 Pythagoricus, -a, -um, Pythagorean (pə thag'ə rē'ən), *pertaining to Pythagoras*  
 Q., *abbr. for* Quīntus, Quintus (kwīn'təs), *a Roman first name*  
 Quīntus, -i, m., Quintus, *a Roman first name*, Quīntus Titūrius Sabīnus, *see* Sabīnus  
 Quiritēs, -um, m. pl., Quirites (kwi rī'tēz), *Roman citizens*  
 Rauraci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Rauraci (rō'rə sī), *a Gallic tribe*  
 Rēgulus, *see* Atilius  
 Rēmūs, -a, -um, of the Remi (rē'mī); m. *as noun*, one of the Remi; pl., the Remi, *a tribe of Belgic Gaul* (map, p. 221)  
 Remus, -i, m., Remus (rē'məs), *twin brother of Romulus*  
 Rhēa Silvia, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia (rē'ə sil'vi ə), *mother of Romulus and Remus*  
 Rhēnus, -i, m., the Rhine (rīn), *river between Gaul and Germany* (maps, pp. 142, 221)  
 Rhodanus, -i, m., the Rhōne (rōn), *a river in Gaul* (maps, pp. 142, 221)  
 Rōma, -ae, f., Rome (rōm) (maps, pp. 142, 203, inside covers)  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman (rō'mən); m. *as noun*, a Roman  
 Rōmulus, -i, m., Romulus (rom'ū ləs), *legendary founder of Rome*  
 Rubicō, -ōnis, m., the Rubicon (rū'bi kon), *river in northern Italy at the boundary of the Roman Republic* (map, p. 221)  
 Rūfus, *see* Sulpicius  
 Runnime, m., Runnymede (run'i mēd), *an English meadow*  
 Rutēnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ruteni (rū tē'nī), *a tribe of southwestern Gaul*  
 Rutulī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Rutuli (rut'ū lī), *or* Rutulians (rə tūl'yənz), *a people of central Italy* (map, p. 203)  
 Rutulus, -a, -um, Rutulian (rə tūl'yən)  
 Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sabine (sā'bīn); m. pl. *as noun*, the Sabines, *a people of ancient Italy whose lands adjoined those of the Latins* (map, p. 203)  
 Sabīnus, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus, -i, m., Quintus Titurius Sabinus (kwīn'təs tī tū'ri əs sə bī'nəs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*  
 Sabis, -is, m., the river Sabis (sā'bis), *now the Sambre* (sām'br) (map, p. 221)  
 Samius, -a, -um, Samian (sā'mi ən), *of Samos, where inexpensive dishes were made*  
 Samnītēs, -ium, m. pl., the Samnites (sam'nītz), *the inhabitants of Samnium* (map, p. 203)  
 Sānctus Augustinus, -i, m., Saint Augustine

## Santonī—Syria

**Santonī, -ōrum, or Santonēs, -um, m. pl.,** the *Santones* (san'tō nēz), *a people of Aquitania*

**Sardinia, -ae, f.,** *Sardinia* (sār din'i ə), *an island in the Mediterranean Sea* (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside covers)

**Sāturnius, -a, -um,** of *Saturn* (sat'ərn), *Saturnian* (sa tər'ni ən), *Italian*

**Sāturnus, -ī, m.,** *Saturn* (sat'ərn), *a star, planet*

**Segovia, -ae, f.,** *Segovia* (sā gō'vyà), *a city of Spain* (map, p. 142)

**Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. pl.,** the *Segusiavi* (seg ū'si ā'vī), *a tribe of southern Gaul*

**Seleucus, -ī, m.,** *Seleucus* (sə lū'kəs), *legendary pirate*

**Senonēs, -um, m.,** the *Senones* (sen'o nēz), *a people of Gaul* (map, p. 221)

**Sēquana, -ae, m.,** the *Seine* (sān), *a river of Gaul* (map, p. 221)

**Sēquanus, -a, -um,** of the *Sequani* (sek'wə nī), *Sequanian* (sə kwān'i ən), *m. pl. as noun, the Sequani, the Sequanians, a tribe of Celtic Gaul* (map, p. 221)

**Sertōrius, -ī, m.,** *Sertorius* (sēr tōr'i əs), *general under Marius*

**Sextus, -ī, m.,** *Sextus, name of a man or boy*

**Sibylla, -ae, f.,** the *Sibyl* (sib'il), *priestess and oracle of Apollo*

**Sibyllīnus, -a, -um,** *Sibylline* (sib'i līn), *pertaining to a Sibyl*

**Sicilia, -ae, f.,** *Sicily* (sis'i lī) (maps, pp. 142, 161, inside covers)

**Siculus, -a, -um,** *Sicilian* (sə sil'yən)

**Silvia, -ae, f.,** *Silvia* (sil'vi ə), *daughter of Tyrrhus*

**Sinōn, nom., m.,** *Sinon* (si'nən), *Greek spy in Trojan War*

**Sōcratēs, -is, m.,** *Socrates* (sok'rə tēz'), *an Athenian philosopher*

**Sōl, Sōlis, m.,** *Sol* (sol), *god of the sun*

**Sosiclēs, -is, m.,** *Sosicles* (sos'ə klēz), *true name of the second Menaechmus in Plautus' play*

**Sparta, -ae, f.,** *Sparta* (spār'tə), *a city in Greece* (map, p. 161)

**Stator, see Juppiter**

**Styx, Stygis, f.,** *Styx* (stiks), *river in the lower world*

**Suessiōnēs, -um, m. pl.,** the *Suessiones* (swes'i ō'nēz), *a tribe of Belgic Gaul* (map, p. 243)

**Sulla, -ae, m., L. Sulla, Lucius Sulla** (lū'shəs sul'ə), *dictator and leader of the nobility (138–78 B.C.)*

**Sulpicius, P. Sulpicius Rūfus, -ī, m.,** *Publius Sulpicius Rufus* (pub'li əs sul pish'əs rū'fəs), *one of Caesar's lieutenants*

**Symplēgadēs, -um, f. pl.,** the *Symplegades* (sim pleg'ə dēz), *the Clashing Rocks, situated, according to legend, at the entrance to the Black Sea* (map, p. 185)

**Syrācūsae, -ārum, f.,** *Syracuse* (sir'ə kūs), *city in Sicily* (map, p. 161)

**Syrācūsānus, -a, -um,** *Syracusan* (sir'ə kū sən); *m. as noun, a Syracusan, an inhabitant of Syracuse*

**Syria, -ae, f.,** *Syria* (sir'i ə), *ancient country at east end of the Mediterranean Sea* (map, p. 142)

- T., *abbr. for Titus*, Titus (tī'təs), *a Roman first name*
- Tagus, -ī, *m.*, the Tagus (tā'gəs), *a river in Spain* (map, p. 142)
- Tamesis, -is, *m.*, Thames (temz), *a river in Britain* (map, p. 243)
- Tarentīnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Tarentines (tə ren'tēnz), *people of Tarentum*
- Tarentum, -ī, *n.*, Tarentum (tā ren'təm), *a town in Italy* (map, p. 142)
- Tarquinius, -ī, *m.*, Tarquin (tār'kwīn), *a king of Rome*; T. Superbus, *Tarquin the Proud, last king of Rome*
- Taurōrum, *gen., m. pl.*, Taurians (tō'ri ənz), *inhabitants of a peninsula in the Black Sea*
- Tēlemachus, -ī, *m.*, Telemachus (tə lem'ə kəs), *son of Ulysses*
- Thēbae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Thebes (thēbz), *a city of ancient Greece* (map, p. 185)
- Thermōdōn, -ontis, *m.*, Thermodon (thēr mō'don), *a river of Pontus, a region about the Black Sea*
- Thēseus, -ī, *m.*, Theseus (thē'sūs or thē'si əs), *one of the Argonauts*
- Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly (thes'ə li), *a section of Greece* (map, p. 185)
- Thrācia, -ae, *f.*, Thrace (thrās), *region north and east of Greece* (map, p. 185)
- Tiberis, -is, *nom. or gen.*; Tiberim, *acc.*; *m.*, the Tiber (tī'bər), *river on which Rome is situated* (maps, pp. 203, 205, inside front cover)
- Tigurīnus, -a, -um, *of the Tigurini* (tig'ū rī'nī); *m. pl. as noun*, the Tigurini, *a tribe of Helvetians*
- Titūrius, *see Sabīnus*
- Titus, -ī, *m.*, Titus (tī'təs), *name of a man or boy*
- Tolōsātēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, the Tolosates (tol'ō sā'tēz), *people of Tolosa, modern Toulouse* (tū lūz')
- Trānsalpīna, -ae, *f.*, Transalpine Gaul (trans al'pīn gōl), *Caesar's province north of the Alps* (map, p. 221)
- Trēverī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Treveri (trev'ə rī), *a people of Gaul* (map, p. 221)
- Trōja, -ae, *f.*, Troy (troi), *an ancient city in Asia Minor* (maps, pp. 142, 161)
- Trōjānus, -a, -um, Trojan (trō'jən); *m. as noun*, a Trojan, *an inhabitant of Troy*
- Trōjus, -a, -um, Trojan (trō'jən)
- Troucillus, *see Valerius*
- Tulingī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Tulingi (tū lin'jī), *a German tribe* (map, p. 221)
- Tullia, -ae, *f.*, Tullia (tūl'yə), *name of a girl or woman*
- Tūnēs, -ētis, *m.*, Tunis (tū'nīs), *a Roman seaport in North Africa* (map, p. 142)
- Turnus, -ī, *m.*, Turnus (tēr'nəs), *king of the Rutulians*
- Tusculum, -ī, *n.*, Tusculum (tus'kū ləm), *an ancient town in Latium* (map, p. 203)
- Tyrrhus, -ī, *m.*, Tyrrhus (tir'əs), *shepherd of King Latinus*
- Ulixēs, Ulixīs, *m.*, Ulysses (ū lis'ēz), *king of Ithaca, hero of Homer's Odyssey*
- Ultor, *see Mārs*

## Valerius—Zētus

**Valerius, -ī, m.,** C. Valerius Domnotaurus, Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus (gā'yəs və lē'ri əs dom'nō tō'rəs), *son of Caburus, a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship; C. Valerius Troucillus, Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gā'yəs və lē'ri əs trū sil'əs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar*

**Veii, -ōrum, m. pl.,** Veii (vē'yī), *a city of the Etruscans, about twelve miles from Rome (map, p. 203)*

**Venelli, -ōrum, m. pl.,** the Venelli (vē nel'ī), *a tribe of Celtic Gaul (maps, pp. 221, 243)*

**Veneti, -ōrum, m. pl.,** the Veneti (ven'ə tī), *a tribe of Celtic Gaul (map, p. 221)*

**Veneticus, -a, -um,** of the Veneti (ven'ə tī), *a tribe of Celtic Gaul*

**Venus, -eris, f.,** Venus (vē'nəs), *the planet Venus; the goddess of love*

**Verbigenus, -ī, m.,** Verbigenus (vēr bij'ə nəs), *a canton of the Helvetians*

**Vercingetorix, -īgis, m.,** Vercingetorix (vēr'sin jet'ō riks), *a leader of the Arverni, commander in chief of the Gallic forces in the uprising against the Romans in 52 B.C.*

**Vergilius, Pūblius Vergilius Marō, -ōnis, m.,** Vergil, *Roman poet, author of the Aeneid*

**Vesontiō, -ōnis, m.,** Vesontio (vē son'shi ō), *chief town of the Sequani, now Besançon (bə zän'sōn')*

**Vesuvius, -ī, m.,** Vesuvius (vi sū'vi əs), *volcano in Italy (map, inside front cover)*

**Via Appia, -ae, f.,** the Appian (ap'i ən) Way (map, inside front cover)

**Viridomārus, -ī, m.,** Viridomarus (vir'i dō mā'rəs), *a chief of the Haeduans*

**Vocontii, -ōrum, m. pl.,** the Vocontii (vō kon'shi ī), *a Gallic tribe*

**Volcae Arecomici, m. pl.,** the Volcae Arecomici (vol'sē ar'ē kom'i sī), *a tribe of southern Gaul*

**Volsci, -ōrum, m. pl.,** the Volsci (vol'sī), *a people of Latium (map, p. 203)*

**Volusēnus, C., -ī, m.,** Gaius Volusenus Quadratus (gā'yəs vol'ū sē'nəs kwod rā'təs), *a military tribune in Caesar's army*

**Vulcānus, -ī, m.,** Vulcan (vul'kən), *god of fire*

**Vulsō, -ōnis, L. Mānlius, Lucius Manlius Vulso (lū'shəs man'li əs vul'sō),** *a consul in 256 B.C.*

**Xanthippus, -ī, m.,** Xanthippus (zan tip'əs), *a Greek who took Regulus prisoner*

**Zephyrus, -ī, m.,** Zephyrus (zef'ə rəs), *the west wind*

**Zētus, -ī, m.,** Zetus (zē'təs), *one of the Argonauts*

# Illustrations

	PAGE
Roman architecture in America . . . . .	Washington, D. C. 11
Stylus, about six inches long . . . . .	British Museum, London 15
Mosaic floor, with lighthouse in center foreground. . . . .	Piazzale delle Corporazioni, Ostia 16
Restoration of part of Herculaneum. . . . .	On the site 18
Spoons . . . . .	Metropolitan Museum, New York 21
Bracelet. . . . .	Metropolitan Museum 22
Archaeological excavation . . . . .	Herculaneum 27
Bronze Mercury found in a Roman temple in England . . . . .	Colchester and Essex Museum, Colchester, England 27
Mosaic floor . . . . .	Exeter, England 27
Latona By William Henry Rinehart (1825-1874). . . . .	Metropolitan Museum 28
Aqueduct, probably first century A.D. . . . .	Segovia, Spain 30
Ursa Major . . . . .	34
Chest found in Pompeii. . . . .	Museo Nazionale, Naples 37
Pillars of a temple of Ceres . . . . .	Segesta, Sicily 38
Diana Painting by Paris Bordone (1500-1571) . . . . .	National Gallery, Washington 40
Mosaic from a Roman villa in Africa . . . . .	Museum at Tripoli 42
Sybil Part of ceiling fresco by Michelangelo (1475-1564). . . . .	Sistine Chapel, Rome 50
Aeneas and the golden bough. . . . .	52
Flight from Troy Relief from an altar found on the site of Carthage. . . . .	Musée Alaoui, Le Bardo, Tunis 54
Marble relief of a temple of Vesta. . . . .	Uffizi Gallery, Florence, Italy 56
Plowman Bronze statuette found in County Durham, England . . . . .	British Museum 58
Colosseum, called by Romans Amphitheatrum Flavium Begun by Vespasian; dedicated by Titus (80 A.D.) . . . . .	Rome 61
The oldest arch in the city, built by Domitian (51-96 A.D.) in honor of Titus. . . . .	Rome 61
Remains of the Forum Holitorium. . . . .	Rome 61
Plate of early Italian pottery . . . . .	Museo Papa Guilio, Rome 62
Archer and slinger Cybulski . . . . .	63
Appius Claudius Mural by Cesare Maccari (1840-1919) in the Palazzo Madama, where the Italian senate meets. . . . .	Rome 66
Consul with lictors. . . . .	69
Roman judge Relief from the bronze doors of the Supreme Court Building. . . . .	Washington, D. C. 69
Caesar Ancient statue. . . . .	Museo Capitolino, Rome 69
Roman senate Mural by Cesare Maccari (1840-1919). . . . .	Palazzo Madama, Rome 69
Scabbard Cybulski. . . . .	71

Lar Relief from the tomb of C. Manlius . . . . .	Lateran Museum, Rome	73
Jupiter Ancient statue . . . . .	Vatican Museums, Rome	73
Ludovisi Juno Ancient statue . . . . .	Museo delle Terme, Rome	73
Head of "Ares Resting," after a bronze by Lysippus	Museo delle Terme	73
Head of Venus of Cnidus, copy of a statue by Praxiteles . . . . .	Vatican Museums, Rome	73
Household shrine from the house of the Vettii, Pompeii	Vatican Museums	73
Animals for sacrifice Relief, showing animals for the Suovetaurilia . . .		73
Vesuvius Just beyond the arch was Pompeii's civil forum, surrounded by temples, markets, and administration buildings . . . . .		74
Home of the Minotaur Painting by Ernest-Augustin Gendron (1818-1881)		76
Icarus falling . . . . .	Wright Memorial, Kitty Hawk, N. C.	78
Chimera Bronze, fifth century B.C., found near Arezzo, Italy . . . . .	Museo Archeologico, Florence	80
Ducks Mosaic . . . . .	Metropolitan Museum	82
Ascanius and stag From an <i>Aeneid</i> printed in Nuremberg, 1688 . . . . .	Library of Phillips Andover Academy, Andover, Mass.	86
Roman interior Painting, reconstituting the house of Cornelius Rufus from remains in Pompeii Lehmann . . . . .		89
Plan of an early house . . . . .		89
House of Pansa, a citizen of Pompeii (model) . . . . .	Metropolitan Museum	89
Apartment house (model) . . . . .		89
Bronze stag Gallo-Roman . . . . .		90
Inkwell and pen . . . . .	Royal Ontario Museum of Archaeology, Toronto, Canada	92
Homer and child After painting by François Gérard (1770-1837) . . . .		94
Lion . . . . .	Arch of Constantine, Rome	96
Pileated woodpecker . . . . .		98
Kitchen in the house of the Vettii . . . . .	Pompeii	105
Heating stove, from Pompeii . . . . .	Museo Nazionale, Naples	105
Pottery lamp, from Pompeii . . . . .	Walters Art Gallery, Baltimore	105
Glass bottles made about the end of the first century A.D., found in Germany . . . . .		105
Reconstitution of Roman bedroom The frescoed walls are from a villa at Boscoreale . . . . .	Metropolitan Museum	105
Vergil reading his poems to Augustus Painting by Charles François Jalabert Asinius Pollio and Livia listen, while Octavia faints at mention of her dead son Marcellus . . . . .		106
Aeneas at the court of Latinus Nuremberg <i>Aeneid</i> . . . . .		112
Relief from tomb of M. Vergilius Eurysaces, first century A.D. . . . .	Rome	117
Oil jars . . . . .	Ostia	117
Bread . . . . .	Pompeii	117
Glazed pottery flask . . . . .	Walters Art Gallery	117
Plate . . . . .	British Museum	117
Relief of meat market . . . . .	Staatliche Skulpturensammlung, Dresden, Germany	117
Coin of the eight Italian nations, joining in an oath of federation . . . .		118
Jupiter and Juno Nuremberg <i>Aeneid</i> . . . . .		120



	PAGE
Death of Turnus Nuremberg <i>Aeneid</i> .....	122
Capture of Proserpina Painting by Walter Crane (1845-1915).....	126
Orpheus By Thomas Crawford (1813-1857) .....	
Museum of Fine Arts, Boston	128
Relief.....	
Museum, Ancona, Italy	131
Part of a funeral monument The inscription says "Longidienus continues his work." .....	
Museo Nazionale, Ravenna, Italy	131
Cutlery shop From the altar of L. Cornelius Atimetus, first century B.C. ....	
Vatican Museums	131
Relief of shop. ....	
Uffizi Gallery, Florence	131
Relief from a funeral monument .....	
Museum, Aquileia, Italy	131
Pandora Painting by Dante Gabriel Rossetti (1828-1882).....	132
Apollo.....	
American Museum of Natural History, New York	135
Roman Glassware found in Germany .....	
Landesmuseum, Bonn	136
Paris Ancient statue.....	
Vatican Museums	138
Helen and Paris Painting by Rudolf von Deutsch.....	140
Ruins of the Roman town of Volubilis in French Morocco .....	143
Relief from a tomb at Neumagen. ....	
Provinzialmuseum, Trier, Germany	143
Ruins of the Greek town of Chersonesus, on the Black Sea. ....	143
Bridge over the Tagus, built about 105 A.D. in honor of Trajan... Spain	143
Helen Painting by Frederic Leighton (1830-1896) ..	144
The wooden horse Painting by Henri Paul Motte (1846-1922). ....	
Corcoran Gallery of Art, Washington	146
Iphigenia Pompeian fresco painting.....	
Museo Nazionale, Naples	154
Sacrifice of Iphigenia Painting by Giovacchino Agricola.....	
Palazzo Doria, Rome	156
Ulysses' sailors returning to the ship. ....	162
Polyphemus.....	164
Tray Baumeister. ....	
Berlin Museum	166
Greek ship, from a vase painting. ....	168
Ulysses' ship in the storm.....	169
Mercury Head of Hermes of Andros. ....	
National Museum, Athens	170
Ulysses in Circe's house Baumeister.....	172
Penelope at her loom, from a vase painting Baumeister.....	176
Ulysses is recognized Relief Baumeister.....	177
Greek head of Ulysses Baumeister. ....	178
Penelope.....	
Vatican Museums	179
Ulysses and servants, from a vase painting.....	181
Ram.....	
Museum of Toledo, Ohio	182
Delphi (model).....	
Metropolitan Museum	186
Jason and Pelias.....	188
Apollo with a lyre.....	
Museo di Leptis Magna, Tripolitania	190
The Symplegades Engraving by Bernard Picart. ....	
Public Library, Newark, N. J.	193
Jason yoking the bulls.....	195
Slaughter of the sons of the dragon's teeth. ....	196
Jason seizing the fleece.....	199

	PAGE
View across the Trojan plain toward the Hellespont.....	202
Replica by Vincenzo Aurisichio of the Capitoline wolf in Rome.....	204
Seizure of the Sabine women Painting by Nicolas Poussin (1593-1665)	206
Carthaginian boat.....	210
Regulus leaving Rome Mural by Cesare Maccari.....	212
Early Roman money Cybulski.....	214
Soldiers cutting grain in enemy country ...	216
Eagle, emblem of Caesar's fourth legion (model). ...	216
Tombstone of M. Favonius Facilis of the twentieth legion, erected by his freedmen, first century A.D. ...	216
Soldier wearing plated armor . . . . .	216
Soldiers making camp After Rheinhard . . . . .	216
Relief from the temple of Neptune in Rome, said to have been built about 30 B.C. . . . .	220
Soldiers crossing a pontoon bridge. . . . .	223
Roman army. . . . .	227
Gallic chief of the time of Roman occupation . . . . .	229
Gallic coins Blanchet . . . . .	230
Coin of the Segusiavi Blanchet . . . . .	237
Pool at Bath . . . . .	240
Monument of a blacksmith... .	240
Cinerary urns, found in Essex. . . . .	240
Silver cup, from Welwyn, Herts . . . . .	240
Center of a mosaic telling the story of Dido and Aeneas . . . . .	240
Silver handle found in Northumberland. . . . .	240
Arrival of the Allies in Normandy . . . . .	241
Landing on the Normandy beach . . . . .	242
Parade helmet.....	245
British coin COM· F means son of Commius Evans . . . . .	247
The white cliffs of Dover.....	248
Marker at Deal, about nine miles from Dover . . . . .	250
Libation pan The name of the maker—Bodvogenus—is on the handle, which is inlaid in a silver vine pattern From Isle of Ely.....	252
Relief from a tomb at Arles, France.....	254
Child's head.....	254
Bowl of <i>terra sigillata</i> ware, second century A.D.....	254
Roman remains.....	254
Amphitheater at Arles.....	254
A Druid ceremony.....	255
Gallic feast Parmentier.....	257
Gallic chieftain of early type . . . . .	258
Bracelets Dechélette.....	259

	PAGE
Relief.....	Musée Départemental des Vosges, Epinal, France 260
German village	Parmentier... 261
Teutonic smiths	Painting by George Peters ..... 262
	Public Museum, Milwaukee, Wis. 262
Barbarian cavalry. . . . .	Trajan's Column 265
Vercingetorix	Statue by Aimé Millet (1819-1891), on a height near site of Alesia ..... 266
Coins showing Vercingetorix ..	266
Cavalryman (model).....	267
Surrender of Vercingetorix .....	268
Battle.....	Trajan's Column 269
Hunting lions	Mosaic... Leptis Magna, Africa 270
St. Jerome writing... ..	Medieval drawing 273
St. Augustine .....	Medieval drawing 274
Rockefeller Memorial Chapel, The University of Chicago ..	275
Charlemagne	Painting by Albrecht Dürer (1471-1528)..... 279
	German National Museum, Nuremberg 279
Erasmus.....	282
Roman actors wearing comic masks.....	British Museum 312

## MAPS

Italy.....	inside front cover
The Roman Empire... ..	142
The Mediterranean World.....	161
Voyage of the <i>Argo</i> ....	185
Early Rome and surroundings.....	203
The Seven Hills of Rome.....	205
Gaul.....	221
Battle with Helvetians.....	235
Caesar's route to Britain.....	243
The spread of Latin.....	272
The Roman World.....	inside back cover

# Grammatical Index

Roman numbers refer to pages; boldface to sections in the Grammar for Reference

*ā*, *ab*, preposition, 24, 53, 60, 107;  
367, **154**  
distinguished from *ē*, *ex*, 25  
prefix, 68, 84, 180

## ABLATIVE

absolute, 108, 109; 351, **88**  
of accompaniment, 107; 350, **84**  
of agent, 60, 107; 349, **80**  
of cause, 352, **91**  
of comparison, 350, **81**  
of degree of difference, 251 (n. 3);  
351, **87**  
of description, 190 (n. 7); 351, **90**;  
352, **90a**  
of manner, 107; 350, **85**  
of means, 60, 107; 351, **86**  
of place, 350, **82**  
of place from which, 349, **79**  
of respect, 168; 351, **89**  
of route, 351, **86a**  
of separation, 224 (n. 5); 349, **78**  
of time, 157; 350, **83**  
used adverbially, 252  
with deponents, 203; 352, **92**  
with prepositions, 25, 53; 367, **154**  
*ac* (*atque*), 237 (n. 7)  
after *aliter*, 214 (n. 5)

## ACCENT, 368

## ACCUSATIVE

as object and predicate, 17; 349, **76**  
as subject of infinitive, 141; 348, **75**;  
361, **128**; 363, **134**, **1**  
of direct object, 13, 14, 17; 348, **70**  
of duration of time, 157; 348, **71**  
of extent in space, 160; 348, **72**  
of place to which, 186 (n. 2); 348, **73**  
with compounds of *trāns*, 349, **77**  
with prepositions, 53, 54; 348, **74**;  
367, **156**  
with verbs of naming, 349, **76**

ACTIVE VOICE, defined, 59

*ad*, preposition, 53, 54; 348, **74**  
prefix, 68, 84, 180

## ADJECTIVES, defined, 12

first declension, 44-45, 49; 315, **9**  
second declension, 44-45, 49; 315, **9**  
third declension, 127, 129, 134; 316  
agreement of, 14, 16, 23, 25, 41, 49,  
68, 87, 142; 344, **49**  
attributive, 353, **95**  
comparative, translation of, 133;  
353, **100**  
comparison of  
regular, 133-134; 317, **15**  
irregular, 136; 317, **16**  
demonstrative, 67, 79; 321, **27**  
denoting a part, 353, **98**  
formed with suffixes, 64, 148  
identifying, 163; 322, **29**  
indefinite, 323, **33**  
intensive, 170-171; 321, **28**  
interrogative, 75; 323, **32**  
irregular, 318, **18**  
made from verbs, 148  
numeral, 318, **21**; 319, **22**  
position of, 12; 367, **157**  
possessive, 45, 87; 320, **26**  
predicate, 13, 142; 353, **96**  
relative, 322, **30**  
substantive use of, 49; 353, **97**  
superlative, declension of, 134  
translation of, 133; 353, **100**  
two modifying one noun, 14  
with ablative of description, 190  
(n. 7); 351, **90**  
with adverbial force, 353, **99**  
with dependent dative, 23; 346, **63**  
with genitive of description, 188  
(n. 4); 345, **56**  
with prefix *per*, 218 (n. 3)

ADVERBS, defined, 51  
comparison of, 136; 318, **19-20**  
formed from adjectives, 252  
translation of comparative and  
superlative, 353, 100

#### AGREEMENT

of adjectives, 14, 16, 23, 25, 41, 49,  
68, 87, 142; 344, **49**  
of appositives, 25; 344, **51**  
of participles, 97, 130; 344, **49**  
of relative pronouns, 139; 344, **50**  
of verbs, 19; 344, **52**

*ajō*, conjugation of, 343, **48**

*aliquis*, declension of, 323, **33**

#### ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS, 72

*ante*, preposition, 53; 348, **74**  
prefix, 245 (n. 5)

#### ANTECEDENT, defined, 71

preceded by relative clause, 190  
(n. 4)

*antequam*, with subjunctive, 357, **113a**

#### ANTICIPATORY CLAUSES, 213; 357, **113**

#### APPOSITION, defined, 25

#### APPOSITIVES, defined, 25

agreement of, 25; 344, **51**

#### ARTICLE, lack of in Latin, 12

#### ASSIMILATION, 180

*atque* (*ac*), 237 (n. 7)

#### BASE, of a noun, defined, 29

of an adjective, defined, 133

*bōs*, declension of, 315, **8**

CARDINAL NUMERALS, 134; 318, **21—**  
**319, 22**

#### CASE, defined, 17

#### CASE ENDINGS OF NOUNS

first declension, 17, 23, 25, 29, 44

second declension, 44

third declension, 91

fourth declension, 147

fifth declension, 157

*causā*, with genitive, 205 (n. 5)

with gerund, 171, 364, **140a**

#### CAUSAL CLAUSES

with *cum*, 187; 358, **116**

with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, 360, **123**

with indicative, 360, **123**

with subjunctive, 187; 358, **116**; 360,  
**123**

*cēterī*, plural, 77

*circum*, preposition, 75; 348, **74**

prefix, 84

#### CLAUSE, defined, 29

*coeptī*, conjugation of, 343, **48**

*cōgō*, followed by infinitive with ac-  
cusative subject, 361, **128, 2**

*com-*, prefix, 84

#### COMMANDS

imperative, 31, 57, 111, 113, 115,  
175; 360, **124**

in indirect discourse, 363, **134, 2**

negative, 175; 360, **125**

#### COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

declension of, 134; 317, **17**

formation of, 133-134

translation of, 133; 353, **100**

with *quam*, 350, **81a**

#### COMPARISON

of adjectives, 133, 136; 317, **15-16**

of adverbs, 136; 318, **19-20**

#### COMPOUND VERBS, defined, 68

changes of spelling in, 180

*eō*, 145

*ferō*, 161, 180

formation with prefixes, 84, 180

with accusative and dative, 347, **68a**

with dative, 189 (n. 2); 245 (n. 5);  
347, **68**

#### CONCESSIVE CLAUSES, 183; 358, **117**

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, 361, **130—**  
**362, 133**; 366, **149a**

#### CONJUGATION, defined, 19

first, 20, 32, 36, 39, 59, 77, 81, 97,  
99, 103, 123, 130, 153, 155, 177-  
178, 183, 185, 187, 199, 325, **34—**  
**328, 35**

CONJUGATION—*cont.*

- second, 57, 59, 63, 77, 81, 97, 103,  
123, 130, 153, 155, 177-178, 183,  
185, 199, 207; 329, **36—334, 37**
- third, 111, 113, 115-116, 119, 121,  
123, 130, 153, 155, 177-178, 183,  
185, 199, 207; 329, **36—334, 37**
- fourth, 115-116, 119, 121, 123, 130,  
153, 155, 177-178, 183, 185, 199,  
207; 329, **36—334, 37**

CONJUNCTIONS, defined, 29

*cōnsilium est*, with substantive clause,  
356, **110b**

CONSONANTS, 368

*contrā*, preposition, 67; 348, **74**  
prefix, 180

*cum*, preposition, 53, 107; 350, **84-85;**  
**367, 154**

- with pronouns, 139, 151; 367, **154**
- conjunction, 33
- with *tum*, 359, **118a**

*cum* CLAUSES

- anticipatory, 213; 357, **113a**
- causal, 187; 358, **116**
- concessive, 183; 358, **117**
- descriptive, of situation, 184; 358-  
359, **118**

-*cum*, enclitic, 139, 151; 367, **154**

DATIVE

- of agent, 207; 347, **69**; 355, **105b**
- of indirect object, 23; 346, **62**
- of possession, 203; 347, **65**
- of purpose, 231; 347, **66**
- of reference, 231; 347, **67**
- position of, 23
- with adjectives, 23; 346, **63**
- with compounds, 189 (n. 2); 347, **68**
- with *persuādeō*, 218 (n. 2); 346, **64**
- with special verbs, 191 (n. 4), 249  
(n. 11); 346, **64**

*dē*, preposition, 34, 53; 367, **154**

prefix, 84, 180

with ablative, used instead of gen-  
itive, 164 (n. 5); 345, **55b**

DECLENSION, defined, 29

of nouns

- how determined, 29, 41, 91, 147,  
157
- first declension, 29, 43-44; 313, **1**
- second declension, 41, 43-45;  
313, **2**
- third declension, 91, 93, 95; 313,  
**3—314, 5**
- fourth declension, 147; 315, **6**
- fifth declension, 157; 315, **7**
- irregular, 315, **8**

of adjectives

- first and second declension, 44-45,  
49, 87; 315, **9**
- third declension, 127, 129; 316,  
**10-13**

of comparative and superlative ad-  
jectives, 134; 317, **17**

of participles, 97, 130, 173; 317, **14**

DEFECTIVE VERBS, 343, **48**

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES OR PRO-  
NOUNS, 67-68, 79; 321, **27**

agreement, 68, 79

declension of, 321, **27**

DEPENDENT CLAUSE, defined, 29

DEPONENT VERBS, defined, 165

conjugation of, 165, 167; 335-336, **39**

ablative with, 203; 352, **92**

genitive with *potior*, 352, **92a**

gerund of, 172 (n. 8)

infinitives of, 165, 167

participles of

future passive participle passive  
in meaning, 364, **139a**

perfect participle active in mean-  
ing, 167; 363, **135a**

semideponent, 336, **40**

DESCRIPTION, RELATIVE CLAUSE OF,  
357-358, **115**

DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION,  
184; 358-359, **118**

*diēs*, declension of, 315, **7**

gender of, 157

## DIPHTHONGS, 368

### DIRECT OBJECT, defined, 13

accusative of, 17; 348, **70**

agreement of adjectives with, 14

*dis-*, prefix, 180

### DISTRIBUTIVE NUMERALS

list of, 319, **22**

instead of cardinals, 267 (n. 5)

*dō*, present, 99

imperfect, 51

future, 33

perfect, 36

imperative, 31

“do” in negative sentences and in questions, 19

*domus*, declension of, 315, **8**

in place-from-which construction, 349, **79**

in place-to-which construction, 186 (n. 2); 348, **73**

in locative, 352, **94**

### DOUBT, CLAUSES WITH EXPRESSIONS OF, 191; 359, **119**

*dum*, in clauses of proviso, 357, **114**

with anticipatory subjunctive, 213; 357, **113a**

with present tense, 160 (n. 5); 365, **146**

*dummodo*, in clauses of proviso, 357, **114**

*duo*, declension of, 134; 318, **21**

*ē*, *ex*, preposition, 24, 53; 367, **154**

distinguished from *ā*, *ab*, 25

with ablative, used instead of genitive, 164 (n. 5); 345, **55b**

prefix, 84, 180

*ego*, declension and use of, 151; 320, **23**

*ejus*, *eōrum*, distinguished from *suus*, 88; 320, **26**

*eō*, conjugation of, 145; 340, **45**

compounds of, 145, 175

imperatives of, 175

EXPLETIVE “there,” 25

## FEAR, CLAUSES OF

with subjunctive, 213; 357, **112**

with *periculum est*, 357, **112b** and *c*

*ferō*, conjugation of, 161; 339-340, **44**  
compounds of, 161, 180

*fīō*, conjugation of, 219; 341, **46**

*fruor*, with ablative, 203; 352, **92**

*fungor*, with ablative, 203; 352, **92**

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, 177-178;  
366, **151**

FUTURE TENSE, 32-33, 57, 81, 121;  
366, **148**

## GENDER, defined, 41

agreement of adjectives in, 41

in first declension, 41, 44

in second declension, 41, 43, 44

in third declension, 95

in fourth declension, 147

in fifth declension, 157

## GENITIVE

objective, 345, **57**

of description, 188 (n. 4); 345, **56**;  
352, **90a**

of material or composition, 346, **59**

of measure, 345, **56a**

of possession, 16, 17, 23, 88; 345, **54**

of the whole, 245 (n. 6); 345, **55**

position of, 23

replaced by ablative with *dē* or *ex*,  
164 (n. 5); 345, **55b**

subjective, 345, **58**

with *causā* and *grātiā*, 205 (n. 5)

with impersonal verbs, 346, **61**

with *potior*, 352, **92a**

with verbs of remembering, 346, **60**

## GERUND, defined, 171

declension of, 171

uses of cases of, 171; 364, **140**;  
365, **142a**

with *causā*, 171; 364, **140a**

distinction between gerund and  
gerundive, 209; 365, **142**

of deponent verbs, 172 (n. 8)

- GERUNDIVE, defined, 209  
 agreement of, 209  
 case uses of, 209; 364, **141a**  
*grātiā*, with genitive, 205 (n. 5)
- hic*, declension of, 67; 321, **27**  
 distinguished from *ille*, 68  
 distinguished from *is*, 79  
 pronoun, 81  
 translation of neuter plural, 162 (n. 6)
- HISTORICAL INFINITIVE, 361, **129**
- HISTORICAL PRESENT, 365, **145a**
- īdem*, declension of, 163; 322, **29**  
 pronoun, 163; 322, **29**
- IDENTIFYING PRONOUN OR ADJECTIVE, 322, **29**
- ille*, declension of, 67; 321, **27**  
 distinguished from *hic*, 68  
 distinguished from *is*, 79  
 pronoun, 81  
 for special emphasis, 172 (n. 5)
- IMPERATIVE MOOD, defined, 31  
 first conjugation, 31  
 second conjugation, 57  
 third conjugation, 111, 113  
 fourth conjugation, 115  
 of *dō*, 31  
 of *eō* and *sum*, 175  
 negative commands, 175; 360, **125**  
 use of, 360, **124-125**  
 in conditional sentences, 361, **130a**
- IMPERFECT TENSE, 38, 57, 77, 119, 183, 184, 185; 366, **147**
- IMPERSONAL VERBS, defined, 195; 354, **105**  
 followed by infinitive, 195; 354, **105a**  
 with genitive, 346, **61**  
 passive used impersonally, 355, **105b**  
 with infinitive as subject, 361, **127**
- in*, preposition with ablative and accusative, 24, 53, 54; 367, **155**  
 prefix, 84, 180
- INDEFINITES, 323-324, **33**
- INDEPENDENT CLAUSE, defined, 29
- INDEPENDENT PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION, defined, 108
- INDICATIVE MOOD, defined, 31  
 uses of, 354, **101-355, 105**  
 after words meaning *until* or *before*, 357, **113b**  
 with certain conjunctions, 354, **102**
- INDIRECT DISCOURSE, defined, 141  
 use of, 141-142; 361, **128, 1; 363, 134**  
 commands in, 363, **134, 2**  
 dependent clauses in, 192; 363, **134, 3**  
 informal (implied), 360, **122**
- INDIRECT OBJECT, defined, 23  
 dative of, 23; 346, **62**  
 position of, 23  
 translated by phrase with "to," 23, 54
- INDIRECT QUESTIONS, defined, 187  
 use of, 187; 359, **120**
- INFINITIVES, defined, 20  
 active  
   present, 20, 36, 57, 111, 115, 123, 142  
   future, 173  
   perfect, 155  
 passive  
   present, 123, 155  
   future, 268 (n. 3)  
   perfect, 155  
 as subject, 361, **127**  
 complementary, 360, **126**  
 historical, 361, **129**  
 in indirect discourse, 141, 142, 155, 192; 361, **128, 1; 363, 134, 1**  
 instead of gerunds, 364, **140d**  
 of deponents, 165, 167  
 with impersonal verbs, 195; 354, **105a**  
 with subject accusative, 141; 361, **128; 363, 134, 1**  
 with subject nominative, 361, **129a**



- inquam*, synopsis of, 343, 48  
 INTENSIVE, 170-171; 321, 28  
*inter*, preposition with accusative, 75; 348, 74  
 prefix, 84  
 INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE, declension of, 75; 323, 32  
 INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN, declension of, 71; 322, 31  
 case of, 72 with *-cum*, 139; 367, 154  
 INTRANSITIVE VERBS, defined, 13  
*ipse*, declension and use of, 170-171; 321, 28  
 IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES, 318, 18  
 IRREGULAR VERBS, see *eō*, *ferō*, etc.  
*is*, 79; 321, 27  
*iste*, declension of, 321, 27  
*jam* and *nunc* distinguished, 51  
*jubeō*, followed by infinitive with accusative subject, 356, 110c; 361, 128, 2  
*jūs est*, with substantive clause, 356, 110b  
 LOCATIVE, 352, 94  
*mālō*, conjugation of, 341-342, 47  
 followed by infinitive with accusative subject, 361, 128, 2  
*meī*, declension of, 320, 24  
*meminī*, conjugation of, 343, 48  
 with genitive, 346, 60  
*meus*, declension and use of, 45; 320, 26  
*mīlia*, declension of, 160; 318, 21  
 with genitive, 160  
*mille*, adjective, 160  
*modo*, in clauses of proviso, 357, 114  
 MOOD, defined, 31  
 imperative, 31, 57, 111, 113, 115, 175; 360, 124  
 indicative, 31; 354, 101—105  
 infinitive, 20, 141; 360, 126—361, 129  
 subjunctive, 183, 184-185, 187, 189, 191, 192, 193, 199, 211, 213; 355, 106—360, 123  
*mōs est*, followed by infinitive, 354, 105a  
 with substantive clause, 356, 111a  
*nē*, after verbs of hindering, 359, 119; 2  
 before *quis*, 192 (n. 6)  
 in a negative command, 360, 125a  
 with clauses of fear, 213; 357, 112  
 with negative purpose clauses, 189; 355, 107  
 with noun clauses of desire, 191; 356, 110  
 with volitive subjunctive, 355, 106a  
*-ne*, sign of a question, 72  
 NEGATIVE COMMANDS  
 with *nē*, 360, 125a  
 with *nōlī* and infinitive, 175; 360, 125  
 “no,” expressed in Latin, 72  
*nōlī*, 175; 360, 125  
*nōlō*, conjugation of, 163; 341-342, 47  
 followed by infinitive with accusative subject, 361, 128, 2  
 imperative of, in negative commands, 175; 360, 125  
 NOMINATIVE  
 as subject, 17; 344, 53  
 as predicate, 103; 344, 53a  
 with historical infinitive, 361, 129a  
*nōn*, in noun clauses of fact, 356, 111  
 in result clauses, 193; 356, 109  
*nōnne*, sign of a question, 72  
*nōs*, declension of, 151; 320, 23  
 NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES  
 after *jubeō*, *velō*, 356, 110c  
 after *jūs est* or *cōnsilium est*, 356, 110b  
 after *mōs est*, 356, 111a  
 after *perīculum est*, 357, 112b  
 of desire, 191; 356, 110, 110a

NOUN CLAUSES—*cont.*

- of fact, 219; 356, **111**
- of fear, 357, **112**
- with *periculum est*, 357, **112b**
- with *quod*, 354, **104**

NOUNS, defined, 12

- classes of, 91, 93, 95
- declension of, 313-315, **1-8**
- derived from verbs, 238
- formed with suffixes, 200
- gender of, 41
- irregular, 315, **8**

*nūllus*, declension of, 318, **18**

NUMBER, of nouns, 14

- of verbs, 19

NUMERALS

- cardinal, 134; 318, **21—319, 22**
- distributive, 267 (n. 5); 319, **22**
- ordinal, 319, **22**
- duo, trēs, mīlia*, declined, 318, **21**
- with ablative, 164 (n. 5); 345, **55b**
- with nouns plural in form but singular in meaning, 267 (n. 5)

*nunc* and *jam* distinguished, 51

*ob*, preposition, 348, **74**

prefix, 84, 180

with accusative of cause, 352, **91b**

OBJECT

- direct, 13, 14, 17
- indirect, 23, 54

*oblīvīscor*, with genitive, 346, **60**

*ōdī*, conjugation of, 343, **48**

ORDER OF WORDS, 12, 19, 23, 51, 97

PARTICIPLES, defined, 97

- present active, 130; 363, **136**
  - declension of, 130, 317, **14**
- future active, 173; 363, **138**
- future passive, 207; 364, **139**
  - as gerundive, 209; 364, **141**
  - with dative of agent, 207; 355, **105b**
  - with *sum*, 207; 364, **139**

perfect passive, 97; 363, **137**

declension of, 97; 363, **137**

agreement of, 344, **49**

of deponents, 167; 363, **135a**, 364, **139a**

position of, 97

as substantives, 353, **97**

used in infinitives, 155

PASSIVE VOICE, defined, 59

first conjugation, 59, 77, 81, 103, 123, 153, 155, 178, 184, 187; 327-328, **35**

second conjugation, 59, 77, 81, 103, 123, 153, 155, 178, 184, 187; 332-334, **37**

third conjugation, 111, 113, 116, 119, 121, 123, 153, 155, 178, 184, 187; 332-334, **37**

fourth conjugation, 115-116, 119, 121, 123, 153, 155, 178, 184, 187; 332-334, **37**

PAST PERFECT TENSE, 153, 185; 366, **150**

*patior*, with infinitive, 361, **128, 2**

*per*, preposition, 53; 348, **74**

prefix, 84, 180, 218 (n. 3)

PERFECT SYSTEM OF VERBS, 35, 178

PERFECT TENSE, defined, 35; 366, **149**

active, 35-36, 63, 115

passive, 103, 116

contrasted with imperfect, 38

*periculum est*, with clause of fear, 357, **112b**

PERSON ENDINGS OF VERBS, 20, 35, 39, 59

PERSON OF VERBS, defined, 19

PERSONAL PRONOUNS, declension and use of, 151; 320, **23**

*persuādēō*, followed by dative case and noun clause of desire, 218 (n. 2)

PHRASE, defined, 14

## PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

locative, 352, **94**

place from which, 349, **79**

place to which, 54, 186 (n. 2); 348,

**73**

place where, 54; 350, **82**

*plūs*, declension of, 136; 317, **17**

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRO-  
NOUNS, 45, 87-88

POSSESSIVE CASE, 16, 17, 23

POSSESSIVES, declension of, 320, **26**

agreement of, 320, **26**

*possum*, conjugation of, 166, 199;  
338, **42**

imperfect subjunctive, 185

present subjunctive, 199

principal parts, 166

*post*, preposition, 53; 348, **74**

*postquam*, with indicative, 354, **102**

*potior*, with ablative, 203; 352, **92**

with genitive, 352, **92a**

*prae*, prefix, 84

PREDICATE, defined, 13

adjective, 13, 142; 353, **96**

noun, 13, 14, 142; 344, **53a**

with passive, 103; 344, **53a**

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE, 344, **53a**

PREFIXES, use of, 84, 180

*per*, prefixed to adjective, 218 (n. 3)

verbs compounded with, 84

PREPOSITIONS, defined, 24

cases with, 25, 53-54; 367, **154-156**

position of, 367, **157**

with ablative of cause, 352, **91a**

with ablative of place from which,  
349, **79a**

with gerunds, 171

PRESENT SYSTEM OF VERBS, 33, 39, 57

PRESENT TENSE, defined, 32; 365, **145**

first conjugation, 20, 59

second conjugation, 57, 59

third conjugation, 111, 113

fourth conjugation, 115

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS, 98, 99,  
104, 116, 145, 165, 173

*priusquam*, with anticipatory sub-  
junctive, 213; 357, **113a**

*prō*, preposition, 40; 367, **154**

prefix, 84, 180

PRONOUNS, defined, 71

declension of, 71, 79, 83, 151, 170;  
320, **23-324, 33**

demonstrative, 67, 79, 81; 321, **27**

identifying, 163; 322, **29**

indefinite, 323-324, **33**

intensive, 170; 321, **28**

interrogative, 71-72; 322, **31**

omitted as subject, 17

personal, 71, 151; 320, **23**

possessive, 45, 87, 88; 320, **26**

reflexive, 83, 141, 151; 320, **24**

relative, 139; 322, **30**

agreement of, 139; 344, **50**

introducing purpose clause, 189;  
355, **107a**

neuter, with genitive of whole, 345,  
**55a**

with *-cum*, 139, 151; 367, **154**

PRONUNCIATION, 12, 79, 368

*prope*, preposition with accusative,  
**78**

*propter*, preposition with accusative,  
**67**

with accusative, to express cause,  
352, **91b**

*prōsum*, conjugation of, 338, **43**

PROVISO, CLAUSES OF, 357, **114**

PURPOSE

clauses of, 189; 355, **107, 107a**

translation of, 355, **107b**

with comparatives, 355, **108**

dative of, 231; 347, **66**

expressed by gerund with *ad*, 364,  
**140c**

expressed by gerund with *causā*,  
171, 364, **140a**

*quam*, with comparative, 350, **81a**  
*quamquam*, with indicative, 354, **102**  
QUESTIONS, 72

*quī*, as adjective, declension of, 75;  
323, **32**

as pronoun, declension of, 322, **30**

at beginning of sentence, 228 (n. 5)

*quia*, with indicative or subjunctive,  
360, **123**

*quīdam*, declension of, 324, **33**

with *dē* or *ex* and ablative, 164  
(n. 5); 345, **55b**

*quīn*, with subjunctive, after expres-  
sions of doubt, 191; 359, **119**, 1

with subjunctive, after verb of  
hindering, 359, **119**, 2

*quis*, declension of, 71; 322, **31**

indefinite, after *sī* or *nē*, 192 (n. 6  
and n. 7)

*quisquam*, declension of, 324, **33**

*quisque*, declension of, 323, **33**

*quō*, in a purpose clause containing  
a comparative, 224 (n. 2); 355,  
**108**

with *-cum*, 367, **154**

*quod*, causal, 360, **123**

introducing a substantive clause,  
354, **104**

*quōminus*, after verbs of hindering,  
359, **119**, 2

*quoniam*, causal, with indicative or  
subjunctive, 360, **123**

QUOTATIONS, 141

*re-*, prefix, 84, 180

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS, 83, 141, 151;  
320, **24**

RELATIVE CLAUSES

causal, 358, **116a**

of description, 357-358, **115**

of purpose, 189; 355, **107a**

with indicative, 354, **103**

with subjunctive, 357, **115**—358,  
**115a**

RELATIVE PRONOUNS, use of, 139

declension of, 322, **30**

agreement, 139; 344, **50**

introducing purpose clause, 189;  
355, **107a**

preceding antecedent, 190 (n. 4)

with *-cum*, 139; 367, **154**

*rēs*, 157; 315, **7**

RESULT CLAUSES, 193; 356, **109**

ROMAN NUMERALS, 319, **22**

SEMIDEPONENT VERBS, 208 (n. 2);  
336, **40**

SENTENCE, defined, 12

SEQUENCE OF TENSES, 211; 366, **152**—  
367, **153**

exceptions to rule, 367, **153**

*sī*, before *quis*, 192 (n. 6)

*sine*, preposition, 77; 367, **154**

*sōlus*, declension of, 318, **18**

STEMS OF VERBS, defined, 20

present, 32, 99

future, 33

perfect, 35-36, 99, 104

participial, 99, 153, 155

*sub*, preposition, with ablative and  
accusative, 81; 367, **155**

SUBJECT, defined, 12

in indirect discourse, 141

omission of, 17

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, defined, 183

conjugation of, 183; 325-328; 330;  
333; 335; 337-341

present, active and passive, 199

imperfect, active and passive, 183,  
184

perfect, active and passive, 211

past perfect, active and passive,  
185, 187; 366, **150**

after *periculum est*, 357, **112b**

anticipatory, 213; 357, **113**

by attraction, 359, **121**

in causal clauses, with *quod*, *quia*,  
and *quoniam*, 360, **123**

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD—*cont.*

### in *cum* clauses

anticipatory, 357, **113**, **113a**

causal, 187; 358, **116**

concessive, 183; 358, **117**

descriptive, 184; 358, **118**

in clauses of fear, 213; 357, **112**

in clauses of proviso, 357, **114**

in clauses of purpose, 189; 355, **107**

with *quō* and a comparative, 224  
(n. 2); 355, **108**

with relative pronouns, 189; 355,  
**107a**

in clauses of result, 193; 356, **109**

in clauses with *quīn*

with verbs of hindering, 359, **119**, 2

after words and phrases of doubt-  
ing, 191; 359, **119**, 1

in conditional sentences, 361, **130a**

in conditions

contrary to fact, 362, **133**

future less vivid, 362, **132**

in expressions of doubt, 191; 359,  
**119**

in indirect discourse

commands, 363, **134**, 2

dependent clauses, 192; 363,  
**134**, 3

in implied (informal) indirect dis-  
course, 360, **122**

in indirect questions, 187; 359, **120**

in negative commands, 360, **125a**

in noun clauses of desire, 191; 356,  
**110**

translation of, 356, **110a**

in noun clauses of fact, 219, 356, **111**

in relative clauses of description,  
357, **115**

of desire (volitive), 355, **106**

of irregular verbs, 337-342, **41-47**

of *sum* and *possum*, 185, 199, 211;  
337, **41**—338, **42**

volitive, 355, **106**

with *necesse est*, 361, **127a**

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES, *see* NOUN CLAUSES

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES, 49

SUFFIXES, forming adjectives, 148

forming nouns, 200, 238

*suī*, declension of, 83; 320, **24**

*sum*, conjugation of, 19, 33, 36, 39;  
337, **41**

compounds of, 68

imperatives of, 175

infinitives of, 33, 197 (n. 2)

present subjunctive, 199

imperfect subjunctive, 185

perfect subjunctive, 211

principal parts, 173

with dative of possession, 203;  
347, **65**

with future active participle, 173

with future passive participle, 207;  
364, **139**

with perfect passive participle, 103,  
153, 187, 211

SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES, 133

declension of, 134

translation of, 133; 353, **100**

SUPINE, 365, **143**

*supra*, preposition, 121

*suus*, declension and use of, 87; 320, **26**  
distinguished from *ejus*, *eōrum*, 88;  
320, **26**

SYLLABICATION, 368

SYNOPSIS OF VERBS, 334, **38**

*tamen*, use of, 183; 358, **117a**

TENSE, defined, 32; 365, **144**

present, 32, 57, 59, 111, 113, 199; -  
365, **145**

historical, 365, **145a**

with *dum*, 365, **146**

with future force, 365, **145b**

imperfect, 38, 39, 77, 119, 183, 184;  
366, **147**

in conditional sentences contrary  
to fact, 362, **133**

TENSE—*cont.*

in repeated or habitual action,  
248 (n. 10); 366, **147a**  
translation by progressive form,  
366, **147b**  
future, 32, 33, 81, 121; 366, **148**  
in future more vivid conditional  
sentences, 362, **131**  
translation of, with certain con-  
junctions, 366, **148a**  
perfect, 35-36, 63, 103, 115-116,  
211; 366, **149**  
denoting single act, 248 (n. 10)  
equivalent to English past tense,  
366, **149, 2**  
equivalent to English present  
perfect, 366, **149, 1**  
in future less vivid conditional  
sentences, 362, **132a**; 366, **149a**  
past perfect, 153, 185, 187; 366, **150**  
denoting repeated acts, 248 (n.  
10); 366, **150b**  
subjunctive in conditional sen-  
tences contrary to fact, 362, **133**  
future perfect, 177, 178; 366, **151**  
in future more vivid conditional  
sentences, 362, **131b**  
frequent use of, 366, **151a**  
infinitives in indirect discourse, 142,  
155  
sequence of, 211; 366-367, **152-153**  
signs of tenses  
imperfect, 39, 77, 119  
future, 32, 81, 121  
past perfect, 153  
future perfect, 177  
“there,” as an expletive, 25  
“to,” in English phrases  
place to which, 54, 186 (n. 2); 348, **73**  
equivalent to indirect object, 23, 54  
*tōtus*, declension of, 318, **18**  
*trāns*, preposition, 53; 348, **74**  
prefix, 84

two objects with compounds of,  
349, **77**

TRANSITIVE VERBS, defined, 13

*trēs*, declension of, 134; 318, **21**

*tū*, declension of, 320, **23**

*tuī*, declension of, 320, **24**

*tum*, in *cum* clause, 359, **118a**

*tuus*, declension and use of, 45; 320, **26**

*ubi*, with indicative, 354, **102**

*ut*, with indicative, 196 (n. 2)

with subjunctive

in clauses of fear, 213; 357, **112**

in clauses of purpose, 189; 355, **107**

in clauses of result, 193; 356, **109**

in noun clauses of desire, 191;  
356, **110**

in noun clauses of fact, 219;  
356, **111**

*ūtor*, with ablative, 203; 352, **92**

VERBALS, uses of, 364, **140a, c, d**

VERBS, defined, 13

first conjugation, 20, 32, 36, 39,  
59, 77, 81, 97, 103, 123; 325,  
**34-328, 35**

second conjugation, 57, 59, 63, 77,  
81, 97, 103, 123; 329, **36-334, 37**

third conjugation, 111, 113, 115-  
116, 119, 121, 123; 329, **36-334, 37**

fourth conjugation, 115-116, 119,  
121, 123; 329, **36-334, 37**

agreement of, 19; 344, **52**

compound, 84, 145, 180

with dative, 189 (n. 2); 347, **68**

defective, 343, **48**

deponent, 165, 167; 335-336, **39**

derivation of, 238

impersonal, 195; 354-355, **105**

irregular, 33, 145, 163, 166, 219;  
337, **41-342, 47**

VERBS—*cont.*

person and number of, 19  
position of, 19  
principal parts of, 98-99, 104, 116  
semideponent, 336, **40**  
special, with dative, 191 (n. 4);  
346, **64**  
stems of, 20, 99, 104  
synopsis of, 334, **38**  
transitive and intransitive, 13  
*see also* CONJUGATION, MOOD,  
TENSE, VOICE  
*vēscor*, with ablative, 203; 352, **92**  
*vetō*, followed by infinitive with ac-  
cusative subject, 356, **110c**; 361,  
**128, 2**

*vir*, declension of, 49  
*vīs*, declension of, 315, **8**  
VOCATIVE CASE, 31, 43; 352, **93**  
VOICE, defined, 59  
VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE, 355, **106**  
*volō*, conjugation of, 163; 341-342, **47**  
followed by infinitive with subject  
accusative, 361, **128, 2**  
*vōs*, declension of, 320, **23**  
VOWELS, 368  
WORD FAMILIES, 124  
WORD ORDER, 12, 19, 23, 51, 97  
“yes,” how expressed in Latin, 72  
“you,” Latin equivalents, 20

## Acknowledgments

---

To all who have contributed to the illustration of *College Latin* cordial thanks are given. For their kindness in permitting us to reproduce pictures, grateful acknowledgment is made to the following.

Anderson, Rome, pages 16, 61 (arch, forum)  
Art Reference Bureau, Inc., Ancram, N.Y., and Fratelli Alinari, Florence, Italy, 37, 105 (kitchen), 117 (bakery, bread), 154, 156, 267  
The Bettman Archive, New York, 76, 143 (settlers), 258  
British Information Services, Chicago, 248  
The British Museum, London, 15, 58, 117 (plate), 216 (Roman soldier), 229, 240 (cup, handle), 312  
Brown Brothers, New York, 268, 279  
Caisse Nationale des Monuments Historiques, Paris, 220  
A Century of Progress, Chicago, 89 (apartment house)  
A. E. Coe & Sons, Ltd., Norwich, England, 245  
Colchester and Essex Museum, Colchester, England, 27 (Mercury), 216 (tombstone), 240 (urns)  
H. C. Combs, 240 (pool)  
Commissariat Général au Tourisme, Paris: Photo Aérienne Greff, Pilote et Opérateur R. Henrard, 254 (Arles); Marcelle d'Heilly, 254 (Paris)  
The Corcoran Gallery of Art, Washington, D.C., 146  
Eastman Educational Slides, 69 (consul)  
ENIT (Italian State Tourist Office), New York, 61 (Colosseum), 74  
E.P.T. (Ente Provinciale per il Turismo), Ravenna, Italy, 131 (boat)  
Fogg Museum of Art, Harvard University, 132  
French Embassy Press and Information Division, New York, 143 (arches)  
French Government Tourist Office, Chicago, 90  
Frick Art Reference Library, New York, 94  
Ewing Galloway (photograph by Burton Holmes), Chicago, 30  
Philip D. Gendreau, New York, 38  
Gramstorff Bros., Inc., Malden, Mass., 50, 140, 144  
The London Electrotype Agency, Ltd., London, and S. Brown, Tiverton, Devon, England, 240 (mosaic)  
Milwaukee Public Museum, Milwaukee, Wisconsin, 262  
Musée Alaoui, Le Bardo, Tunis, 54  
Musée Départemental des Vosges, Epinal, France, 260  
Musées d'Arles, Archives Photographiques, Arles, France, 254 (child)  
The Philadelphia Commercial Museum, 210  
The Photographical Archives of the Vatican Museums, 73 (Lar), 131 (cutlery)  
Reuter-photo, P.A.-Reuter Photos, Ltd., London, 27 (mosaic)  
Royal Ontario Museum of Archaeology, Toronto, 92  
Sovfoto, New York, 143 (walls)  
Bruno Stefani, Milan, Italy, 190  
The Toledo Museum of Art, Toledo, Ohio, 182  
Albert H. Travis, University of California, Los Angeles, 143 (bridge)  
Underwood-Stratton, New York, 202  
The University of Chicago, Office of Press Relations, 275  
U.S. Coast Guard, Public Relations Division, Washington, D.C., Official Photos, 241, 242



The Walters Art Gallery, Baltimore, and Miss Dorothy K. Hill, Curator of Ancient Art, 105 (lamp), 117 (pitcher), 254 (bowl)  
The Yorkshire Museum, York, England, and Messrs. Walter Scott, Bradford, England, 240 (gravestone)

Pictures on the pages cited are reproduced by the courtesy of the following.

The American Museum of Natural History, New York, 135  
Miss Mabel J. Mather, High School, Sault Ste. Marie, Mich., and Young, photographer, 204  
The Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York, 21, 22, 28, 82, 89 (private house), 105 (bedroom), 186, 206  
Museum of Fine Arts, Boston, 128  
Museum, Aquileia, Italy, 131 (blacksmith)  
The National Gallery of Art, Washington, D.C., 11, 40 (from the Kress Collection)  
Charles H. Forbes Collection of Vergiliana, Oliver Wendell Holmes Library, Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass., 86, 112, 120, 122  
H. W. Poulter of Colchester and Essex Museum, Colchester, and Mayor W. P. D. Stebbing, Deal, England, 250  
The Public Library of Newark, N.J., 193  
Rheinisches Landesmuseum, Bonn, Germany, 105 (bottles), 136  
Römisch-Germanisches Zentralmuseum, Mainz, Germany, 216 (eagle)  
Soprintendenza, Monumenti e Scavi in Libia and Archivio fotografico della Libia occidentale, 42, 270  
Soprintendenza per le Antichità and Don Carlo Rabini, Ancona, Italy, 131 (wine merchant)  
Staatliche Skulpturensammlung, Dresden, Germany, 117 (meat market)

The pictures on the pages cited are from the following.

Baumeister, *Denkmäler des Klassischen Altertums*, 138, 166, 172, 176, 177, 178, 179  
Blanchet, *Traité des monnaies gauloises*, 230, 237  
Cybulski, *Tabulae quibus antiquitates Graecae et Romanae illustrantur* (copyright, A. J. Nystrom and Co., Chicago), 63, 71, 214  
Déchelette, *Manuel d'archéologie préhistorique celtique et gallo-romaine*, 259  
Evans, *Coins of the Ancient Britons*, 247  
Head, *A Guide to the Principal Gold and Silver Coins of the Ancients*, 266 (coins)  
Lehmann's *Kulturgeschichtliche Bilder*, 89 (atrium)  
Letellier, *Description historique des monnaies françaises, gauloises, royales et seigneuriales*, 266 (Vercingetorix)  
Parmentier, *Album historique*, v. 1, 257, 261; v. 2, 273, 274  
Rheinhard, *C. Julii Caesaris Commentarii de Bello Gallico*, 216 (soldiers at work)

Pictures on the following pages were drawn by Herbert Rudeen:  
52, 162, 164, 169, 188, 196, 199, 227, 255





# The ROMAN WORLD

BRITAIN

HADRIAN'S WALL

GERMANY

CAMP

GAUL

ROMAN COLONY

SPAIN

AQUEDUCT

TEMPLE

CORSICA

ETRURIA

ROME

ARPINO

FORMIAE

SARDINIA

SICILY

SYRACUSE

GREECE

ATHENS

ASIA

ROMAN BATH

AUGUSTUS

CAPPADOCIA

CILICIA

CYPRUS

RHODES

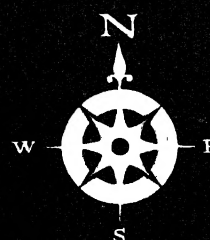
CRETE

AFRICA

CLEOPATRA

Black Sea

Sea



UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY



132 611

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY